



Exodus

translationNotes

v8

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 8

Published: 2017-07-05

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	26
Introduction to Exodus	26
Exodus 01 General Notes	29
Exodus 1:1-5	30
Exodus 1:6-7	32
Exodus 1:8-10	33
Exodus 1:11-12	35
Exodus 1:13-14	36
Exodus 1:15-17	37
Exodus 1:18-19	39
Exodus 1:20-22	40
Exodus 02 General Notes	42
Exodus 2:1-2	43
Exodus 2:3-4	44
Exodus 2:5-6	46
Exodus 2:7-8	47
Exodus 2:9-10	48
Exodus 2:11-12	50
Exodus 2:13-14	51
Exodus 2:15-17	53
Exodus 2:18-20	55
Exodus 2:21-22	56
Exodus 2:23-25	57
Exodus 03 General Notes	59
Exodus 3:1-3	60
Exodus 3:4-6	62
Exodus 3:7-8	64
Exodus 3:9-10	66
Exodus 3:11-12	67
Exodus 3:13-15	68
Exodus 3:16-18	70
Exodus 3:19-22	72
Exodus 04 General Notes	74
Exodus 4:1-3	75
Exodus 4:4-5	76
Exodus 4:6-7	77
Exodus 4:8-9	78
Exodus 4:10-13	79
Exodus 4:14-17	81
Exodus 4:18-20	83

Table of Contents

Exodus 4:21-23	84
Exodus 4:24-26	86
Exodus 4:27-28	88
Exodus 4:29-31	89
Exodus 05 General Notes	91
Exodus 5:1-2	92
Exodus 5:3-5	94
Exodus 5:6-9	96
Exodus 5:10-11	98
Exodus 5:12-14	99
Exodus 5:15-18	101
Exodus 5:19-21	102
Exodus 5:22-23	104
Exodus 06 General Notes	105
Exodus 6:1	106
Exodus 6:2-5	107
Exodus 6:6-7	109
Exodus 6:8-9	110
Exodus 6:10-13	111
Exodus 6:14-15	112
Exodus 6:16-19	114
Exodus 6:20-22	116
Exodus 6:23-25	117
Exodus 6:26-27	118
Exodus 6:28-30	119
Exodus 07 General Notes	120
Exodus 7:1-2	121
Exodus 7:3-5	122
Exodus 7:6-7	124
Exodus 7:8-10	125
Exodus 7:11-13	126
Exodus 7:14-15	127
Exodus 7:16-18	128
Exodus 7:19	130
Exodus 7:20-22	131
Exodus 7:23-25	133
Exodus 08 General Notes	134
Exodus 8:1-4	135
Exodus 8:8-9	137
Exodus 8:13-15	138
Exodus 8:18-19	139
Exodus 8:20-21	140
Exodus 8:22-24	141

Exodus 8:25-27	143
Exodus 8:28-29	144
Exodus 8:30-32	145
Exodus 09 General Notes	146
Exodus 9:1-4	147
Exodus 9:5-7	149
Exodus 9:8-10	151
Exodus 9:11-12	152
Exodus 9:13-14	153
Exodus 9:15-17	155
Exodus 9:18-19	157
Exodus 9:27-28	158
Exodus 9:29-30	159
Exodus 9:31-33	160
Exodus 9:34-35	162
Exodus 10 General Notes	163
Exodus 10:1-2	164
Exodus 10:3-4	166
Exodus 10:5-6	167
Exodus 10:7-8	168
Exodus 10:9-11	170
Exodus 10:14-15	172
Exodus 10:16-18	173
Exodus 10:19-20	174
Exodus 10:21-23	175
Exodus 10:24-26	176
Exodus 10:27-29	177
Exodus 11 General Notes	179
Exodus 11:1-3	180
Exodus 11:4-5	182
Exodus 11:6-8	184
Exodus 11:9-10	185
Exodus 12 General Notes	186
Exodus 12:1-2	187
Exodus 12:3-4	188
Exodus 12:5-8	190
Exodus 12:9-11	192
Exodus 12:12-14	194
Exodus 12:15-16	196
Exodus 12:17-18	198
Exodus 12:19-20	200
Exodus 12:21-22	202
Exodus 12:23	204

Table of Contents

Exodus 12:24-25	205
Exodus 12:26-28	206
Exodus 12:29-30	208
Exodus 12:31-33	210
Exodus 12:34-36	211
Exodus 12:37-40	212
Exodus 12:41-42	214
Exodus 12:43-44	215
Exodus 12:45-46	216
Exodus 12:47-48	217
Exodus 12:49-51	219
Exodus 13 General Notes	221
Exodus 13:1-2	222
Exodus 13:3-5	223
Exodus 13:6-7	225
Exodus 13:8-10	227
Exodus 13:11-13	229
Exodus 13:14-16	231
Exodus 13:17-18	233
Exodus 13:19-22	235
Exodus 14 General Notes	237
Exodus 14:1-3	238
Exodus 14:4-5	240
Exodus 14:6-9	243
Exodus 14:10-12	245
Exodus 14:13-14	247
Exodus 14:15-18	248
Exodus 14:19-20	250
Exodus 14:21-22	251
Exodus 14:23-25	253
Exodus 14:26-28	254
Exodus 14:29-31	256
Exodus 15 General Notes	258
Exodus 15:1	259
Exodus 15:2-3	261
Exodus 15:4-5	263
Exodus 15:6-8	265
Exodus 15:9-11	267
Exodus 15:12-13	269
Exodus 15:14-15	271
Exodus 15:16	273
Exodus 15:17-18	275
Exodus 15:19-21	277

Exodus 15:22-23	279
Exodus 15:24-26	280
Exodus 15:27	282
Exodus 16 General Notes	283
Exodus 16:1-3	284
Exodus 16:4-5	286
Exodus 16:6-8	288
Exodus 16:9-12	290
Exodus 16:13-15	292
Exodus 16:16-18	294
Exodus 16:22-23	295
Exodus 16:24-25	297
Exodus 16:26-27	298
Exodus 16:28-30	299
Exodus 16:31-32	301
Exodus 16:33-36	303
Exodus 17 General Notes	304
Exodus 17:1-3	305
Exodus 17:4-7	307
Exodus 17:8-10	309
Exodus 17:11-13	310
Exodus 17:14-16	312
Exodus 18 General Notes	314
Exodus 18:1-4	315
Exodus 18:5-6	317
Exodus 18:7-8	318
Exodus 18:9-11	320
Exodus 18:13-14	321
Exodus 18:17-20	323
Exodus 18:21-23	325
Exodus 18:24-27	327
Exodus 19 General Notes	329
Exodus 19:1-2	330
Exodus 19:3-6	332
Exodus 19:7-9	335
Exodus 19:10-11	337
Exodus 19:12-13	338
Exodus 19:14-15	340
Exodus 19:16-18	341
Exodus 19:19-22	343
Exodus 19:23-25	345
Exodus 20 General Notes	346
Exodus 20:1-3	347

Table of Contents

Exodus 20:4-6	348
Exodus 20:7	350
Exodus 20:8-11	351
Exodus 20:12-14	353
Exodus 20:15-17	354
Exodus 20:18-21	355
Exodus 20:22-23	357
Exodus 20:24-26	359
Exodus 21 General Notes	361
Exodus 21:1	362
Exodus 21:2-4	363
Exodus 21:5-6	365
Exodus 21:7-8	367
Exodus 21:9-11	369
Exodus 21:12-14	370
Exodus 21:15-17	372
Exodus 21:18-19	374
Exodus 21:20-21	376
Exodus 21:22-25	377
Exodus 21:26-27	379
Exodus 21:28-30	380
Exodus 21:31-32	382
Exodus 21:33-34	383
Exodus 21:35-36	384
Exodus 22 General Notes	386
Exodus 22:1-4	387
Exodus 22:5	389
Exodus 22:6	390
Exodus 22:7-9	392
Exodus 22:10-13	394
Exodus 22:14-15	396
Exodus 22:16-17	397
Exodus 22:18-19	399
Exodus 22:20-21	400
Exodus 22:22-24	401
Exodus 22:25-27	403
Exodus 22:28	405
Exodus 22:29-31	406
Exodus 23 General Notes	408
Exodus 23:1-3	409
Exodus 23:4-5	411
Exodus 23:6-9	412
Exodus 23:10-11	414

Exodus 23:12-13	416
Exodus 23:14-15	418
Exodus 23:16-17	420
Exodus 23:18-19	422
Exodus 23:20-22	424
Exodus 23:23-25	426
Exodus 23:26-29	428
Exodus 23:30-33	430
Exodus 24 General Notes	432
Exodus 24:1-2	433
Exodus 24:3-4	434
Exodus 24:5-6	435
Exodus 24:7-8	436
Exodus 24:9-11	437
Exodus 24:12-13	439
Exodus 24:14-15	440
Exodus 24:16-18	441
Exodus 25 General Notes	443
Exodus 25:1-2	444
Exodus 25:3-7	445
Exodus 25:8-9	447
Exodus 25:10-11	448
Exodus 25:12-14	449
Exodus 25:15-18	450
Exodus 25:19-21	452
Exodus 25:22	454
Exodus 25:23-24	455
Exodus 25:25-27	456
Exodus 25:28-30	458
Exodus 25:31-32	460
Exodus 25:33-34	461
Exodus 25:35-36	462
Exodus 25:37-40	463
Exodus 26 General Notes	465
Exodus 26:1-3	466
Exodus 26:4-6	468
Exodus 26:7-9	469
Exodus 26:10-11	470
Exodus 26:12-14	471
Exodus 26:15-18	472
Exodus 26:19-21	473
Exodus 26:22-25	475
Exodus 26:26-28	477

Table of Contents

Exodus 26:29-30	478
Exodus 26:31-33	479
Exodus 26:34-35	481
Exodus 26:36-37	483
Exodus 27 General Notes	485
Exodus 27:1-2	486
Exodus 27:3-4	488
Exodus 27:5-6	490
Exodus 27:7-8	492
Exodus 27:9-10	493
Exodus 27:11-13	495
Exodus 27:14-16	497
Exodus 27:17-19	499
Exodus 27:20-21	501
Exodus 28 General Notes	503
Exodus 28:1-3	504
Exodus 28:4-5	506
Exodus 28:6-9	508
Exodus 28:10-12	510
Exodus 28:13-14	512
Exodus 28:15-16	513
Exodus 28:17-20	514
Exodus 28:21-24	516
Exodus 28:25-26	518
Exodus 28:27-28	519
Exodus 28:29-30	521
Exodus 28:31-32	523
Exodus 28:33-35	524
Exodus 28:36-38	526
Exodus 28:39	528
Exodus 28:40-41	529
Exodus 28:42-43	531
Exodus 29 General Notes	533
Exodus 29:1-2	534
Exodus 29:3-4	536
Exodus 29:5-7	538
Exodus 29:8-9	540
Exodus 29:10-11	542
Exodus 29:12-14	544
Exodus 29:15-18	546
Exodus 29:19-20	548
Exodus 29:21	549
Exodus 29:22-23	550

Exodus 29:24-25	552
Exodus 29:26-28	553
Exodus 29:29-30	555
Exodus 29:31-34	557
Exodus 29:35-37	559
Exodus 29:38-39	561
Exodus 29:40	562
Exodus 29:41-42	563
Exodus 29:43-44	565
Exodus 29:45-46	566
Exodus 30 General Notes	567
Exodus 30:1-2	568
Exodus 30:3-4	569
Exodus 30:5-6	570
Exodus 30:7-9	572
Exodus 30:10	574
Exodus 30:11-14	576
Exodus 30:15-16	578
Exodus 30:17-18	580
Exodus 30:19-21	582
Exodus 30:22-25	584
Exodus 30:26-28	586
Exodus 30:29-31	588
Exodus 30:32-33	590
Exodus 30:34-36	592
Exodus 30:37-38	594
Exodus 31 General Notes	596
Exodus 31:1-2	597
Exodus 31:3-5	598
Exodus 31:6-9	600
Exodus 31:10-11	602
Exodus 31:12-15	604
Exodus 31:16-17	606
Exodus 31:18	608
Exodus 32 General Notes	609
Exodus 32:1-2	610
Exodus 32:3-4	612
Exodus 32:5-6	613
Exodus 32:7-8	615
Exodus 32:9-11	617
Exodus 32:12-14	619
Exodus 32:15-16	621
Exodus 32:17-18	622

Table of Contents

Exodus 32:19-20	623
Exodus 32:21-24	624
Exodus 32:25-27	626
Exodus 32:28-29	628
Exodus 32:30-32	629
Exodus 32:33-35	631
Exodus 33 General Notes	633
Exodus 33:1-3	634
Exodus 33:4-6	636
Exodus 33:7-9	638
Exodus 33:10-11	640
Exodus 33:12-13	642
Exodus 33:14-16	644
Exodus 33:17-18	646
Exodus 33:19-20	648
Exodus 33:21-23	649
Exodus 34 General Notes	650
Exodus 34:1-2	651
Exodus 34:3-4	652
Exodus 34:5-7	653
Exodus 34:8-9	656
Exodus 34:10-11	658
Exodus 34:12-14	660
Exodus 34:15-17	662
Exodus 34:18	664
Exodus 34:19-20	665
Exodus 34:21-22	667
Exodus 34:23-24	669
Exodus 34:25-26	670
Exodus 34:27-28	672
Exodus 34:29-31	674
Exodus 34:32-33	676
Exodus 34:34-35	677
Exodus 35 General Notes	678
Exodus 35:1-3	679
Exodus 35:4-9	681
Exodus 35:10-12	683
Exodus 35:13-16	685
Exodus 35:17-19	687
Exodus 35:20-22	689
Exodus 35:23-24	691
Exodus 35:25-26	692
Exodus 35:27-29	693

Exodus 35:30-33	694
Exodus 35:34-35	696
Exodus 36 General Notes	698
Exodus 36:1	699
Exodus 36:2-4	701
Exodus 36:5-7	703
Exodus 36:8-10	704
Exodus 36:11-13	705
Exodus 36:14-17	707
Exodus 36:18-19	709
Exodus 36:20-23	710
Exodus 36:24-26	711
Exodus 36:27-28	713
Exodus 36:29-30	714
Exodus 36:31-34	715
Exodus 36:35-36	717
Exodus 36:37-38	718
Exodus 37 General Notes	719
Exodus 37:1-3	720
Exodus 37:4-6	722
Exodus 37:7-9	724
Exodus 37:10-13	726
Exodus 37:14-16	728
Exodus 37:17-19	730
Exodus 37:20-22	732
Exodus 37:23-24	734
Exodus 37:25-26	736
Exodus 37:27-29	738
Exodus 38 General Notes	740
Exodus 38:1-3	741
Exodus 38:4-5	743
Exodus 38:6-7	744
Exodus 38:8	745
Exodus 38:9-10	746
Exodus 38:11-12	748
Exodus 38:13-16	749
Exodus 38:17-20	751
Exodus 38:21-23	753
Exodus 38:24-26	755
Exodus 38:27-29	757
Exodus 38:30-31	759
Exodus 39 General Notes	761
Exodus 39:1	762

Table of Contents

Exodus 39:2-3	763
Exodus 39:4-5	764
Exodus 39:6-7	765
Exodus 39:8-9	767
Exodus 39:10-13	768
Exodus 39:14-16	770
Exodus 39:17-18	771
Exodus 39:19-20	772
Exodus 39:21	773
Exodus 39:22-24	774
Exodus 39:25-26	775
Exodus 39:27-29	777
Exodus 39:30-31	779
Exodus 39:32-35	780
Exodus 39:36-39	782
Exodus 39:40-41	784
Exodus 39:42-43	786
Exodus 40 General Notes	787
Exodus 40:1-2	788
Exodus 40:3-4	789
Exodus 40:5-7	790
Exodus 40:8-11	791
Exodus 40:12-13	793
Exodus 40:14-16	794
Exodus 40:17-20	795
Exodus 40:21-23	797
Exodus 40:24-25	798
Exodus 40:26-27	799
Exodus 40:31-33	800
Exodus 40:34-35	802
Exodus 40:36-38	803
translationQuestions	804
Exodus 1	804
Exodus 2	806
Exodus 3	808
Exodus 4	810
Exodus 5	812
Exodus 6	814
Exodus 7	815
Exodus 8	817
Exodus 9	819
Exodus 10	821
Exodus 11	823

Exodus 12	824
Exodus 13	827
Exodus 14	828
Exodus 15	830
Exodus 16	831
Exodus 17	834
Exodus 18	835
Exodus 19	837
Exodus 20	839
Exodus 21	841
Exodus 22	845
Exodus 23	848
Exodus 24	850
Exodus 25	852
Exodus 26	855
Exodus 27	856
Exodus 28	857
Exodus 29	860
Exodus 30	863
Exodus 31	865
Exodus 32	866
Exodus 33	868
Exodus 34	870
Exodus 35	873
Exodus 36	874
Exodus 37	875
Exodus 38	876
Exodus 39	877
Exodus 40	879
translationWords	881
Aaron	881
Abraham, Abram	884
acacia	886
acquit	888
adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses	889
adversary, enemy	891
afflict, affliction	892
afflict, affliction	894
Almighty	896
altar of incense	897
altar, altars	898
Amalek, Amalekite	900
Amorite	901

Table of Contents

ancestor, father, forefather	902
angel, angels, archangel	904
angry, anger	906
anoint, anointed, anointing	907
appoint, appoints, appointed	909
Arabia, Arabian	910
ark	911
ark	912
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh	913
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh	915
armor	916
Asher	917
Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth	918
assembly, assemble	919
assembly, assemble	921
astray, go astray, led astray, stray	922
atonement lid	923
atonement, atone, atones, atoned	925
authority, authorities	927
avenge, revenge, vengeance	929
barren	931
basket	932
beast	933
believe, believes, believed, belief	934
believer	936
Benjamin	938
bind, bond, bound	939
blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous, blasphemies	941
blemish	942
bless, blessed, blessing	943
blood	945
blot out, wipe out	947
bow, bow down	948
bread	950
breastplate, breastpiece	952
bribe	954
bride	955
bridegroom	956
bronze	957
brother, brothers	959
burden	961
burnt offering, offering by fire	962
call, calls, calling, called	963

camel	965
Canaan, Canaanite	966
captive, captivity	968
cast out, drive out, throw out	969
census	970
chariot	971
cherubim, cherub	972
chief priests	974
children, child	975
chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	977
Christ, Messiah	979
church, churches, Church	981
circumcise, circumcised, circumcision	983
clan	985
clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes	986
clothe, clothed	988
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments	989
command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments	992
commit, committed, commitment	993
compassion, compassionate	994
confidence, confident	995
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	996
consume	997
corrupt, corruption	998
council	999
courage, courageous	1000
courtyard, court	1001
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love	1003
covenant, covenants	1004
cow, calf, bull, cattle	1006
crime, criminal	1008
cross	1009
crown, to crown	1011
crucify, crucified	1013
cry, cry out	1015
curse, cursed, curses, cursing	1016
cut off	1018
Dan	1019
Daniel	1020
darkness	1021
David	1023
day	1025
death, die, dead	1026

Table of Contents

death, die, dead	1029
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	1031
decree	1033
dedicate, dedication	1034
deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn	1035
defile, be defiled	1036
descendant, descended from	1038
desert, wilderness	1040
destroyer	1042
devour	1043
dishonor, dishonorable	1044
disobey, disobedient, disobedience	1045
donkey, mule	1046
doorpost	1047
drink offering	1048
dung, manure	1049
eagle	1050
earth, earthly	1051
Edom, Edomite, Idumea	1053
Egypt, Egyptian	1054
elder	1057
endure, endurance	1058
enslave, in bondage	1059
enslave, in bondage	1060
envy, covet	1061
ephod	1062
Esau	1064
Euphrates River	1065
everlasting, eternal, eternity	1066
evil, wicked, wickedness	1068
exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation	1070
exhort, exhortation	1071
face	1072
faith	1074
false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report	1076
family	1077
favor, favors, favorable, favoritism	1078
fear, fears, afraid	1080
feast	1082
fellowship offering	1083
festival	1084
filled with the Holy Spirit	1086
fire	1087

firstborn	1088
firstborn	1090
firstfruits	1091
firstfruits	1092
flesh	1093
flock, herd	1095
foreigner, foreign, alien	1096
forever	1098
forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness	1100
frankincense	1102
free, freedom, liberty	1103
free, freedom, liberty	1105
freewill offering	1106
fulfill, fulfilled	1107
Gad	1109
gate, gate bar	1110
gate, gate bar	1111
generation	1112
gift, gifts	1114
glory, glorious	1116
goat, kid	1118
God	1120
god, gods, goddess	1123
godly, godliness	1125
gold	1126
good, goodness	1129
Goshen	1131
grace, gracious	1132
grain	1134
grain offering	1135
guilt, guilty	1136
hand, right hand, to hand over	1138
hard, hardness, harden	1140
harvest	1142
harvest	1144
head	1145
heal, cure	1147
heart, hearts	1149
heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly	1151
Hebrew, Hebrews	1153
high priest	1154
Hittite	1156
Hivite	1157

Table of Contents

holy place	1158
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	1160
holy, holiness	1162
honey, honeycomb	1165
honor, honors, to honor	1166
Horeb	1168
horn, horns	1169
horse	1170
horsemen	1171
house	1172
house of God, Yahweh's house	1174
household	1175
humble, humbles, humbled, humility	1176
idol, idolatrous	1177
image of God, image	1179
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure	1180
incense	1181
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	1182
iniquity, iniquities	1184
innocent	1185
instruct, instruction	1187
Isaac	1188
Israel, Israelites	1190
Israel, Israelites	1193
Issachar	1195
Jacob, Israel	1196
jealous, jealousy	1198
Jebusites, Jebus	1200
Jerusalem	1201
Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus	1203
Jethro, Reuel	1205
Jew, Jewish, Jews	1206
Jewish leaders, Jewish authorities, religious leaders	1207
John (the Baptist)	1209
Joseph (OT)	1210
Joshua	1211
Judah	1213
judge	1214
judge, judges, judgment, judgments	1215
just, justice, justly	1217
king	1219
kingdom	1221
kiss	1223

know, knowledge, make known	1224
labor, laborer	1226
lamb, Lamb of God	1227
lament, laments, lamentation	1229
lamp	1230
lampstand	1231
law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	1233
law, principle	1235
Lebanon	1236
leprosy, leper, leprous	1237
Levite, Levi	1238
life, live, lived, lives, living, alive	1239
light	1241
like, likeness	1243
locust	1245
Lord	1246
lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs	1248
love, loves, loving, loved	1250
Lystra	1253
magic, magician	1254
majesty	1255
manna	1256
marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished	1257
memorial, memorial offering	1258
mercy, merciful	1259
Midian, Midianites	1261
mighty, might	1263
mind	1265
miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs	1267
Moab, Moabite, Moabites	1269
mold	1270
Moses	1271
mourn, mourning	1275
myrrh	1276
name, names, named	1277
Naphtali	1279
nation	1280
Nebuchadnezzar	1282
Negev	1284
neighbor	1285
Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile	1286
oath, swear, swear by	1287
obey, obedient, obedience	1289

Table of Contents

offspring	1291
oil	1292
olive	1294
oppress, oppression, oppressor	1295
ordain	1297
ordinance	1298
ox, oxen	1299
palm	1300
parable, parables	1301
pardon	1302
Passover	1303
peace, peaceful	1305
Pentecost, Festival of Weeks	1307
people group, peoples, the people, a people	1308
people of God, my people	1311
perish, perished, perishing, perishable	1313
Perizzite	1314
persecute, persecution	1315
persevere, perseverance	1317
Pharaoh, king of Egypt	1318
Pharisee, Pharisees	1321
Philistines	1322
pierce	1323
pillar, column	1324
pit	1326
plague	1327
plead, pleading, plea	1328
pledge	1329
possess, possession	1330
power, powers	1332
praise	1334
pray, prayer, prayers, prayed	1336
priest, priests, priesthood	1338
prison, prisoner, imprison	1341
proclaim, proclamation	1342
promise, promises, promised	1343
Promised Land	1345
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1347
prostitute, harlot, whore	1349
proud, pride, prideful	1350
punish, punishment	1352
pure, purify, purification	1354
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose	1356

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose	1358
ransom, ransomed	1360
reap, reaper	1361
receive	1362
reign	1364
rejoice	1365
repent, repents, repented, repentance	1366
rest	1368
resurrection	1370
Reuben	1371
reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation	1372
right hand	1374
righteous, righteousness	1376
robe	1378
rod	1379
Rome, Roman	1380
royal	1381
ruin, ruins	1382
ruler, rule	1383
Sabbath	1384
sacred	1386
sacrifice, offering	1387
Sadducee, Sadducees	1390
salvation	1391
Samaria, Samaritan	1392
sanctuary	1394
Saul (OT)	1396
save, saves, saved, safe	1397
scribe, scribes	1399
Sea of Reeds, Red Sea	1400
seal, to seal	1401
seed, semen	1402
seize	1403
send, send out, sent	1404
serpent, snake, viper	1405
servant, slave, slavery	1406
serve, service	1409
set apart	1411
sheep, ram, ewe	1413
shepherd, to shepherd	1415
sign, signs, proof, reminder	1417
silver	1419
Simeon	1421

Table of Contents

sin offering	1422
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning	1423
Sinai, Mount Sinai	1426
slander, slanderer	1428
sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking	1429
snow	1431
son, sons	1432
sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft	1434
sow, sower, plant	1435
spirit, spirits, spiritual	1437
splendor	1439
staff	1440
stiff-necked, stubborn	1441
stone, stones, stoning	1442
strength, strengthen	1443
Succoth	1445
suffer, suffering	1446
sword	1448
tabernacle	1450
temple	1453
Ten Commandments	1455
tent	1456
tent of meeting	1458
tenth, tithe	1460
terror, terrify	1461
test, tests, tested	1462
testimony, testify	1464
throne	1466
tomb, grave, burial place	1467
transgress, transgresses, transgression	1469
tribe	1470
trouble, troubles, troubled	1471
true, truth, truths	1473
trumpet	1475
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1476
twelve tribes of Israel	1478
uncircumcised, uncircumcision	1479
unholy	1481
unleavened bread	1482
vain, vanity	1484
veil	1485
vineyard	1486
virgin	1487

voice	1488
walk, walks, walked, walking	1489
warrior, soldier	1491
water, waters	1492
wheat	1494
wine, wineskin, new wine	1495
winepress	1496
wise, wisdom	1497
witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses	1499
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures . . .	1501
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures . . .	1503
word, words	1505
works, deeds, work, acts	1507
world, worldly	1509
worship	1511
worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless	1513
wrath, fury	1515
written	1516
wrong, mistreat, hurt	1517
Yahweh	1518
year	1524
yeast, leaven	1525
Zebulun	1527
translationAcademy	1528
Abstract Nouns	1528
Active or Passive	1531
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1538
Biblical Distance	1543
Biblical Money	1546
Biblical Volume	1548
Biblical Weight	1552
Copy or Borrow Words	1555
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1557
Double Negatives	1559
Doublet	1562
Ellipsis	1564
Euphemism	1566
Exclamations	1568
First, Second, or Third Person	1571
Forms of You	1573
Fractions	1575
Generic Noun Phrases	1578
Go and Come	1580

Table of Contents

Hebrew Months	1583
How to Translate Names	1586
Hyperbole and Generalization	1591
Hypothetical Situations	1595
Idiom	1598
Imperatives - Other Uses	1601
Inclusive “We”	1604
Introduction of a New Event	1605
Merism	1609
Metaphor	1611
Metonymy	1620
Numbers	1624
Ordinal Numbers	1628
Parallelism	1631
Personification	1634
Poetry	1636
Predictive Past	1639
Reflexive Pronouns	1641
Rhetorical Question	1644
Simile	1649
Symbolic Action	1652
Synecdoche	1654
Translate Unknowns	1656

translationNotes

Introduction to Exodus

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Exodus

- The Children of Israel (the Hebrews) in Egypt and their preparation for departure (“exodus”) from their slavery (1–12)
 - First genealogy (1:1–6)
 - The account of their bondage in Egypt (1:7–22)
 - Moses’ history to the time of the Exodus (2:1–4:26)
 - The suffering of Israel in Egypt (4:27–6:13)
 - Another genealogy (6:14–27)
 - Moses and Aaron going to Pharaoh (6:28–7:25)
 - The plagues (8:1–11:10)
- Instructions for celebrating the Passover (12:1–30)
- Departing from Egypt and going to Mount Sinai (12:31–18:27)
 - The Passover, preparing to leave Egypt and leaving Egypt (12:31–50 and 13:1–22)
 - Journey from Egypt to Mount Sinai (14:1–18:27)
- Mount Sinai and the Law (19–40)
 - Preparation for the covenant (19:1–25)
 - The Ten Commandments (20:1–17)
 - Description of the covenant (20:18–23:33)
 - The agreement to the covenant by the people and Moses’ return to Mount Sinai (24:1–18)
 - Design of the tabernacle and its equipment, requirements of those who serve in it, and the functions of the Tabernacle (25:1–31:18)
 - The people’s idolatry and Moses’ intercession (32:1–33:22)
 - Second description of the covenant (34:1–35)
 - Construction of the Ark and its furnishings (35:1–38:31), and priestly garments (39:1–43 and 40:1–33)
 - The cloud (40:34–38)

What is the Book of Exodus about?

Exodus appears to be a continuation of the previous book, Genesis. The first half of Exodus is about how Yahweh created a nation out of Abraham’s descendants. This nation, which would be called “Israel,” was meant to live in close relationship to Yahweh. The second half of Exodus describes how the Israelites received the Law of God to guide them in how to live in this way.

The Book of Exodus also includes instructions about how the Israelites were to build the Tabernacle, the tent of worship that they would carry with them through the wilderness. The book also gives instructions as to how the Israelites were to worship Yahweh. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#) and [tabernacle](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

“Exodus” means “exit” or “departure.” Translators may translate this title in a way that can communicate its subject clearly, for example, “About the Israelites Leaving Egypt” or “How the Israelites Left the Land of Egypt.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote the Book of Exodus?

The writers of both the Old and New Testament present Moses as being very involved with writing the book of Exodus.

Why is deliverance or rescue a very important theme in the Book of Exodus?

Deliverance is a very important theme in the Book of Exodus because it shows God as forming the nation of Israel and then as rescuing them from being slaves in Egypt. God then rescues them from the Egyptian army that pursues them, and he leads them to Mount Sinai, where he officially marks them as the one nation on earth that will worship him.

How does the Book of Exodus relate to the fulfillment of the promises given to Abraham?

The Book of Exodus shows God beginning to fulfill his promise that Abraham would have many descendants, and that they would form a large nation. At Mount Sinai, God makes an official covenant with the nation of Israel.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What was the Jewish Passover?

The Jewish Passover was a festival that the Israelites were commanded to celebrate every year in order to remember their people's departure from Egypt. The first Passover meal was eaten in the evening just before they left, and it became part of the covenant requirements that Yahweh gave them at Mount Sinai.

What was the law of Moses to the people of Israel?

The law of Moses was a set of instructions for the people of Israel which told them what Yahweh required them to do in order to participate in his covenant with them. The Law gave instructions for how the people should live in a way that would honor him. It also instructed them about their need to offer animal sacrifices for their sins, and for their need to maintain a right relationship

with Yahweh. The Law gave instructions for how the priests should present the people's worship to Yahweh, and for how they should build the tabernacle, the place of worship that would be the center of Yahweh's presence among them.

What did it mean that Israel was to be a “kingdom of priests and a holy nation?”

Even though most nations in the time of Israel honored many gods, Israel was to worship only Yahweh. This fact was meant to make them very different from the other nations in the world. The entire nation was to honor Yahweh by living according to his standards.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Why are the details of the construction of the tabernacle in Exodus 25–32 repeated in Exodus 35–40?

The first description of the construction of the tabernacle was God's specific instructions to Israel. The details were repeated exactly to show that the people carefully followed God's plan.

Are the events in chronological order?

While most of the events follow a chronological order, not all of the events are in a strict chronological sequence. Translators may have to be careful that they present in translation the unusual time relationships among various parts.

What does it mean that God “lived” among his people?

God is present everywhere in the world, but the Book of Exodus presents him as creating a special relationship with the people of Israel. In this relationship, he promised to lead them and bless them. In return, the people should worship him and honor him sincerely in how they lived.

Exodus 01 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is intended to form a smooth transition with the last chapter of the book of Genesis.

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel's growth

Israel grew in number. This was in fulfillment of the covenant God made with Abraham. It also caused the Egyptians great concern that there would be more Israelites than Egyptians because they would be unable to defend themselves against such a large number of people. Pharaoh also tried to kill all of the male babies so they would not become soldiers who fought against him. (See: [fulfill, fulfilled](#) and [covenant, covenants](#))

End of the famine

It is obvious that some time has passed since the beginning of the famine which brought the Israelites into Egypt. Yahweh appears to be punishing the Hebrews for not returning back to the Promised Land and instead choosing to stay in Egypt. No return attempt is recorded to have been made. (See: [Promised Land](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“All of the descendants of Jacob were seventy in number”

This number included both Jacob's children and grandchildren. It may cause confusion, but it is important to remember Jacob only had 12 sons.

Links:

- [Exodus 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Exodus intro](#)

Exodus 1:1-5**UDB:**

¹ These were the sons of Jacob (they all went to the land of Egypt with Jacob, their father, and with their own households). The sons' names were: ² Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, ³ Issachar, Zebulun, Benjamin, ⁴ Dan, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher. ⁵ In all, there were seventy people who went with Jacob. His son Joseph was already in Egypt.

ULB:

¹ These are the names of the sons of Israel who came into Egypt with Jacob, each with his household: ² Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, ³ Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin, ⁴ Dan, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher. ⁵ All the people who were descendants of Jacob were seventy in number. Joseph was already in Egypt.

translationNotes**household**

This refers to all the people who live in a house together, usually a large family with servants. (See: [Metonymy](#))

seventy

“70” (See: [Numbers](#))

Joseph was already in Egypt

“Joseph lived in Egypt before his brothers”

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [Zebulun](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

- [Dan](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 1 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 1:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ After some time, Joseph and his brothers and everyone else in their family who lived in that generation died. ⁷ But Jacob's descendants gave birth to many children. The number of his descendants grew very large. As a result, there were so many of them that they were everywhere in Egypt.

ULB:

⁶ Then Joseph, all his brothers, and all that generation died. ⁷ The Israelites were fruitful, increased greatly in numbers, and became very strong; the land was filled with them.

translationNotes**all his brothers**

This includes 10 older brothers and 1 younger brother.

were fruitful

The birth of children to the Israelites is spoken of as if they were plants that were producing fruit. AT: "had many children" or "gave birth to many children" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the land was filled with them

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They filled the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

with them

The word "them" refers to the Israelites.

translationWords

- [brother, brothers](#)
- [generation](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 1 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 1:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ However, many years later, a new king began to rule in Egypt. He did not know about all the good things Joseph had done for the people of Egypt long ago. ⁹ He said to his people, "Look at what has happened! The Israelite people have become so many and so powerful that they are dangerous to us! ¹⁰ We must find a way to control them! If we do not do that, there will be more of them. Then, if enemies attack us, the Israelites will join with our enemies and fight against us, and they will escape from our land."

ULB:

⁸ Now then a new king arose over Egypt, one who did not know about Joseph. ⁹ He said to his people, "Look, the Israelites are more numerous and stronger than we are. ¹⁰ Come, let us deal with them wisely, otherwise they will continue to grow in numbers, and if war breaks out, they will join our enemies, fight against us, and leave the land."

translationNotes**arose over Egypt**

Here "Egypt" refers to the people of Egypt. AT: "began to rule over the people of Egypt" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He said to his people

"The king said to his people"

his people

These were the people who lived in Egypt, the Egyptians.

let us

The word "us" is inclusive and refers to the king and his people, the Egyptians. (See: [Inclusive "We"](#))

war breaks out

Here war is spoken of as a person that is able to act. (See: [Personification](#))

leave the land

"leave Egypt"

translationWords

- king
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- Egypt, Egyptian
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- wise, wisdom

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 1 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 1:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ So the king and his leaders put masters over the Israelites to cause them to suffer very much by making them work very hard. They made the Israelite people build two cities to store goods for the king. Those cities were named Pithom and Rameses. ¹² But the more they treated the Israelite people badly, the more the number of Israelites grew, and they became so many that they filled the land. So the Egyptian people began to fear the Israelite people.

ULB:

¹¹ So they put taskmasters over them to oppress them with hard labor. The Israelites built store cities for Pharaoh: Pithom and Rameses. ¹² But the more the Egyptians oppressed them, the more the Israelites increased in numbers and spread. So the Egyptians began to dread the Israelites.

translationNotes**taskmasters**

“slave drivers.” These were Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work.

to oppress them with hard labor

“to force the Israelites to do hard work for the Egyptians”

store cities

These were places where the leaders put food and other important things to keep them safe.

translationWords

- [labor, laborer](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 1 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 1:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ They made the Israelite people work very hard. ¹⁴ Because the Israelites were slaves, their lives were very sad. They had to build many buildings with cement and bricks. They also had to do work in the fields. In making the Israelites do all this work, the Egyptian masters treated them very badly.

ULB:

¹³ The Egyptians made the Israelites work rigorously. ¹⁴ They made their lives bitter with hard service with mortar and brick, and with all kinds of work in the fields. All their required work was hard.

translationNotes**made ... work rigorously**

“made ... work very hard” or “harshly made ... work”

made their lives bitter

The difficult lives of the Israelites are spoken of as if they were bitter food that was difficult to eat. (See: [Metaphor](#))

mortar

This was a wet glue or mud put between bricks or stones that held them together when it dried.

All their required work was hard

“The Egyptians made them work very hard” or “The Egyptians forced them to work very hard”

translationWords

- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 1 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 1:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Now there were two Hebrew midwives. Their names were Shiphrah and Puah. The king of Egypt said to those two women, ¹⁶ “When you help the Hebrew women give birth to their children, if the baby is a boy, you must kill him. If the baby is a girl, you may let her live.” ¹⁷ But the midwives feared that God would punish them if they obeyed the king. So they did not do what the king told them to do. They allowed the baby boys to live.

ULB:

¹⁵ Then the king of Egypt spoke to the Hebrew midwives; the name of the one was Shiphrah, and the other Puah. ¹⁶ He said, “When you assist the Hebrew women on the birthstool, observe when they give birth. If it is a son, then you must kill him; but if it is a daughter, then she may live.” ¹⁷ But the midwives feared God and did not do as the king of Egypt ordered them; instead, they let the baby boys live.

translationNotes**king of Egypt**

The king of Egypt is called Pharaoh.

midwives

These were women who helped a woman give birth to a baby.

Shiphrah ... Puah

These are Hebrew women’s names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

on the birthstool

Women sat on this short stool as they gave birth. Therefore, it is associated with birth. AT: “as they give birth” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 1 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 1:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ So the king called the two midwives and said to them, “Why are you doing this? Why are you letting the baby boys live?” ¹⁹ One of the midwives said to the king, “The Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women. The Hebrew women are very strong. They give birth to their babies before we can get to them to help them.”

ULB:

¹⁸ The king of Egypt summoned the midwives and said to them, “Why have you done this, and let the baby boys live?” ¹⁹ The midwives answered Pharaoh, “The Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women. They are vigorous and have finished giving birth before a midwife comes to them.”

translationNotes**midwives**

These were women who helped a woman give birth to a baby. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:16](#).

Why have you done this, and let the baby boys live?

Pharaoh asked this question to rebuke the midwives for allowing the male children to live. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “You have disobeyed my order by not killing the male babies!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#)).

The Hebrew women are not like the Egyptian women

The midwives answered wisely to appease Pharaoh’s anger.

translationWords

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 1 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 1:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ So God acted kindly toward the midwives, and the Hebrew people became very numerous and strong. ²¹ Because the midwives feared God, God gave them children of their own.

²² Then the king commanded all the Egyptian people, saying, “You must throw into the Nile River every Hebrew baby boy that is born! However, you can allow the baby girls to live.”

ULB:

²⁰ God protected these midwives. The people increased in numbers and became very strong. ²¹ Because the midwives feared God, he gave them families. ²² Pharaoh ordered all his people, “You must throw every son that is born into the river, but every daughter you will let live.”

translationNotes**God protected these midwives**

God kept Pharaoh from killing these midwives.

midwives

These were women who helped a woman give birth to a baby. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:16](#).

The people increased in numbers

“The Israelites increased in numbers”

feared God

“revered God” or “had reverence for God”

he gave them families

“the enabled them to have children”

You must throw every son ... into the river

This order was given in order to drown the male children. The full meaning of this may be made explicit. AT: “You must ... into the river so they will drown” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [God](#)
- [family](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 1 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 02 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Moses' heritage

In the first part of this chapter, Pharaoh's daughter recognizes Moses as being a Hebrew, but in the last part of this chapter, the Midianites believe him to be an Egyptian.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Ironic situations

While Pharaoh tried to diminish the power of the Israelites by killing all of their baby boys, Yahweh used Pharaoh's own daughter to save Moses. Moses was the one who would ultimately be used by Yahweh to deliver Israel.

Links:

- [Exodus 02:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 2:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Now there was a man who was a descendant of Jacob's son Levi. He married a woman who was also a descendant of Levi. ² She became pregnant and gave birth to a baby boy. When she saw that he was a healthy baby, she hid him for three months because she was not willing to do what the king commanded.

ULB:

¹ Now a man of the tribe of Levi married a woman of Levi. ² The woman became pregnant and gave birth to a son. When she saw that he was a healthy boy, she hid him for three months.

translationNotes**Now**

This word is used here to mark a break in the main event. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the narrative. If you have a way of doing this in your language, consider using it here. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

three

“3” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [tribe](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:3-4**UDB:**

³ When she was unable to hide him any longer, she got a basket made from tall reeds. She covered the basket with tar so it would float in water. Then she put the baby in the basket and put the basket in the water. It was at the edge of the Nile River in the middle of the tall reeds. ⁴ His older sister was standing close by, watching to see what would happen to him.

ULB:

³ But when she could no longer hide him, she took a papyrus basket and sealed it with bitumen and pitch. Then she put the child in it and placed it among the reeds in the water along the side of the river. ⁴ His sister stood at a distance to see what would happen to him.

translationNotes**papyrus basket**

This is a basket made from a tall grass that grows by the Nile River in Egypt.

sealed it with bitumen and pitch

You could explicitly state that this was to keep out water. AT: “spread tar on it to keep water from getting into it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

sealed

Here “sealed” means that she applied a waterproof coating.

bitumen

This is a sticky black paste made from petroleum. It can be used to keep out water. AT: “tar” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

pitch

This is a sticky brown or black paste that can be made from tree sap or from petroleum. Therefore, “pitch” would include not only “bitumen” but also plant-based resins. It too can be used to keep out water. AT: “tar” or “resin” (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

reeds

These “reeds” were a type of tall grass that grew in flat, wet areas.

at a distance

This means she stood far enough away so that she would not be noticed, but close enough to see the basket.

translationWords

- seal, to seal

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Soon the king's daughter went down to the river to take a bath. Her female servants walked along the riverbank. She saw the basket in the tall reeds in the river, so she sent one of her servants to get it. ⁶ When the servant brought the basket to her, she opened it, and was surprised to see a baby inside that was crying. She felt sad for him, and said, "This must be a Hebrew baby."

ULB:

⁵ Pharaoh's daughter came down to bathe at the river while her attendants walked along by the riverside. She saw the basket among the reeds and sent her attendant to get it. ⁶ When she opened it, she saw the child. Behold, the baby was crying. She had compassion on him and said, "This is certainly one of the Hebrews' children."

translationNotes**attendants**

"servants"

Behold

The word "behold" signals the surprising information that follows.

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Then the baby's older sister walked up to the king's daughter and said, "Do you want me to go and find a Hebrew woman who will be able to nurse the baby for you?" ⁸ The king's daughter said to her, "Yes, go and find one." So the girl went and found the baby's mother.

ULB:

⁷ Then the baby's sister said to Pharaoh's daughter, "Should I go and find you a Hebrew woman to nurse the child for you?" ⁸ Pharaoh's daughter said to her, "Go." So the young girl went and got the child's mother.

translationNotes**nurse**

"breastfeed"

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ The king's daughter said to the mother, "Please take this baby and nurse him for me. I will pay you for doing that." So the baby's mother took him and nursed him. ¹⁰ Several years later, his mother brought the boy to the king's daughter. She adopted him as though he were her own son. She named him Moses, which sounds like the Hebrew words 'pull out' because she said, "I pulled him out of the water."

ULB:

⁹ Pharaoh's daughter said to the baby's mother, "Take this child and nurse him for me, and I will pay you wages." So the woman took the child and nursed him. ¹⁰ When the child grew older, she brought him to Pharaoh's daughter, and he became her son. She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

translationNotes**she brought him**

"the Hebrew woman brought him"

he became her son

"he became the adopted son of Pharaoh's daughter"

Because I drew him from the water

Translators may add a footnote that says "The name Moses sounds like the Hebrew word that means 'pull.'"

drew him

"pulled him"

translationWords

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- son, sons
- Moses

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ One day, after Moses had grown up, he went out of the palace area to see his people, the Hebrews. He saw how they had to work very hard. He also saw an Egyptian man beating a Hebrew person. ¹² He looked around to see if anyone was watching. Seeing no one, he killed the Egyptian man and buried his body in the sand.

ULB:

¹¹ When Moses had grown up, he went out to his people and observed their hard work. He saw an Egyptian striking a Hebrew, one of his own people. ¹² He looked this way and that way, and when he saw that there was no one there, he killed the Egyptian and hid his body in the sand.

translationNotes**striking**

“hitting” or “beating”

He looked this way and that way

These two opposite directions have the combined meaning of “everywhere.” AT: “He looked all around” (See: [Merism](#))

translationWords

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ The next day he returned to the same place. He was surprised to see two Hebrew men fighting each other. He said to the man who started the fight, “Why are you hitting your fellow Hebrew?”

¹⁴ The man replied, “Who made you our ruler and judge? Are you going to kill me just like you killed that Egyptian man yesterday?” Then Moses was afraid, because he thought, “Since this man knows what I did, other people will know, too.”

ULB:

¹³ He went out the next day, and, behold, two Hebrew men were fighting. He said to the one who was in the wrong, “Why are you hitting your companion?” ¹⁴ But the man said, “Who made you a leader and judge over us? Are you planning to kill me as you killed that Egyptian?” Then Moses became afraid and said, “What I did has certainly become known to others.”

translationNotes**He went out**

“Moses went out”

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Moses was surprised by what he saw. You can use a word in your language that will give this meaning.

the one who was in the wrong

This was a customary way of saying “the one who started the fight.” AT: “the one who was guilty of starting the fight” (See: [Idiom](#))

Who made you a leader and judge over us?

The man used this question to rebuke Moses for intervening in the fight. AT: “You are not our leader and have no right to judge us!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Are you planning to kill me as you killed that Egyptian?

The man used a question here to be sarcastic. AT: “We know that you killed an Egyptian yesterday. You had better not kill me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- fear, fears, afraid
- know, knowledge, make known

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵⁻¹⁶ When the king heard that Moses killed an Egyptian, he ordered his soldiers to kill Moses. But Moses ran away from the king and left Egypt. He traveled east to the region of Midian and started to live there. Now the man who was the priest for the Midian people, whose name was Jethro, had seven daughters. One day as Moses sat down beside a well, the seven daughters came to the well, got water, and filled the troughs in order to give water to their father's sheep. ¹⁷ Some shepherds came and started to chase away the girls. But Moses helped the girls and got water for their sheep.

ULB:

¹⁵ Now when Pharaoh heard about it, he tried to kill Moses. But Moses fled from Pharaoh and stayed in the land of Midian. There he sat down by a well.

¹⁶ Now the priest of Midian had seven daughters. They came, drew water, and filled the troughs to water their father's flock. ¹⁷ The shepherds came and tried to drive them away, but Moses went and helped them. Then he watered their flock.

translationNotes**Now when Pharaoh heard about it**

The word "now" is used here to mark a break in the event. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the incident.

Now the priest of Midian had seven daughters

The word "now" is used here to mark a break in the event. Here the author tells about new people in the narrative.

drew water

This means that they brought up water from a well.

troughs

a long, narrow, open container for animals to eat or drink out of

drive them away

"chase them away"

helped them

“rescued them”

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Midian, Midianites](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ When the girls returned to their father Jethro, who was also called Reuel, he asked them, “How is it that you were able to give water to the sheep and come home so quickly today?” ¹⁹ They replied, “A man from Egypt kept other shepherds from chasing us away. He also got water for us from the well and gave water to the sheep.”

²⁰ He said to his daughters, “Where is he? Why did you leave him out there? Invite him in so that he can have something to eat!”

ULB:

¹⁸ When the girls went to Reuel their father, he said, “Why are you home so early today?” ¹⁹ They said, “An Egyptian rescued us from the shepherds. He even drew water for us and watered the flock.” ²⁰ He said to his daughters, “So where is he? Why did you leave the man? Call him so he can eat a meal with us.”

translationNotes**Why did you leave the man?**

This question is a mild rebuke to the daughters for not inviting Moses into their home according to the normal hospitality of that culture. AT: “You should not have left this man at the well!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [Jethro, Reuel](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:21-22

UDB:

²¹ So they did, and Moses ate with them. Moses decided to live there. Later, Jethro gave Moses his daughter Zipporah to be his wife. ²² Later she gave birth to a son, and Moses named him Gershom, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means “foreigner” because he said, “I am a foreigner living in this land.”

ULB:

²¹ Moses agreed to stay with the man, who also gave him his daughter Zipporah in marriage. ²² She bore a son, and Moses called his name Gershom; he said, “I have been a resident in a foreign land.”

translationNotes

Moses agreed to stay with the man

“Moses agreed to live with Reuel”

Zipporah

This is Reuel’s daughter. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Gershom

This is Moses’s son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

resident in a foreign land

“stranger in a foreign land”

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 2:23-25**UDB:**

²³ Many years later the king of Egypt died. The Israelite people in Egypt were still crying out because of the hard work they had to do as slaves. They called out for someone to help them, and God heard them. ²⁴ When he heard them crying out, he thought about his promise to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. ²⁵ God saw how the Israelite people were being badly treated, and he wanted to help them.

ULB:

²³ A long time later, the king of Egypt died. The Israelites groaned because of the slave labor. They cried out for help, and their pleas went up to God because of their bondage. ²⁴ When God heard their groaning, God called to mind his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob. ²⁵ God saw the Israelites, and he understood their situation.

translationNotes**groaned**

They did this because of their sorrow and misery. AT: “sighed deeply”

their pleas went up to God

The cries of the Israelites are spoken of as if they were a person and were able to travel up to where God is. AT: “God heard their pleas” (See: [Personification](#))

God called to mind his covenant

This was a customary way of saying God thought about what He had promised. AT: “God remembered his covenant” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [king](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [labor, laborer](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 02 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 03 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records one of the most important events in the history of the Israelite people: the revelation of the name Yahweh at the burning bush. (See: [reveal](#), [reveals](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

God's holiness

God is so holy that people could not look upon him without dying. This is why Moses covered his eyes. It is also why he took off his shoes. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Yahweh

The name Yahweh is sacred in the Hebrew religion. It is the personal name of God, which he revealed to Moses. It is by this name, he is known. Yahweh means "I am." Some translations use all capitals to set this apart, "I AM." Great care must be taken in translating the phrase "I am that I am." (See: [Yahweh](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 03:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 3:1-3**UDB:**

¹ One day, Moses took the flock of Jethro his father in law, priest of Midian, to the far side of the wilderness. He came to Mount Horeb, the mountain of God. ² When he was on the mountain, Yahweh appeared as an angel to Moses from inside a burning bush. As Moses looked at the bush, it was not destroyed by the fire. ³ Moses thought, “I will go closer to see this strange sight! Why is the bush not burning up?”

ULB:

¹ Now Moses was still shepherding the flock of Jethro his father-in-law, the priest of Midian. Moses led the flock to the far side of the wilderness and arrived at Horeb, the mountain of God. ² There the angel of Yahweh appeared to him in a flame of fire in a bush. Moses looked, and behold, the bush was burning, but the bush was not burned up. ³ Moses said, “I will turn aside and see this amazing thing, why the bush is not burned up.”

translationNotes**angel of Yahweh**

This was Yahweh himself appearing as an angel, and not just an angel that Yahweh sent. “Yahweh appeared as an angel” .

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Moses saw something that was very different from what he expected.

translationWords

- Moses
- shepherd, to shepherd
- flock, herd
- Jethro, Reuel
- priest, priests, priesthood
- Midian, Midianites

- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Horeb](#)
- [God](#)
- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 3 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 3:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ When Yahweh saw Moses come close to the bush, he called out to Moses, “Moses, Moses!” Moses said to God, “Here I am.” ⁵ God said, “Do not come close to the bush! Because I am God, the ground on which you are standing belongs to me. So take off your sandals to show respect to me.” ⁶ He said, “I am God, the one your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob worshiped.” Moses was afraid that God would kill him if he looked at him, so he turned his head away.

ULB:

⁴ When Yahweh saw that he had turned aside to look, God called to him out of the bush and said, “Moses, Moses.” Moses said, “Here I am.” ⁵ God said, “Do not come any closer! Take off your shoes from your feet, for the place where you are standing is ground that is set apart to me.” ⁶ He added, “I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob.” Then Moses covered his face, for he was afraid to look at God.

translationNotes**set apart**

“made holy”

the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob

All of these men worshiped the same God. AT: “the God of your father, of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob”

your father

Possible meanings are 1) “your ancestor” or 2) “your father.” If it means “your ancestor,” then the phrases following it clarify who “your father” refers to: it refers to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. If it means “your father,” then it refers to Moses’s own father.

translationWords

- set apart
- ancestor, father, forefather
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Jacob, Israel

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 3 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 3:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Then Yahweh said, "I have seen how badly the Egyptians are treating my people in Egypt. I have heard my people shouting in despair because of what the slave drivers are making them do. I know how my people are suffering. ⁸ So I have come down from heaven to rescue them from the Egyptians. I will lead them to a good and large land, a land where they can grow many crops and raise much livestock, where the descendants of Canaan, Heth, Amor, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus live.

ULB:

⁷ Yahweh said, "I have certainly seen the suffering of my people who are in Egypt. I have heard their shouts because of their taskmasters, for I know about their suffering. ⁸ I have come down to free them from the Egyptians' power and to bring them up from that land to a good, large land, to a land flowing with milk and honey; to the region of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites.

translationNotes**taskmasters**

"slave drivers." These were Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

a land flowing with milk and honey

"a land where milk and honey flow." God spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. AT: "a land that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

flowing with

"full of" or "with an abundance of"

milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, this represents food produced by livestock. AT: "food from livestock" (See: [Metonymy](#))

honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, this represents food from crops. AT: "food from crops" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Perizzite](#)
- [Hivite](#)
- [Jebusites, Jebus](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 3 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 3:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Truly I have now heard my Israelite people crying. I have seen how badly the Egyptians treat them. ¹⁰ So I am sending you back to Egypt to the king because you will lead my people, the Israelites, out of Egypt.”

ULB:

⁹ Now the shouts of the people of Israel have come to me. Moreover, I have seen the oppression caused by the Egyptians. ¹⁰ Now then, I will send you to Pharaoh so that you may bring my people, the Israelites, out of Egypt.”

translationNotes**the shouts of the people of Israel have come to me**

Here the word “shouts” are spoken of as if they were persons who are capable of moving on their own. AT: “I have heard the cries of the people of Israel” (See: [Personification](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 3 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 3:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ But Moses said to God, “I am not important enough to go to the king in order to bring your people out of Egypt.” ¹² God said, “I will be with you. When you bring my people out of Egypt, all of you will worship me right here on this mountain. That will prove to you that I am the one who sent you to them.”

ULB:

¹¹ But Moses said to God, “Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh and bring the Israelites from Egypt?” ¹² God replied, “I will certainly be with you. This will be a sign to you that I have sent you. When you have brought the people out of Egypt, you will worship me on this mountain.”

translationNotes**Who am I, that I should go to Pharaoh ... Egypt?**

Moses uses this question to tell God that Moses is a nobody and no one will listen to him. AT: “I am not important enough to go to Pharaoh ... Egypt!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [God](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 3 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 3:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ Moses said to God, "If I go to the Israelite people and say to them, 'God, the one your ancestors worshiped, has sent me to you,' they will ask me, 'What is his name?' Then what should I say to them?" ¹⁴ God replied to Moses, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell the Israelite people that the one named 'I AM' has sent you to them."

¹⁵ God also said to Moses, "You must say to the Israelites, 'Yahweh, the God of your fathers, the God whom Abraham worshiped, whom Isaac worshiped, and whom Jacob worshiped, has sent me to you. Yahweh is my name forever, and this is what all generations should call me.'

ULB:

¹³ Moses said to God, "When I go to the Israelites and tell them, 'The God of your ancestors has sent me to you,' and when they say to me, 'What is his name?' what should I say to them?" ¹⁴ God said to Moses, "I AM THAT I AM." God said, "You must say to the Israelites, 'I AM has sent me to you.'" ¹⁵ God also said to Moses, "You must say to the Israelites, 'Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you. This is my name forever, and this is how I will be kept in mind for all generations.'

translationNotes**God said to Moses, "I AM THAT I AM."**

This is God's response to Moses' question about God's name. This can be made explicit. AT: "God said to Moses, 'Tell them that God says his name is, "I AM THAT I AM."'"

I AM THAT I AM

Possible meanings are 1) this whole sentence is God's name or 2) God is not telling his name but something about himself. By saying this, God is teaching that he is eternal; he has always lived and always will live.

I AM

Languages that do not have an equivalent to the verb "am" may need to render this as "I LIVE" or "I EXIST."

translationWords

- Moses
- God

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [generation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 3 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 3:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ Go to Egypt and gather together the elders. Say to them, 'Yahweh, the God whom Abraham worshiped, whom Isaac worshiped, and whom Jacob worshiped, has appeared to me and said: I have seen what the Egyptian people have done to you. ¹⁷ I promise that I will rescue you from being treated badly in Egypt, and I will take you to the land where the descendants of Canaan, Heth, Amor, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus live. It is a good land where you can grow many crops and raise much livestock.' ¹⁸ The elders will do what you say. Then you and the elders will go to the king of Egypt, and you will say to him, 'Yahweh, whom we Hebrews worship as God, has met with us. So now we ask you to allow us to travel for three days to a place in the wilderness in order that there we may offer sacrifices to Yahweh, our God.'

ULB:

¹⁶ Go and gather the elders of Israel together. Say to them, 'Yahweh, the God of your ancestors, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob, has appeared to me and said, "I have indeed observed you and have seen what has been done to you in Egypt. ¹⁷ I have promised to bring you up from the oppression in Egypt to the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites, a land flowing with milk and honey.'" ¹⁸ They will listen to you. You and the elders of Israel must go to the king of Egypt, and you must tell him, 'Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, has met with us. So now let us go three days' journey into the wilderness, in order that we may sacrifice to Yahweh, our God.'

translationNotes**General Information:**

God continues speaking to Moses.

the God of your ancestors, the God of Abraham, of Isaac, and of Jacob

Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were three of Moses's ancestors. They all worshiped the same God.

I have indeed observed you

The word "you" refers to the people of Israel.

a land flowing with milk and honey

"a land where milk and honey flow." God spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in [Exodus 3:8](#). AT: "a land that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

flowing with

“full of” or “with an abundance of”

milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, this represents food produced by livestock. AT: “food from livestock” (See: [Metonymy](#))

honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, this represents food from crops. AT: “food from crops” (See: [Metonymy](#))

They will listen to you

The word “you” refers to Moses. AT: “The elders will listen to you”

translationWords

- [elder](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Perizzite](#)
- [Jebusites, Jebus](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 3 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 3:19-22**UDB:**

¹⁹ But I know that the king of Egypt will allow you to go only if he sees that he has no other choice. ²⁰ So I will use my power by performing many miracles there. Then he will allow you to leave. ²¹ When this happens, I will cause the people of Egypt to honor the Hebrew people so that when you leave Egypt, they will give you what you need for the journey. ²² At that time, each Hebrew woman will ask for what belongs to the Egyptian women living nearby. The Egyptians will give you all they have—silver and gold jewelry and clothing. You will put these things on your children. In this way, you will take everything from the Egyptians.”

ULB:

¹⁹ But I know that the king of Egypt will not let you go, unless his hand is forced. ²⁰ I will reach out with my hand and attack the Egyptians with all the miracles that I will do among them. After that, he will let you go. ²¹ I will grant this people favor from the Egyptians, so when you leave, you will not go empty-handed. ²² Every woman will ask for silver and gold jewels and for clothing from her Egyptian neighbors and any women staying in her neighbors' houses. You will put them on your sons and daughters. In this way you will plunder the Egyptians.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

God continues speaking to Moses.

unless his hand is forced

This can be stated in active form. The word “hand” is a metonymy for the power of the owner of the hand. Possible meanings are 1) “only if he sees that he has no power to do anything else,” where the “hand” belongs to Pharaoh; where the “hand” belongs to Yahweh, 2) “only if I force him to let you go” or 3) “not even if I force him to let you go.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

I will reach out with my hand and attack

Here “hand” refers to God’s power. AT: “I will powerfully attack” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will not go empty-handed

The word here “empty-handed” is used to emphasize the opposite meaning. AT: “will go with your hands full of good things” or “will go with many valuable things” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

any women staying in her neighbors' houses

“any Egyptian woman staying in the houses of her Egyptian neighbors”

translationWords

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 3 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 04 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Moses does not understand

Although Moses believes in Yahweh, he does not trust in him. This is because Moses lacks understanding. Moses tries to believe the things he is asked to do are done by his own power. Yahweh is trying to get Moses to trust that these are Yahweh's doing. (See: [believe](#), [believes](#), [believed](#), [belief](#) and [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Children of God

This chapter really introduces the concept that the people group Israel is the chosen people of God and God's children, possibly God's firstborn children. (See: [chosen one](#), [chosen ones](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#), [people of God](#), [my people](#) and [firstborn](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart

Scholars are divided over how to understand this statement. There is debate over whether Pharaoh plays an active or passive role in the hardening of his own heart. (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 04:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 4:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Moses said to God, “What should I do if they do not believe me or listen to me? What should I do if they say, ‘Yahweh did not appear to you?’” ² Yahweh said to him, “What is that in your hand?” Moses answered, “A staff.” ³ Yahweh said, “Throw it down on the ground!” So, Moses threw the staff on the ground and it became a snake, and Moses ran away from it.

ULB:

¹ Moses answered, “But what if they do not believe me or listen to me but say instead, ‘Yahweh has not appeared to you?’” ² Yahweh said to him, “What is that in your hand?” Moses said, “A staff.” ³ Yahweh said, “Throw it on the ground.” Moses threw it on the ground, and it became a snake. Moses ran back from it.

translationNotes**if they do not believe**

“if the Israelites do not believe”

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [believe, believes, believed, belief](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [staff](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ But Yahweh said to Moses, “Pick up the snake by its tail.” So Moses picked up the snake by the tail, and it became a staff in his hand again.

⁵ Yahweh said, “Do the same thing in front of the Israelite people in order that they may believe that I, Yahweh, the God whom Abraham worshiped, whom Isaac worshiped, and whom Jacob worshiped, truly appeared to you.”

ULB:

⁴ Yahweh said to Moses, “Reach out and take it by the tail.” So he reached out and took hold of the snake. It became a staff in his hand again. ⁵ “This is so they may believe that Yahweh, the God of their ancestors, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has appeared to you.”

translationNotes**take it by the tail**

“pick it up by the tail” or “grasp it by the tail”

became a staff

“turned into a rod” or “changed into a staff”

the God of their ancestors, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob

Abraham, Isaac and Jacob were three of their ancestors. They all worshiped the same God.

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Yahweh said to Moses, “Put your hand in your robe.” Moses put his hand in his robe. When he brought his hand out, it had a disease that made the skin look white as snow. ⁷ Then Yahweh said, “Put your hand in your robe again.” Moses put his hand back inside his robe. This time when he brought it out, the disease was healed, and it looked like his other hand.

ULB:

⁶ Yahweh also said to him, “Now put your hand inside your robe.” So Moses put his hand inside his robe. When he brought it out, behold, his hand was leprous, as white as snow. ⁷ Yahweh said, “Put your hand inside your robe again.” So Moses put his hand inside his robe, and when he brought it out, he saw that it was made healthy again, like the rest of his flesh.

translationNotes**behold**

This word is used to create an exclamation, showing surprise. (See: [Exclamations](#))

as white as snow

The word “as” here is used to compare what Moses’ hand looked like. Leprosy causes the skin to look white. You may not have a word for snow in your language. If so, consider an alternative that describes something white. AT: “as white as wool or as white as the sand on the beach” (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [robe](#)
- [leprosy, leper, leprous](#)
- [snow](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Yahweh said, "You can do that in front of the Israelite people, too. If they do not believe you or listen to you after seeing the first miracle, they will believe you when you perform the second miracle. ⁹ But if they do not believe you or listen to what you say even after you show them these two miracles, get some water from the Nile River and pour it on the dry ground. When you do that, the water that you pour on the dry ground will become blood."

ULB:

⁸ Yahweh said, "If they do not believe you—if they do not pay attention to the first sign of my power or believe in it, then they will believe the second sign. ⁹ If they do not believe even these two signs of my power, or listen to you, then take some water from the river and pour it on the dry land. The water that you take will become blood on the dry land."

translationNotes**pay attention**

"acknowledge" or "accept"

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [believe, believes, believed, belief](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [power, powers](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:10-13**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then Moses said to Yahweh, “Oh Lord, I have never been good at speaking to people. I am still that way even after you began talking to me. I speak slowly and never know what to say.” ¹¹ Then Yahweh said to him, “Who made a man’s mouth? Who is it who makes a man able to speak, hear, see, or not see? Is it not I, Yahweh? ¹² So now go, and I will help you speak, and I will tell you what to say.” ¹³ But Moses replied, “Oh Lord, I ask you, please send someone else in my place!”

ULB:

¹⁰ Then Moses said to Yahweh, “Lord, I have never been eloquent, neither in the past nor since you spoke to your servant. I am slow of speech and slow of tongue.” ¹¹ Yahweh said to him, “Who is it who made man’s mouth? Who makes a man mute or deaf or seeing or blind? Is it not I, Yahweh? ¹² So now go, and I will be with your mouth and teach you what to say.” ¹³ But Moses said, “Lord, please send anyone else, anyone whom you wish to send.”

translationNotes**eloquent**

“an excellent speaker”

I am slow of speech and slow of tongue

The phrases “slow of speech” and “slow of tongue” mean basically the same thing. Moses uses them to emphasize that he is not a good speaker. (See: [Doublet](#))

slow of tongue

Here “tongue” refers to Moses’ ability to speak. AT: “unable to speak well” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Who is it who made man’s mouth?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the Creator who makes if possible for people to speak. AT: “I Yahweh am the one who created the human mouth and the ability to speak!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Who makes a man mute or deaf or seeing or blind?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he is the one who decides if people can speak and hear, and if they can see. AT: “I Yahweh make people able to speak, or hear, or to see, or to be blind!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Is it not I, Yahweh?

Yahweh uses this question to emphasize that he alone makes these decisions. AT: “I, Yahweh, am the one who does this!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

I will be with your mouth

Here “mouth” refers to Moses’ ability to speak. AT: “I will give you the ability to speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:14-17**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then Yahweh became angry with Moses and said to him, "What about Aaron, your brother, the Levite? He is a good speaker. He is on his way here right now, and he will be very happy to see you. ¹⁵ You can talk to him and tell him what to say. I will tell you both what you should do. ¹⁶ He will speak for you to the Israelite people. He will be your spokesman, and he will think of you as if you were me. ¹⁷ Be sure to take with you the staff that is in your hand because you will perform miracles with it."

ULB:

¹⁴ Then Yahweh became angry with Moses. He said, "What about Aaron, your brother, the Levite? I know that he can speak well. Moreover, he is coming to meet you, and when he sees you, he will be glad in his heart. ¹⁵ You will speak to him and put the words to say into his mouth. I will be with your mouth and with his mouth, and I will show you both what to do. ¹⁶ He will speak to the people for you. He will be your mouth, and you will be to him like me, God. ¹⁷ You will take in your hand this staff. With it you will do the signs."

translationNotes**he will be glad in his heart**

Here "heart" refers to inner thoughts and emotions. AT: "he will be very happy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

put the words to say into his mouth

Words here are spoken of as if they were something that can be physically placed in a person's mouth. AT: "give him the message that he is to repeat" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will be with your mouth

The word "mouth" here represents Moses choice of words. AT: "I will give you the right words to speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

with his mouth

The word "mouth" here represents Aaron's choice of words. AT: "I will give him the right words to speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

He will be your mouth

The word "mouth" here represents Aaron repeating what Moses told him. AT: "He will say what you tell him to say" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you will be to him like me, God

The word “like” here means Moses would represent the same authority to Aaron as God did to Moses. AT: “you will speak to Aaron with the same authority with which I spoke to you” (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [God](#)
- [staff](#)
- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:18-20**UDB:**

¹⁸ Moses went back to his father-in-law, Jethro, and said to him, “Let me go back to my people in Egypt to see if they are still alive.” Jethro said to Moses, “Go, and may God give you peace.”

¹⁹ Yahweh said to Moses in Midian, “Go back to Egypt, for the men who were looking for you are now dead.” ²⁰ So Moses took his wife and sons and set them on a donkey and walked back to Egypt, and he took the staff in his hand as God had told him to do.

ULB:

¹⁸ So Moses went back to Jethro his father-in-law and said to him, “Let me go so I may return to my relatives who are in Egypt and see if they are still alive.” Jethro said to Moses, “Go in peace.”

¹⁹ Yahweh said to Moses in Midian, “Go, return to Egypt, for all the men who were trying to take your life are dead.” ²⁰ Moses took his wife and his sons and put them on a donkey. He returned to the land of Egypt, and he took the staff of God in his hand.

translationNotes**father-in-law**

This refers to the father of Moses’ wife.

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Jethro, Reuel](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Midian, Midianites](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [staff](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ Yahweh said to Moses, "When you return to Egypt, be sure to do all the miracles that I have given you power to do in front of the king. But I will make him reject you, and he will not let the Israelite people leave Egypt. ²² Then say to him, 'This is what Yahweh says: Israel is like my first born son, ²³ and I say to you, "Let my son go, so that he may worship me." But you did not let my son go and because of this, I will kill your firstborn son!"

ULB:

²¹ Yahweh said to Moses, "When you go back to Egypt, see that you do before Pharaoh all the wonders that I have put in your power. But I will harden his heart, and he will not let the people go. ²² You must say to Pharaoh, 'This is what Yahweh says: Israel is my son, my firstborn, ²³ and I say to you, "Let my son go, so he may worship me." But since you have refused to let him go, I will certainly kill your son, your firstborn."

translationNotes**will harden his heart**

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. AT: "will cause Pharaoh to be stubborn" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Israel is my son

The word "Israel" here represents all the people of Israel. AT: "The people of Israel are my own children" (See: [Metonymy](#))

is my son, my firstborn

Here the people of Israel are spoken of as if they were a firstborn son who causes joy and pride. AT: "is like my own firstborn son" (See: [Metaphor](#))

you have refused to let him go

The word "him" refers to the people of Israel as God's son. AT: "you have refused to let my son go" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will certainly kill your son, your firstborn

The word "son" here refers to the actual son of Pharaoh.

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son, sons](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:24-26**UDB:**

²⁴ One night, as they were on the way to Egypt, Yahweh appeared to Moses in order to kill him. ²⁵ Then Moses' wife, Zipporah, took a knife and cut off the foreskin of their firstborn son. Then she touched the foreskin to Moses' feet and said, "You are a bridegroom of blood to me." ²⁶ Yahweh did not kill Moses. Zipporah said, "You are a bridegroom of blood to me" because of the circumcision.

ULB:

²⁴ Now on the way, when they stopped for the night, Yahweh met Moses and tried to kill him. ²⁵ Then Zipporah took a flint knife and cut off the foreskin of her son, and touched it to his feet. Then she said, "Surely you are a bridegroom to me by blood." ²⁶ So Yahweh let him alone. She said, "You are a bridegroom of blood" because of the circumcision.

translationNotes**Yahweh met Moses and tried to kill him**

This may have been because Moses had not circumcised his son.

Zipporah

This is the name of Moses's wife. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

flint knife

This was a knife with a sharpened stone blade.

to his feet

It is possible that the word "feet" here may have been a more respectful way to refer to the genital area of the body. (See: [Euphemism](#))

you are a bridegroom to me by blood

The meaning of this metaphor is unclear. It was probably a known saying in that culture. AT: "you are related to me by this blood" or "you are my husband because of blood" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [blood](#)
- [circumcise, circumcised, circumcision](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Meanwhile, Yahweh said to Aaron, “Go into the desert to meet Moses.” So Aaron went and met Moses at the mountain of God and kissed him on the cheek. ²⁸ Moses told Aaron everything that Yahweh had said to him and all the miracles that he had instructed him to do.

ULB:

²⁷ Yahweh said to Aaron, “Go into the wilderness to meet Moses.” Aaron went, met him at the mountain of God, and kissed him. ²⁸ Moses told Aaron all the words of Yahweh that he had sent him to say and about all the signs of Yahweh’s power that he had commanded him to do.

translationNotes**Yahweh said to Aaron**

You may want to add a word that marks the beginning of a new part of the story, as the UDB does.

at the mountain of God

This may have been the mountain at Sinai, but the text does not include that information.

he had sent him to say

The word “he” refers to Yahweh, and “him” refers to Moses.

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [kiss](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 4:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ So Aaron and Moses went and gathered together all of the elders of the Israelites. ³⁰ Aaron told them everything that Yahweh had told Moses, and Moses performed all the miracles as the people watched. ³¹ The Israelites believed Aaron and Moses. When they heard that Yahweh had seen how the Israelite people were being badly treated and that he was going to help them, they bowed down and worshiped him.

ULB:

²⁹ Then Moses and Aaron went and gathered together all the elders of the Israelites. ³⁰ Aaron spoke all the words that Yahweh had spoken to Moses. He also displayed the signs of Yahweh's power in the sight of the people. ³¹ The people believed. When they heard that Yahweh had observed the Israelites and that he had seen their oppression, then they bowed their heads and worshiped him.

translationNotes**in the sight of the people**

“before the people” or “in the presence of the people”

had observed the Israelites

“saw the Israelites” or “was concerned about the Israelites”

they bowed their heads

Possible meanings are 1) “they bowed their heads in awe” or 2) “they bowed down low in reverence.” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

translationWords

- [elder](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [believe, believes, believed, belief](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 05 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

A slave's work

The Egyptians were known for making their slaves do a lot of work. They were forced to make a specific number of bricks every day. In this chapter, they were required to not only make these bricks, but also to gather the straw in order to make these bricks.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“Let my people go”

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

Titles

The leaders are given different titles in this chapter. The ULB uses “taskmasters” and “foreman.” Many cultures will not have these types of titles. Generic words like “Egyptian leaders” and “Hebrew leader” may be necessary. The translator has freedom to adapt these titles as needed.

Links:

- [Exodus 05:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 5:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then Moses and Aaron went to the king. They said to him, “Yahweh God, whom we Israelite people worship, says this to you: ‘Let my people go to the desert in order that they may have a festival to honor me!’” ² But the king said, “Yahweh is no one important. I do not need to pay attention to what he says, or let the Israelite people go. I do not know this Yahweh! Furthermore, I will not let the Israelite people go!”

ULB:

¹ After these things happened, Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh and said, “This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: ‘Let my people go, so they can have a festival for me in the wilderness.’” ² Pharaoh said, “Who is Yahweh? Why should I listen to his voice and let Israel go? I do not know Yahweh; moreover, I will not let Israel go.”

translationNotes**After these things happened**

It is unclear how long Moses and Aaron waited until they went to see Pharaoh.

festival for me

This is a celebration to worship Yahweh.

Who is Yahweh?

Pharaoh uses this question to show that he does not recognize Yahweh as a legitimate god. AT: “I do not know Yahweh” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why should I ... let Israel go?

Pharaoh uses this question to state that he has no interest in obeying Yahweh or in letting the Israelites go to worship him. AT: “He is nothing to me and I will not let Israel go!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

listen to his voice

The words “his voice” represent the words God spoke. AT: “listen to what he says” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [festival](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [voice](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 05 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 5 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 5:3-5

UDB:

³ Moses and Aaron replied, “Yahweh God, the one we Hebrews worship, has revealed himself to us and told us what to tell you. So we ask you to let us go for three days into the wilderness. We must offer sacrifices to Yahweh God there. If we do not do that, he will cause us to die from diseases or from attacks by our enemies.” ⁴ But the king of Egypt said to them, “Moses and Aaron, why are you preventing the Israelite people from working? Tell those slaves to return to work!” ⁵ The king also said, “Listen to me! You people who now live in this land are more numerous than we Egyptians. Why are you stopping them from working?”

ULB:

³ They said, “The God of the Hebrews has met with us. Let us go on a three-day journey into the wilderness and sacrifice to Yahweh our God so that he does not attack us with plague or with the sword.” ⁴ But the king of Egypt said to them, “Moses and Aaron, why are you taking the people from their work? Go back to your work.” ⁵ He also said, “There are now many Hebrew people in our land, and you are making them stop their work.”

translationNotes

God of the Hebrews

This is a term also used for the Israelites’ God or Yahweh.

or with the sword

Here “sword” represents war or an attack by enemies. AT: “or cause our enemies to attack us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

why are you taking the people from their work?

Pharaoh uses this question to express his anger towards Moses and Aaron for taking the Israelites away from their work. AT: “stop distracting the people from doing their work!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [plague](#)
- [sword](#)

- [king](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 05 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 5 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 5:6-9**UDB:**

⁶ That same day the king commanded the Egyptian slave bosses and the Israelite assistants who directed the slaves, ⁷ "Do not continue to give straw to Israelite people for making bricks. Make them go into the fields and gather straw for themselves. ⁸ However, still force them to make the same number of bricks that they did before. Do not lower the number at all. They do not want to work. That is the reason they are asking me to let them go into the wilderness to worship their god. ⁹ Make the men work harder so that they will not have time to listen to lies from their leaders!"

ULB:

⁶ On that same day, Pharaoh gave a command to the people's taskmasters and foremen. He said, ⁷ "Unlike before, you must no longer give the people straw to make bricks. Let them go and gather straw for themselves. ⁸ However, you must still demand from them the same number of bricks as they made before. Do not accept any fewer, because they are lazy. That is why they are calling out and saying, 'Allow us to go and sacrifice to our God.' ⁹ Increase the workload for the men so that they keep at it and pay no more attention to deceptive words."

translationNotes**taskmasters**

"slave drivers" These were Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

you must no longer give

The word "you" in these verses is plural and refers to the taskmasters and foremen. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [word, words](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 05 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 5 translationQuestions

Exodus 5:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ So the slave bosses and Israelite assistants went to where the Israelite people were and said to them, "The king has said that he will no longer give you any straw. ¹¹ So you must go and get straw where you can find it. But you must keep working to make the same number of bricks."

ULB:

¹⁰ So the people's taskmasters and foremen went out and informed the people. They said, "This is what Pharaoh says: 'I will no longer give you any straw. ¹¹ You yourselves must go and get straw wherever you can find it, but your workload will not be reduced.'"

translationNotes**taskmasters**

"slave drivers." These were Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

I will no longer give you any straw ... get straw wherever you can find it

The word "you" in these verses is plural and refers to the Israelite people. (See: [Forms of You](#))

You yourselves must go

Here "yourselves" emphasizes that the Egyptians will no longer help them. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

your workload will not be reduced

This can be stated in positive form. AT: "you must continue to make the same number of bricks as before"

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 05 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 5 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 5:12-14**UDB:**

¹² So the Israelite people went all over Egypt to find straw. ¹³ The slave bosses kept telling them, “Do all the work you are assigned each day. Make the same number of bricks as you did before when we gave you straw!” ¹⁴ When they were not able to make enough bricks, the slave bosses working for Pharaoh beat the Israelite assistants with sticks. They asked them, “Why have all the men you are in charge of not been able to make the same number of bricks today as they did before?”

ULB:

¹² So the people scattered throughout all the land of Egypt to gather stubble for straw. ¹³ The taskmasters kept urging them and saying, “Finish your work, just as when straw was given to you.” ¹⁴ Pharaoh’s taskmasters beat the Israelite foremen, those same men whom they had put in charge of the workers. The taskmasters kept asking them, “Why have you not produced all the bricks required of you, either yesterday and today, as you used to do in the past?”

translationNotes**throughout all the land of Egypt**

This is an generalization used to show the extra effort Israel made to meet Pharaoh’s demands. AT: “to many places throughout Egypt” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

stubble

the part of a plant that is left over after harvest

taskmasters

“slave drivers” These were Egyptians whose job was to force the Israelites to do hard work. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

Why have you not produced all the bricks required of you ... in the past?

The taskmasters used this question to show they were angry with the lack of bricks. AT: “You are not producing enough bricks, either yesterday or today, as you did in the past!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 05 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 5 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 5:15-18**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then the Israelite assistants went to the king and cried out, "Your Majesty, why are you treating us this way? ¹⁶ Now they are not giving us any straw for making bricks, but they keep telling us to make more bricks. And they beat us. But it is because of your own slave bosses that we cannot make as many bricks as before!" ¹⁷ But the king said, "You are lazy and do not want to work! That is why you keep saying, 'Allow us to go to the desert to worship Yahweh.'" ¹⁸ So get back to work! We are not going to give you any straw, but you must keep making the same number of bricks!"

ULB:

¹⁵ So the Israelite foremen came to Pharaoh and cried out to him. They said, "Why are you treating your servants this way? ¹⁶ No straw is being given to your servants anymore, but they are still telling us, 'Make bricks!' We, your servants, are even beaten now, but it is the fault of your own people." ¹⁷ But Pharaoh said, "You are lazy! You are lazy! You say, 'Allow us to go sacrifice to Yahweh.'" ¹⁸ So now go back to work. No more straw will be given to you, but you must still make the same number of bricks."

translationNotes**cried out**

"complained"

they are still telling us, 'Make bricks!'

Here "they" refers to the Egyptian taskmasters.

translationWords

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- servant, slave, slavery
- sacrifice, offering
- Yahweh

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 05 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 5 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 5:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ The Israelite assistants knew that they were having a bad time because they had been told, “We are not going to lower the number of bricks you must make each day.” ²⁰ As they left the king’s palace, they met Aaron and Moses, who were waiting for them there. ²¹ They said to Aaron and Moses, “May Yahweh see what you two have done! May he punish you because you have caused the king and his officials to hate us! You have given them a reason to kill us!”

ULB:

¹⁹ The Israelite foremen saw that they were in trouble when they were told, “You must not reduce the daily number of bricks.” ²⁰ They met Moses and Aaron, who were standing outside the palace, as they went away from Pharaoh. ²¹ They said to Moses and Aaron, “May Yahweh look at you and punish you, because you have made us offensive in the sight of Pharaoh and his servants. You have put a sword in their hand to kill us.”

translationNotes**when they were told**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “when Pharaoh told them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

palace

This is a very large house that a king lives in.

you have made us offensive

The Egyptians responded to the Israelites the same way they would respond to a foul odor. AT: “you have caused them to hate us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

have put a sword in their hand to kill us

Here “a sword” represents an opportunity to destroy enemies. AT: “have given them a reason to kill us” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 05 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 5 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 5:22-23**UDB:**

²² Moses left them and prayed to Yahweh again, saying, "O Yahweh, why have you caused all these evil things to happen to your people? And why did you send me here? ²³ Ever since I went to the king and told him what you told me to say, he has treated your people very badly, and you have not done anything to help them!"

ULB:

²² Moses went back to Yahweh and said, "Lord, why have you caused trouble for this people? Why did you send me in the first place? ²³ Ever since I came to Pharaoh to speak to him in your name, he has caused trouble for this people, and you have not set your people free at all."

translationNotes**Lord, why have you caused trouble for this people?**

This question shows how disappointed he was that the Egyptians were treating the Israelites even more harshly now. AT: "Lord, I am sorry that you have caused this trouble for this people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why did you send me in the first place?

This question shows how disappointed Moses was that God had sent him to Egypt. AT: "I wish you had never sent me here!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to speak to him in your name

The word "name" here represents the message of God. AT: "to give him your message" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 05 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 5 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 06 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Promised Land

According to the covenant Yahweh made with Abraham, Egypt is not the home of the Hebrew people. It is the Promised Land in Canaan. The people are to return home to their land. (See: [covenant, covenants](#) and [Promised Land](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Let my people go

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

Links:

- [Exodus 06:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 6:1**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Now you will see what I will do to the king and his people. I will make him let my people go. In fact, by my power I will force him to chase them from his land!”

ULB:

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Now you will see what I will do to Pharaoh. You will see this, for he will let them go because of my strong hand. Because of my strong hand, he will drive them out of his land.”

translationNotes**my strong hand**

The word “hand” here represents God’s actions or works. AT: “the power I show in my works” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:2-5**UDB:**

² God also said to Moses, "I am Yahweh. ³ I am the one who appeared to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob and told them that I was God Almighty, but I did not tell them that my name was Yahweh. ⁴ I also made my covenant with them, promising to give them the land of Canaan. That was the land in which they were living as foreigners. ⁵ Furthermore, I have heard the Israelite people groan because of the hard work that the Egyptians have been making them do as their slaves. I have thought about the covenant that I made.

ULB:

² God spoke to Moses and said to him, "I am Yahweh. ³ I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob as God Almighty; but by my name, Yahweh, I was not known to them. ⁴ I also established my covenant with them, in order to give them the land of Canaan, the land where they lived as non-citizens, the land in which they wandered about. ⁵ Moreover, I have heard the groaning of the Israelites whom the Egyptians have enslaved, and I have called to mind my covenant.

translationNotes**I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob**

"I showed myself to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob"

I was not known to them

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They did not know me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

groaning

This means making sad sounds because of pain and suffering.

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Almighty](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)

- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [enslave, in bondage](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ So tell the Israelite people that I said this: 'I am Yahweh. I will free you from the burdens of heavy work that the Egyptians have forced upon you. I will free you from being their slaves. With my great power and by punishing them very harshly, I will save you. ⁷ I will cause you to become my own people, and I will be your God, the one you worship. You will truly know that I am Yahweh God, the one who has freed you from the burdens of work as slaves of the Egyptians.

ULB:

⁶ Therefore, say to the Israelites, 'I am Yahweh. I will bring you out from slavery under the Egyptians, and I will free you from their power. I will rescue you with a display of my power, and with mighty acts of judgment. ⁷ I will take you to myself as my people, and I will be your God. You will know that I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out from slavery under the Egyptians.

translationNotes**say to the Israelites**

This is a command from Yahweh to Moses. AT: "Yahweh told Moses to say to the Israelites."

translationWords

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ I will bring you to the land that I swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. You will live in it forever. I, Yahweh, am promising this.”

⁹ Moses told that to the Israelite people, but they did not believe what he said. They were very sad because of the hard work they were made to do as slaves.

ULB:

⁸ I will bring you into the land that I swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. I will give it to you as a possession. I am Yahweh.” ⁹ When Moses told this to the Israelites, they would not listen to him because of their discouragement about their harsh slavery.

translationNotes**I swore**

“I promised” or “I said I would”

translationWords

- [oath, swear, swear by](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:10-13**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then Yahweh said to Moses, ¹¹ “Go and tell the king of Egypt again that he must allow the Israelite people to leave his land!” ¹² But Moses said to Yahweh, “Please listen to me. Even the Israelite people have not paid attention to what I told them. I am a poor speaker. So why should the king pay attention to what I tell him?” ¹³ But Yahweh spoke to Aaron and Moses, “Tell the Israelite people and the king of Egypt that I have called you two to lead the Israelite people out of Egypt.”

ULB:

¹⁰ So Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ¹¹ “Go tell Pharaoh, king of Egypt, to let the people of Israel go from his land.” ¹² Moses said to Yahweh, “If the Israelites have not listened to me, why will Pharaoh listen to me, since I am not good at speaking?” ¹³ Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron. He gave them a command for the Israelites and for Pharaoh, king of Egypt, to bring the Israelites out of the land of Egypt.

translationNotes**If the Israelites have not listened to me, why will Pharaoh listen to me, since I am not good at speaking?**

Moses asked this question hoping God would change His mind about using Moses. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “Since the Israelites did not listen to me, neither will Pharaoh, because I am not good at speaking!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [king](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Now here is a list of the ancestors of Moses and Aaron.

The sons of Reuben, who was Jacob's oldest son, were: Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Carmi. They were ancestors of the clans that have those same names.

¹⁵ The sons of Simeon were: Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul. Shaul's mother was a woman from the land of Canaan. They also were ancestors of clans that have those same names.

ULB:

¹⁴ These were the heads of their fathers' houses: The sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel, were Hanok, Pallu, Hezron, and Karmi. These were the clan ancestors of Reuben. ¹⁵ The sons of Simeon were Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jakin, Zohar, and Shaul—the son of a Canaanite woman. These were the clan ancestors of Simeon.

translationNotes**the heads of their fathers' houses**

Here "heads" refers to the original ancestors of the clan. AT: "the ancestors of the clans"

Hanok ... Shaul

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [head](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [house](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [clan](#)
- [Simeon](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:16-19**UDB:**

¹⁶ These are the names of the sons of Levi, in the order in which they were born: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. Levi was 137 years old when he died.

¹⁷ The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei. They were ancestors of clans that have those names.

¹⁸ The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. Kohath was 133 years old when he died.

¹⁹ The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. All these were the ancestors of the clans that descended from Levi, in the order in which his sons were born.

ULB:

¹⁶ Here are listed the names of the sons of Levi, together with their descendants. They were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. Levi lived until he was 137 years old. ¹⁷ The sons of Gershon were Libni and Shimei. ¹⁸ The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel. Kohath lived until he was 133 years old. ¹⁹ The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. These became the clan ancestors of the Levites, together with their descendants.

translationNotes**Gershon ... Merari**

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

137 years old

“one hundred and thirty-seven years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Amram ... Uzziel

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

133 years old

“one hundred and thirty-three years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [name, names, named](#)
- [son, sons](#)

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Amram married his father's sister, Jochebed. She was the mother of Aaron and Moses. Amram was 137 years old when he died.

²¹ The sons of Izhar were Korah, Nepheg, and Zichri.

²² The sons of Uzziel were Mishael, Elzaphan, and Sithri.

ULB:

²⁰ Amram married Jochebed, his father's sister. She bore him Aaron and Moses. Amram lived 137 years and then died. ²¹ The sons of Izhar were Korah, Nepheg, and Zichri. ²² The sons of Uzziel were Mishael, Elzaphan, and Sithri.

translationNotes**137 years**

“one hundred and thirty-seven years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Izhar ... Korah ... Zichri

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Uzziel ... Mishael ... Sithri

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [death, die, dead](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:23-25**UDB:**

²³ Aaron married Elisheba. She was the daughter of Amminadab and sister of Nahshon. Elisheba gave birth to four sons, Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.

²⁴ The sons of Korah were Assir, Elkanah, and Abiasaph. They were the ancestors of the Korahite people.

²⁵ Aaron's son Eleazar married one of the daughters of Putiel, and she gave birth to Phinehas. That ends the list of the families and clans that were descended from Levi.

ULB:

²³ Aaron married Elisheba, daughter of Amminadab, sister of Nahshon. She bore him Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar. ²⁴ The sons of Korah were Assir, Elkanah, and Abiasaph. These were the clan ancestors of the Korahites. ²⁵ Eleazar, Aaron's son, married one of the daughters of Putiel. She bore him Phinehas. These were the heads of the fathers' houses among the Levites, together with their descendants.

translationNotes**Nadab ... Ithamar**

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Phinehas

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

These were the heads of the fathers' houses

The word "heads" here represents family leaders. AT: "These were the leaders of the families" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Aaron and Moses were the ones to whom Yahweh said, “Lead all the tribes of the Israelite people out of Egypt.” ²⁷ They were the ones who spoke to the king of Egypt in order to bring the Israelite people out of Egypt.

ULB:

²⁶ These two men were the Aaron and Moses to whom Yahweh said, “Bring out the Israelites from the land of Egypt, by their groups of fighting men.” ²⁷ Aaron and Moses spoke to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, to allow them bring out the Israelites from Egypt. These were the same Moses and Aaron.

translationNotes**by their groups of fighting men**

“one tribe at a time” or “one family group after another”

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 6:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ On the day that Yahweh spoke to Moses in Egypt, ²⁹ he said, “I am Yahweh. You must tell the king everything that I say to you.” ³⁰ But Moses said to Yahweh, “Please listen to me. I am not a good speaker. So why should the king listen to what I tell him?”

ULB:

²⁸ When Yahweh spoke to Moses in the land of Egypt, ²⁹ he said to him, “I am Yahweh. Say to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, everything that I will tell you.” ³⁰ But Moses said to Yahweh, “I am not good at speaking, so why will Pharaoh listen to me?”

translationNotes**I am not good ... why will Pharaoh listen to me?**

Moses asks this question hoping to change God’s mind. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “I am not good ... Pharaoh will certainly not listen to me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 07 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Miracles

When Yahweh had Moses perform miracles, Pharaoh's men were able to replicate these miracles. It is unknown how they were able to do this, but since it was not from Yahweh, they were probably done under some evil power. (See: [miracle](#), [miracles](#), [wonder](#), [wonders](#), [sign](#), [signs](#) and [evil](#), [wicked](#), [wickedness](#))

Pharaoh's hard heart

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Let my people go

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to "let go" of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

Links:

- [Exodus 07:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 7:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Listen to me. I will cause the king to see you as a god, and Aaron will be like a prophet because he will speak for you. ² You must tell everything I command you to your older brother Aaron, and he will tell it all to the king. He must tell the king to let the Israelite people leave his land.

ULB:

¹ Yahweh said to Moses, "See, I have made you like a god to Pharaoh. Aaron your brother will be your prophet. ² You will say everything that I command you to say. Aaron your brother will speak to Pharaoh so that he will let the people of Israel go from his land.

translationNotes**I have made you like a god**

"I will cause Pharaoh to consider you as a god"

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [God](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:3-5**UDB:**

³ But I will make the king stubborn. Because of this, even though I will do many kinds of miracles here in Egypt, ⁴ the king will not believe what you say. Then I will punish the people of Egypt very severely, and I will lead the tribes of my Israelite people out of Egypt. ⁵ Then, when I show my great power to the Egyptian people and bring the Israelite people out from among them, they will know that I am Yahweh, the all-powerful God.”

ULB:

³ But I will harden Pharaoh’s heart, and I will display many signs of my power, many wonders, in the land of Egypt. ⁴ But Pharaoh will not listen to you, so I will put my hand on Egypt and bring out my groups of fighting men, my people, the descendants of Israel, out of the land of Egypt by great acts of punishment. ⁵ The Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh when I reach out with my hand on Egypt and bring out the Israelites from among them.”

translationNotes**harden Pharaoh’s heart**

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this in [Exodus 4:21](#). AT: “will cause Pharaoh to be stubborn” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

many signs ... many wonders

The words “signs” and “wonders” mean basically the same thing. God uses them to emphasize the greatness of what he will do in Egypt. (See: [Doublet](#))

put my hand on ... reach out with my hand on

The words “my hand” represent God’s great power. AT: “use my power against ... show my powerful acts against” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- heart, hearts
- sign, signs, proof, reminder
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs
- Egypt, Egyptian

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Aaron and Moses did everything that Yahweh told them to do. ⁷ At that time, Moses was 80 years old, and Aaron was 83 years old.

ULB:

⁶ Moses and Aaron did so; they did just as Yahweh commanded them. ⁷ Moses was eighty years old, and Aaron eighty-three years old when they spoke to Pharaoh.

translationNotes**Aaron eighty-three years old**

“Aaron was eighty-three years old” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:8-10

UDB:

⁸ Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, ⁹ “If the king says to you, ‘Show me that God sent you by performing a miracle,’ then say to Aaron, ‘Throw your staff down in front of the king in order that it may become a snake.’” ¹⁰ So Aaron and Moses went to the king and did what Yahweh told them to do. Aaron threw his staff down in front of the king and his officials, and it became a snake.

ULB:

⁸ Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron, ⁹ “When Pharaoh says to you, ‘Do a miracle,’ then you will say to Aaron, ‘Take your staff and throw it down before Pharaoh, so that it may become a snake.’” ¹⁰ Then Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh, and they did just as Yahweh had commanded. Aaron threw down his staff before Pharaoh and his servants, and it became a snake.

translationNotes

When Pharaoh says to you, ‘Do a miracle,’ then you will say to Aaron, ‘Take your staff and throw it down before Pharaoh, so that it may become a snake.’

This could be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “When Pharaoh tells you to do a miracle, then you will tell Aaron to take his staff and throw it down before Pharaoh, so that it may become a snake” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)
- [staff](#)
- [serpent, snake, viper](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ Then the king called his sorcerers and men who did magic. They did the same thing, using their magic. ¹² They all threw down their staffs, and the staffs became snakes. But Aaron's staff, which had become a snake, swallowed up all their snakes! ¹³ But the king continued to be stubborn, just as Yahweh had said he would, and he would not believe what Aaron and Moses said.

ULB:

¹¹ Then Pharaoh also called for his wise men and sorcerers. They did the same thing by their magic. ¹² Each man threw down his staff, and the staffs became snakes. But Aaron's staff swallowed up their snakes. ¹³ Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he did not listen, just as Yahweh had foretold.

translationNotes**swallowed up**

“ate up” or “devoured”

Pharaoh's heart was hardened

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. AT: “Pharaoh became more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft](#)
- [magic, magician](#)
- [staff](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "The king is very stubborn. He refuses to allow my people to go. ¹⁵ So tomorrow morning, go to him as he is going down to the Nile River to bathe. Wait for him on the riverbank. When he comes out of the water, show him the staff, the one that had become a snake.

ULB:

¹⁴ Yahweh said to Moses, "Pharaoh's heart is hard, and he refuses to let the people go. ¹⁵ Go to Pharaoh in the morning when he goes out to the water. Stand on the riverbank to meet him, and take in your hand the staff that had turned into a snake.

translationNotes**Pharaoh's heart is hard**

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#). AT: "Pharaoh is stubborn" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

when he goes out to the water

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "when he goes down to the Nile River to bathe" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [water, waters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ Say to him, 'Yahweh God, the one we Hebrews worship, sent me to you to tell you to let my people go in order that they may worship him in the desert. We told you that, but you have not listened to us. ¹⁷ So now Yahweh says this: "This is the way you will know that I am Yahweh, the all-powerful God. I am going to strike the water that is in the Nile River with the staff that is in my hand. When I do that, the water will become blood. ¹⁸ Then the fish in the Nile River will die, and the water in the river will smell bad. The Egyptians will not be able to drink water from the river.'"

ULB:

¹⁶ Say to him, 'Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, has sent me to you to say, "Let my people go, so that they may worship me in the wilderness. Until now you have not listened." ¹⁷ Yahweh says this: "By this you will know that I am Yahweh. I am going to strike the water of the Nile River with the staff that is in my hand, and the river will be turned to blood. ¹⁸ The fish that are in the river will die, and the river will stink. The Egyptians will not be able to drink water from the river.'"

translationNotes**Say to him**

"Say to Pharaoh"

strike the water

"hit the water"

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [worship](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile](#)
- [blood](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)

- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:19**UDB:**

¹⁹ Yahweh said to Moses, “When you are talking to the king, say to Aaron, ‘Hold your staff out as though you were holding it over all the water in Egypt—over the rivers, the canals, the ponds, and over the pools of water, in order that all of it may become blood.’ When Aaron does that, there will be blood throughout Egypt, even in wooden jars and in stone jars.”

ULB:

¹⁹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Say to Aaron, ‘Take your staff and reach out with your hand over the waters of Egypt, and over their rivers, streams, pools, and all their ponds, so that their water may become blood. Do this so that there will be blood throughout all the land of Egypt, even in containers of wood and stone.’”

translationNotes**throughout all**

“in every part of”

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ So Aaron and Moses did what Yahweh told them to do. As the king and his officials were watching, Aaron lifted up his staff and then struck the water in the Nile River with it. All the water in the river turned to blood. ²¹ Then all the fish died. The water smelled bad, with the result that the Egyptians could not drink water from the river. Everywhere in Egypt the water became red like blood. ²² But the Egyptian men who did magic did the same thing using their magic. So the king remained stubborn, and he would not listen to what Aaron and Moses said, just as Yahweh said would happen.

ULB:

²⁰ Moses and Aaron did as Yahweh commanded. Aaron raised the staff and struck the water in the river, in the sight of Pharaoh and his servants. All the water in the river turned to blood. ²¹ The fish in the river died, and the river began to stink. The Egyptians could not drink water from the river, and the blood was everywhere in the land of Egypt. ²² But the magicians of Egypt did the same thing with their magic. So Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he refused to listen to Moses and Aaron, just as Yahweh had said would happen.

translationNotes**Pharaoh's heart was hardened**

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#). AT: "Pharaoh became more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

in the river

The name of the river may be made explicit. AT: "in the Nile River" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [magic, magician](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 7:23-25**UDB:**

²³ Then the king turned and went back to his palace, and he did not think any more about it. ²⁴ All the Egyptians dug into the ground near the Nile River to get water to drink because they could not drink the water from the river.

²⁵ Then one week passed after Yahweh turned the water in the Nile River into blood.

ULB:

²³ Then Pharaoh turned and went into his house. He did not even pay attention to this. ²⁴ All the Egyptians dug around the river for water to drink, but they could not drink the water of the river itself. ²⁵ Seven days passed after Yahweh had attacked the river.

translationNotes**All the Egyptians**

The word “all” here is a generalization that means “many.” AT: “Many of the Egyptians” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [house](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 08 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Pharaoh's hard heart

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Let my people go

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to "let go" of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

Links:

- [Exodus 08:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 8:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go back to the king and tell him, 'Yahweh says that you must let my people go in order that they can worship me in the desert. ² But if you do not let them go, I will punish you by sending frogs to cover your country. ³ Not only will the Nile River be full of frogs, but also the frogs will come up out of the river into your house. They will come into your bedroom and onto your bed. They will be in the houses of your leaders and all the rest of your people. They will even get into your ovens and your pans for mixing the materials for baking bread. ⁴ The frogs will jump up on you, your officials, and on all the rest of your people.'"

ULB:

¹ Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, "Go to Pharaoh and tell him, 'Yahweh says this: "Let my people go so that they may worship me. ² If you refuse to let them go, I will afflict all your country with frogs. ³ The river will swarm with frogs. They will come up and go into your house, your bedroom, and your bed. They will go into your servants' houses. They will go onto your people, into your ovens, and into your kneading bowls. ⁴ The frogs will attack you, your people, and all your servants.'"

translationNotes**The river**

"the Nile River" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

kneading bowls

These are bowls in which bread is made.

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [worship](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 8 translationQuestions

Exodus 8:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Then the king called Moses and said, “Ask Yahweh to take away these frogs from me and my people. After that happens, I will allow your people to go to worship Yahweh.” ⁹ Moses said to the king, “I will be glad to pray for you, for your officials, and for the rest of your people. I will ask Yahweh to get rid of the frogs from all your houses. The only frogs left will be those in the Nile River. Just tell me when I should pray.”

ULB:

⁸ Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron and said, “Pray to Yahweh for him to take away the frogs from me and my people. Then I will let the people go, that they may sacrifice to him.” ⁹ Moses said to Pharaoh, “You can have the privilege of telling me when I should pray for you, your servants, and your people, so that the frogs may be removed from you and your houses and stay only in the river.”

translationNotes**Then Pharaoh called for Moses and Aaron**

“Then Pharaoh sent for Moses and Aaron”

You can have the privilege of telling me when I should pray for you

“You can choose when I will pray for you” or “You can choose the time I should pray for you”

translationWords

- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed
- sacrifice, offering

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 8 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 8:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ Yahweh did just what Moses asked him to do. As a result, all the frogs in the houses, in their courtyards, and in their fields died. ¹⁴ The people gathered together all the dead frogs into big piles, and the land smelled very bad. ¹⁵ But when the king saw that the problem was ended, he became stubborn again. Just as Yahweh had said would happen, the king did not do what Aaron and Moses told him.

ULB:

¹³ Yahweh did as Moses asked: The frogs died in the houses, courts, and fields. ¹⁴ The people gathered them together in heaps, and the land stank. ¹⁵ But when Pharaoh saw that there was relief, he hardened his heart and did not listen to Moses and Aaron, just as Yahweh had said that he would do.

translationNotes**he hardened his heart**

“Pharaoh hardened his heart.” Here “hardened” means that he became stubborn. (See: [Idiom](#))

just as Yahweh had said that he would do

“just as Yahweh had said Pharaoh would do”

translationWords

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 8 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 8:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ The men who worked magic tried to cause gnats to appear, but they could not do it. So the gnats stayed on the people and on their animals. ¹⁹ The men who worked magic said to the king, “It is God who has done this with his power!” But the king continued to be stubborn, and he would not pay attention to what Aaron and Moses said, just as Yahweh had said.

ULB:

¹⁸ The magicians tried with their magic to produce gnats, but they could not. There were gnats on man and beast. ¹⁹ Then the magicians said to Pharaoh, “This is the finger of God.” But Pharaoh’s heart was hardened, so he refused to listen to them. It was just as Yahweh had said Pharaoh would do.

translationNotes**This is the finger of God**

The words “finger of God” represent the power of God. AT: “This is the powerful work of God” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Pharaoh’s heart was hardened

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#). AT: “Pharaoh became more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [magic, magician](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 8 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 8:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Get up early tomorrow morning. Go down to the river and wait for the king. When he comes to bathe, say to him, ‘This is what Yahweh says to you: ’Let my people go, in order that they may worship me in the desert. ²¹ I warn you that if you do not let my people go, I will send swarms of flies to you. They will come on you, on your officials, and on the rest of your people. The houses of all you Egyptians will be full of flies. They will even cover the ground on which you will be standing.

ULB:

²⁰ Yahweh said to Moses, “Get up early in the morning and stand in front of Pharaoh as he goes out to the river. Say to him, ‘Yahweh says this: ’Let my people go so that they may worship me. ²¹ But if you do not let my people go, I will send swarms of flies on you, your servants, and your people, and into your houses. The Egyptians’ houses will be full of swarms of flies, and even the ground on which they stand will be full of flies.

translationNotes**stand in front of Pharaoh**

“present yourself to Pharaoh”

Let my people go

“set my people free”

translationWords

- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 8 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 8:22-24**UDB:**

²² But when that happens, I will treat the region of Goshen differently, because my people live there. There will be no swarms of flies there. In that way, you will know that I, Yahweh, am doing these things here in this land. ²³ I will show you how I act toward my people and how I act toward your people. This miracle is going to happen tomorrow;”

²⁴ Early the next morning, Moses told that to the king, but the king would not listen. So Yahweh did what he said he would do. He sent great swarms of flies into the palace of the king and into the houses of his officials. The whole country of Egypt was ruined by the flies.

ULB:

²² But on that day I will treat the land of Goshen differently, the land in which my people are living, so that no swarms of flies will be there. This will happen so that you may know that I am Yahweh in the midst of this land. ²³ I will make a distinction between my people and your people. This sign of my power will take place tomorrow.” ²⁴ Yahweh did so, and thick swarms of flies came into Pharaoh’s house and into his servants’ houses. Throughout the whole land of Egypt, the land was ruined because of the swarms of flies.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Pharaoh through Moses.

the land was ruined because of the swarms of flies

This can be translated in active form. AT: “the swarms of flies devastated the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Goshen](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)

- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 8 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 8:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Then the king called Aaron and Moses and said, “You Israelite people can go and worship your god, but you must do it here in this land.” ²⁶ But Moses replied, “It would not be right for us to do that because we will offer sacrifices that are very offensive to the Egyptian people. If we offer sacrifices that the Egyptian people do not like, they will kill us by throwing stones at us! ²⁷ We need to travel for three days into the wilderness. There we will offer sacrifices to Yahweh, the God we worship, just as he commands us.”

ULB:

²⁵ Pharaoh called for Moses and for Aaron and said, “Go, sacrifice to your God in our own land.” ²⁶ Moses said, “It is not right for us to do so, for the sacrifices we make to Yahweh our God are something disgusting to the Egyptians. If we make sacrifices right before their eyes that are disgusting to the Egyptians, will they not stone us? ²⁷ No, it is a three days’ journey into the wilderness that we must make, in order to sacrifice to Yahweh our God, as he commands us.”

translationNotes**right before their eyes**

This was a customary way of saying “in the presence of someone.” AT: “in their presence” (See: [Idiom](#))

will they not stone us?

Moses asks this question to show Pharaoh the Egyptians would allow the Israelites to worship Yahweh. AT: “they will certainly stone us!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 8 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 8:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ So the king said, “I will let your people go to offer sacrifices to Yahweh, your god, in the desert. But you must not go very far. Now pray for me!” ²⁹ Moses said, “Listen to me! After I leave you, I will pray to Yahweh, asking that tomorrow he will cause the swarms of flies to leave you, your officials, and the rest of your people. But do not lie to us again by refusing to let our people go to offer sacrifices to Yahweh!”

ULB:

²⁸ Pharaoh said, “I will allow you to go and sacrifice to Yahweh your God in the wilderness. Only you must not go very far away. Pray for me.” ²⁹ Moses said, “As soon as I go out from you, I will pray to Yahweh that the swarms of flies may leave you, Pharaoh, and your servants and people tomorrow. But you must not deal deceitfully any more by not letting our people go to sacrifice to Yahweh.”

translationNotes**you must not deal deceitfully any more by not letting our people go**

This can be stated in positive form. AT: “you must begin to deal truthfully with us and let our people go” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

But you must not deal deceitfully

“But you must not deceive us” or “But you must not lie to us”

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 8 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 8:30-32**UDB:**

³⁰ Then Moses left the king and prayed to Yahweh. ³¹ Yahweh did what Moses asked. He got rid of the swarms of flies from around the king, his officials, and the rest of his people. No flies remained. ³² But the king was stubborn this time also, and he did not allow the Israelite people to go.

ULB:

³⁰ Moses went out from Pharaoh and prayed to Yahweh. ³¹ Yahweh did as Moses asked; and he removed the swarms of flies from Pharaoh, his servants, and his people. Not one remained. ³² But Pharaoh hardened his heart this time also, and he did not let the people go.

translationNotes**Pharaoh hardened his heart**

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#). AT: “Pharaoh became more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 08 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 8 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 09 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Pharaoh's hard heart

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Let my people go

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to "let go" of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

Links:

- [Exodus 09:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 9:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Go to the king and say to him, ‘This is what Yahweh, the one we Hebrews worship, says: “Allow my people to go, in order that they may worship me.” ² If you still refuse to let them go, ³ I warn you that I will punish you with my power by sending a terrible disease on all your livestock to make them sick and die—on your horses, on your donkeys, on your camels, on your cattle, and on your flocks of sheep and goats. ⁴ But I, Yahweh, will not treat the livestock that belongs to the Israelite people the same as yours. You will see that none of the livestock that belongs to the Israelite people will die.”

ULB:

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Go to Pharaoh and tell him, ‘Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, says this: “Let my people go so that they may worship me.” ² But if you refuse to let them go, if you still keep them back, ³ then Yahweh’s hand will be on your cattle in the fields and on the horses, donkeys, camels, herds, and flocks, and it will cause a terrible disease. ⁴ Yahweh will treat Israel’s cattle and Egypt’s cattle differently and no animal that belongs to the Israelites will die.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues talking with Moses about dealing with Pharaoh and bringing the Hebrew people out of Egypt.

if you refuse to let them go, if you still keep them back

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. They will emphasize to Pharaoh what will happen if Pharaoh does this. AT: “if you continue refusing to let them go” (See: [Parallelism](#))

then Yahweh’s hand will be on your cattle

The word “hand” here represents Yahweh’s power to afflict their animals with disease. AT: “then the power of Yahweh will afflict your cattle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

on your cattle

The word “your” here refers to all the people of Egypt who owned cattle.

Israel’s cattle

Here “Israel” refers to the people of Israel. AT: “the cattle belonging to the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Egypt's cattle

Here “Egypt” refers to the people of Egypt. AT: “the cattle belonging to the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [God](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [worship](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [horse](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [camel](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Tell Pharaoh that I will do this thing in the land tomorrow.“”

⁶ The next day Yahweh did what he said that he would do. A terrible disease came upon all of the Egyptians' livestock, and all of the livestock died. But none of the Israelite livestock died. ⁷ The king sent men to look at what happened, and they were surprised to see that none of the Israelite animals had died. But after they told that to the king, he continued to be stubborn, and he did not let the Israelite people go.

ULB:

⁵ Yahweh has fixed a time; he has said, “It is tomorrow that I will do this thing in the land.”” ⁶ Yahweh did this the next day: All the cattle of Egypt died, but none of the Israelites' animals died, not one animal. ⁷ Pharaoh investigated, and, behold, not even one animal of the Israelites died. But his heart was stubborn, so he did not let the people go.

translationNotes**fixed a time**

“set a time” or “appointed a time”

All the cattle of Egypt died

This is exaggerated to emphasize the seriousness of the event. There were still some animals alive that were afflicted by later plagues. However, it may be best to translate this with the word “All.” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

cattle of Egypt

Here “Egypt” refers to the people of Egypt. AT: “the cattle belonging to the people of Egypt” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Pharaoh investigated

Pharaoh collected facts about the situation.

behold

The word “behold” here shows that Pharaoh was surprised by what he saw.

his heart was stubborn

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. AT: “he refused to change his mind” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ Then Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses, "Take a few handfuls of ashes from a furnace. Moses will throw them up into the air in front of the king. ⁹ The ashes will spread all over the country of Egypt like fine dust. Everywhere in the land, the ashes will cause boils to be upon both the Egyptian people and their animals." ¹⁰ So they got some ashes and went and stood in front of the king. Moses threw the ashes up into the air. The ashes spread all over, causing boils to be upon both the Egyptian people and their animals. All the boils became open sores.

ULB:

⁸ Then Yahweh said to Moses and to Aaron, "Take some handfuls of ashes from a kiln. You, Moses, must throw the ashes up into the air while Pharaoh is watching. ⁹ They will become fine dust over all the land of Egypt. They will cause blisters and sores to break out on people and animals throughout all the land of Egypt." ¹⁰ So Moses and Aaron took ashes from a kiln and stood in front of Pharaoh. Then Moses threw the ashes up into the air. The ashes caused blisters and sores to break out on people and animals.

translationNotes**kiln**

a furnace

fine

"very small"

to break out on

"to quickly appear on"

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:11-12

UDB:

¹¹ Even the men who worked magic had boils. Because of this, they were not able to face Moses because the men who worked magic had boils just like all the rest of the Egyptian people. ¹² But Yahweh caused the king to continue to be stubborn. He did not pay any attention to what Moses and Aaron said, just as Yahweh had told Moses would happen.

ULB:

¹¹ The magicians could not resist Moses because of the blisters, because the blisters were on them and on all the other Egyptians. ¹² Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart, so Pharaoh did not listen to Moses and Aaron. This was just as Yahweh had said to Moses that Pharaoh would do.

translationNotes

Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 7:13](#). AT: "Yahweh caused Pharaoh to become more defiant"(See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [magic, magician](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Aaron](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up early tomorrow morning. Go and stand in front of the king and tell him that Yahweh God, the one whom the Hebrew people worship, says this: 'Let my people go in order that they may worship me in the wilderness. ¹⁴ If you do not let them go, this time I will punish with disasters, not only your officials and the rest of your people, but also you yourself in order that you might know there is no god like me anywhere in the world.

ULB:

¹³ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Get up early in the morning, stand in front of Pharaoh, and say to him, 'Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, says this: "Let my people go so that they may worship me. ¹⁴ For this time I will send all my plagues on you yourself, on your servants and your people. I will do this so that you may know that there is no one like me in all the earth.

translationNotes**on you yourself**

This means that even Pharaoh will be hurt by the plagues. (See: [Reflexive Pronouns](#))

I will do this so that you may know

The word "this" refers to the plagues that Moses had just told Pharaoh about.

translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- God
- Hebrew, Hebrews
- people of God, my people
- worship
- send, send out, sent
- plague
- servant, slave, slavery
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- earth, earthly

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ By this time I could have used my power to strike you and your people with terrible diseases that would have killed you all. ¹⁶ But I have let you live. The reason I have let you live is to show you my power so that people all over the earth will know how great I am. ¹⁷ You are still acting proudly and refusing to let my people go.

ULB:

¹⁵ By now I could have reached out with my hand and attacked you and your people with disease, and you would have been eradicated from the land. ¹⁶ But it was for this reason I allowed you to survive: In order to show you my power, so that my name may be proclaimed throughout all the earth. ¹⁷ You are still lifting yourself up against my people by not letting them go.

translationNotes**reached out with my hand and attacked you**

Here “my hand” refers to God’s power. AT: “used my power to strike you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

so that my name may be proclaimed throughout all the earth

Here “my name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. AT: “so that people everywhere will know I am great” (See: [Metonymy](#))

lifting yourself up against my people

Pharaoh’s opposition to letting Israel go to worship Yahweh is spoken of as if he was raising himself up as a barrier to them. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ So listen to this: About this time tomorrow I will cause large balls of ice to fall in Egypt. From the time Egypt first became a nation, there has never been an ice storm as bad as this one will be. ¹⁹ So you should send a message to all people to put under shelter their cattle and everything else that they own that is out in the fields. The ice will fall on every person and every animal that is out in the fields and that is not brought under a shelter, and they will all die.” So Moses did what Yahweh said.

ULB:

¹⁸ Listen! Tomorrow about this time I will bring a very strong hail storm, such as has not been seen in Egypt since the day it was begun until now. ¹⁹ Now then, send men and gather your cattle and everything you have in the fields to a safe place. Every man and animal that is in the field and is not brought home—the hail will come down on them, and they will die.“”

translationNotes**Listen!**

“Pay attention to the important thing I am about to tell you”

translationWords

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Then the king sent someone to summon Aaron and Moses. He said to them, "This time I admit that I have sinned. What Yahweh has done is right, and what I and my people have done is wrong. ²⁸ Pray to Yahweh! We cannot take any more of this thunder and ice! I will let your people go; they do not have to stay in Egypt any longer."

ULB:

²⁷ Then Pharaoh sent men to summon Moses and Aaron. He said to them, "I have sinned this time. Yahweh is righteous, and I and my people are wicked. ²⁸ Pray to Yahweh, because the mighty thunderbolts and hail are too much. I will let you go, and you will stay here no longer."

translationNotes**summon**

"call"

translationWords

- Pharaoh, king of Egypt
- Moses
- Aaron
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning
- Yahweh
- righteous, righteousness
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ Moses replied, "As soon as I go out of this city, I will lift up my hands and pray to Yahweh. Then the thunder will cease, and no more ice will fall. This will happen in order that you will know that Yahweh, not your gods, controls everything that happens on the earth. ³⁰ But as for you and your officials, I know that you do not yet fear Yahweh God."

ULB:

²⁹ Moses said to him, "As soon as I leave the city, I will spread my hands out to Yahweh. The thunder will stop, and there will not be any more hail. In this way you will know that the earth belongs to Yahweh. ³⁰ But as for you and your servants, I know that you do not yet really honor Yahweh God."

translationNotes**Moses said to him**

"Moses said to Pharaoh"

spread my hands out to Yahweh

This symbolic gesture accompanies prayer. AT: "lift up my hands and pray to Yahweh" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

honor Yahweh God

Honoring God involves obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:31-33**UDB:**

³¹ When the ice fell, the flax was ruined because the blossoms were forming, and the barley was ruined because its grain was ripe. ³² But none of the wheat was ruined, because its shoots were still very small.

³³ So Moses left the king and went outside the city. He lifted up his hands toward Yahweh and prayed. Then the thunder and the ice storm stopped, and the rain also stopped falling on the land of Egypt.

ULB:

³¹ Now the flax and the barley were ruined, for the barley was maturing in the ear, and the flax was in bloom. ³² But the wheat and the spelt were not harmed because they were later crops. ³³ When Moses had left Pharaoh and the city, he spread out his hands to Yahweh; the thunder and hail stopped, and the rain came down no more.

translationNotes**flax**

This is a plant that produces fibers that can be made into linen cloth.

barley

This is a type of grain used for making bread; also used for cattle feed.

spelt

This is a kind of wheat.

spread out his hands to Yahweh

This symbolic gesture accompanies prayer. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 9:29](#). AT: “lifted up his hands toward Yahweh and prayed” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

translationWords

- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [wheat](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 9:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ But when the king saw that the rain, the ice storm, and the thunder had stopped, he sinned again. He and his officials continued to be stubborn. ³⁵ So, just as Yahweh had predicted by what he told Moses, the king did not allow the Israelite people to leave.

ULB:

³⁴ When Pharaoh saw that the rain, hail, and thunder had ceased, he sinned again and hardened his heart, together with his servants. ³⁵ Pharaoh's heart was hardened, so he did not let the people of Israel go. This was the way that Yahweh had said to Moses that Pharaoh would act.

translationNotes**hardened his heart**

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. AT: "became more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Pharaoh's heart was hardened

Here "heart" refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this in [Exodus 7:13](#). AT: "Pharaoh became more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 09 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Pharaoh's hard heart

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Let my people go

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to "let go" of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people.

Links:

- [Exodus 10:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 10:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to the king again. I have made him and his officials stubborn. I have done so in order that I may have a good reason to do all these miracles among them. ² I have also done so in order that you would be able to tell your children and your grandchildren how I caused the Egyptians to act very foolishly when I performed all these miracles. Then all of you will know that I am Yahweh God."

ULB:

¹ Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to Pharaoh, for I have hardened his heart and the hearts of his servants. I have done this to show these signs of my power among them. ² I have also done this so that you may tell your children and grandchildren the things I have done, how I have harshly treated Egypt, and how I have given various signs of my power among them. In this way you will know that I am Yahweh."

translationNotes**for I have hardened his heart and the hearts of his servants**

Yahweh speaks of making Pharaoh and his servants stubborn as if he were making their hearts hard. See how you translated "Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart" in [Exodus 9:12](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

various

"many different"

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:3-4**UDB:**

³ So Aaron and Moses went to the king and said to him, "Yahweh God, the one whom we Hebrews worship, says this, 'How long will you stubbornly refuse to do what I tell you? Let my people go in order that they may worship me in the wilderness!' ⁴ If you do not let them go, I warn you that tomorrow I will bring locusts into your country.

ULB:

³ So Moses and Aaron went to Pharaoh and said to him, "Yahweh, the God of the Hebrews, says this: 'How long will you refuse to humble yourself before me? Let my people go so that they may worship me.' ⁴ But if you refuse to let my people go, listen, tomorrow I will bring locusts into your land.

translationNotes**listen**

This word adds emphasis to what is said next. AT: "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you" (See: [Imperatives - Other Uses](#))

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [God](#)
- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [worship](#)
- [locust](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ They will cover the ground so that you will not even be able to see it. They will eat everything that the ice storm did not destroy. They will eat everything that is left on the trees that is still growing. ⁶ They will fill your houses and the houses of all your officials and of all the rest of the Egyptians. There will be more locusts than you or your parents or your grandparents have ever seen from the time your ancestors first came to this land until now!” Then Moses, along with Aaron, turned and left the king.

ULB:

⁵ They will cover the surface of the ground so that no one will be able to see the earth. They will eat the remains of whatever escaped from the hail. They will also eat every tree that grows for you in the fields. ⁶ They will fill your houses, those of all your servants, and those of all the Egyptians—something neither your father nor your grandfather ever saw, nothing ever seen since the day that they were on the earth to this present day.” Then Moses left and went out from Pharaoh.

translationNotes**hail**

Hail is raindrops that freeze while falling from the clouds.

nothing ever seen

This can be stated in active form. AT: “nothing anyone has ever seen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ The king's officials said to him, "How long is this man going to bring bad things upon us? Let the Israelites go in order that they may worship Yahweh, their god. Do you not yet understand that this man has ruined Egypt?" ⁸ So they brought Aaron and Moses back to the king. He said to them, "All right, you can go and worship Yahweh, your god. But who are the ones who will go?"

ULB:

⁷ Pharaoh's servants said to him, "How long will this man be a menace to us? Let the Israelites go so that they may worship Yahweh their God. Do you not yet realize that Egypt is destroyed?" ⁸ Moses and Aaron were brought again to Pharaoh, who said to them, "Go worship Yahweh your God. But what people will go?"

translationNotes**menace**

A "menace" is someone who brings trouble or harm.

How long will this man be a menace to us?

Pharaoh's servants ask this question to show Pharaoh the extent of destruction in Egypt. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "We cannot allow this man to continue to bring trouble to us!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Do you not yet realize that Egypt is destroyed?

Pharaoh's servants ask this question to bring Pharaoh to recognize what he refuses to see. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should realize that Egypt is destroyed!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

that Egypt is destroyed

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that these plagues have destroyed Egypt" or "that their God has destroyed Egypt" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Moses replied, “We all need to go, everyone, including those who are young and those who are old. We need to take our sons, our daughters, and our flocks of sheep, goats, and herds of livestock because we must have a festival to honor Yahweh.”

¹⁰ So the king replied, “I never want Yahweh to help you, and I myself will never let you take your children and your wives with you! It is clear that you are planning not to return. ¹¹ So, no, I will not let you all go. The Israelite men may go and worship Yahweh if that is what you want.” Then the king drove Moses and Aaron from his palace.

ULB:

⁹ Moses said, “We will go with our young and with our old, with our sons and our daughters. We will go with our flocks and herds, for we must hold a festival for Yahweh.” ¹⁰ Pharaoh said to them, “May Yahweh indeed be with you, if I ever let you go and your little ones go. Look, you have some evil in mind. ¹¹ No! Go, just the men among you, and worship Yahweh, for that is what you want.” Then Moses and Aaron were driven out from Pharaoh’s presence.

translationNotes**if I ever let you go and your little ones go**

Pharaoh says this to emphasize that he would not let Moses take the children with them to worship Yahweh. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Then Moses and Aaron were driven out from Pharaoh’s presence

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Then Pharaoh drove Moses and Aaron out from his presence” or “Then Pharaoh had his servants drive Moses and Aaron out from his presence” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [festival](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [mind](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ The locusts swarmed all over Egypt. The swarm of locusts was larger than any that had ever been seen in Egypt, and there will never be a swarm of locusts like that again in the land. ¹⁵ They covered the surface of the ground and made it appear black. They ate all the plants in the land and everything on the trees that had not been destroyed by the ice storm. Nothing that was green was left on any plant or on any tree anywhere in Egypt.

ULB:

¹⁴ The locusts went through all the land of Egypt and infested all parts of it. Never before had there been such a swarm of locusts in the land, and nothing like this will come after it. ¹⁵ They covered the surface of the whole land so that it was darkened. They ate every plant in the land and all the fruit of the trees that the hail had left. Throughout all the land of Egypt, no living green plant remained, nor any tree or plant in the fields.

translationNotes**so that it was darkened**

There were so many locusts that the land appeared to be dark. This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that they darkened the land” or “so that the land appeared dark” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [locust](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ The king quickly called Aaron and Moses and said, "I have sinned against Yahweh, your god, and against you two. ¹⁷ So now I ask you to forgive me this one time for having sinned. Please pray to Yahweh, your god, to take away this terrible disaster that will cause us all to die."

¹⁸ So Moses and Aaron left the king, and Moses prayed to Yahweh.

ULB:

¹⁶ Then Pharaoh quickly summoned Moses and Aaron and said, "I have sinned against Yahweh your God and against you. ¹⁷ Now then, forgive my sin this time, and pray to Yahweh your God that he will take this death away from me." ¹⁸ So Moses went out from Pharaoh and prayed to Yahweh.

translationNotes**this time**

"once again"

take this death away from me

The word "death" here refers to the destruction by the locusts of all plants in Egypt, which would eventually lead to the deaths of people because there were no crops. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: "stop this destruction that will lead to our deaths" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness](#)
- [pray, prayer, prayers, prayed](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then Yahweh changed the wind so that it blew strongly from the west, and it blew all the locusts into the Sea of Reeds. There was not one locust left anywhere in the country of Egypt.

²⁰ But Yahweh made the king stubborn again, and the king did not let the Israelite people go.

ULB:

¹⁹ Yahweh brought a very strong west wind that picked up the locusts and drove them into the Sea of Reeds; not a single locust remained in all the territory of Egypt. ²⁰ But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart, and Pharaoh did not let the Israelites go.

translationNotes**picked up the locusts**

“moved the locusts upwards”

Yahweh hardened Pharaoh's heart

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). AT: “caused Pharaoh to become more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ Yahweh said to Moses, “Reach your hand up toward the sky in order that there may be darkness over all the land of Egypt, a darkness so complete that people will have to feel around to know where to walk.” ²² So Moses reached his hand toward the sky, and it became very dark all over Egypt for three days and nights. ²³ People could not see each other. No one left his house during that whole time. But there was light in the area where the Israelite people lived.

ULB:

²¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Reach out with your hand toward the sky, so that there may be darkness over the land of Egypt, darkness that may be felt.” ²² Moses reached out with his hand toward the sky, and there was a thick darkness in all the land of Egypt for three days. ²³ No one could see anyone else; no one left his home for three days. However, all the Israelites had light in the place where they lived.

translationNotes**darkness that may be felt**

Yahweh speaks of extreme darkness as if it is so thick that people can grasp it in their hands. This can be stated in active form. AT: “dense darkness that people can grasp with their hands” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:24-26**UDB:**

²⁴ The king called Moses and said, “All right, you may go and worship Yahweh. Your wives and your children may go with you. But your flocks of sheep and goats and your herds of cattle must remain here.” ²⁵ But Moses replied, “No, you must let us take along the sheep and goats in order that we may have some of them to sacrifice and give as burnt offerings to Yahweh, our God. ²⁶ Our livestock must also go with us; we are not going to leave one animal behind. We must take them to worship Yahweh. We will not know which animals to sacrifice until we get to where we are going.”

ULB:

²⁴ Pharaoh summoned Moses and said, “Go worship Yahweh. Even your families may go with you, but your flocks and herds must remain behind.” ²⁵ But Moses said, “You must also give us animals for sacrifices and burnt offerings so that we may sacrifice them to Yahweh our God. ²⁶ Our cattle must also go with us; not a hoof of them may be left behind, for we must take them to worship Yahweh our God. For we do not know with what we must worship Yahweh until we arrive there.”

translationNotes**not a hoof of them may be left behind**

Here the word “hoof” refers to the entire animal. This can be stated in active form. AT: “we cannot leave behind a single animal” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [worship](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 10:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ But Yahweh made the king continue to be stubborn. The king would not let the Israelite people go. ²⁸ The king said to Moses and Aaron, “Get out of here! Make sure that you never come to see me again! The day you see me again, I will have you killed!” ²⁹ Moses replied, “You are correct! You will never see me again!”

ULB:

²⁷ But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh’s heart, and he would not let them go. ²⁸ Pharaoh said to Moses, “Go from me! Be careful about one thing, that you do not see me again, for on the day you see my face, you will die.” ²⁹ Moses said, “You yourself have spoken. I will not see your face again.”

translationNotes**Yahweh hardened Pharaoh’s heart**

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). AT: “caused Pharaoh to become more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

he would not let them go

“Pharaoh would not let them go”

Be careful about one thing

“Make sure of one thing” or “Be certain of one thing”

you see my face

Here the word “face” refers to the whole person. AT: “you see me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

You yourself have spoken

With these words, Moses emphasizes that Pharaoh has spoken the truth. AT: “What you have said is true” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 10 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 10 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 11 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Pharaoh's hard heart

Pharaoh's heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh's instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Let my people go

In the previous chapters, Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to "let go" of the Hebrew people. Instead, he demanded that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people. In this chapter, the same wording is used to refer to Pharaoh "allowing" the Hebrew people to leave Egypt.

Links:

- [Exodus 11:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 11:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "I will bring one more disaster on the king of Egypt and on all his people. After that, he will let you leave. In fact, he will chase you out of Egypt. ² So now, speak to all the Israelite people. Tell them to ask all their Egyptian neighbors, both men and women, to give them their silver and gold jewelry." ³ Yahweh made the Egyptians highly respect the Israelite people. In fact, the king's officials and all the rest of the people thought that Moses was a very great man.

ULB:

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "There is still one more plague that I will bring on Pharaoh and Egypt. After that, he will let you go from here. When he finally lets you go, he will drive you away completely. ² Instruct the people that every man and woman is to ask of his or her neighbor for articles of silver and articles of gold." ³ Now Yahweh had made the Egyptians eager to please the Israelites. Moreover, the man Moses was very impressive in the sight of Pharaoh's servants and the people of Egypt.

translationNotes**he will let you go from here**

Each occurrence of the word "you" in this verse is plural and refers to Moses and the rest of the Israelites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [plague](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)

- [Exodus 11 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 11 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 11:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Then Moses went to the king and said, "This is what Yahweh says: 'About midnight tonight I will go through Egypt, ⁵ and I will cause all the firstborn sons to die. From the king's oldest son to the oldest son of the slave woman who grinds grain, and the oldest son of everyone else. I will also kill the oldest males of your livestock.

ULB:

⁴ Moses said, "Yahweh says this: 'About midnight I will go throughout Egypt. ⁵ All the firstborn in the land of Egypt will die, from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sits on his throne, to the firstborn of the slave girl who is behind the handmill grinding it, and to all the firstborn of the cattle.

translationNotes**midnight**

This is the time of 12 am (at night) or 2400 hours.

All the firstborn ... the firstborn of Pharaoh ... the firstborn of the slave girl ... the firstborn of the cattle

The "firstborn" always refers to the oldest male offspring.

who sits on his throne

This phrase refers to Pharaoh.

who is behind the handmill grinding it

"who is grinding at the handmill" or "who is behind the handmill grinding grain"

translationWords

- firstborn
- throne
- servant, slave, slavery

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 11 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 11 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 11:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ When that happens, people all over Egypt will lament loudly. They will lament more loudly than they ever have lamented before and more than they ever will again. ⁷ But among the Israelite people it will be so quiet that not even a dog will bark! Then you will know for sure that I, Yahweh, am treating the Egyptians differently from the Israelites.’ ⁸ Then all these officials of yours will come and bow down before me and will say, ‘Please get out of Egypt, you and all the Israelite people!’ After that, we will leave Egypt!” When Moses had said that, he left the king very angrily.

ULB:

⁶ Then there will be a great wailing throughout all the land of Egypt, such as has never been nor ever will be again. ⁷ But not even a dog will bark against any of the people of Israel, against either man or beast. In this way you will know that I am treating the Egyptians and the Israelites differently.’ ⁸ All these servants of yours, Pharaoh, will come down to me and bow down to me. They will say, ‘Go, you and all the people who follow you!’ After that I will go out.” Then he went out from Pharaoh in great anger.

translationNotes**After that I will go out**

This means that Moses and the people of Israel will leave Egypt. AT: “After that I will leave here” or “After that I will go out from Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [beast](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [angry, anger](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 11 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 11 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 11:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “The king will not listen to what you say. So I will perform more miracles in the land of Egypt.”

¹⁰ Aaron and Moses did all these miracles in front of the king, but Yahweh made the king stubborn. The king did not let the Israelite people leave his land.

ULB:

⁹ Yahweh said to Moses, “Pharaoh will not listen to you. This is so that I will do many amazing things in the land of Egypt.” ¹⁰ Moses and Aaron did all these wonders before Pharaoh. But Yahweh hardened Pharaoh’s heart, and Pharaoh did not let the people of Israel go out of his land.

translationNotes**Yahweh hardened Pharaoh’s heart**

Here “heart” refers to Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). AT: “Yahweh caused Pharaoh to become more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 11 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 11 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The events of this chapter are known as the Passover. They are remembered in the celebration of Passover. (See: [Passover](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Unleavened bread

The concept of unleavened bread is introduced in this chapter. Its significance stems from its connection to the events in this chapter. (See: [unleavened bread](#))

Ethnic segregation

The Hebrew people were to be separate from the rest of the world. Because of this, they separated themselves from other people groups. At this time, these foreigners were looked upon as unholy. (See: [unholy](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 12:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 12:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to Aaron and Moses in Egypt, ² "From now on, this month will be the first month of the year for you Israelites.

ULB:

¹ Yahweh spoke to Moses and Aaron in the land of Egypt. He said, ² "For you, this month will be the start of months, the first month of the year to you.

translationNotes**For you, this month will be the start of months, the first month of the year to you**

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the month in which the events of this chapter take place will be the beginning of their calendar year. (See: [Parallelism](#))

the first month of the year

The first month of the Hebrew calendar includes the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. It marks when Yahweh rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [year](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:3-4**UDB:**

³ Tell all the Israelite people that in each family, the man who heads the family must take a lamb or a young goat for his household. ⁴ If there are not enough people in his family to eat a whole cooked lamb, then his family and the family that lives next door may share one animal. Decide how many lambs you need according to the number of people in each family and according to how much each person can eat.

ULB:

³ Tell the assembly of Israel, 'On the tenth day of this month they must each take a lamb or young goat for themselves, each family doing this, a lamb for each household. ⁴ If the household is too small for a lamb, the man and his next door neighbor are to take lamb or young goat meat that will be enough for the number of the people. It should be enough for everyone to eat, so they must take enough meat to feed them all.

translationNotes**If the household is too small for a lamb**

This means that there are not enough people in the family to eat an entire lamb. AT: "If there are not enough people in the household to eat an entire lamb" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the man and his next door neighbor

Here "the man" refers to the man who is the leader of the household.

translationWords

- [assembly, assemble](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [day](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [household](#)
- [neighbor](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)

- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:5-8**UDB:**

⁵ The lambs or goats that you choose must be males, one year olds, and they must not have any defects. ⁶ You must take special care of these animals until the fourteenth day of the month. On that day, all the Israelite people must kill the lambs or goats in the evening. ⁷ Then they must take some of the blood from the lambs or goats, and they must smear it on the two doorposts and on the tops of the doorframes of the houses in which they will eat the meat. ⁸ They must roast the animals immediately and eat the meat that night. They must eat it with bitter herbs and with bread that is baked without yeast.

ULB:

⁵ Your lamb or young goat must be without blemish, a one-year-old male. You may take one of the sheep or goats. ⁶ You must keep it until the fourteenth day of that month. Then the whole assembly of Israel must kill these animals at twilight. ⁷ You must take some of the blood and put it on the two side doorposts and on the tops of the doorframes of the houses in which you will eat the meat. ⁸ You must eat the meat that night, after first roasting it over a fire. Eat it with bread made without yeast, along with bitter herbs.

translationNotes**twilight**

This refers to the time of evening after the sun has set but while there is still some light.

on the two side doorposts and on the tops of the doorframes of the houses

“on the sides and top of the way into the house”

Eat it with bread made without yeast

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Eat it with bread which you have made without yeast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

bitter herbs

These are small plants that have a strong and usually bad taste.

translationWords

- [blemish](#)

- [blood](#)
- [doorpost](#)
- [fire](#)
- [yeast, leaven](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ You must not eat any of the meat raw, and you must not boil the meat. You must roast it whole without cutting off the head or the legs or without removing the internal parts. ¹⁰ You must eat all the meat that evening; do not let any of the meat remain to be eaten the next morning. If any of the meat is left the next morning, you must burn it all. ¹¹ When you eat it, you must be dressed ready to travel. You must have your sandals on your feet and your walking staff in your hands. You must eat it hurriedly. It will be a festival called Passover to honor me, Yahweh.

ULB:

⁹ Do not eat it raw or boiled in water. Instead, roast it over fire with its head, legs and inner parts. ¹⁰ You must not let any of it be left over until morning. You must burn whatever is left over in the morning. ¹¹ This is how you must eat it: with your belt fastened, your shoes on your feet, and your staff in your hand. You must eat it hurriedly. It is Yahweh's Passover.

translationNotes**Do not eat it raw**

“Do not eat the lamb or goat uncooked”

You must not let any of it be left over until morning

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Do not leave any of it until the morning” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

belt

This refers to a strip of leather or fabric for tying around the waist.

eat it hurriedly

“eat it quickly”

It is Yahweh's Passover

Here the word “it” refers to eating the animal on the tenth day of the month. AT: “This observance is Yahweh's Passover” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [staff](#)
- [Passover](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:12-14**UDB:**

¹² On that night I will go through all the land of Egypt, and I will kill all the oldest males in Egypt, both humans and animals. By doing this, I will punish all the gods in Egypt. It is I, Yahweh God, who am speaking to you! ¹³ The blood that you smear on the doorways will be a mark to show me the houses in which you Israelites live. When I see the blood, I will pass over those houses, and I will not harm the people who live there when I come to punish the Egyptians.

¹⁴ Each year, you must celebrate this festival on this day to remember what I, Yahweh, have done for you. In all the generations to come, each year you must celebrate this festival. It must continue forever.

ULB:

¹² Yahweh says this: I will go through the land of Egypt in that night and attack all the firstborn of man and animal in the land of Egypt. I will bring punishment on all the gods of Egypt. I am Yahweh. ¹³ The blood will be a sign on your houses for my coming to you. When I see the blood, I will pass over you when I attack the land of Egypt. This plague will not come on you and destroy you. ¹⁴ This day will become a memorial day for you, which you must observe as a festival for Yahweh. It will always be a law for you, throughout your people's generations, that you must observe this day.

translationNotes**I will bring punishment on all the gods of Egypt**

This can be stated with a verbal form. AT: "I will punish all the gods of Egypt" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

for my coming to you

This implies that Yahweh will see the blood which indicates an Israelite home. AT: "that I will see when I come to you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I will pass over you

The words "pass over" were a customary way of saying to not visit or enter. AT: "I will not enter your house" (See: [Idiom](#))

for you, throughout your people's generations

"for you and all the generations of your descendants"

translationWords

- [firstborn](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [plague](#)
- [memorial, memorial offering](#)
- [festival](#)
- [law, principle](#)
- [generation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ For seven days you must eat bread that has no yeast in it. On the first day of that week, you must get rid of all the yeast that is in your houses. During those seven days, if anyone eats bread that is baked with yeast in it, you must drive that person out from your people. ¹⁶ On the first day of that week, you must have a holy meeting. You must do the same thing on the seventh day. People must not work on those two days. The only work they may do is to prepare food for you to eat.

ULB:

¹⁵ You will eat bread without yeast during seven days. On the first day you will remove the yeast from your houses. Whoever eats leavened bread from the first day until the seventh day, that person must be cut off from Israel. ¹⁶ On the first day there will be an assembly that is set apart to me, and on the seventh day there will be another such gathering. No work will be done on these days, except the cooking for everyone to eat. That must be the only work that may be done by you.

translationNotes**that person must be cut off from Israel**

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “the people of Israel must send him away” or 2) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” or 3) “the people of Israel must kill him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

an assembly that is set apart to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: “an assembly that you have set apart to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

No work will be done on these days

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You will do no work on these days” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

That must be the only work that may be done by you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “That must be the only work that you do” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- yeast, leaven

- [cut off](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Every year you must keep celebrating this Festival of Unleavened Bread because it will remind you that it was on this day that I brought your tribes out of the land of Egypt. So every year, in all the generations to come, you must celebrate this day as a festival. It must continue forever. ¹⁸ In the first month of the year, on the fourteenth day of that month, the only bread you may eat is bread that has no yeast in it. You must keep doing that each day until the twenty-first day of that month.

ULB:

¹⁷ You must observe this Festival of Unleavened Bread because it is on this day that I will have brought your people, armed group by armed group, out of the land of Egypt. So you must observe this day throughout your people's generations. This will always be a law for you. ¹⁸ You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month.

translationNotes**armed group by armed group**

The term used for these groups is a military term referring to a large number of soldiers. AT: "division by division" or "regiment by regiment"

twilight

This refers to the time of evening after the sun has set but while there is still some light. See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:6](#).

the fourteenth day in the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fourteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the twenty-first day of the month

"the twenty-first day of the first month." This is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

translationWords

- festival
- unleavened bread
- day
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- generation
- year

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ For those seven days you must not have any yeast in your house. During that time, if anyone, either an Israelite or a foreigner, eats bread made with yeast, that person will no longer be an Israelite. ²⁰ In your houses, do not eat anything that has yeast in it during those seven days.”

ULB:

¹⁹ During these seven days, no yeast must be found in your houses. Whoever eats bread made with yeast must be cut off from the community of Israel, whether that person is a foreigner or someone born in your land. ²⁰ You must eat nothing made with yeast. Wherever you live, you must eat bread made without yeast.”

translationNotes**no yeast must be found in your houses**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “there must not be any yeast in your houses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

must be cut off from the community of Israel

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “the people of Israel must send him away” or 2) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” or 3) “the people of Israel must kill him.” See how you translated “must be cut off from Israel” in [Exodus 12:15](#). (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

bread made without yeast

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:08](#). AT: “bread which you have made without yeast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [yeast, leaven](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Then Moses summoned all the leaders of the Israelite people. He said to them, "Each family should select a lamb and kill it, in order that you may eat it to celebrate the festival that will be called 'Passover.'" ²² Let the lamb's blood drain into a bowl. Get a bunch of hyssop and dip it in the blood. Then wipe some of the blood on the top of the doorframe and on the doorposts of your houses. The people in each house must stay inside the house until the next morning.

ULB:

²¹ Then Moses summoned all the elders of Israel and said to them, "Go and select lambs or kids that will be enough to feed your families and kill the Passover lamb." ²² Then take a bunch of hyssop and dip it in the blood that will be in a basin. Apply the blood in the basin to the top of the doorframe and the two doorposts. None of you is to go out of the door of his house until the morning.

translationNotes**summoned**

"officially called"

hyssop

This is a plant in the mint family, which is woody and used for thin twigs.

the top of the doorframe and the two doorposts

"on the sides and top of the way into the house." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 12:7](#).

translationWords

- elder
- lamb, Lamb of God
- goat, kid
- Passover
- blood
- doorpost

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:23**UDB:**

²³ When Yahweh goes through Egypt to kill the oldest male in each Egyptian family, he will see the blood on your doorframes, and he will pass over those houses. He will not allow the angel who causes people to die to enter your houses and kill your oldest sons.

ULB:

²³ For Yahweh will pass through to attack the Egyptians. When he sees the blood on the top of the doorframe and on the two doorposts, he will pass over your door and not permit the destroyer to come into your houses to attack you.

translationNotes**pass over your door**

Here the word “door” implies the entire house. This means that God will spare the Israelites in houses with blood on the doors. AT: “pass over your house” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [destroyer](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ You and your descendants must celebrate this ritual forever. ²⁵ When you arrive in the land that Yahweh will give to you as he promised, you must keep celebrating this ritual every year.

ULB:

²⁴ You must observe this event. This will always be a law for you and your descendants. ²⁵ When you enter the land that Yahweh will give you, just as he has promised to do, you must observe this act of worship.

translationNotes**this event ... this act of worship**

These phrases refer to the Passover or Festival of Unleavened Bread. Observing the Passover was an act of worshipping Yahweh.

translationWords

- [law, principle](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [promise, promises, promised](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ When your children ask you, ‘What does this ritual mean?’ ²⁷ you must tell them, ‘This ritual is to remember how your ancestors sacrificed lambs on the night that Yahweh’s angel passed over the houses of the Israelite people when they were in Egypt. He killed the oldest males in all the Egyptian houses, but he did not kill the sons in our houses.’ After Moses told them this, the people all bowed their heads and worshiped Yahweh. ²⁸ Then the Israelite people did exactly what Yahweh told Aaron and Moses to tell them to do.

ULB:

²⁶ When your children ask you, ‘What does this act of worship mean?’ ²⁷ then you must say, ‘It is the sacrifice of Yahweh’s Passover, because Yahweh passed over the Israelites’ houses in Egypt when he attacked the Egyptians. He set our households free.’” Then the people bowed down and worshiped Yahweh. ²⁸ The Israelites went and did exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron.

translationNotes**He set our households free**

This means that Yahweh spared the Israelites’ firstborn sons. AT: “He did not kill the firstborn sons in our houses” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron

“everything that Yahweh told Moses and Aaron to do”

translationWords

- children, child
- worship
- sacrifice, offering
- Yahweh
- Passover
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- household
- free, freedom, liberty
- bow, bow down
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ At midnight Yahweh killed all the oldest sons of the Egyptian people, all over Egypt. This included the king's oldest son, the oldest sons of the prisoners in the dungeons, and the oldest sons of everyone else. He also killed the oldest males of all the Egyptians' livestock. ³⁰ That night the king, all his officials, and all the rest of the Egyptian people awoke and discovered what had happened. They wailed loudly all over Egypt because in every house someone's son had died.

ULB:

²⁹ It happened at midnight that Yahweh attacked all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sat on his throne, to the firstborn of the person in prison and all the firstborn of cattle. ³⁰ Pharaoh got up in the night—he, all his servants, and all the Egyptians. There was loud lamenting in Egypt, for there was not a house where there was not someone dead.

translationNotes**at midnight**

“in the middle of the night”

all the firstborn in the land of Egypt ... all the firstborn of cattle

Here, “firstborn” always refers to the oldest male offspring. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 11:5](#).

who sat on his throne

This refers to Pharaoh.

the firstborn of the person in prison

“to the firstborn of people in prison.” This refers to prisoners, in general, and not to a specific person in prison.

There was loud lamenting in Egypt

This can be stated with a verbal form. AT: “All the Egyptians cried loudly” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

for there was not a house where there was not someone dead

This double negative emphasizes the positive. AT: “because someone was dead in every house” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

translationWords

- [firstborn](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [throne](#)
- [prison, prisoner, imprison](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [lament, laments, lamentation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:31-33**UDB:**

³¹ That night the king called Aaron and Moses and said, "Get up, you and all the other Israelite people, and leave my country now! Go and worship Yahweh, as you requested! ³² Take your flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle, and leave! And ask Yahweh to bless me, also!"

³³ The Egyptians asked the Israelite people to leave their country quickly. They said, "If you do not do that, we will all die!"

ULB:

³¹ Pharaoh summoned Moses and Aaron in the night and said, "Get up, get out from among my people, you and the Israelites. Go, worship Yahweh, as you have said you wanted to do. ³² Take your flocks and your herds, as you have said, and go, and also bless me." ³³ The Egyptians were in a great hurry to send them out of the land, for they said, "We are all dead people."

translationNotes**We are all dead people**

The Egyptians use the present tense to emphasize that they will surely die if the Israelites did not leave Egypt. AT: "We will all die if you do not leave" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [worship](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:34-36**UDB:**

³⁴ So the Israelite people prepared to leave at once. They took the bowls in which they mixed the dough to make bread and the dough that was in the bowls without any yeast in it, and they wrapped the bowls in their cloaks. They put the bowls on their shoulders and left. ³⁵ Then the Israelite people did as Moses told them. They went to their Egyptian neighbors and asked them for silver and gold jewelry and clothing. ³⁶ Yahweh caused the Egyptian people to greatly respect the Israelite people, so they gave them what they asked for. In that way, the Israelites carried away the wealth of the Egyptian people.

ULB:

³⁴ So the people took their dough without adding any yeast. Their kneading bowls were already tied up in their clothes and on their shoulders. ³⁵ Now the people of Israel did as Moses told them. They asked the Egyptians for articles of silver, articles of gold, and clothing. ³⁶ Yahweh made the Egyptians eager to please the Israelites. So the Egyptians gave them whatever they asked for. In this way, the Israelites plundered the Egyptians.

translationNotes**Their kneading bowls were already tied up in their clothes and on their shoulders**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They had already tied up their kneading bowls in their clothes and on their shoulders" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [yeast, leaven](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [silver](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:37-40**UDB:**

³⁷ The Israelite people walked from the city of Rameses to the town of Succoth. There were about 600,000 men who went, in addition to the women and children. ³⁸ Many other people who were not Israelites went along with them. There was also livestock, including flocks of sheep and goats and herds of cattle. ³⁹ On their way, they baked bread with the dough that they carried with them when they had been told to leave Egypt. The dough did not have yeast in it because they were told to leave Egypt so quickly that they did not have enough time to get food ready to take with them or enough time to mix yeast in the dough.

⁴⁰ The Israelite people had lived in Egypt for 430 years.

ULB:

³⁷ The Israelites journeyed from Rameses to Succoth. They numbered about 600,000 men on foot, in addition to the women and children. ³⁸ A mixed crowd of non-Israelites also went with them, together with flocks and herds, a very large number of cattle. ³⁹ They baked bread without yeast in the dough that they brought from Egypt. It was without yeast because they had been driven out of Egypt and could not delay to prepare food. ⁴⁰ The Israelites had lived in Egypt for 430 years.

translationNotes**Rameses**

Rameses was a major Egyptian city where grain was stored. See how you translated this in [Exodus 1:11](#).

They numbered about 600,000 men

“They numbered about six hundred thousand men.” The total number of men was about 600,000. (See: [Numbers](#))

bread without yeast in the dough

“bread with dough that did not contain yeast”

they had been driven out of Egypt

This can be stated in active form. AT: “the Egyptians had driven them out of Egypt” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

430 years

“four hundred and thirty years” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Succoth](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [cast out, drive out, throw out](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:41-42**UDB:**

⁴¹ On the day that those 430 years ended, on that very day, all the tribes of Yahweh's people left Egypt. ⁴² It was a night when the Israelites stayed awake as Yahweh brought them out of Egypt. So this same night every year is a night that is dedicated to Yahweh, a night when the Israelite people in every generation remember how Yahweh kept their ancestors safe.

ULB:

⁴¹ At the end of 430 years, on that very day, all of Yahweh's armed groups went out from the land of Egypt. ⁴² This was a night to stay awake, for Yahweh to bring them out from the land of Egypt. This was Yahweh's night to be observed by all the Israelites throughout their people's generations.

translationNotes**430 years**

“four hundred and thirty years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Yahweh's armed groups

This refers to the tribes of Israel. See how you translated “armed group” in [Exodus 12:17](#).

to be observed by all the Israelites

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that all the Israelites were to observe” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all the Israelites throughout their people's generations

“all the Israelites and the all the generations of their descendants”

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [generation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:43-44**UDB:**

⁴³ Then Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, "These are my instructions about the Passover ritual: Do not let foreigners eat the Passover meal. ⁴⁴ But any male slaves that you have bought may eat it after you have circumcised them.

ULB:

⁴³ Yahweh said to Moses and Aaron, "Here is the rule for the Passover: No foreigner may share in eating it. ⁴⁴ However, every Israelite's slave, bought with money, may eat it after you have circumcised him.

translationNotes**No foreigner may share in eating it**

The pronoun "it" refers to the Passover meal.

every Israelite's slave

"any slave of an Israelite"

bought with money

This can be stated in active form. AT: "whom the Israelite has bought with money" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [circumcise, circumcised, circumcision](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:45-46**UDB:**

⁴⁵ Do not let people who are living among you that are not Israelites, or servants whom you pay money to and who stay only for a while, eat the Passover meal. ⁴⁶ Each family must eat the Passover meal inside its own house. Do not take any of the food outside the house. Do not break the bones of the lamb.

ULB:

⁴⁵ Foreigners and hired servants must not eat any of the food. ⁴⁶ The food must be eaten in one house. You must not carry any of the meat out of the house, and you must not break any bone of it.

translationNotes**The food must be eaten in one house**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Each Israelite family must eat the food in one house” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you must not break any bone of it

“you must not break any of its bones.” Here the word “it” refers to the lamb which the Israelite family will eat.

translationWords

- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:47-48**UDB:**

⁴⁷ All the Israelite people must celebrate this festival. ⁴⁸ When someone from another country comes to live with you and wants to celebrate the Passover festival, circumcise all the males in his household. Then he can eat the Passover meal, and you should treat that man as though he had been born an Israelite. But do not allow men who have not been circumcised to eat the Passover meal.

ULB:

⁴⁷ All the community of Israel must observe the festival. ⁴⁸ If a foreigner lives with you and wants to observe the Passover to Yahweh, all his male relatives must be circumcised. Then he may come and observe it. He will become like the people who were born in the land. However, no uncircumcised person may eat any of the food.

translationNotes**all his male relatives must be circumcised**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “someone must circumcise all his male relatives” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the people who were born in the land

Here the word “land” refers to Canaan. The expression “born in the land” means a person who is a native Israelite. AT: “those who are Israelites by birth” (See: [Idiom](#))

no uncircumcised person may eat

This can be stated in positive terms. AT: “only circumcised people may eat” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

translationWords

- [festival](#)
- [Passover](#)
- [circumcise, circumcised, circumcision](#)
- [uncircumcised, uncircumcision](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 12:49-51**UDB:**

⁴⁹ These rules apply to people who were born as Israelites and to foreigners who come and live among you.”

⁵⁰ All the Israelite people obeyed Moses and Aaron and did what Yahweh had commanded. ⁵¹ On that very day, Yahweh brought all the tribes of the Israelite people out of Egypt.

ULB:

⁴⁹ This same law will apply to both the native born and to the foreigner who lives among you.” ⁵⁰ So all the Israelites did exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron. ⁵¹ It came about that very day that Yahweh brought Israel out of the land of Egypt by their armed groups.

translationNotes**as Yahweh had commanded Moses and Aaron**

“everything that Yahweh told Moses and Aaron to do”

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

by their armed groups

The term used for these groups is a military term referring to a large number of soldiers. See how you translated “armed group” in [Exodus 12:17](#). AT: “by their divisions” or “by their regiments”

translationWords

- law, principle
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Moses
- Aaron

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter records the instructions for the celebration of Passover. (See: [Passover](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Law

The law mentioned here is not the law of Moses because it has not yet been revealed. Instead, it is a more generic “rule.” (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#) and [reveal](#), [reveals](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Let my people go

This is a very important statement. Moses does not ask Pharaoh for permission to “let go” of the Hebrew people. Instead, he is demanding that Pharaoh free the Hebrew people. When this chapter states that Pharaoh let the people go, it indicates that he gave them permission to leave.

Links:

- [Exodus 13:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 13:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to Moses, ² “Set apart all the firstborn males in order that they may belong to me. The firstborn males of the Israelite people and of their animals will be mine.”

ULB:

¹ Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ² “Set apart to me all the firstborn, every firstborn male among the Israelites, both of people and animals. The firstborn belongs to me.”

translationNotes**Set apart to me ... every firstborn male**

God requires that every firstborn male child be set apart for him.

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 13:3-5**UDB:**

³ Moses said to the people, "Do not forget this day! This is the day that you left Egypt. This is the day you were freed from being their slaves. Yahweh has brought you out of Egypt by his great power. Do not eat any bread that has yeast in it whenever you celebrate this day. ⁴ You are leaving Egypt on this day which is the first day of the month of Aviv. ⁵ Later, when Yahweh brings you into the land where the descendants of Canaan, Heth, Amor, Hiv, and Jebus now live, the land that he promised to give to you, a land that will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops, you must celebrate this festival in this month every year.

ULB:

³ Moses said to the people, "Call this day to mind, the day on which you came out from Egypt, out of the house of slavery, for by Yahweh's strong hand he brought you out from this place. No bread with yeast may be eaten. ⁴ You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Aviv. ⁵ When Yahweh brings you into the land of the Canaanites, Hittites, Amorites, Hivites, and the Jebusites, the land that he swore to your ancestors to give you, a land flowing with milk and honey—then you must observe this act of worship in this month.

translationNotes**Call this day to mind**

The words "Call ... to mind" were a customary way of telling someone to remember something. AT: "Remember and celebrate this day" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the house of slavery

Moses speaks of Egypt as if it were a house where people keep slaves. AT: "the place where you were slaves" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Yahweh's strong hand

Here the word "hand" refers to power. See how you translated "strong hand" in [Exodus 6:1](#). (See: [Metonymy](#))

No bread with yeast may be eaten

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must not eat bread with yeast" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the month of Aviv

This is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. Aviv is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

a land flowing with milk and honey

Since milk comes from cows and goats, “milk” represents food produced by livestock. Because honey is produced from flowers, “honey” represents food from crops. See how you translated this in [Exodus 3:8](#). AT: “food from livestock and from crops” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you must observe this act of worship

When the Israelites live in Canaan, they must celebrate the Passover on this day each year. See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 12:25](#).

translationWords

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [day](#)
- [mind](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [bread](#)
- [yeast, leaven](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)
- [Hittite](#)
- [Amorite](#)
- [Hivite](#)
- [Jebusites, Jebus](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 13:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ For seven days the bread that you eat must not have any yeast in it. On the seventh day there must be a festival to honor Yahweh. ⁷ Do not eat bread that has yeast in it for seven days. You should not have any yeast or bread made with yeast anywhere in your land.

ULB:

⁶ For seven days you must eat bread without yeast; on the seventh day there will be a feast to honor Yahweh. ⁷ Bread without yeast must be eaten throughout the seven days; no bread with yeast may be seen among you. No yeast may be seen with you within any of your borders.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Moses continues to speak to the people of Israel.

For seven days

“For 7 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

Bread without yeast must be eaten

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must eat bread without yeast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

no bread with yeast may be seen among you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You may not have any bread with yeast among you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

No yeast may be seen with you

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You may not have any yeast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

within any of your borders

“inside any of the borders of your land”

translationWords

- [feast](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 13:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ On the day the festival starts, you must tell your children, ‘We are doing this to remember what Yahweh did for our ancestors when they left Egypt.’ ⁹ This ritual will remind you how Yahweh brought your ancestors out of Egypt with his great power. The ritual will be like something you tie on your forehead or on your wrist. It will remind you to recite to others what Yahweh has instructed you. ¹⁰ So you must celebrate this festival every year at the time Yahweh has appointed.

ULB:

⁸ On that day you are to say to your children, ‘This is because of what Yahweh did for me when I came out of Egypt.’ ⁹ This will be a reminder for you on your hand, and a reminder on your forehead. This is so the law of Yahweh may be in your mouth, for with a strong hand Yahweh brought you out of Egypt. ¹⁰ Therefore you must keep this law at its appointed time from year to year.

translationNotes

On that day you are to say to your children, ‘This is because of what Yahweh did for me when I came out of Egypt.’

The quotation can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “On that day you are to tell your children that this is because of what Yahweh did for you when you came out of Egypt” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

This will be a reminder for you on your hand, and a reminder on your forehead

These are two different types of physical reminders so people will not forget something important. (See: [Parallelism](#))

a reminder for you on your hand

Moses speaks of celebrating the festival as if it were tying an object around their hands to remind them of what Yahweh had done. AT: “like something you tie around your hand as a reminder” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a reminder on your forehead

Moses speaks of celebrating the festival as if it were tying an object around their foreheads to remind them of what Yahweh had done. AT: “like something you tie around your head as a reminder” (See: [Metaphor](#))

so the law of Yahweh may be in your mouth

The words “in your mouth” here refers to the words that they speak. AT: “so you may always be speaking of the law of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

strong hand

The word “hand” here represents God’s actions or works. See how you translated this in [Exodus 6:1](#). AT: “the power I show in my works” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [children, child](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 13:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ Yahweh will bring you into the land where the descendants of Canaan live, as he promised to you and your ancestors that he would do. When he gives that land to you, ¹² you must give to Yahweh the firstborn males of all your animals. These all will belong to Yahweh. ¹³ You may keep the firstborn male donkeys, but you must buy them back by killing a lamb in the place of the donkey. If you do not want to buy back the donkey, you must kill it by breaking its neck. You must buy back every one of your own firstborn sons.

ULB:

¹¹ When Yahweh brings you into the land of the Canaanites, as he swore to you and to your ancestors to do, and when he gives the land to you, ¹² you must set apart for him every firstborn child and the first offspring of your animals. The males will be Yahweh's. ¹³ Every firstborn of a donkey you must buy back with a lamb. If you do not buy it back, then you must break its neck. But each of your firstborn males among all your sons—you must buy them back.

translationNotes**when he gives the land to you**

“when he gives the land of the Canaanites to you”

Every firstborn of a donkey

Israel is given a choice to kill the firstborn donkey or buy it back with a lamb.

each of your firstborn males among all your sons

Everyone in Israel who had a firstborn son, must buy him back.

translationWords

- Canaan, Canaanite
- oath, swear, swear by
- firstborn
- offspring
- donkey, mule
- lamb, Lamb of God
- son, sons

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 13:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ In the future, when one of your children asks, ‘What does this mean?’ you must say to him, ‘Yahweh brought our ancestors out of Egypt with his great power, and freed us from being slaves there. ¹⁵ The king of Egypt did not let them leave his land, so Yahweh killed all the firstborn males in Egypt, both the boys and the firstborn of their livestock. That is why we now sacrifice to Yahweh all the firstborn of our livestock, but we buy back our own firstborn sons.’ ¹⁶ This will remind you about how Yahweh brought our ancestors out of Egypt by his great power; it will be like something you tie on your wrist or on your forehead to remind you of that.”

ULB:

¹⁴ When your son asks you later, ‘What does this mean?’ then you are to tell him, ‘It was by a strong hand that Yahweh brought us out from Egypt, from the house of slavery. ¹⁵ When Pharaoh stubbornly refused to let us go, Yahweh killed all the firstborn in the land of Egypt, both the firstborn of people and the firstborn of animals. That is why I sacrifice to Yahweh the firstborn male of every animal, and why I buy back the firstborn of my sons.’ ¹⁶ This will become a reminder on your hands, and a reminder on your forehead, for it was by a strong hand Yahweh brought us out of Egypt.”

translationNotes**When your son asks you later, ‘What does this mean?’ then you are to tell him**

The first quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. AT: “When your son asks you later what this means, then you are to tell him” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

strong hand

The word “hand” here represents God’s actions or works. See how you translated this in [Exodus 6:1](#). AT: “the power I show in my works” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of slavery

Moses speaks of Egypt as if it were a house where people keep slaves. See how you translated this in [Exodus 13:3](#). AT: “the place where you were slaves” (See: [Metaphor](#))

become a reminder on your hands, and a reminder on your forehead

This expresses two ways to remember the importance of the passover event. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 13:8-10](#). (See: [Parallelism](#))

translationWords

- [house](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 13:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ When the king of Egypt let the Israelite people go, God did not lead them to go through the land of the Philistines. That was a shorter road, but God said, “It would be bad if my people changed their minds when they realized that they will have to fight the Philistines to take their land. Then they would decide to go back to Egypt.” ¹⁸ Instead, God led them to go around through the wilderness toward the Sea of Reeds. When the Israelite people left Egypt, they were carrying weapons to fight their enemies.

ULB:

¹⁷ When Pharaoh let the people go, God did not lead them by way of the land of the Philistines, although that land was nearby. For God said, “Perhaps the people will change their minds when they experience war and will then return to Egypt.” ¹⁸ So God led the people around through the wilderness to the Sea of Reeds. The Israelites went up out of the land of Egypt armed for battle.

translationNotes**nearby**

“close to where they were located”

the people will change their minds ... and ... return to Egypt

Since Israelites had lived in slavery all their lives, they were more accustomed to peace than to war and would rather return to slavery than fight.

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [mind](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 13 translationQuestions

Exodus 13:19-22**UDB:**

¹⁹ Moses had them take along the bones of Joseph with them because Joseph long ago had made the Israelite people promise that they would do that. He had said to them, “God will rescue your descendants out of Egypt. When that happens, you must carry my bones with you.”

²⁰ The Israelite people left Succoth and walked to Etham at the edge of the wilderness, and they set up their tents there. ²¹ When they walked during the daytime, Yahweh went in front of them in a tall white cloud to show them the way. During the night, he went in front of them in a tall cloud that looked like a fire. By doing this, he enabled them to travel in the daytime and also at nighttime.

²² The tall cloud did not leave them. It was always in front of them, as a bright white cloud in the daytime and like a tall column of fire in the night.

ULB:

¹⁹ Moses took the bones of Joseph with him, for Joseph had made the Israelites solemnly swear and said, “God will surely rescue you, and you must carry away my bones with you.” ²⁰ The Israelites journeyed from Succoth and camped at Etham on the edge of the wilderness. ²¹ Yahweh went before them by day in a pillar of cloud to lead them on the way. By night he went in a pillar of fire to give them light. In this way they could travel by day and by night. ²² Yahweh did not take away from before the people the daytime pillar of cloud or the nighttime pillar of fire.

translationNotes**camped at Etham**

Etham is located south of the route heading towards the Philistines, at the border of the wilderness. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

pillar of cloud ... pillar of fire

“a cloud in the shape of a column ... fire in the shape of a column.” God is with them in a cloud by day and in a fire by night.

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Joseph \(OT\)](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [Succoth](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

- [pillar, column](#)
- [fire](#)
- [light](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is an important event in the history of Israel, known as the “parting of the Sea of Reeds.”

Special concepts in this chapter

Pharaoh’s hard heart

Pharaoh’s heart is often described as hard in this chapter. This means that his heart was not open or willing to understand Yahweh’s instructions. When his heart was hardened, it became less and less receptive to Yahweh.

Pharaoh’s chariots

These chariots were a fighting force. Pharaoh took an army to kill the Hebrew people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

The Israelites asked a few rhetorical questions of Moses. These questions were not really directed at Moses, but at Yahweh. This showed their lack of faith in Yahweh. (See: [Rhetorical Question and faith](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 14:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 14:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, ² "Tell the Israelite people to turn around and go back and set up their tents in front of Pi Hahiroth. That town is between Migdol and the sea, near Baal Zephon. Set up your tents there close to the sea. ³ When the king knows you have done that, he will think, 'The Israelite people are confused. They are wandering around, and the desert blocks their path.'

ULB:

¹ Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ² "Say to the Israelites that they should turn and camp before Pi Hahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, before Baal Zephon. You are to camp by the sea opposite Pi Hahiroth. ³ Pharaoh will say about the Israelites, 'They are wandering in the land. The wilderness has closed in on them.'

translationNotes**Pi Hahiroth ... Migdol ... Baal Zephon**

These are towns on Egypt's eastern border. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

You are to camp

Here the word "You" is plural and refers to Moses and the Israelites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Pharaoh will say about the Israelites, 'They are wandering in the land. The wilderness has closed in on them.'

This can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: "Pharaoh will say the Israelites are wandering in the land and the wilderness has closed in on them" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

The wilderness has closed in on them

Pharaoh speaks of the wilderness as a person who has trapped the Israelites. (See: [Personification](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ But I will make the king stubborn again, and he will take his army and come after you. Then my people will praise me for winning a victory over the king and his army, and the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh.” So Moses told the Israelites that, and they did what he told them to do.

⁵ When someone told the king that the Israelite people had left during the night, he and his leaders changed their minds and said, “What have we done? The Israelite people will no longer be our slaves!”

ULB:

⁴ I will harden Pharaoh’s heart, and he will pursue them. I will get honor because of Pharaoh and all his army. The Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh.” So the Israelites camped as they were instructed. ⁵ When the king of Egypt was told that the Israelites had fled, the minds of Pharaoh and his servants turned against the people. They said, “What have we done in letting Israel go free from working for us?”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to instruct Moses on where to go and what Yahweh will do.

I will harden Pharaoh’s heart

Here “heart” refers to the Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). AT: “I will cause Pharaoh to become more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

he will pursue them

“Pharaoh will pursue the Israelites”

I will get honor

“People will honor me”

The Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh

“The Egyptians will understand that I am Yahweh, the one true God”

So the Israelites camped as they were instructed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “So the Israelites camped as Yahweh had instructed them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

When the king of Egypt was told

This can be stated in active form. AT: “When someone told the king of Egypt” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the king of Egypt

This refers to Pharaoh.

had fled

“had run away”

the minds of Pharaoh and his servants turned against the people

Here the word “minds” refers to their attitudes towards the Israelites. AT: “Pharaoh and his servants changed their attitudes about the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

What have we done in letting Israel go free from working for us?

They asked this question to show they thought they did a foolish thing. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “We have done a stupid thing by letting Israel go free from working for us!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [hard, hardness, harden](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [instruct, instruction](#)
- [king](#)
- [mind](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:6-9**UDB:**

⁶ So the king got his chariot and his army ready. ⁷ Then he selected six hundred of the best chariots, and in each chariot he placed a driver, a soldier, and a commander, and they left. ⁸ Yahweh made the king of Egypt stubborn, so he and his army went to pursue the Israelites. The Israelites marched out with confidence. ⁹ The Egyptian army, with all the king's horses and chariots and horsemen, went after the Israelites. They caught up with them as they were camped near the sea close to Pi Hahiroth, in front of Baal Zephon.

ULB:

⁶ Then Pharaoh got his chariots ready and took his army with him. ⁷ He took six hundred chosen chariots and all the other chariots of Egypt, with officers on all of them. ⁸ Yahweh hardened the heart of Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and the king pursued the Israelites. Now the Israelites had gone away in triumph. ⁹ But the Egyptians pursued them, together with all his horses and chariots, his horsemen, and his army. They overtook the Israelites camping by the sea beside Pi Hahiroth, before Baal Zephon.

translationNotes**He took six hundred chosen chariots**

“He took 600 of his best chariots” (See: [Numbers](#))

Yahweh hardened the heart of Pharaoh

Here “heart” refers to the Pharaoh. His stubborn attitude is spoken of as if his heart was hard. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). AT: “Yahweh caused Pharaoh to become more defiant” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Pi Hahiroth ... Baal Zephon

These are towns on Egypt's eastern border. See how you translated them in [Exodus 14:02](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [king](#)
- [horsemen](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ When the king's army got near, the Israelite people were surprised to see that the Egyptians were marching toward them. They were terrified, so they cried out to Yahweh to help them. ¹¹ Then they said to Moses, "Certainly you did not think that there was not enough room in Egypt for us to be buried. So why did you bring us here to die in this wilderness? Look what you have done to us by bringing us out of Egypt! ¹² That is what we told you when we were in Egypt. We said, 'Leave us alone, and let us work for the Egyptians.' It would have been better for us to be slaves for the Egyptians than to die here in the desert!"

ULB:

¹⁰ When Pharaoh came close, the Israelites looked up and were surprised. The Egyptians were marching after them, and they were terrified. The Israelites cried out to Yahweh. ¹¹ They said to Moses, "Is it because there were no graves in Egypt, that you have taken us away to die in the wilderness? Why have you treated us like this, bringing us out of Egypt? ¹² Is this not what we told you in Egypt? We said to you, 'Leave us alone, so we can work for the Egyptians.' It would have been better for us to work for them than to die in the wilderness."

translationNotes**When Pharaoh came close**

The word "Pharaoh" here represents the entire Egyptian army. AT: "When Pharaoh and his army came close" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

they were terrified

"the Israelites were terrified"

Is it because there were no graves in Egypt, that you have taken us away to die in the wilderness?

The Israelites ask this question to express their frustration and fear of dying. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "There were plenty of graveyards in Egypt for us to be buried in. You did not have to take us into the wilderness to die!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why have you treated us like this, bringing us out of Egypt?

The Israelites ask this question to rebuke Moses for bringing them to the desert to die. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You should not have treated us like this by bringing us out of Egypt!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Is this not what we told you in Egypt?

The Israelites ask this question to emphasize that this is what they had told Moses. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “This is exactly what we told you while we were in Egypt.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

We said to you, ‘Leave us alone, so we can work for the Egyptians.’

This can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “We told you to leave us alone, so we could work for the Egyptians.” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

translationWords

- [terror, terrify](#)
- [cry, cry out](#)
- [tomb, grave, burial place](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid! Stand strong and see how Yahweh will rescue you. He will save you today, and the result will be that the Egyptians that you are looking at today—you will never see them again. ¹⁴ Yahweh will fight for you! Just stay calm. There is nothing else that you will have to do."

ULB:

¹³ Moses said to the people, "Do not be afraid. Stand still and see the rescue that Yahweh will provide for you today. For you will never see again the Egyptians whom you see today. ¹⁴ Yahweh will fight for you, and you will only have to stand still."

translationNotes**Moses said to the people**

Moses responds to the Israelites' fears.

provide for you

The pronoun "you" refers to the Israelites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

For you will never see again the Egyptians

Moses used a polite way of saying God was going to destroy the Egyptian army. AT: "For God will kill the Egyptians" (See: [Euphemism](#))

translationWords

- [fear, fears, afraid](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:15-18**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "You must not call out to me for help any longer in this situation. Instead, tell the people to go forward. ¹⁶ Lift up your staff and stretch it out as though you were stretching it over the sea. The water will move away so that the Israelite people can go in the middle of the sea, walking on dry ground between the walls of water on each side. ¹⁷ I will make the Egyptians stubborn so that they will try to follow the Israelites. Then because of what I will do to the king, his army, his chariots, and his horsemen, my people will praise me. ¹⁸ When I have won a glorious victory over the king, his chariots, and his horsemen, the other Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh, the God who can do anything."

ULB:

¹⁵ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Why are you, Moses, continuing to call out to me? Tell the Israelites to go forward. ¹⁶ Lift up your staff, reach out with your hand over the sea and divide it in two, so that the people of Israel may go through the sea on dry ground. ¹⁷ Be aware that I will harden the Egyptians' hearts so they will go after them. I will get honor because of Pharaoh and all his army, his chariots, and his horsemen. ¹⁸ Then the Egyptians will know that I am Yahweh when I have gotten honor because of Pharaoh, his chariots, and his horsemen."

translationNotes**Why are you, Moses, continuing to call out to me?**

Moses apparently had been praying to God for help so God uses this question to compel Moses to act. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: "Do not call out to me any longer, Moses." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

divide it in two

"divide the sea into two parts"

Be aware

"Know"

I will harden the Egyptians' hearts

Here "hearts" refers to the Egyptians themselves. Their stubborn attitude is spoken of as if their hearts were hard. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 9:12](#). AT: "I will cause the Egyptians to become more defiant" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

so they will go after them

“so that the Egyptians will go into the sea after the Israelites”

translationWords

- [staff](#)
- [hard, hardness, harden](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [horsemen](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then the angel of God, who had been in front of the Israelite people, moved and went behind them. The tall, bright cloud that had been in front of them also moved behind them ²⁰ until it was between the Egyptian army and the Israelite people. The cloud caused the Egyptian army to be in the darkness, but it gave light for the Israelites. As a result, neither group could come near the other group during the whole night.

ULB:

¹⁹ The angel of God, who went before the Israelites, moved and went behind them. The pillar of cloud moved from before them and went to stand behind them. ²⁰ The cloud came between the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel. It was a dark cloud to the Egyptians, but it lit the night for the Israelites, so one side did not come near the other all night.

translationNotes**the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel**

“the Egyptian army and the Israelite people”

so one side did not come near the other

This means that the Egyptians and the Israelites could not approach one another.

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [God](#)
- [pillar, column](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ That evening, Moses stretched out his hand as though he were stretching it over the sea. Then Yahweh sent a strong wind from the east. It blew all night and pushed the water apart, and it caused the land between the water to dry up. ²² Then the Israelite people went on the dry land in the middle of the sea. The water was like a wall on each side of them, on the right side and on the left side.

ULB:

²¹ Moses reached out with his hand over the sea. Yahweh drove the sea back by a strong east wind all that night and made the sea into dry land. In this way the waters were divided. ²² The Israelites went into the middle of the sea on dry ground. The waters formed a wall for them on their right hand and on their left.

translationNotes**east wind**

An east wind originates in the east and blows towards the west.

east

where the sun rises

the waters were divided

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Yahweh divided the waters" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

on their right hand and on their left

"on each side of them" or "on both sides of them"

translationWords

- [water, waters](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:23-25**UDB:**

²³ Then the Egyptian army went after them into the middle of the sea with their horses and their chariots and chariot drivers. ²⁴ Just before dawn, Yahweh looked down from the fiery cloud, and then he caused the Egyptian army to panic. ²⁵ He caused the wheels of the chariots to get stuck in the ground so that they could hardly move. So the Egyptians said, “Yahweh is fighting for the Israelites against us; let us get out of here!”

ULB:

²³ The Egyptians pursued them. They went after them into the middle of the sea—all Pharaoh’s horses, chariots, and horsemen. ²⁴ But in the early morning hours, Yahweh looked down on the Egyptian army through the pillar of fire and cloud. He caused panic among the Egyptians. ²⁵ Their chariot wheels were clogged, and the horsemen drove with difficulty. So the Egyptians said, “Let us flee from Israel, for Yahweh is fighting for them against us.”

translationNotes**He caused panic among the Egyptians**

Panic is when someone becomes so afraid that they cannot think normally.

Their chariot wheels were clogged

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Mud clogged their chariot wheels” or “Their chariot wheels were getting stuck in the mud” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [horsemen](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Stretch out your arm as though you were stretching it over the sea. Then the water will come back on the Egyptians, on their chariots, and their horsemen.” ²⁷ So Moses stretched out his arm, and, as the sun was rising, the water returned to its normal level. The Egyptians tried to escape, but Yahweh hurled them back into the sea. ²⁸ The water returned and covered the chariots, the horsemen, and the whole Egyptian army that had tried to follow the Israelites into the sea. Every one of the Egyptians died.

ULB:

²⁶ Yahweh said to Moses, “Reach out with your hand over the sea so that the waters may come back onto the Egyptians, their chariots, and their horsemen.” ²⁷ So Moses reached out with his hand over the sea, and it returned to its normal course when the morning appeared. The Egyptians fled into the sea, and Yahweh drove the Egyptians into the middle of it. ²⁸ The waters came back and covered Pharaoh’s chariots, horsemen, and his entire army that had followed the chariots into the sea. No one survived.

translationNotes**Yahweh said to Moses, “Reach out with your hand ... and their horsemen.”**

This can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “Yahweh told Moses to reach out with his hand over the sea so that the waters would come back onto the Egyptians, their chariots, and their horsemen.”

come back onto

“fall on”

The Egyptians fled into the sea

Since the sea was closing in on top of the Egyptians, instead of escaping, they were actually running right into the water.

Yahweh drove the Egyptians

“Yahweh pushed the Egyptians” or “Yahweh threw the Egyptians”

translationWords

- **Yahweh**

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 14:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ But the Israelite people had already crossed through the sea by walking on dry ground, with the water being like two walls, one on the right side and one on the left side.

³⁰ That is the way Yahweh saved the Israelite people from the Egyptian army on that day. The Israelite people saw the Egyptians lying dead. Their bodies washed up on the shore. ³¹ The Israelites saw what Yahweh did to the Egyptians by his great power, and they were in awe of Yahweh. They trusted in Yahweh, and they also trusted in Moses.

ULB:

²⁹ However, the Israelites walked on dry land in the middle of the sea. The waters were a wall for them on their right hand and on their left. ³⁰ So Yahweh saved Israel that day out of the hand of the Egyptians, and Israel saw dead Egyptians on the seashore. ³¹ When Israel saw the great power that Yahweh used against the Egyptians, the people honored Yahweh, and they trusted in Yahweh and in his servant Moses.

translationNotes**Israel**

Each of the occurrences of “Israel” refer to the people of Israel. AT: “the people of Israel” or “the Israelites” (See: [Metonymy](#))

out of the hand of the Egyptians

Here the word “hand” refers to power. AT: “from the Egyptians’ power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

on the seashore

“on the land along the edge of the sea”

translationWords

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [save, saves, saved, safe](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 15:1-18, 21, which are songs. (See: [Poetry](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh's laws

In this chapter, Moses talks about Yahweh's laws. The law of Moses is about to be introduced. Although it has not yet been formally introduced, this is what is being referenced in this chapter in anticipation of the revelation of the law of Moses. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#) and [reveal](#), [reveals](#), [revealed](#), [revelation](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 15:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 15:1**UDB:**

¹ Then Moses and all the Israelite people sang a song to Yahweh. They sang,
"I will sing to Yahweh because he has won a great victory;
He has thrown the horses and their riders into the sea!

ULB:

¹ Then Moses and the people of Israel sang this song to Yahweh. They sang,
"I will sing to Yahweh, for he has triumphed gloriously;
the horse and its rider he has thrown into the sea.

translationNotes**General Information:**

This is a song about the events that happened in [Exodus 14:26-28](#).

he has triumphed gloriously

It can be stated explicitly over whom Yahweh triumphed. AT: "he has achieved a glorious victory over the army of Egypt" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the horse and its rider he has thrown into the sea

Moses sang about God causing the sea to cover and drown the horse and rider as if God had thrown them into the sea. AT: "he has made the sea cover over the horse and rider" or "he has made the horse and rider drown in the sea" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the horse and its rider

This refers to all or many of the Egyptian horses and riders that were chasing the Israelites. AT: "the horses and their riders" (See: [Generic Noun Phrases](#))

rider

This is a person who sits on a horse or travels in a chariot that a horse is pulling.

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [horse](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:2-3**UDB:**

² Yahweh is the one who makes me strong, and he is the one I sing about.

He is the one who has saved me.

He is my God, and I will praise him.

He is the one my father worshiped,
and I will tell others how great he is.

³ Yahweh is a warrior;

Yahweh is his name.

ULB:

² Yahweh is my strength and song,

and he has become my salvation.

This is my God, and I will praise him,
my father's God, and I will exalt him.

³ Yahweh is a warrior;

Yahweh is his name.

translationNotes**Yahweh is my strength**

Possible meanings are 1) "Yahweh is the one who gives me strength" or 2) "Yahweh is the strong one who protects me." (See: [Metonymy](#))

song

Moses calls Yahweh his song because Yahweh is the one he sings about. AT: "the one I sing about" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he has become my salvation

Moses calls God his salvation because God saved him. AT: "he has saved me" or "he is the one who saves me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Yahweh is a warrior

Moses calls God a warrior because God powerfully fought against the Egyptians and won. AT: “Yahweh is like a warrior” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [salvation](#)
- [God](#)
- [praise](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation](#)
- [name, names, named](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ He has thrown the king's chariots and his army into the sea;

The king's best officers all drowned in the Sea of Reeds.

⁵ The water covered them like a flood;

they sank to the bottom like a stone.

ULB:

⁴ He has thrown Pharaoh's chariots and army into the sea.

Pharaoh's chosen officers were drowned in the Sea of Reeds.

⁵ The depths covered them;

they went down into the depths like a stone.

translationNotes**He has thrown Pharaoh's chariots and army into the sea**

Moses sings about God causing the sea to cover Pharaoh's chariots and army as if God had thrown them into the sea. AT: "he has made the sea cover over Pharaoh's chariots and army" or "He has made Pharaoh's chariot riders and army drown in the sea" (See: [Metaphor](#))

they went down into the depths like a stone

Just as a stone does not float but sinks to the bottom of the sea, the enemy soldiers sank to the bottom of the sea. AT: "they went down into the deep water like a stone sinking to the bottom of the sea" (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ O Yahweh, your power is immense;
with that power, O Yahweh, you have crushed the enemy into pieces.

⁷ We honor you greatly because you have defeated your enemies.
Because you were angry with them, you have destroyed them
like a fire burns up straw.

⁸ You blew on the sea,
and the water piled up high;
the water stood up like two walls.
In the deepest part of the sea the water became thick,
as though it were frozen.

ULB:

⁶ Your right hand, Yahweh, is glorious in power;
your right hand, Yahweh, has shattered the enemy.

⁷ In great majesty you overthrew those who rose up against you.
You sent out your wrath; it consumed them like stubble.

⁸ By the blast of your nostrils the waters were piled up;
the flowing waters stood upright in a heap;
the deep water was congealed in the heart of the sea.

translationNotes**Your right hand, Yahweh, is glorious in power**

Moses speaks of God as if God had hands. The right hand refers to God's power or the things God does powerfully. AT: "Yahweh, your power is glorious" or "Yahweh, what you do is glorious in power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

your right hand, Yahweh, has shattered the enemy

Moses speaks of God as if God had hands. The right hand refers to God's power. AT: "Yahweh, your power has shattered the enemy" or "Yahweh, by your power you have shattered the enemy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

has shattered the enemy

Moses speaks of the enemy as if it were fragile and could be shattered like glass or pottery. AT: “has completely destroyed the enemy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

those who rose up against you

Rebelling against God is spoken of as rising up against him. AT: “those who rebelled against you” or “your enemies” (See: [Metaphor](#))

You sent out your wrath

Moses speaks of God’s wrath as if it were a servant that God sent out to do something. AT: “You showed your wrath” or “You acted according to your wrath” (See: [Personification](#))

it consumed them like stubble

Moses speaks of God’s wrath as if it were fire that could completely burn up things. His enemies were completely destroyed like stubble in a fire. AT: “it completely destroyed your enemies like a fire that burns up straw” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

By the blast of your nostrils

Moses speaks of God as if God had a nose, and he speaks of the wind as if God blew the wind from his nose. AT: “You blew on the sea and” (See: [Personification](#))

translationWords

- [right hand](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [majesty](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [consume](#)
- [water, waters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Our enemies said, 'We will go after them
and catch up to them.

We will draw our swords
and strike them.

After we defeat them,
we will divide up everything we take from them.'

¹⁰ But you blew on them with your breath,
and then the sea covered them.

They sank like lead in the big waves.

¹¹ Yahweh, among their gods, there is no god like you!
You are glorious, completely different from all that you made.

There is no one like you!

Everyone fears and praises you for all the miracles you do!

ULB:

⁹ The enemy said, 'I will pursue, I will overtake, I will share out the plunder;
my desire will be satisfied on them;

I will draw my sword; my hand will destroy them.'

¹⁰ But you blew with your wind, and the sea covered them;
they sank like lead in the mighty waters.

¹¹ Who is like you, Yahweh, among the gods?

Who is like you, majestic in holiness,
honored in praises, doing miracles?

translationNotes**my desire will be satisfied on them**

This can be expressed with an active form. AT: "I will satisfy my desire on them" or "I will take all I want from them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

my hand will destroy them

The enemies speak of destroying the Israelites by the power of their hands as if it were their hands that would destroy them. AT: “I will destroy them with my hand” (See: [Metonymy](#))

But you blew with your wind

Moses spoke about God making the wind blow as if God blew the wind through his nose or mouth. AT: “But you made the wind blow” (See: [Metaphor](#))

sank like lead in the mighty waters

Lead is a heavy metal that is commonly used to make things sink in water. The word “lead” here is used to show how fast God’s enemies were destroyed. AT: “sank as fast as lead in the deep turbulent waters” (See: [Simile](#))

Who is like you, Yahweh, among the gods?

Moses uses this question to show how great God is. AT: “O Yahweh, no one is like you among the gods!” or “Yahweh, none of the gods is like you!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Who is like you, ... doing miracles?

Moses uses this question to show how great God is. AT: No one is like you. No one is majestic in holiness as you are, no one is honored in praises as you are, and no one does miracles as you do!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- sword
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- mighty, might
- majesty
- holy, holiness
- praise
- miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:12-13**UDB:**

¹² When you stretched out your right hand,
the earth swallowed up our enemies!

¹³ You never stop loving us, the people that you have rescued;
with your power you are leading us to the land where you yourself live.

ULB:

¹² You reached out with your right hand,
and the earth swallowed them.

¹³ In your covenant loyalty you have led the people you have rescued.
In your strength you have led them to the holy place where you live.

translationNotes**with your right hand**

The phrase “right hand” represents the strong power of God. AT: “with your strong power” (See: [Metonymy](#))

You reached out with your right hand

Moses speaks about God causing something to happen as if God reached out with his hand. AT: “With your strong power you made it happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the earth swallowed them

Moses personifies the earth as if it could swallow or devour with its mouth. AT: “the earth devoured them” (See: [Personification](#))

translationWords

- [right hand](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ The people of other nations will hear what you have done,
and they will tremble.

The people in Philistia will be terrified.

¹⁵ The chiefs in Edom will be dismayed.

The leaders in Moab will be so afraid that they will shake. All those who live in Canaan will faint.

ULB:

¹⁴ The peoples will hear, and they will tremble;
terror will seize the inhabitants of Philistia.

¹⁵ Then the chiefs of Edom will fear;
the soldiers of Moab will shake;
all the inhabitants of Canaan will melt away.

translationNotes**tremble**

This means to shake because you are afraid.

terror will seize the inhabitants of Philistia

Moses speaks of terror as if it were a person that could forcefully grab hold of someone and make them extremely afraid. AT: “the inhabitants of Philistia will be afraid” (See: [Personification](#))

will melt away

Moses speaks of people becoming weak from their fear as melting away. AT: “will be weak from fear” or “will be afraid and faint” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [seize](#)
- [Philistines](#)

- [Edom, Edomite, Idumea](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ They will be terrified and fearful because of your great strength.
 But they will be as silent as stones
 until we, your people, march past them,
 the people you freed from being slaves in Egypt.

ULB:

¹⁶ Terror and dread will fall on them.
 Because of your arm's power, they will become as still as a stone
 until your people pass by, Yahweh—
 until the people you have rescued pass by.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Moses continues to sing about how the people of other nations will feel when they see God's people.

Terror and dread will fall on them

These two words mean that fear will come upon them. AT: "Fear will come upon them" (See: [Doublet](#))

dread

Dread is extreme fear or anxiety about something that is going to happen or might happen.

Because of your arm's power

God's arm represents his great strength. AT: "Because of your great strength" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they will become as still as a stone

Possible meanings are 1) "They will be silent like stone" or 2) "They will be motionless as stone" (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- [terror, terrify](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ You will bring us into the promised land of Canaan.

You will enable us to live on your hill,

in the place that you, Yahweh, have chosen to be your home,

in the holy place, our Lord,

that you yourself will build.

¹⁸ O Yahweh, you will rule forever!"

ULB:

¹⁷ You will bring them and plant them on the mountain of your inheritance,

the place, Yahweh, that you have made to live in,

the sanctuary, our Lord, that your hands have built.

¹⁸ Yahweh will reign forever and ever."

translationNotes**You will bring them**

Where God would bring them can be stated clearly. Since Moses was not already in Canaan, some languages would use "take" rather than "bring." AT: "You will take your people to Canaan" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Go and Come](#))

plant them on the mountain

Moses speaks about God giving his people the land to live in as if they were a tree that God was planting. AT: "settle them on the mountain" or "let them live on the mountain" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the mountain of your inheritance

This refers to Mount Zion in the land of Canaan.

of your inheritance

Moses speaks about God promising to give his people the mountain forever as if he were giving it to them as an inheritance. AT: "that you have given them as an inheritance" (See: [Metaphor](#))

that your hands have built

The phrase “your hands” refers to God’s power. AT: “that you have built by your power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Predictive Past](#))

translationWords

- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [reign](#)
- [forever](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ When the king's horses and chariots and horsemen tried to go through the sea, Yahweh caused the water to come back and cover them. But the Israelite people walked through the middle of the sea on dry ground. ²⁰ Then Miriam, who was Aaron's older sister and a prophetess, picked up her tambourine, and went out dancing with all the other women who had tambourines. ²¹ Miriam sang to Yahweh this song:

”Sing to Yahweh

because he has triumphed gloriously over his enemies.

He has thrown the horses and their riders into the sea.”

ULB:

¹⁹ For Pharaoh's horses went with his chariots and horsemen into the sea. Yahweh brought back the waters of the sea on them. But the Israelites walked on dry land in the middle of the sea. ²⁰ Miriam the prophetess, sister of Aaron, picked up a tambourine, and all the women went out with tambourines, dancing along with her. ²¹ Miriam sang to them:

”Sing to Yahweh, for he has triumphed gloriously.

The horse and his rider he has thrown into the sea.”

translationNotes**Miriam ... Aaron**

Miriam was the older sister of Moses and Aaron. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

tambourine

This is a musical instrument like a small drum that also has pieces of metal around the side that make a sound when shaken. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

he has triumphed gloriously

It can be stated explicitly over whom Yahweh triumphed. See how you translated this in [Exodus 15:1](#). AT: “he has achieved a glorious victory over the army of Egypt” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The horse and his rider he has thrown into the sea

Miriam sang about God causing the sea to cover and drown the horse and rider as if God had thrown them into the sea. See how you translated this in [Exodus 15:1](#). AT: “He has made the horse and rider drown in the sea” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:22-23**UDB:**

²² Then Moses led the Israelite people away from the Sea of Reeds. They went to the wilderness of Shur. They walked for three days, but they could not find any water. ²³ So they went on and came to a place named Marah. There was water there, but they could not drink it because it was bitter. That is why they named the place Marah, which is the Hebrew word that means ‘bitter.’

ULB:

²² Then Moses led Israel onward from the Sea of Reeds. They went out into the wilderness of Shur. They traveled for three days into the wilderness and found no water. ²³ Then they came to Marah, but they could not drink the water there because it was bitter. So they called that place Marah.

translationNotes**Moses led Israel**

The word “Israel” represents the people of Israel. AT: “Moses led the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

wilderness of Shur ... Marah

We do not know the exact locations of these places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:24-26**UDB:**

²⁴ The people complained to Moses, saying, “What are we going to drink?” ²⁵ So Moses prayed to Yahweh. Then Yahweh showed him a tree. So he took one of the branches and threw it into the water, and the water became good to drink. There at Marah, Yahweh gave them a fixed rule by which to live. He also tested them there to determine if they would obey him. ²⁶ He said, “I am Yahweh, your God. If you will obey me when I speak to you and do those things that are right to me, and listen to all the things that I tell you, I will keep you from all the diseases that I brought on the Egyptians. Do not forget that I am Yahweh, the one who heals you.”

ULB:

²⁴ So the people complained to Moses and said, “What can we drink?” ²⁵ Moses cried out to Yahweh, and Yahweh showed him a tree. Moses threw it into the water, and the water became sweet to drink. It was there that Yahweh gave them a strict law, and it was there that he tested them. ²⁶ He said, “If you carefully listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, and do what is right in his eyes, and if you give ear to his commands and obey all his laws—I will put on you none of the diseases that I put on the Egyptians, for I am Yahweh who heals you.”

translationNotes**complained to Moses and said**

“were unhappy and told Moses” or “angrily told Moses”

the voice of Yahweh your God

Yahweh is speaking about his own voice. His voice represents what he says. AT: “my voice” or “what I say” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#) and [Metonymy](#))

do what is right in his eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. AT: “do what Yahweh considers to be right”(See: [Metaphor](#))

I will put on you none of the diseases

God speaks of causing people to have diseases as putting diseases on them. AT: “I will not cause any of you to have the diseases” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- law, principle
- test, tests, tested
- voice
- God
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- obey, obedient, obedience
- Egypt, Egyptian
- heal, cure

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 15:27**UDB:**

²⁷ After they left Marah, they came to a place named Elim. There were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees there. So they camped there.

ULB:

²⁷ Then the people came to Elim, where there were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees. They camped there by the water.

translationNotes**Elim**

This is an oasis in the desert, a place with water and shade trees. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twelve

“12” (See: [Numbers](#))

seventy

“70” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [water, waters](#)
- [palm](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Complaints

The Israelites complained about the amount of food Yahweh gave them, even when he miraculously provided their food for them. This is intended to show their ungratefulness and their sinful view of Yahweh. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Prohibition against storing food

The people were not allowed to store the food, called manna, they were provided with. This is because they were to trust in Yahweh to provide for their needs every day. (See: [trust](#), [trusts](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Sabbath

This is the first recorded celebration of the Sabbath rest. (See: [Sabbath](#))

Ark of the covenant

Although the covenant has not yet been made, it is referenced in [Exodus 16:34](#). This is probably done either in anticipation of the building of the ark or as an editorial comment made by Moses after these events. (See: [covenant](#), [covenants](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Wilderness of Sin

Sin is the name of a part of the Sinai Wilderness. It is not the description of a place, and it has nothing to do with sinning. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 16:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 16:1-3**UDB:**

¹ They left Elim, and all the Israelite people came to the wilderness of Sin between Elim and Sinai Mountain. That was on the fifteenth day of the second month after they left Egypt. ² There in the wilderness, the Israelite people complained against Aaron and Moses. ³ They said to them, “We wish that Yahweh had killed us in Egypt! There we had meat to eat and all the bread that we wanted. But you have brought us into this desert in order that we will all starve to death!”

ULB:

¹ The people journeyed on from Elim, and all the community of Israelites came to the wilderness of Sin, which is between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month after their departure from the land of Egypt. ² The whole community of Israelites complained against Moses and Aaron in the wilderness. ³ The Israelites said to them, “If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.”

translationNotes**wilderness of Sin**

The word “Sin” here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. It is not the English word “sin.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

on the fifteenth day of the second month

This time coincides with the end of April and the beginning of May on Western calendars. AT: “on day 15 of the second month” (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

The whole community of Israelites

“All the Israelites.” This is a generalization. Moses and Aaron did not complain. AT: “The Israelites” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

complained

“were angry and spoke”

If only we had died

This is a way of saying that they wished that they had died. AT: “We wish that we had died”

by Yahweh's hand

The phrase “Yahweh's hand” represents Yahweh's action. AT: “by Yahweh's action” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
- [day](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Yahweh said to Moses, "Listen to what I am going to do. I am going to send something from the sky that will take the place of bread for you. When I do that, the people must go out of their tents every day and gather enough to eat on that day. When I do that, I will find out whether they will obey me or not. ⁵ On the sixth day after I start doing that, they will be able to gather twice as much as on the other days and not have to gather any on the seventh day. Then they can prepare it to eat it."

ULB:

⁴ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "I will rain down bread from heaven for you. The people will go out and gather a day's portion every day so that I may test them to see whether or not they will walk in my law. ⁵ It will come about on the sixth day, that they will gather twice as much as what they gathered every day before, and they will cook what they bring in."

translationNotes**I will rain down bread from heaven for you**

God speaks of food coming down from heaven as if it were rain. AT: "I will make bread come down from heaven like rain" or "I will make bread fall to you from the sky" (See: [Metaphor](#))

bread

God speaks of the food that he will send as if it were bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. AT: "food" or "food like bread" (See: [Metaphor](#))

walk in my law

God speaks of obeying his law as walking in it. AT: "obey my law" or "live according to my law" (See: [Metaphor](#))

my law

"my command"

It will come about on the sixth day, that they

"It will happen on the sixth day that they" or "On the sixth day they"

on the sixth day

“on day 6” (See: [Numbers](#))

twice

“two times” or “2 times” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [bread](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [test, tests, tested](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [law, principle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ So Aaron and Moses said to all the Israelite people, "This evening you will know that it was Yahweh, not us, who brought you out of Egypt. ⁷ Tomorrow morning you will see how great Yahweh is because he has heard how you have complained against him. He is the one to whom you have really complained because we are just his servants." ⁸ Then Moses also said, "Each evening Yahweh will give you meat to eat, and each morning he will give you something that will take the place of bread because he has heard what you have complained about. Yahweh is the one to whom you have really complained, not us. We are just his servants."

ULB:

⁶ Then Moses and Aaron said to all the people of Israel, "In the evening you will know that it is Yahweh who has brought you out from the land of Egypt. ⁷ In the morning you will see Yahweh's glory, for he hears your complaining against him. Who are we for you to complain against us?" ⁸ Moses also said, "You will know this when Yahweh gives you meat in the evening and bread in the morning to the full—for he has heard the complaints that you speak against him. Who are Aaron and I? Your complaints are not against us; they are against Yahweh."

translationNotes**Who are we for you to complain against us?**

Moses and Aaron used this question to show the people that it was foolish to complain against them. AT: "We are not powerful enough for you to complain against us." or "It is foolish to complain against us, because we cannot do what you want." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

bread

Moses speaks of the food that God will send as if it were bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. See how you translated it in [Exodus 16:4](#). AT: "food" or "food like bread" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Who are Aaron and I?

Moses used this question to show the people that he and Aaron did not have the power to give them what they wanted. AT: "Aaron and I cannot give you what you want." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Your complaints are not against us; they are against Yahweh

The people were complaining against Moses and Aaron, who were Yahweh's servants. So by complaining against them, the people were really complaining against Yahweh. AT: Your complaints are not really against us; they are against Yahweh, because we are his servants" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [glory, glorious](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:9-12**UDB:**

⁹ Then Moses said to Aaron, “Tell all the Israelite people, ‘Come and stand here in the presence of Yahweh because he has heard what you have been complaining about.’”

¹⁰ So Aaron told them that. As Aaron was talking to all the Israelite people, they looked toward the desert and were surprised to see the dazzling light of Yahweh in the cloud that had been leading them. ¹¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, ¹² “I have heard what the Israelite people have been complaining about. So say to them, ‘At twilight, you will have meat to eat, and tomorrow morning you will have something that will take the place of bread. You will have all you want of it to eat. Then you will know that I am Yahweh, your God.’”

ULB:

⁹ Moses said to Aaron, “Say to all the community of the people of Israel, ‘Come near before Yahweh, for he has heard your complaints.’” ¹⁰ It came about, as Aaron spoke to the whole community of the people of Israel, that they looked toward the wilderness, and, behold, Yahweh’s glory appeared in the cloud. ¹¹ Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ¹² “I have heard the complaints of the people of Israel. Speak to them and say, ‘In the evening you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.’”

translationNotes**It came about**

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. The important event here is the people seeing Yahweh’s glory. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

behold

The word “behold” here shows that the people saw something interesting.

bread

God speaks of the food that he will send as if it were bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. See how you translated it in [Exodus 16:4](#). AT: “food” or “food like bread” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)

- [Aaron](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ That evening quails appeared, and there were so many that they covered the campsite. The next morning there was something like small drops of water all around the campsite. ¹⁴ When the water dried up, on the ground there was a thin layer of something that looked like small white flakes. It looked like ice laying on the ground. ¹⁵ When the Israelite people saw it, since they had never seen it before and did not know what it was, they said to each other, “What is it?” Moses replied to them, “It is something Yahweh has given you to eat, to take the place of bread.

ULB:

¹³ It came about in the evening that quails came up and covered the camp. In the morning the dew lay round about the camp. ¹⁴ When the dew was gone, there on the surface of the wilderness were thin flakes like frost on the ground. ¹⁵ When the people of Israel saw it, they said one to another, “What is it?” They did not know what it was. Moses said to them, “It is the bread that Yahweh has given you to eat.

translationNotes**It came about ... that**

This phrase is used here to mark an important part of the events. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

quails

These are small, plump birds. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

like frost

The original readers knew what frost is like, so this phrase would help them understand what the flakes were like. Frost is frozen dew that forms on the ground. It is very fine. AT: “that looked like frost” or “that was fine like frost” (See: [Simile](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

bread

Moses speaks of the food that God sent as if it were bread. The Israelites would eat this food every day, just as they had eaten bread every day before this. See how you translated it in [Exodus 16:4](#). AT: “food” or “food like bread” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [bread](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ This is what Yahweh has commanded: Each of you should gather as much as you need to eat. Gather two liters for each person who lives in your tents.”

¹⁷ So that is what the Israelite people did. Some gathered more and some gathered less. ¹⁸ But when they measured what they had gathered, those who had gathered a lot did not have anything left over. Those who had gathered less still had enough to eat. Each person gathered just enough.

ULB:

¹⁶ This is the command that Yahweh has given: ‘You must gather, each one of you, the amount you need to eat, an omer for each person of the number of your people. This is how you will gather it: Gather enough to eat for every person who lives in your tent.’” ¹⁷ The people of Israel did so. Some gathered more, some gathered less. ¹⁸ When they measured it with an omer measure, those who had gathered much had nothing left over, and those who had gathered little had no lack. Each person gathered enough to meet their need.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Moses continues telling the people about the food that God was providing for them.

omer

“two liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

translationWords

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [tent](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:22-23**UDB:**

²² On the sixth day after they started gathering it, each person was able to gather four liters, which was twice as much as they gathered on the other days. When the leaders of the people came to Moses and told him about that, ²³ Moses said to them, “This is what Yahweh has told you: Tomorrow will be a day for you to rest. It will be a day for Yahweh. So today, bake or boil what you will need for today and for tomorrow. Whatever is left this evening, you should put aside and keep it to eat tomorrow.”

ULB:

²² It came about that on the sixth day they gathered twice as much bread, two omers for each person. All the leaders of the community came and told this to Moses. ²³ He said to them, “This is what Yahweh has said: ‘Tomorrow is a solemn rest, a holy Sabbath in Yahweh’s honor. Bake what you want to bake, and boil what you want to boil. All that remains over, set it aside for yourselves until morning.’”

translationNotes**It came about that**

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. Verses 16:22-30 tell about what the people did concerning the manna on the sixth and seventh days of the week. If your language has a way for marking this as a new part of the story, you could consider using it here.

on the sixth day

“on day 6” (See: [Numbers](#))

twice

“two times” or “2 times” (See: [Numbers](#))

bread

This refers to the bread that appeared as thin flakes on the ground each morning.

solemn

“serious” or “quiet and thoughtful”

translationWords

- [bread](#)
- [Jewish leaders, Jewish authorities, religious leaders](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [rest](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Sabbath](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ So they did what Moses told them. What was left over, they kept until the next day. It did not spoil and did not get maggots in it! ²⁵ On that day, Moses said, "Eat today what you have saved from yesterday because today is a day of rest to Yahweh. Today you will not find any of that food outside.

ULB:

²⁴ So they set it aside until morning, as Moses had instructed. It did not become foul, nor was there any worm in it. ²⁵ Moses said, "Eat that food today, for today is a day reserved as a Sabbath to honor Yahweh. Today you will not find it in the fields.

translationNotes**did not become foul**

"did not smell rotten"

today is a day reserved as a Sabbath to honor Yahweh

"today is a Sabbath and is to be used only for honoring Yahweh"

translationWords

- [Sabbath](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Every week, you must gather it for six days; but on the seventh day, which will be a day of rest for you, you will not find any.” ²⁷ On the seventh day, some of the people went outside their tents to gather some of that food, but there was none.

ULB:

²⁶ You will gather it during six days, but the seventh day is the Sabbath. On the Sabbath there will be no manna.” ²⁷ It came about on the seventh day that some of the people went out to gather manna, but they found none.

translationNotes**but the seventh day**

“but on day seven” (See: [Numbers](#))

manna

This was the name the Israelites gave to the bread that Yahweh caused to appear for them each morning.

they found none

“they did not find any manna”

translationWords

- [Sabbath](#)
- [manna](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ Then Yahweh told Moses to say this to the people: "Yahweh is angry because for a long time you people have refused to do all the things that he has told you to do! ²⁹ Listen! Yahweh has given you a day of rest. So on the sixth day of each week, he will be giving you enough of this food for two days. Each of you should stay in his tent and do no work on the seventh day!" ³⁰ So the people rested on the seventh day.

ULB:

²⁸ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "How long will you refuse to keep my commandments and my laws? ²⁹ See, Yahweh has given you the Sabbath. So on the sixth day he is giving you bread for two days. Each of you must stay in his own place; no one must go out from his place on the seventh day." ³⁰ So the people rested on the seventh day.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh speaks to Moses, but the word "you" refers to the people of Israel in general.

How long will you refuse to keep my commandments and my laws?

God used this question to scold the people because they did not obey his laws. AT: "You people still do not keep my commandments and laws!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to keep my commandments and my laws

"to obey my commandments and my laws"

Yahweh has given you the Sabbath

Yahweh speaks about teaching people to rest on the Sabbath as if the Sabbath were a gift. AT: "I, Yahweh, have taught you to rest on the Sabbath" (See: [Metaphor](#))

sixth day ... two days ... seventh day

"day 6 ... 2 days ... day 7" (See: [Numbers](#))

bread

This refers to the bread that appeared as thin flakes on the ground each morning.

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [rest](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ The Israelite people called this food ‘manna,’ which sounds like the Hebrew word that means ‘what is it?’ It looked white, like the color of coriander seeds, and it tasted like thin wafers made with honey. ³² Moses said, “This is what Yahweh has told you: ‘You must keep two liters of it for all future generations so that they can see the food that took the place of bread that I gave to your ancestors when I brought them out of Egypt.’”

ULB:

³¹ The people of Israel called that food “manna.” It was white like coriander seed, and its taste was like wafers made with honey. ³² Moses said, “This is what Yahweh has commanded: ‘Let an omer of manna be kept throughout your people’s generations so that your descendants might see the bread with which I fed you in the wilderness, after I brought you out from the land of Egypt.’”

translationNotes**manna**

This was the name the Israelites gave to the bread that Yahweh caused to appear for them each morning. See how you translated this in [Exodus 16:26](#).

coriander seed

Coriander is also known as cilantro. People dry the seeds and grind them into a powder and put it in food to give it flavor. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

wafers

very thin biscuits or crackers

omer

“2 liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

bread

This refers to the bread that appeared as thin flakes on the ground each morning.

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [manna](#)
- [seed, semen](#)
- [honey, honeycomb](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [generation](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 16:33-36**UDB:**

³³ And he said to Aaron, “Take a jar, and put two liters of manna in it. Then put it in a place where Yahweh can see it. It is to be kept like that for all future generations.” ³⁴ As Yahweh had commanded Moses, Aaron put the jar in front of the box that contained the stone slabs on which the Ten Commandments were written. ³⁵ The Israelite people ate manna every day for forty years until they came to the border of the land of Canaan. ³⁶ Now two liters is a tenth of an ephah.

ULB:

³³ Moses said to Aaron, “Take a pot and put an omer of manna into it. Preserve it before Yahweh to be kept throughout the people’s generations.” ³⁴ As Yahweh commanded Moses, Aaron stored it beside the covenant decrees in the ark. ³⁵ The people of Israel ate manna forty years until they came to inhabited land. They ate it until they came to the borders of the land of Canaan. ³⁶ Now an omer is a tenth of an ephah.

translationNotes**Now an omer is a tenth of an ephah**

An omer and an ephah are both containers for measuring volume. The original readers would have known how much an ephah was. This sentence would help them know how much an omer was. For languages that do not use fractions, this can be reworded. AT: “Now ten omers equal one ephah” (See: [Biblical Volume](#) and [Fractions](#))

an omer

“two liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [generation](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [Canaan, Canaanite](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 17 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Moses uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. The purpose of these questions is to convince people of their sin. Likewise, the people's rhetorical question showed their ignorance. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Wilderness of Sin

Sin is the name of a part of the Sinai Wilderness. It is not the description of a place, and it has nothing to do with sinning. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 17:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 17:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Obeying what Yahweh commanded, all the Israelite people moved from the wilderness of Sin. They traveled from one place to another. They camped at a place called Rephidim, but there was no water there for the people to drink. ² So the people complained to Moses again, saying, “Give us water to drink!” Moses replied to them, “Why are you speaking against me? And why are you trying to test whether Yahweh has the power to give you what you need?” ³ But the people were very thirsty, and they continued to complain to Moses. They were saying, “Why did you bring us up out of Egypt? Did you bring us here to cause us and our children and animals to die from thirst?”

ULB:

¹ The whole community of the Israelites journeyed from the wilderness of Sin, following Yahweh’s instructions. They camped at Rephidim, but there was no water for the people to drink. ² So the people blamed Moses for their situation and said, “Give us water to drink.” Moses said, “Why do you quarrel with me? Why do you test Yahweh?” ³ The people were very thirsty, and they complained against Moses. They said, “Why have you brought us up out of Egypt? To kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst?”

translationNotes**wilderness of Sin**

The word “Sin” here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. It is not the English word “sin.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 16:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rephidim

This means “the resting place,” a place to rest on long journeys through the wilderness. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Why do you quarrel with me? Why do you test Yahweh?

Moses uses these questions to scold the people. AT: “You should not quarrel with me! You should not test Yahweh!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

To kill us and our children and our cattle with thirst?

The people use this question to accuse Moses of wanting to kill them. AT: “You only brought us out here to kill us and our children and cattle by not letting us have any water to drink!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [test, tests, tested](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 17 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 17 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 17:4-7**UDB:**

⁴ So Moses prayed to Yahweh. He said, “How shall I deal with these people? They are almost ready to kill me by throwing stones at me!” ⁵ Yahweh said to Moses, “Lead the people and walk in front of them. Take some of the elders of the Israelite people with you. Carry in your hand the staff you used to strike the Nile River. ⁶ Listen to me! I will stand in front of you on top of a large rock at the foot of Mount Sinai. Strike the rock with your stick. When you do that, water for the people to drink will flow out of the rock.” Moses did what God had said, and the elders were there with him when the water flowed out of the rock. ⁷ Moses gave that place two names in the Hebrew language—Masseh, which means ‘testing,’ and Meribah, which means ‘complaining.’ He gave it the name Massah because the Israelite people were testing Yahweh, saying “Is Yahweh really among us and able to help us, or not?” and Moses gave it the name Meribah because they were complaining all the time to him.

ULB:

⁴ Then Moses cried out to Yahweh, “What should I do with this people? They are almost ready to stone me.” ⁵ Yahweh said to Moses, “Go on ahead of the people, and take with you some elders of Israel. Take with you the staff with which you struck the river, and go. ⁶ I will stand before you there on the rock at Horeb, and you will strike the rock. Water will come out of it for the people to drink.” Then Moses did so in the sight of the elders of Israel. ⁷ He called that place Massah and Meribah because of the Israelites’ complaining, and because they had tested the Lord by saying, “Is Yahweh among us or not?”

translationNotes**Massah**

a place in the desert whose name means “testing” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meribah

a place in the desert whose name means “complaining” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- stone, stones, stoning
- elder
- staff
- Horeb
- call, calls, calling, called
- Lord

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 17 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 17 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 17:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ Then the people of Amalek came and fought against the Israelite people at Rephidim. ⁹ Moses said to Joshua, “Choose some men to go out and fight against the people of Amalek tomorrow. I will stand on the top of the hill, holding the staff that God told me to carry.” ¹⁰ So Joshua obeyed Moses. He took some men to fight against the people of Amalek. While they were fighting, Aaron, Hur, and Moses went up to the top of the hill so that they could see the whole battle area.

ULB:

⁸ Then an army of the Amalek people came and attacked Israel at Rephidim. ⁹ So Moses said to Joshua, “Choose some men and go out. Fight with Amalek. Tomorrow I will stand on top of the hill with the staff of God in my hand.” ¹⁰ So Joshua fought Amalek as Moses had instructed, while Moses, Aaron, and Hur went up to the top of the hill.

translationNotes**Rephidim**

This was the name of a place in the desert. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

So Joshua fought Amalek

Joshua represents himself and the Israelites that he led into battle. AT: “So Joshua and the men he chose fought against the Amalekites” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hur

Hur was a friend of Moses and Aaron. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Amalek, Amalekite](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 17 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 17 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 17:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ Whenever Moses lifted up his arms, the Israelite men started to win the battle; whenever he lowered his arms, the people of Amalek started to win. ¹² But Moses' arms became tired. So Aaron and Hur rolled a large stone for him to sit on. While he was sitting on it, those two held up his arms, one man on either side of him. In that way, they kept his arms lifted up until the sun went down. ¹³ In this way Joshua and the men with him defeated the people of Amalek in battle.

ULB:

¹¹ While Moses was holding his hands up, Israel was winning; when he let his hands rest, Amalek would begin to win. ¹² When Moses' hands became heavy, Aaron and Hur took a stone and put it under him for him to sit on. At the same time, Aaron and Hur held his hands up, one person on one side of him, and the other person on the other side. So Moses' hands were held steady until the sun went down. ¹³ So Joshua defeated the people of Amalek with the sword.

translationNotes**Israel was winning ... Amalek would begin to win**

The words "Israel" and "Amalek" represent the fighters from those groups. AT: "the Israelite fighters were winning ... the Amalekite fighters would begin to win" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

hands became heavy

The author writes of Moses' arms becoming tired as if his hands became heavy. AT: "arms became tired" (See: [Metonymy](#))

with the sword

The sword represents battle. AT: "in battle" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [rest](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [sword](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 17 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 17 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 17:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Write an account of this battle and then read it to Joshua. Also write that I will completely destroy the people of Amalek.” ¹⁵ Then Moses built a stone altar there and named it “Yahweh is my flag.” ¹⁶ He said, “A promise was made in front of the throne of Yahweh: Yahweh will fight against the people of Amalek forever!”

ULB:

¹⁴ Yahweh said to Moses, “Write this in a book and read it in Joshua’s hearing, because I will completely blot out the memory of Amalek from under the skies.” ¹⁵ Then Moses built an altar and he called it “Yahweh is my banner.” ¹⁶ He said, “For a hand was lifted up to the throne of Yahweh—that Yahweh will wage war with Amalek from generation to generation.”

translationNotes**I will completely blot out the memory of Amalek**

God speaks of destroying Amalek as if he were removing people’s memory of Amalek. When a group of people is completely destroyed, there is nothing to remind people about them. AT: “I will completely destroy Amalek” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a hand was lifted up

People would raise their hand when they made a promise or pledge, so raising the hand represents making a promise. AT: “a promise was made” (See: [Metonymy](#))

a hand was lifted up

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh lifted up his hand” or “Yahweh made a solemn promise” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Amalek

This refers to the Amalekites. AT: Amalekites” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Joshua](#)

- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [generation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 17 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 17 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Leadership lessons

Jethro taught Moses an important leadership lesson in this chapter. Many scholars look at this chapter for important leadership lessons. Moses delegated some of his responsibilities to other godly men so that he would not become worn out by all the demands made of him. (See: [godly](#), [godliness](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 18:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 18:1-4**UDB:**

¹ Jethro, who was the priest for the people of Midian, and who was also Moses' father-in-law, heard about all that God had done for the Israelite people. He heard about how Yahweh had brought them out of Egypt. ² Moses had sent his wife Zipporah and his two sons back home when he was returning to Egypt. But now Jethro came to him, ³ bringing Zipporah and her sons. One son was named Gershom, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "foreigner" because Moses had said, "I have been a foreigner living in another land." ⁴ Her other son was named Eliezer, which sounds like the Hebrew word that means "God helps me" because Moses had said, "God, whom my father worshiped, has helped me and saved me from being killed by the king of Egypt."

ULB:

¹ Jethro, the priest of Midian, Moses' father-in-law, heard of all that God had done for Moses and for Israel his people. He heard that Yahweh had brought Israel out of Egypt. ² Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, took Zipporah, Moses' wife, after he had sent her home, ³ and her two sons; the name of the one son was Gershom, for Moses had said, "I have been a foreigner in a foreign land." ⁴ The name of the other was Eliezer, for Moses had said, "My ancestor's God was my help. He rescued me from Pharaoh's sword."

translationNotes**Moses' father-in-law**

This refers to the father of the wife of Moses.

took Zipporah, Moses' wife ... and her two sons

Possible meanings are 1) Jethro took Zipporah and her two sons to Moses, or 2) Jethro had earlier welcomed back Zipporah and her two sons.

after he had sent her home

This is something Moses had done earlier. The full meaning of the can be made explicit. AT: "after Moses had sent her home to her parents" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Gershom

This is a son of Moses and Zipporah, whose name means "foreigner." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Eliezer

This is a son of Moses and Zipporah, whose name means “God is the one who helps me.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pharaoh's sword

This represents being killed by Pharaoh or Pharaoh's army. AT: “being killed by Pharaoh” or “being killed by Pharaoh's army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Jethro, Reuel](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Midian, Midianites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [send, send out, sent](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [ancestor, father, forefather](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)
- [sword](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 18 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 18:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ While Moses was camped with the Israelite people in the wilderness near Sinai, God's holy mountain, Jethro came to him, bringing along Moses' wife and two sons. ⁶ Jethro had sent a message to Moses, "I, your father-in-law, Jethro, am coming to see you. I am bringing your wife and her two sons!"

ULB:

⁵ Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, came with Moses' sons and his wife to Moses in the wilderness where he was camped at the mountain of God. ⁶ He said to Moses, "I, your father-in-law Jethro, am coming to you with your wife and her two sons."

translationNotes**where he was camped**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "where he camped with the Israelites" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Jethro, Reuel](#)
- [son, sons](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 18 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 18:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ So Moses went out of the campsite to meet his father-in-law. He bowed before him and kissed him on the cheek. They both asked each other, “Have you been well?” Then they went into Moses’ tent. ⁸ Moses told Jethro everything that Yahweh had done to the king and all the other people in Egypt in order to help the Israelite people. He also told him about the troubles they had experienced on the way, and about how Yahweh had helped them.

ULB:

⁷ Moses went out to meet his father-in-law, bowed down, and kissed him. They asked about each other’s welfare and then went into the tent. ⁸ Moses told his father-in-law all that Yahweh had done to Pharaoh and the Egyptians for Israel’s sake, about all the hardships that had come to them along the way, and how Yahweh had rescued them.

translationNotes**bowed down, and kissed him**

These symbolic acts were the normal way that people showed great respect and devotion in that culture. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

for Israel’s sake

The word “Israel” represents the Israelite people. AT: “in order to help the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

all the hardships that had come to them

Moses writes of hardships happening to them as if hardships had come to them. AT: “all the hardships that had happened to them” or “all the hardships they had experienced” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [kiss](#)
- [tent](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Pharaoh, king of Egypt](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 18 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 18:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Jethro was happy when he heard all that Yahweh had done for the Israelite people. ¹⁰ He said, "Praise Yahweh, who has rescued you from the power of the Egyptian army, and out of the power of the king of the Egyptians (who is called Pharaoh), and has set the Israelites free from the control of the Egyptian people! ¹¹ Now I know that Yahweh is greater than all other gods because he rescued you from the power of the proud Egyptians when they were causing you to suffer."

ULB:

⁹ Jethro rejoiced over all the good that Yahweh had done for Israel, in that he had rescued them from the hand of the Egyptians. ¹⁰ Jethro said, "May Yahweh be praised, for he has rescued you from the hand of the Egyptians and from the hand of Pharaoh, and delivered the people from the hand of the Egyptians. ¹¹ Now I know that Yahweh is greater than all the gods, because when the Egyptians treated the Israelites arrogantly, God rescued his people."

translationNotes**the hand of the Egyptians ... the hand of Pharaoh**

The hand represents the power of someone to do something. AT: "the power of the Egyptians ... the power of Pharaoh" or "what the Egyptians were doing to you ... what Pharaoh was doing to you" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [rejoice](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 18 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 18:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ The next day, Moses sat down at the place where he settled disputes among the people. The people were bringing their disputes to Moses from the morning until the evening. ¹⁴ When Jethro saw everything that Moses was doing for the people, he said, “Why are you doing all this for the people? Why are you doing this by yourself, and why are all the people standing around you from the morning until the evening, asking you to make decisions for them?”

ULB:

¹³ On the next day Moses sat down to judge the people. The people stood around him from morning until evening. ¹⁴ When Moses’ father-in-law saw all that he did for the people, he said, “What is this that you are doing with the people? Why is it that you sit alone and all the people stand about you from morning until evening?”

translationNotes**What is this that you are doing with the people?**

Jethro uses this question to show Moses that what he was doing was not good. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “You should not be doing all of this for the people!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why is it that you sit alone ... from morning until evening?

Jethro used this question to show Moses that he was doing too much. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “You should not sit alone ... from morning till evening!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you sit alone

The word “sit” here is a metonym for “judge.” Judges would sit while they listened to people’s complaints. AT: “you judge alone” or “you are the only one who judges the people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 18 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 18:17-20**UDB:**

¹⁷ Jethro said to him, "What you are doing is not good for you or for the people. ¹⁸ You and these people will wear yourselves out! This work is too much for you. You are not able to do it by yourself. ¹⁹ Now listen to what I will tell you to do. If you do what I suggest, God will help you. You should continue to speak to God and tell him about the people's disputes. ²⁰ You should also teach them what God has commanded and instructed you. You should also explain to them how they should conduct their lives and the things that they should do.

ULB:

¹⁷ Moses' father-in-law said to him, "What you are doing is not very good. ¹⁸ You will surely wear yourselves out, you and the people who are with you. This burden is too heavy for you. You are not able to do it by yourself. ¹⁹ Listen to me. I will give you advice, and God will be with you, because you are the people's representative to God, and you bring their disputes to him. ²⁰ You must teach them his statutes and laws. You must show them the way to walk and the work to do.

translationNotes**You will surely wear yourselves out**

"you will surely make yourselves very tired"

This burden is too heavy for you

Jethro speaks of the hard work that Moses is doing as if it were a physical burden that Moses was carrying. AT: "This work is too much for you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

advice

"guidance" or "instruction"

God will be with you

Jethro speaks of God helping Moses as if God would be with Moses. AT: "God will help you" or "God will give you wisdom" (See: [Metaphor](#))

you bring their disputes to him

Jethro speaks of Moses telling God about their disputes as if Moses were bringing their disputes to God. AT: "you tell God about their disputes" or "you tell God what they are arguing about" (See: [Metaphor](#))

You must show them the way to walk

Jethro speaks of living or behaving like walking. AT: “You must show them how to live” or “You must show them how to behave” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [burden](#)
- [law, principle](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 18 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 18:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ In addition, you should choose some other men to help you. Choose men who have respect for God and who will not accept bribes. Appoint some of them to make decisions for groups of ten people, some for groups of fifty people, some for groups of a hundred people, and some for groups of a thousand people. ²² Allow them to serve to settle disputes for the people. The difficult matters they can bring to you, but the matters that are not difficult, they can decide themselves. That will make the work easier for you as they help you do that work. ²³ If you do that, and if God agrees, you will be able to endure the stress, and all the people will be able to go home peacefully with their disputes settled quickly.”

ULB:

²¹ Furthermore, you must choose capable men from all the people, men who honor God, men of truth who hate unjust gain. You must put them over people, to be leaders in charge of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and of tens. ²² They will judge the people in all routine cases, but the difficult cases they will bring to you. As for all the small cases, they can judge those themselves. In that way it will be easier for you, and they will carry the burden with you. ²³ If you do this, and if God commands you to do so, then you will be able to endure, and the entire people will be able to go home satisfied.”

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Jethro continues speaking to Moses.

Furthermore, you must choose

“In addition, you must choose” or “You must also choose”

You must put them over people

Jethro speaks of giving them authority over people as putting them over people. AT: You must give them authority over people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

leaders in charge of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and of tens

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of people in each group. AT: “leaders in charge of groups of 1,000 people, groups of 100 people, groups of 50 people, and groups of 10 people” or 2) these numbers are not exact, but represent groups of people of various sizes. AT: “leaders in charge of very small groups, small groups, large groups, and very large groups” (See: [Numbers](#))

routine cases

“the simple cases”

the difficult cases they will bring to you

Jethro speaks of telling Moses about the difficult cases as bringing him the difficult cases. AT: “the difficult cases they will tell you about” or “when there are difficult cases, they will tell you about them so you can judge them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

they will carry the burden with you

Jethro speaks of the hard work that they would do as if it were a burden that they would carry. AT: “they will do the hard work with you” or “they will help you do the hard work” (See: [Metaphor](#))

endure

What they will endure can be stated clearly. AT: “endure the stress of the work” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [endure, endurance](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 18 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 18:24-27**UDB:**

²⁴ Moses listened to his father-in-law and did all that Jethro told him. ²⁵ Then Moses chose capable men from among the Israelite people and made them heads over the people, rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens. ²⁶ Moses chose them to decide about the people's disputes. They brought the difficult cases to Moses, but they decided the matters that were not difficult by themselves. ²⁷ Then Moses said goodbye to his father-in-law, and Jethro returned home.

ULB:

²⁴ So Moses listened to his father-in-law's words and did everything that he had said. ²⁵ Moses chose capable men from all Israel and made them heads over the people, leaders in charge of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and tens. ²⁶ They judged the people in normal circumstances. The difficult cases they brought to Moses, but they themselves judged all the small cases. ²⁷ Then Moses let his father-in-law leave, and Jethro went back into his own land.

translationNotes**heads over the people**

Moses writes of the leaders of people as if they were the head of a body. AT: "leaders of the people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

capable men

What they were capable of doing can be stated clearly. AT: "men who were able to lead" or "men who were able to judge" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

leaders in charge of thousands, hundreds, fifties, and tens

Possible meanings are 1) these numbers represent the exact amount of people in each group. AT: "leaders in charge of groups of 1,000 people, groups of 100 people, groups of 50 people, and groups of 10 people" or 2) these numbers are not exact, but represent groups of people of various sizes. AT: "leaders in charge of very small groups, small groups, large groups, and very large groups" See how you translated this in [Exodus 18:21](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

circumstances

"situations"

The difficult cases they brought to Moses

The author writes of telling Moses about the difficult cases as bringing him the difficult cases. AT: “the difficult cases they told Moses about” or “when there were difficult cases, they told Moses about them so that he would judge them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the small cases

“the easy cases”

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [head](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 18 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

“A kingdom of priests”

The function of the priests was to intercede for the people. The Levites were the only priests in Israel; this is a metaphor indicating that the nation was to intercede for the world as a whole. They were also to be holy, or set apart, from the rest of the world. (See: [priest](#), [priests](#), [priesthood](#), [Metaphor](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Revealing the Law

The events of this chapter are concerned with preparing the people to receive the law of Moses. The people go through all of this to prepare themselves for the law, which show the great importance of this event for Israel. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 19:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 19:1-2**UDB:**

¹ In the third month after leaving Egypt, they came to the wilderness of Sinai. ² After they left Rephidim, they came to the wilderness of Sinai, and they set up their tents at the base of the mountain.

ULB:

¹ In the third month after the people of Israel had gone out from the land of Egypt, on the same day, they came to the wilderness of Sinai. ² After they left Rephidim and came to the wilderness of Sinai, they camped in the wilderness in front of the mountain.

translationNotes**In the third month ... on the same day**

This means they arrived at the wilderness on the first day of the month just as they left Egypt on the first day of the month. The first day of the third month on the Hebrew calendar is near the middle of May on Western calendars. AT: “In the third month ... on the first day of the month” (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

had gone out from

“had left”

Rephidim

This is an area on the edge of the wilderness of Sinai where the people of Israel had been camping. See how you translated this name in [Exodus 17:1](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [day](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19:3-6**UDB:**

³ Moses climbed up the mountain to talk with God. Yahweh called to him from the top of the mountain and said, "This is what I want you to say to the Israelite people, the descendants of Jacob,
⁴ 'You have seen what I did to the Egyptians. You have seen what I did for you and how I brought you as if you had been on eagles' wings here to me. ⁵ So now, if you do what I tell you and obey all that I command you, you will be my own people. You will be my special possession from among all of the people, for all the earth is mine. ⁶ You will be people over whom I will rule, and you will be a kingdom where everyone will worship me like priests, and you will be a nation only for me.' That is what you must tell the Israelite people."

ULB:

³ Moses went up to God. Yahweh called to him from the mountain and said, "You must tell the house of Jacob, the people of Israel: ⁴ You have seen what I did to the Egyptians, how I carried you on eagles' wings and brought you to myself. ⁵ Now then, if you obediently listen to my voice and keep my covenant, then you will be my special possession from among all peoples, for all the earth is mine. ⁶ You will be a kingdom of priests and a holy nation for me. These are the words that you must speak to the people of Israel."

translationNotes**the house of Jacob**

The word "house" here represents Jacob's family and descendants. AT: "the descendants of Jacob" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of Jacob, the people of Israel

The phrase "the people of Israel" explains what "the house of Jacob" means.

You have seen

The word "you" here refers to the Israelites. Yahweh is telling Moses what to tell the Israelites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

I carried you on eagles' wings

God speaks of caring for his people while they traveled as if he were an eagle and carried them on his wings. AT: "I helped you travel like an eagle that carries her babies on her wings" (See: [Metaphor](#))

obediently listen to my voice

Obediently can be expressed as a verb. AT: “listen to my voice and obey me”

my voice

God’s voice represents what he says. AT: “what I say” or “my words” (See: [Metonymy](#))

keep my covenant

“do what my covenant requires you to do”

special possession

“treasure”

a kingdom of priests

God speaks of his people as if they were priests. AT: “a kingdom of people who are like priests” or “a kingdom of people who do what priests do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [house](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [eagle](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [voice](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [possess, possession](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [kingdom](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [nation](#)
- [word, words](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ So Moses went down the mountain and called the elders of the people. He told them everything that Yahweh had told him to tell them. ⁸ The people all said, “We will do everything that Yahweh has told us to do.” Then Moses climbed back up the mountain and reported to Yahweh what the people had said.

⁹ Then Yahweh said to Moses “Listen carefully. I will come to you from inside a thick cloud. When I am speaking to you, the people will hear it, and they will always believe that you are their leader.” Then Moses told Yahweh what the people said.

ULB:

⁷ So Moses came and summoned the elders of the people. He set before them all these words that Yahweh had commanded him. ⁸ All the people answered together and said, “We will do everything that Yahweh has said.” Then Moses came to report the people’s words to Yahweh. ⁹ Yahweh said to Moses, “I will come to you in a thick cloud so that the people may hear when I speak with you and may also believe you forever.” Then Moses told the people’s words to Yahweh.

translationNotes**set before them all these words**

The author writes of Moses telling people things as if he were setting the words before them. AT “told them all these words” (See: [Metaphor](#))

all these words that Yahweh had commanded him

“all that Yahweh had commanded him”

Moses came to report

Where Moses went can be stated explicitly. AT: “Moses went back up the mountain to report” (See: [Go and Come](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the people’s words

The word “words” refers to what the people said. AT: “what the people said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [elder](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [believe, believes, believed, belief](#)
- [forever](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go back down to the people again. Tell them to get ready for my coming. They must purify themselves today and tomorrow, and wash their clothes, too. ¹¹ They must do that to be ready on the third day. On that day I will come down to Mount Sinai to where all the people can see me.

ULB:

¹⁰ Yahweh said to Moses, "Go to the people. Today and tomorrow you must set them apart to me, and make them wash their garments. ¹¹ Be ready for the third day, for on the third day Yahweh will come down to Mount Sinai.

translationNotes**you must set them apart to me**

This probably means "tell them to dedicate themselves to me" or "tell them to purify themselves for me."

garments

"clothes"

Be ready

This was a command to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [set apart](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19:12-13**UDB:**

¹² You must make a boundary around the base of the mountain, and tell them, ‘Be sure that you do not climb the mountain or even go near it. Anyone who even touches the base of the mountain must be killed.’ ¹³ Do not let anyone touch any person or any animal that touches the mountain. You must kill any person or animal that touches the mountain by throwing stones at it or shooting it with arrows. But when you hear a long, loud trumpet sound, the people can come close to the base of the mountain.”

ULB:

¹² You must set boundaries all around the mountain for the people. Say to them, ‘Be careful that you do not go up the mountain or touch its border. Whoever touches the mountain will surely be put to death.’ ¹³ No one’s hand must touch such a person. Instead, he must certainly be stoned or shot. Whether it is a person or an animal, he must be put to death. When the trumpet sounds a long blast, they may come up to the foot of the mountain.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

set boundaries

“make a boundary.” This was either a mark or some kind of barrier.

Whoever touches the mountain will surely be put to death

This can be stated with an active form. AT: “You must surely put to death any person who touches the mountain” or “You must surely kill anyone who touches the mountain” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Whoever touches

“Any person who touches” or “Anyone who touches”

such a person

“a person who does that” or “a person who touches the mountain”

he must certainly be stoned or shot

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must certainly stone or shoot him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

shot

This refers to being killed by someone who shoots arrows from a bow or stones from a slingshot.

a long blast

“a long, loud sound”

translationWords

- [death, die, dead](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)
- [trumpet](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ So Moses went down the mountain again and told the people to purify themselves and to get ready for Yahweh's coming. They did what Moses told them to do, and they also washed their clothes. ¹⁵ Then Moses said to the people, "Be ready on the third day, and you men must not sleep with your wives until after then."

ULB:

¹⁴ Then Moses went down from the mountain to the people. He set apart the people to Yahweh and they washed their garments. ¹⁵ He said to the people, "Be ready on the third day; do not go near your wives."

translationNotes**do not go near your wives**

This is a polite way of talking about sleeping with their wives. AT: "do not sleep with your wives" (See: [Euphemism](#))

translationWords

- [set apart](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ On the third day, during the morning, there was thunder and lightning and a very dark cloud on the mountain. A trumpet sounded very loudly, and the people in the camp shook because they were very afraid. ¹⁷ Then Moses led the people outside the camp to meet with God. They stood around the base of the mountain. ¹⁸ Then Yahweh descended on Mount Sinai so that the entire mountain was covered in smoke and surrounded by fire. The smoke rose up like the smoke from the chimney of a furnace, and the whole mountain shook violently.

ULB:

¹⁶ On the third day, when it was morning, there were thunder and lightning bolts and a thick cloud on the mountain, and the sound of a very loud trumpet. All the people in the camp trembled. ¹⁷ Moses brought the people out of the camp to meet God, and they stood at the foot of the mountain. ¹⁸ Mount Sinai was completely covered with smoke because Yahweh descended on it in fire and smoke. The smoke went up like the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mountain shook violently.

translationNotes**trembled**

“shook with fear”

descended

“came down”

like the smoke of a furnace

This shows that it was a very large amount of smoke. AT: “like the smoke from a very large fire”

furnace

an oven that can be made extremely hot (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

translationWords

- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19:19-22**UDB:**

¹⁹ As the sound of the trumpet continued to become louder, Moses spoke to Yahweh, and Yahweh answered him in a loud voice that sounded like thunder. ²⁰ Then Yahweh came down again onto the top of Mount Sinai, and he summoned Moses to come up to the top of the mountain. So Moses went up. ²¹ Yahweh said to Moses, "Go down again and warn the people not to cross the boundary in order to look at me. If they do that, many of them will die. ²² Also, the priests who come near me must purify themselves, because I am coming to them. If they do not do that, I will punish them."

ULB:

¹⁹ When the sound of the trumpet grew louder and louder, Moses spoke, and God answered him in a voice. ²⁰ Yahweh came down on Mount Sinai, to the top of the mountain, and he summoned Moses to the top. So Moses went up. ²¹ Yahweh said to Moses, "Go down and warn the people not to break through to me to look, or many of them will perish. ²² Let the priests also who come near to me set themselves apart—prepare themselves for my coming—so that I do not attack them."

translationNotes**grew louder and louder**

"continued to become louder and louder"

in a voice

The word "voice" here refers to a sound that God made. Possible meanings are 1) "by speaking loudly like thunder" or 2) "by speaking" or 3) "by causing thunder to sound" (See: [Metonymy](#))

he summoned Moses

"he commanded Moses to come up"

not to break through

God spoke about walking past the boundary as if they might break down a barrier and walk through it. See how you translated "set bounds" in [Exodus 19:12](#). AT: "not to go beyond the boundary" or "not to go through the barrier"(See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [perish, perished, perishing, perishable](#)

- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [set apart](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 19:23-25**UDB:**

²³ Then Moses said to Yahweh, “The people will not climb the mountain because you commanded them, saying, ‘Set a boundary around the mountain, to set it apart.’” ²⁴ Yahweh said to Moses, “Go down the mountain and bring Aaron back up with you. But do not allow the priests or other people to cross the boundary to come up to me. If they cross it, I will punish them.” ²⁵ So Moses went down the mountain again and told the people what Yahweh had said.

ULB:

²³ Moses said to Yahweh, “The people cannot come up to Mount Sinai, for you commanded us: ‘Set boundaries around the mountain and set it apart to Yahweh.’” ²⁴ Yahweh said to him, “Go, get down the mountain, and bring up Aaron with you, but do not let the priests and the people break through the barrier to come up to me, or I will attack them.” ²⁵ So Moses went down to the people and spoke to them.

translationNotes**get down**

“go down”

break through the barrier

God spoke about walking past the boundary as if they might break down a barrier and walk through it. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 19:21](#). AT: “go beyond the boundary” or “go through the barrier” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [Aaron](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The instructions recorded in this chapter are commonly known as the “ten commandments.”

Special concepts in this chapter

Covenant

Yahweh’s covenant faithfulness is now based on the covenant he made with Abraham as well as the covenant he is making with Moses. (See: [covenant faithfulness](#), [covenant loyalty](#), [loving kindness](#), [unfailing love](#) and [covenant, covenants](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 20:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 20:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Then God spoke these words to the Israelite people. ² "I am Yahweh your God, the one you worship. I am the one who brought you out of the land of Egypt. I am the one who freed you from being slaves there. ³ You must worship only me; you must not worship any other god.

ULB:

¹ God spoke all these words: ² "I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery. ³ You must have no other gods before me.

translationNotes**house of slavery**

"place where you were slaves"

You must have no other gods before me

"You must not worship any other gods but me"

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ You must not carve a figure to worship that represents anything in the sky or that is on the ground or that is in the water under the ground. ⁵ You must not bow down to any idol and worship it because I am Yahweh your God, and I will not allow you to worship any other gods. I will punish those who sin and hate me. I will punish not only them, but also I will punish their descendants down to the third and fourth generation. ⁶ However, I will never stop loving thousands of generations of those who love me and obey my commandments.

ULB:

⁴ You must not make for yourself a carved figure nor the likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water below. ⁵ You must not bow down to them or worship them, for I, Yahweh your God, am a jealous God. I punish the ancestors' wickedness by bringing punishment on the descendants, to the third and the fourth generation of those who hate me. ⁶ But I show covenant faithfulness to thousands of those who love me and keep my commandments.

translationNotes**nor the likeness**

“and you must not make the likeness”

You must not bow down to them or worship them

The word “them” refers to carved figures or idols.

jealous

God wants his people to worship only him.

punish the ancestors' wickedness by bringing punishment on the descendants

God will punish people for the sin of their parents.

the third and the fourth generation

“the 3rd and the 4th generation.” Here “third” and “fourth” are ordinal numbers for “3” and “4.” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

I show covenant faithfulness to thousands of those who love me

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithfully” or “faithful.” AT: “I faithfully love thousands of those who love me” or “I am faithful to the covenant with thousands of those who love me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

to thousands of those who love me

The word “thousands” is a metonym for a number too many to count. AT: “forever to those who love me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy and Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [like, likeness](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [water, waters](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [worship](#)
- [jealous, jealousy](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [generation](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20:7**UDB:**

⁷ Do not use my name carelessly because I am Yahweh your God, the one whom you should worship, and I will certainly punish those who use my name for wrong purposes.

ULB:

⁷ You must not take the name of Yahweh your God, in vain, for I will not hold guiltless anyone who takes my name in vain.

translationNotes**take the name of Yahweh your God**

“use the name of Yahweh your God”

in vain

“carelessly” or “without proper respect”

I will not hold guiltless

This double-negative can be stated as a positive. AT: “I will certainly consider guilty” or “I will certainly punish” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

translationWords

- [name, names, named](#)
- [vain, vanity](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20:8-11**UDB:**

⁸ Do not forget that the seventh day of every week belongs to me, so keep those days only for me. ⁹ There are six days each week for you to do all your work, ¹⁰ but the seventh day is a day of rest, a day dedicated to me, Yahweh your God, the one whom you should worship. On that day you must not do any work. You and your sons and daughters and your male and female slaves must not work. You must not even force your livestock to work, and you must not allow foreigners to work, those strangers who are living in your country. ¹¹ I, Yahweh, created the sky, the earth, the ocean, and everything that is in them in six days. Then I stopped my work of creating everything and rested on the seventh day. That is the reason that I, Yahweh, have blessed the rest day and set it apart to be a sacred day.

ULB:

⁸ Remember the Sabbath day, to set it apart to me. ⁹ You must labor and do all your work for six days. ¹⁰ But the seventh day is a Sabbath for Yahweh your God. On it you must not do any work, you, or your son, or your daughter, or your male servant, or your female servant, or your cattle, or the foreigner who is within your gates. ¹¹ For in six days Yahweh made the heavens and earth, the sea, and everything that is in them, and rested on the seventh day. Therefore Yahweh blessed the Sabbath day and set it apart.

translationNotes**do all your work**

“do all your usual duties”

within your gates

Cities often had walls around them to keep out enemies, and gates for people to go in and out. AT: “within your community” or “inside your city” (See: [Metonymy](#))

on the seventh day

“on day seven.” Here “seventh” is the ordinal number for “7.” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

blessed the Sabbath day

Possible meanings are that 1) God caused the Sabbath day to produce good results, or 2) God said that the Sabbath day was good.

set it apart

“set it apart for a special purpose”

translationWords

- Sabbath
- set apart
- labor, laborer
- servant, slave, slavery
- foreigner, foreign, alien
- gate, gate bar
- rest
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Honor your father and your mother, in order that you may live a long time in the land that I, Yahweh your God, will give you.

¹³ Do not murder anyone.

¹⁴ Do not commit adultery with anyone.

ULB:

¹² Honor your father and your mother, so that you may live a long time in the land that Yahweh your God is giving you.

¹³ You must not murder anyone.

¹⁴ You must not commit adultery.

translationNotes**You must not commit adultery**

“You must not have sex with anyone other than your spouse”

translationWords

- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Do not steal anything.

¹⁶ Do not falsely accuse anyone of committing a crime.

¹⁷ Do not covet someone else's house, someone else's wife, someone else's male or female slave, someone else's livestock, someone else's donkeys, or anything else that another person owns."

ULB:

¹⁵ You must not steal from anyone.

¹⁶ You must not give false testimony against your neighbor.

¹⁷ You must not covet your neighbor's house; you must not covet your neighbor's wife, his male servant, his female servant, his ox, his donkey, or anything that belongs to your neighbor."

translationNotes**must not give false testimony**

"must not speak a false report" or "must not tell lies about someone"

must not covet

"must not strongly want to have" or "must not want to take"

translationWords

- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- neighbor
- envy, covet
- servant, slave, slavery
- ox, oxen
- donkey, mule

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20:18-21**UDB:**

¹⁸ When the people heard the thunder and saw the lightning, and when they heard the sound of the trumpet and saw the smoke on the mountain, they were afraid and trembled. They stood at a distance ¹⁹ and said to Moses, “If you speak to us, we will listen. But do not let God speak anymore to us. We are afraid that if he speaks anymore to us, we will die.” ²⁰ Moses replied to the people, “Do not be afraid! God has come to determine how you will behave. He wants you to honor him and to not sin.”

²¹ Then, as the people watched from a distance, Moses went close to the black cloud where God was.

ULB:

¹⁸ All the people saw the thundering and the lightning, and heard the voice of the trumpet, and saw the mountain smoking. When the people saw it, they trembled and stood far off. ¹⁹ They said to Moses, “Speak to us, and we will listen; but do not let God speak to us, or we will die.” ²⁰ Moses said to the people, “Do not be afraid, for God has come to test you so that the honor of him may be in you, and so that you do not sin.” ²¹ So the people stood far off, and Moses approached the thick darkness where God was.

translationNotes**voice**

“sound”

the mountain smoking

“smoke coming from the mountain”

they trembled

“they shook with fear”

stood far off

“stood far away” or “stood at a distance”

so that the honor of him may be in you, and so that you do not sin

“so that you will honor him and not sin”

approached

“went closer to”

translationWords

- trumpet
- Moses
- death, die, dead
- fear, fears, afraid
- test, tests, tested
- honor, honors, to honor
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20:22-23**UDB:**

²² Yahweh said to Moses, "Say this to the Israelite people, 'You have heard how I, Yahweh, have spoken to you from heaven. ²³ I told you that you must not make any idols of silver or gold that you will worship instead of me.

ULB:

²² Yahweh said to Moses, "This is what you must tell the Israelites: 'You yourselves have seen that I have talked with you from heaven. ²³ You will not make for yourselves other gods alongside me, gods of silver or gods of gold.

translationNotes**This is what you must tell the Israelites**

"Tell the Israelites this"

You yourselves have seen that I have talked with you from heaven

"You have heard me speak to you from heaven"

You will not make for yourselves other gods alongside me

"You must not make idols as other gods instead of me"

gods of silver or gods of gold

"gods made out of silver or gold" or "idols made out of silver or gold"

translationWords

- Israel, Israelites
- heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly
- god, gods, goddess
- silver
- gold

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 20:24-26**UDB:**

²⁴ Make for me an altar from earth. Sacrifice on it your burnt offerings, your offerings to promise friendship with me, and also your sheep and oxen. Worship me in any place that I choose for you to honor me; if you do that, I will come to you and bless you. ²⁵ If you make for me an altar from stones, do not make it from stones that you have cut to make them look nice because you will make the altar unsuitable for worshiping me if you use tools to cut the stones. ²⁶ Do not make an altar that has steps in front of it because if you do that, God could see your naked body as you go up the steps.”

ULB:

²⁴ You must make an earthen altar for me, and you must sacrifice on it your burnt offerings, fellowship offerings, sheep, and oxen. In every place where I cause my name to be honored, I will come to you and bless you. ²⁵ If you make me an altar of stone, you must not build it of cut stones, for if you use your tools on it, you will have defiled it. ²⁶ You must not go up by steps to my altar, so that your nakedness not be uncovered.”

translationNotes**earthen altar**

an altar made of materials from the ground, such as stone, soil, or clay

cause my name to be honored

Here “name” is a metonym for God’s being. This can be stated in active form. AT: “choose for you to honor me” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

You must not go up by steps to my altar

“Do not make an altar that has steps”

exposing your private parts

“showing your naked body”

translationWords

- altar, altars
- sacrifice, offering

- burnt offering, offering by fire
- fellowship offering
- sheep, ram, ewe
- ox, oxen
- name, names, named
- honor, honors, to honor
- bless, blessed, blessing
- defile, be defiled

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Covenant with Moses

Although the covenant Yahweh made with Moses began in the previous chapter, it formally begins with the statement, “Now these are the decrees that you must set before them.” The law of Moses was a major part of this covenant. (See: [covenant](#), [covenants](#) and [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Slavery

This passage does not condone slavery as an acceptable practice. However, it does impose some restrictions on the practice.

Justice in society

The rules and law of this chapter are not intended to be followed by every society. Israel was God’s chosen nation and was required to live in a special way. These laws concerned creating a just society and a holy nation. (See: [chosen one](#), [chosen ones](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 21:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 21:1

UDB:

¹ "Here are some other instructions to give to the Israelite people.

ULB:

¹ "Now these are the decrees that you must set before them:

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

you must set before them

"you must give them" or "you must tell them"

translationWords

- [decree](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:2-4**UDB:**

² When you buy a Hebrew slave, he is to serve you for only six years. In the seventh year you must free him from being your slave, and he does not have to pay you anything for setting him free. ³ If he was not married before he became your slave, and if he marries someone while he is your slave, his wife is not to be set free with him. But if he was married before he became your slave, you must free both him and his wife. ⁴ If the master of a slave gives him a wife, and she gives birth to sons or daughters while her husband is a slave, only the man is to be freed. His wife and children will continue to be slaves of their master.

ULB:

² 'If you buy a Hebrew servant, he is to serve for six years, and in the seventh year he will go free without paying anything. ³ If he came by himself, he must go free by himself; if he is married, then his wife must go free with him. ⁴ If his master gave him a wife and she bore him sons or daughters, the wife and her children will belong to her master, and he must go free by himself.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh tells Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

If he came by himself, he must go free by himself

What “by himself” means can be stated clearly. Some languages require that the additional condition, that he marries while a slave, be stated clearly. AT: “If he became a slave while he had no wife, and if he marries while he is a slave, the master need only free the man” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

by himself

“alone” or “without a wife”

if he is married

“if he was married when he became a slave” or “if he came as a married man”

translationWords

- [Hebrew, Hebrews](#)

- servant, slave, slavery
- serve, service
- free, freedom, liberty
- lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ But when it is time for the slave to be set free, if the slave says, ‘I love my master and my wife and my children, and I do not want to be set free,’ ⁶ then his master must take him to the place where they worship God. There he must make the slave stand against the door or the doorpost. Then the master will use an awl to make a hole in the slave’s ear and fasten something to the slave’s ear to show that he will own that slave for the rest of his life.

ULB:

⁵ But if the servant plainly says, “I love my master, my wife, and my children; I will not go out free,” ⁶ then his master must bring him to God. The master must bring him to a door or doorpost, and his master must bore his ear through with an awl. Then the servant will serve him for life.

translationNotes**plainly says**

“clearly says”

I will not go out free

“I do not want my master to set me free”

bore his ear through

“put a hole in his ear”

awl

a pointed tool used to make a hole

for life

“until the end of his life” or “until he dies”

translationWords

- God
- doorpost

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ If a man sells his daughter to become a slave, she should not be set free after six years as the male slaves are. ⁸ If the man who bought her wanted her to be his concubine, but if later he is not pleased with her, he must sell her back to her father. He must not sell her to a foreigner because that would be breaking the contract he made with the girl's father.

ULB:

⁷ If a man sells his daughter as a female servant, she must not go free as the male servants do. ⁸ If she does not please her master, who has designated her for himself, then he must let her be bought back. He has no right to sell her to a foreign people. He has no such right, since he has treated her deceitfully.

translationNotes**has designated**

“has chosen”

he must let her be bought back

This can be stated in active form. AT: “he must allow her father to buy her back” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

has no right to sell

“has no authority to sell”

he has treated her deceitfully

“he has deceived her”

translationWords

- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ If the man who buys her wants her to be a wife for his son, he must then treat her as though she were his own daughter. ¹⁰ If the master takes another slave girl to be another woman for himself, he must continue to give the first slave concubine the same amount of food and clothing that he gave to her before, and he must continue to sleep with her as before. ¹¹ If he does not do these three things for her, he must free her from being a slave, and she is not required to pay anything for being set free.

ULB:

⁹ If her master designates her as a wife for his son, he must treat her the same as if she were his daughter. ¹⁰ If he takes another wife for himself, he must not diminish her food, clothing, or her marital rights. ¹¹ But if he does not provide these three things for her, then she can go free without paying any money.

translationNotes**designates**

“chooses”

he must not diminish her food, clothing, or her marital rights

This can be stated in a positive form. AT: “he must give the first wife the same food, clothing, and marital rights she had before” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

diminish

“take away” or “reduce”

or her marital rights

This includes things that a husband must do for his wife, including sleeping with her. AT: “and he must continue to sleep with her as before” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:12-14**UDB:**

¹² If someone hits a man in order to kill him and the man dies, then that person should also be put to death. ¹³ But if the one who hit the other did not mean to kill that person, the one who hit him can go to a place that I will choose for you, and he will be safe there. ¹⁴ But if someone gets angry with another person and kills him on purpose, even if the murderer runs to the altar, you must kill him.

ULB:

¹² Whoever strikes a man so that he dies, that person must surely be put to death. ¹³ If the man did not do it with premeditation, but instead by accident, then I will fix a place to where he can flee. ¹⁴ If a man willfully attacks his neighbor and kills him according to a cunning plan, then you must take him, even if he is at God's altar, so that he may die.

translationNotes**strikes**

“hits” or “attacks”

that person must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must certainly execute that person” or “you must certainly kill that person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

did not do it with premeditation

“did not plan to do it” or “did not do it on purpose”

I will fix a place to where he can flee

The purpose of choosing a place can be stated clearly here. AT: “I will choose a place that he can run away to be safe” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

according to a cunning plan

“after thinking carefully about it”

must take him

The word “him” refers to the one who killed his neighbor.

so that he may die

This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that you can kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [neighbor](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Anyone who strikes his father or mother must be killed.

¹⁶ Anyone who kidnaps another person, either in order to sell that person or to keep him as a slave, must be killed.

¹⁷ Anyone who curses or insults his father or his mother must be killed.

ULB:

¹⁵ Whoever hits his father or mother must surely be put to death.

¹⁶ Whoever kidnaps a person and sells him, or the person is found in his possession, that kidnapper must surely be put to death.

¹⁷ Whoever curses his father or his mother must surely be put to death.

translationNotes**Whoever hits his father or mother must surely be put to death**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “If anyone hits his father or mother, you must surely put him to death” or “You must surely kill anyone who hits his father or mother” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

must surely

“must certainly”

in his possession

“with him”

that kidnapper must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must certainly kill that kidnapper” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Whoever curses his father or his mother must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must surely kill anyone who curses his father or his mother” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [curse, cursed, curses, cursing](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Suppose two people fight, and one hits the other with a stone or his fist. Suppose the person he strikes does not die but is injured and has to stay in bed for a while, ¹⁹ but later he is able to walk outside using a cane. Then they must not punish the person who hit him, except that they must make him pay the injured person the money he could not earn while he was recovering as well as the costs for healing.

ULB:

¹⁸ If men fight and one hits the other with a stone or with his fist, and that person does not die, but is confined to his bed; ¹⁹ then if he recovers and is able to walk about using his staff, the man who struck him must pay for the loss of his time; he must also pay for his complete recovery. But that man is not guilty of murder.

translationNotes**is confined to his bed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “cannot get out of bed” or “has to stay in bed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

recovers

“gets better”

staff

This is a stick that can be leaned on for support while walking.

the loss of his time

This refers to a situation when someone cannot work to earn money. You can express this clearly in the translation. AT: “the time he could not work” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

pay for his complete recovery

“pay his medical costs” or “pay for his costs for healing”

translationWords

- [guilt, guilty](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ If someone hits his male or female slave with a stick, and if the slave dies, then the one who struck him must be punished. ²¹ But if the slave lives for a day or two after he is hit and then dies, you must not punish the one who hit him. Not having that slave to be able to work for him any longer is enough punishment.

ULB:

²⁰ If a man hits his male servant or his female servant with a staff, and if the servant dies as a result of the blow, then that man must surely be punished. ²¹ However, if the servant lives for a day or two, the master must not be punished, for he will have suffered the loss of the servant.

translationNotes**as a result of the blow**

“because of the injury” or “because his master hit him”

that man must surely be punished

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must certainly punish that man” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for he will have suffered the loss of the servant

You can express clearly in the translation that the servant was valuable to his master. AT: “because he has already lost his servant who was valuable to him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [punish, punishment](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:22-25**UDB:**

²² If two people are fighting and they hurt a pregnant woman so that she has a miscarriage but the woman is not harmed in any other way, the one who hurt her must pay a fine. He must pay whatever the woman's husband asks after a judge approves of the fine. ²³ But if the woman is hurt in another way, the one who hurt her must be caused to suffer in the same way that he caused her to suffer. If she dies, he must be killed. ²⁴ If her eye is hurt, or if he knocks out her teeth, or her hand or foot is hurt, ²⁵ or if she is burned or bruised, the one who hurt her must be hurt in the same way.

ULB:

²² If men fight together and hurt a pregnant woman so that she miscarries, but there is no other injury to her, then the guilty man must surely be fined as the woman's husband demands it from him, and he must pay as the judges determine. ²³ But if there is serious injury, then you must give a life for a life, ²⁴ an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, a hand for a hand, a foot for a foot, ²⁵ a burn for a burn, a wound for a wound, or a bruise for a bruise.

translationNotes**she miscarries**

“her baby dies in her womb” or “her baby is born too soon and dies”

the guilty man must surely be fined

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must certainly fine the guilty man” or “the guilty man must pay a fine” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

as the judges determine

“what the judges decide”

you must give a life for a life, an eye for an eye

This means that if she is hurt, the person who hurt her must be hurt in the same way. AT: “he must give his life for her life, his eye for her eye” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [judge](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ If the owner of a slave strikes the eye of his male or female slave and that eye becomes blind, he must free that slave because of what he did to the slave's eye. ²⁷ If someone knocks out one of his slave's teeth, he must free the slave because of what he did to the slave's tooth.

ULB:

²⁶ If a man hits the eye of his male servant or of his female servant and destroys it, then he must let the servant go free in compensation for his eye. ²⁷ If he knocks out a tooth of his male servant or female servant, he must let the servant go free as compensation for the tooth.

translationNotes**If a man**

Here "man" refers to the owner of a slave.

in compensation

"as payment." Compensation is what someone does for another person or gives to another person to make up for what he has caused that person to lose.

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ If a bull gores a man or woman with the result that the person dies, you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it, but do not eat it. The owner of the bull is not guilty. ²⁹ But if the bull had attacked people several times before and its owner had been warned, but he did not keep the bull inside a fence, and it gores a man or woman to death, then you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it, and you must also kill its owner. ³⁰ However, if the owner of the bull can pay a fine to save his own life, he must pay the full amount that the judges say that he must pay.

ULB:

²⁸ If an ox gores a man or a woman to death, the ox must surely be stoned, and its flesh must not be eaten; but the ox's owner must be acquitted of guilt. ²⁹ But if the ox had a habit of goring in the past, and its owner was warned but did not keep it in, and the ox has killed a man or a woman, that ox must be stoned, and its owner also must be put to death. ³⁰ If a payment is required for his life, he must pay whatever he is required to pay.

translationNotes**gores**

“injures with its horns”

the ox must surely be stoned

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must stone the ox to death” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

its flesh must not be eaten

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must not eat its flesh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the ox's owner must be acquitted

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must acquit the ox's owner” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

its owner also must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must also kill its owner” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

If a payment is required for his life

If the ox's owner can pay a fine to save his own life, then he must pay whatever the judges decide. The full meaning of this can be stated clearly. This can also be stated in active form. AT: "if the owner of the bull can pay a fine to save his own life, he must pay the full amount that the judges say that he must pay" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [ox, oxen](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [acquit](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ If someone's bull attacks and gores another person's son or daughter, you must treat the bull's owner according to that same rule. ³² If a bull attacks and gores a male or female slave, its owner must pay to the slave's owner thirty pieces of silver, and you must kill the bull by throwing stones at it.

ULB:

³¹ If the ox has gored a man's son or daughter, the ox's owner must do what this decree requires him to do. ³² If the ox gores a male servant or a female servant, the ox's owner must pay thirty shekels of silver, and the ox must be stoned.

translationNotes**has gored**

"has injured with its horns"

thirty shekels of silver

"330 grams of silver." A shekel weighed eleven grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

the ox must be stoned

This can be stated in active form. AT: "you must kill the ox by stoning it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [decree](#)
- [silver](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:33-34

UDB:

³³ Suppose someone has a pit and does not keep it covered, and someone's bull or donkey falls into it and dies. ³⁴ Then the owner of the pit must pay for the animal that died. He must give the money to the animal's owner, but then he can take away the animal that died and do whatever he wants to with it.

ULB:

³³ If a man opens a pit, or if a man digs a pit and does not cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it, ³⁴ the owner of the pit must repay the loss. He must give money to the dead animal's owner, and the dead animal will become his.

translationNotes

opens a pit

“uncovers a hole in the ground” or “takes a cover off a hole in the ground”

repay the loss

The owner must be paid for the loss of his animal. AT: “pay the owner for the dead animal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

will become his

The one who paid for the loss of the animal will become the owner of the dead animal and can do what he wants with it. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. AT: “will belong to the owner of the pit” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [pit](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 21:35-36**UDB:**

³⁵ If someone's bull hurts another person's bull so that it dies, the owners of both bulls must sell the bull that is living, and they must divide between them the money that they get for it. They must also divide between them the meat of the animal that died. ³⁶ However, if people know that the bull often attacked other animals before, and its owner did not keep it inside a fence, then the owner of that bull must give the owner of the bull that died one of his own bulls, but he can take away the animal that died and do whatever he wants to with it."

ULB:

³⁵ If one man's ox hurts another man's ox so that it dies, then they must sell the live ox and divide its price, and they must also divide the dead ox. ³⁶ But if it was known that the ox had a habit of goring in time past, and its owner has not kept it in, he must surely pay ox for ox, and the dead animal will become his own.

translationNotes**divide its price**

"divide the money" or "divide the money they receive"

if it was known

This can be stated in active form. AT: "if people knew" or "if the owner knew" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a habit of goring in time past

"had gored other animals before"

its owner has not kept it in

This means that the owner did not keep his ox securely inside a fence. This can be clearly stated in the translation. AT: "its owner did not keep it inside a fence" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he must surely pay ox for ox

The owner of the ox that killed must give an ox to the man who lost his ox. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: "the owner of the ox that killed must surely give a living ox to the owner of the ox that died" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Justice in society

The rules and laws of this chapter are not intended to be followed by every society. Israel was God's chosen nation and was required to live in a special way. These laws concerned creating a just society and a holy nation. In this chapter, the purpose of these laws often focuses on minimizing the people's desire for vengeance. (See: [chosen one](#), [chosen ones](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#) and [avenge](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 22:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 22:1-4**UDB:**

¹ "If someone steals a bull or a sheep and then kills it or sells it, he must pay five bulls for the bull that he stole, and he must pay four sheep for the sheep that he stole.

² If a thief is caught while he is breaking into someone's house at night, if the one who catches him kills the thief, he is not guilty of killing him. ³ But if that happens during the daytime, the one who killed the thief is guilty of murdering him.

A thief must pay for what he stole. If he has no animal with which to pay for the one that he stole, he must be sold to become someone else's slave, and the money from his sale must be used to pay for what he stole. ⁴ If a thief still has the animal when he is caught, whether it is a bull or a donkey or a sheep, and it is still alive, the thief must pay back the stolen animal as well as another one of the same kind.

ULB:

¹ If a man steals an ox or a sheep and kills it or sells it, then he must pay five oxen for one ox, and four sheep for one sheep. ² If a thief is found breaking in, and if he is struck so that he dies, in that case no guilt for murder will attach to anyone on his account. ³ But if the sun has risen before he breaks in, guilt for murder will attach to the person who kills him.

A thief must make restitution. If he has nothing, then he must be sold for his theft. ⁴ If the stolen animal is found alive in his possession, whether it is an ox, a donkey, or a sheep, he must pay back double.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

If a thief is found

This can be stated in active form. AT: "If anyone finds a thief" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

breaking in

"using force to come into a house"

if he is struck so that he dies

This can be stated in active form. AT: "if anyone strikes the thief so that he dies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

no guilt for murder will attach to anyone on his account

“no one will be guilty of murdering him”

if the sun has risen before he breaks in

“if it is light before he breaks in” or “if he breaks in and it is after sunrise”

guilt for murder will attach to the person who kills him

“the person who kills him will be guilty of murder”

make restitution

“pay for what he stole”

he must be sold for his theft

This can be stated in an active form. AT: “you must sell him as a slave in order to pay for what he stole” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

If the stolen animal is found alive in his possession

This can be stated in active form. AT: “If they find that he still has the live animal that he stole” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

pay back double

pay two animals for every animal that he took

translationWords

- [ox, oxen](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:5**UDB:**

⁵ If someone allows his animals to eat grass in his field or in his vineyard, and if the animals stray away and eat the plants in another person's field, the owner of the animals must pay the owner of that field by giving him the best from his own field or vineyard.

ULB:

⁵ If a man grazes his livestock in a field or vineyard and lets his animal loose, and it grazes in another man's field, he must make restitution from the best of his own field and from the best of his own vineyard.

translationNotes**If a man grazes his livestock**

"If a man lets his animals eat plants"

it grazes

"it eats plants"

he must make restitution

"he must pay back the owner of that field"

translationWords

- [vineyard](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:6**UDB:**

⁶ If someone starts a fire and it spreads through the grass and starts burning in someone else's field, and the fire burns grain that is growing or grain that is already cut and stacked, then the person who started the fire must pay for what has been lost.

ULB:

⁶ If a fire breaks out and spreads in thorns so that stacked grain, or standing grain, or a field is consumed, the one who started the fire must surely make restitution.

translationNotes**If a fire breaks out and spreads in thorns**

“If someone starts a fire and it spreads in thorns”

spreads in thorns

“moves along the ground through dry plants”

stacked grain

This is grain that has been cut and tied in bundles. “bundled grain” or “harvested grain”

standing grain

This is grain that has not been cut, but it is ready to be harvested.

a field is consumed

“fire consumes a field” or “fire destroys a field”

must surely make restitution

“must certainly pay for the grain that the fire destroyed”

translationWords

- grain
- consume

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Suppose that someone gives another person some money or other valuable item and asks him to keep it in his house for a while. And suppose that a thief steals it from that person's house. If the thief is caught, the thief must pay back twice as much as he stole. ⁸ But if the thief is not caught, the owner of the house from which the item was stolen must stand before the judges so that the judges can say whether the owner of the house was the one who took the other man's valuable item.

⁹ If two people argue about which one of them owns a bull or a donkey or a sheep or some clothing, or something else that has been lost, they must stand before the judges. The one whom the judges say is lying must pay back to the real owner twice as many bulls or donkeys or sheep or items of clothing.

ULB:

⁷ If a man gives money or goods to his neighbor for safe keeping, and if it is stolen out of the man's house, if the thief is found, that thief must pay double. ⁸ But if the thief is not found, then the owner of the house must come before the judges to see whether he has put his own hand on his neighbor's property. ⁹ For every dispute about something, whether it is an ox, a donkey, a sheep, clothing, or any other missing thing about which one says, "This belongs to me," the claim of both parties must come before the judges. The man whom the judges find guilty must pay double to his neighbor.

translationNotes**for safe keeping**

"to watch over it" or "to keep it safe"

if it is stolen

This can be stated in active form. AT: "if someone steals it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

thief

someone who steals something

if the thief is found

This can be stated in active form. AT: "if you find the thief" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

come before the judges to see whether

"come before the judges so that they can find out if"

has put his own hand on his neighbor's property

This is an idiom. If you have a way of saying this in your language, you can use it here. AT: “has stolen his neighbor's property” (See: [Idiom](#))

the claim of both parties must come before the judges

The judges must listen to both people who claim that the item belongs to them and the judges will decide who is guilty.

translationWords

- [neighbor](#)
- [judge](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:10-13**UDB:**

¹⁰ Suppose someone gives his donkey or bull or sheep or some other animal to someone else and asks him to take care of it for a while, and the animal dies or is injured or is stolen while no one is watching. ¹¹ Then the person who was taking care of the animal must swear, knowing that God is listening, that he did not steal the animal. If he did not steal it, the owner of the animal must accept that the other person is telling the truth, and the other person will not have to pay anything back to the owner. ¹² But if the animal was stolen while he was supposed to be taking care of it, the man who promised to take care of it must pay back the owner for the animal. ¹³ If he says that the animal was killed by wild animals, he must bring back the remains of the animal that was killed and show it to the animal's owner. If he does that, he will not have to pay anything for the animal.

ULB:

¹⁰ If a man gives his neighbor a donkey, an ox, a sheep, or any animal to keep, and if it dies or is hurt or is carried away without anyone seeing it, ¹¹ an oath to Yahweh must be taken by them both, as to whether or not one person has put his hand on his neighbor's property. The owner must accept this, and the other will make no restitution. ¹² But if it was stolen from him, the other must make restitution to the owner for it. ¹³ If an animal was torn in pieces, let the other man bring the animal as evidence. He will not have to pay for what was torn.

translationNotes**an oath to Yahweh must be taken by them both**

Only the man who is accused of stealing the animal must swear the oath. The owner of the lost animal must accept the oath that has been sworn. This can be stated in active form. AT: "the man who was caring for the animal must swear an oath before Yahweh and the owner must accept that oath" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

But if it was stolen from him

This can be stated in active form. AT: "But if someone stole the animal from him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

If an animal was torn in pieces

This can be stated in active form. AT: "But if a wild beast tore the animal in pieces" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He will not have to pay for what was torn

This can be stated in active form. AT: “He will not have to pay for the animal that the wild beast destroyed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [neighbor](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [wrong, mistreat, hurt](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ If someone borrows an animal, and if that animal is hurt or dies when its owner is not there, the one who borrowed it must pay the owner for the animal. ¹⁵ But if that happens when the owner of the animal is there, the one who borrowed it will not have to pay back anything. If the man who borrowed it only rented it, the money that he paid to rent it will be enough to pay for the animal dying or being injured.”

ULB:

¹⁴ If a man borrows any animal from his neighbor and the animal is injured or dies without the owner being with it, the other man must surely make restitution. ¹⁵ But if the owner was with it, the other man will not have to pay; if the animal was hired, it will be paid for by its hiring fee.

translationNotes**must surely make restitution**

“must certainly repay with another animal” or “must certainly pay the owner for the animal”

if the animal was hired

This can be stated in active form. AT: “if someone rented the animal” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

it will be paid for by its hiring fee

The one who borrowed the animal will not have to pay the owner anything more than the hiring or rental fee. This fee will pay for the loss of the animal. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: “the money that someone paid to rent the animal will cover the loss of the animal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

hiring fee

“rental fee” or “money paid to rent the animal”

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ "If a man forces a girl to sleep with him, a girl who is a virgin and who is not engaged to be married, he must pay the bride price for her and marry her. ¹⁷ But if her father does not allow her to marry him, he must pay to the woman's father money that is the same as the bride price money that men pay for virgins.

ULB:

¹⁶ If a man seduces a virgin who is not engaged, and if he sleeps with her, he must surely make her his wife by paying the bride wealth required for this. ¹⁷ If her father completely refuses to give her to him, he must pay money equal to the bride wealth of virgins.

translationNotes**seduces**

"persuades"

not engaged

"not promised to be married"

if he sleeps with her

Sleeping with someone is a euphemism for having sex. AT: "if he has sex with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

bride wealth

"dowry" or "bride price"

him, he

These pronouns refer back to the man who seduced the virgin.

translationWords

- [virgin](#)
- [bride](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ You must kill any woman who practices sorcery.

¹⁹ You must kill any person who sleeps with an animal like a man sleeps with a woman.

ULB:

¹⁸ You must not allow a sorceress to live.

¹⁹ Whoever sleeps with a beast must surely be put to death.

translationNotes**Whoever sleeps with a beast must surely be put to death**

Here “sleeps with a beast” is a euphemism that means someone has sex with an animal. This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must certainly kill anyone who has sex with an animal” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft](#)
- [sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ You must offer sacrifices only to Yahweh. You must kill anyone who offers a sacrifice to any other god.

²¹ You must not mistreat a foreigner who comes to live among you. Do not forget that you were previously foreigners in Egypt.

ULB:

²⁰ Whoever sacrifices to any god except to Yahweh must be completely destroyed. ²¹ You must not wrong a foreigner or oppress him, for you were foreigners in the land of Egypt.

translationNotes**Yahweh must be completely destroyed**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Yahweh, you must completely destroy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

wrong a foreigner

“mistreat a foreigner” or “cheat a foreigner”

translationWords

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [wrong, mistreat, hurt](#)
- [foreigner, foreign, alien](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:22-24**UDB:**

²² You must not mistreat any widow or any orphan. ²³ If you mistreat them and they ask me to help them, I will help them, ²⁴ and I will be angry with you; I will cause you to die in war. Your wives will become widows, and your children will no longer have fathers.

ULB:

²² You must not mistreat any widow or fatherless child. ²³ If you afflict them at all, and if they call out to me, I will surely hear their call. ²⁴ My anger will burn, and I will kill you with the sword; your wives will become widows, and your children will become fatherless.

translationNotes**You must not mistreat any widow or fatherless child**

This can be stated in positive form. AT: “You must treat all widows and fatherless children fairly” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

widow

“woman whose husband has died”

fatherless child

“orphan” or “child with no parents”

I will kill you with the sword

To be killed “with the sword” is a metonym that means a person will die violently, or perhaps fighting in a war. AT: “you will die a violent death” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [wrong, mistreat, hurt](#)
- [afflict, affliction](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [sword](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ If you lend money to any of my people who are poor, do not act like a moneylender and require him to pay interest on the money. ²⁶ If he gives you his cloak to guarantee that he will pay the money back, you must give the cloak back to him before the sun goes down ²⁷ because he needs it to keep him warm during the night. That is the only covering that poor people have when they sleep at night. If you do not act mercifully toward him by giving back his cloak, when he cries out to me asking for my help, I will help him because I always act mercifully.

ULB:

²⁵ If you lend money to any of my people among you who are poor, you must not be like a moneylender to him or charge him interest. ²⁶ If you take your neighbor's garment in pledge, you must return it to him before the sun goes down, ²⁷ for that is his only covering; it is his garment for his body. What else can he sleep in? When he calls out to me, I will hear him, for I am compassionate.

translationNotes**a moneylender**

“one who lends money”

charge him interest

“charge him extra money for borrowing” or “charge him extra money for the loan”

garment in pledge

“coat as collateral” or “coat as a guarantee to repay the loan”

only covering

“only coat” or “only garment to keep him warm”

What else can he sleep in?

This question adds emphasis. You can translate it as a strong statement. AT: “He will have nothing to wear while he sleeps!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

compassionate

“merciful” or “gracious”

translationWords

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [pledge](#)
- [compassion, compassionate](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:28

UDB:

²⁸ Do not insult God, and do not call on God to do harmful things to any ruler of your people.

ULB:

²⁸ You must not blaspheme me, God, nor curse a ruler of your people.

translationNotes

You must not blaspheme me, God

“Do not insult God” or “Do not speak evil about God”

nor curse a ruler

“and do not ask God to do bad things to a ruler”

translationWords

- blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous, blasphemies
- curse, cursed, curses, cursing
- ruler, rule
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 22:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ Do not withhold from me the best parts of the grain that you harvest, or of the olive oil or the wine that you produce. You will give your firstborn sons to me.

³⁰ Similarly, your firstborn male cattle and sheep belong to me. After those animals are born, allow them to stay with their mothers for seven days. On the eighth day you will give them to me.

³¹ You are people who are set apart to me. I detest the meat of any animal that has been killed by wild animals. Therefore do not eat such meat. Instead, throw it where the dogs can eat it.”

ULB:

²⁹ You must not hold back offerings from your harvest or your winepresses. You must give to me the firstborn of your sons. ³⁰ You must also do the same with your oxen and your sheep. For seven days they may remain with their mothers, but on the eighth day you must give them to me. ³¹ You will be people that are set apart for me. So you must not eat any meat that was torn by animals in the field. Instead, you must throw it to the dogs.

translationNotes**You must not hold back offerings**

This can be stated in a positive form. AT: “You must bring all of your offerings” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

give to me the firstborn of your sons

“dedicate your firstborn sons to me”

do the same with

“dedicate to me the firstborn of”

For seven days

This can be written as a numeral. AT: “For 7 days after they are born” (See: [Numbers](#))

the eighth day

This can be written as a numeral. AT: “day number 8” (See: [Numbers](#))

give them to me

“dedicate them to me”

translationWords

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [winepress](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [set apart](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Justice in society

The rules and laws of this chapter are not intended to be followed by every society. Israel was God's chosen nation and was required to live in a special way. These laws concerned creating a just society and a holy nation. (See: [chosen one](#), [chosen ones](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Celebrations of feasts and festivals

The people of Israel were required to celebrate certain feasts and festivals. These were part of the law of Moses and some are described in this chapter. Their purpose was to worship Yahweh and to remember the great things Yahweh has done for them.

Links:

- [Exodus 23:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 23:1-3**UDB:**

¹ "Do not lie about other people. Do not help someone who is guilty by lying about what happened.

² Do not join with a group of people who are planning to do something evil. Do not tell the same lies they do and so keep the judge from deciding the case justly. ³ When a poor person is on trial, do not testify in his favor just because he is poor and you feel sorry for him.

ULB:

¹ You must not give a false report about anyone. Do not join with a wicked man to be a dishonest witness. ² You must not follow a crowd to do evil, nor may you bear witness while siding with the crowd in order to pervert justice. ³ You must not show favoritism to a poor man in his lawsuit.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

dishonest witness

This is the same as a lying or false witness.

nor may you bear witness

"and you also must not speak"

siding with the crowd

This is a metaphor that describes one's agreeing with a group of people as if he actually walked over and stood with that group. AT: "doing what the crowd wants" or "agreeing with the majority" (See: [Metaphor](#))

pervert justice

do illegal or immoral actions that result in a unjust ruling

translationWords

- false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses
- just, justice, justly
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ If you see someone's bull or donkey when it is wandering away loose, take it back to its owner even if the owner is your enemy. ⁵ If you see someone's donkey that has fallen down because of its heavy load, help the owner to get the donkey up again even if he is someone who hates you. Do not just walk away without helping him.

ULB:

⁴ If you meet your enemy's ox or his donkey going astray, you must bring it back to him. ⁵ If you see the donkey of someone who hates you fallen to the ground under its load, you must not leave that person. You must surely help him with his donkey.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

translationWords

- [ox, oxen](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [astray, go astray, led astray, stray](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:6-9**UDB:**

⁶ Decide the cases of poor people who are on trial as fairly as you judge the cases of other people.

⁷ Do not accuse people falsely. Do not decide that innocent and righteous people should be killed because I will punish people who do such an evil thing.

⁸ Do not accept money that is a bribe because officials who accept bribes are not able to decide what is right to do, and they do not allow innocent people to be treated fairly.

⁹ Do not mistreat foreigners who live among you. You know how foreigners often feel because the Egyptians did not treat you well when you were foreigners there.

ULB:

⁶ You must not pervert justice when it should go to your poor people in a poor man's lawsuit. ⁷ Do not join others in making false accusations, and do not kill the innocent or righteous, for I will not acquit the wicked. ⁸ Never take a bribe, for a bribe blinds those who see, and perverts honest people's words. ⁹ You must not oppress a foreigner, since you know the life of a foreigner, for you were foreigners in the land of Egypt.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

You must not pervert justice

"You must not do actions that produce an improper legal result" that results in either freedom for a guilty person or punishment of the innocent.

it should go

In this phrase, "it" refers to proper justice, a correct decision.

lawsuit

"dispute"

I will not acquit the wicked

"I will not find the wicked not guilty" or "I will not say of wicked people that they are innocent"

bribe blinds ... perverts

Here a “bribe” is described as if it were a person. AT: “bribe discredits ... undermines” (See: [Personification](#))

the life of a foreigner

“the kind of life a stranger lives in a foreign land”

translationWords

- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [acquit](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [bribe](#)
- [oppress, oppression, oppressor](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ For six years, plant seeds in your ground and gather the harvest. ¹¹ But on the seventh year you must not plant anything. If things grow without your planting seeds, allow the poor people to harvest and eat the crops. If there are still crops left over, allow the wild animals to eat them. Do the same thing with your grapevine and your olive trees.

ULB:

¹⁰ For six years you will sow seed on your land and gather in its produce. ¹¹ But in the seventh year you will leave it unplowed and fallow, so that the poor among your people may eat. What they leave, the wild animals will eat. You will do the same with your vineyards and olive orchards.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

produce

“food products from plants”

unplowed

“uncultivated” or “untilled”

fallow

“in its natural state” or “unused for production”

so that the poor among your people may eat

The poor can eat any food that grows on its own in a field that is not cultivated. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: “so the poor among your people may harvest and eat any food that grows on its own in that field” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- sow, sower, plant
- vineyard
- olive

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:12-13**UDB:**

¹² You may work for six days each week, but on the seventh day you must rest and not work. Also on the seventh day you must allow your work animals, your slaves, and the foreigners who live among you to rest and to become ready to work again.

¹³ Make certain that you obey everything that I have commanded you to do. Do not pray to other gods. Do not even mention their names.

ULB:

¹² During six days you will do your work, but on the seventh day you must rest. Do this so that your ox and your donkey may have rest, and so that your female slave's son and any foreigner may rest and be refreshed. ¹³ Pay attention to everything that I have said to you. Do not mention the names of other gods, nor let their names be heard from your mouth.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

Pay attention to

“Do” or “Obey”

your ox and your donkey

“your work animals”

any foreigner may rest and be refreshed

This can be stated in active form. AT: “any foreigner may rest and regain his strength” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

mention the names of other gods

This represents praying to other gods. AT: “pray to other gods” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [rest](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Every year you must travel to three festivals to honor me. ¹⁵ The first one is the Festival of Bread with no Yeast. Celebrate it in the month of Aviv, which is the month in which you left Egypt. Celebrate it in the way that I commanded you; eat the bread for seven days. Always bring an offering when you come to worship me. Do not come empty-handed.

ULB:

¹⁴ You must travel to hold a festival for me three times every year. ¹⁵ You are to observe the Festival of Unleavened Bread. As I commanded you, you will eat unleavened bread for seven days. At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Aviv, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. But you must not appear before me empty-handed.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

Aviv

This is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. Aviv is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. See how you translated this in [Exodus 13:4](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

not appear before me empty-handed

Here understatement is used to emphasize that the Israelites must bring a suitable offering to Yahweh. AT: “come to me without a proper offering” or “always bring an offering to me” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

translationWords

- [festival](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ The second festival is the Festival of Harvest. During that festival you must offer to me the first parts of your crops that grow from the seeds that you planted. The third festival is the Festival of Finished Harvest. That will be after you finish harvesting your grain, your grapes, and your fruit.
¹⁷ Every year, at each of these times, all the men must gather together to worship me, Yahweh God.

ULB:

¹⁶ You must observe the Festival of Harvest, the firstfruits of your labors when you sowed seed in the fields. Also you must observe the Festival of Ingathering at the end of the year, when you gather in your produce from the fields. ¹⁷ All your males must appear before the Lord Yahweh three times every year.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

You must observe

“You must honor” or “You must celebrate”

Festival of Ingathering

This festival celebrated the final harvesting of all the crops for the year.

All your males must appear before the Lord Yahweh

Here to “appear” means to gather for worship. AT: “All the men must gather to worship the Lord Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [festival](#)
- [harvest](#)
- [firstfruits](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ When you sacrifice an animal and offer it to me, you must not offer bread that has been baked with yeast. When you offer sacrifices, burn the fat from the animals on that same day so that no fat remains the next morning.

¹⁹ Each year, when you harvest your crops, take the best of what you harvest first, go to the place where you worship me, and give it to me, Yahweh God. When you kill a young animal, do not cook it by boiling it in its mother's milk."

ULB:

¹⁸ You must not offer the blood from sacrifices made to me with bread containing yeast. The fat from the sacrifices at my festivals must not remain all night until the morning. ¹⁹ You must bring the choicest firstfruits from your land into my house, the house of Yahweh your God. You must not boil a young goat in its mother's milk.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

fat from the sacrifices

The fat was burned as an offering to Yahweh and was never eaten.

the choicest firstfruits

"the best and first produce of the harvest"

You must not boil a young goat in its mother's milk

This was a magical fertility practice among the Canaanites, which the Israelites were not permitted to participate in.

translationWords

- sacrifice, offering
- festival
- firstfruits
- house of God, Yahweh's house

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ "I am going to send an angel ahead of you to guard you as you travel and to bring you safely to the place that I have prepared for you. ²¹ Pay attention to what he says and obey him. Do not rebel against him because he will have my authority and he will punish you if you rebel against him. ²² But if you pay attention to what he says and if you do all that I tell you to do, I will fight against all of your enemies.

ULB:

²⁰ I am going to send an angel before you to guard you on the way, and to bring you to the place that I have prepared. ²¹ Be attentive to him and obey him. Do not provoke him, for he will not pardon your transgressions. My name is on him. ²² If you indeed obey his voice and do everything that I tell you, then I will be an enemy to your enemies and an adversary to your adversaries.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

Be attentive to him

"Listen to him"

Do not provoke him, for he will not pardon

"If you provoke him, he will not pardon"

My name is on him

Here "name" refers to God's authority. AT: "He has my authority" (See: [Metonymy](#))

If you indeed obey his voice

Here "voice" represents what the angel says. AT: "If you carefully obey what he says" (See: [Metonymy](#))

an enemy to your enemies and an adversary to your adversaries

These two phrases mean the same thing and are used for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

translationWords

- [angel, angels, archangel](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [pardon](#)
- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:23-25**UDB:**

²³ My angel will go ahead of you and will take you to where the Amor, Heth, Periz, Canaan, Hiv, and Jebus people groups live, and I will completely get rid of them. ²⁴ Do not bow down before their gods or worship them. Do not do the things that they think that their gods want them to do. Destroy their gods and smash to pieces their sacred stones.

²⁵ You must worship me, Yahweh your God. If you do that, I will bless your food and water, and I will protect you from becoming sick.

ULB:

²³ My angel will go before you and bring you to the Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Canaanites, Hivites, and the Jebusites. I will destroy them. ²⁴ You must not bow down to their gods, worship them, or do as they do. Instead, you must completely overthrow them and smash their stone pillars in pieces. ²⁵ You must worship Yahweh your God, and he will bless your bread and water. I will remove sickness from among you.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

You must not ... do as they do

The Israelites must not live as the people who worship other gods. AT: “You must not ... live as the people who worship those gods” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he will bless your bread and water

This is a merism that means food and drink. AT: “he will bless your food and drink” or “he will bless you by giving you food and drink” (See: [Merism](#))

he will bless ... I will remove

Yahweh switched between the first and third pronoun to refer to himself. Here both “he” and “I” refer to Yahweh. (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

translationWords

- angel, angels, archangel
- Amorite
- Hittite
- Perizzite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Hivite
- Jebusites, Jebus
- bow, bow down
- god, gods, goddess
- worship
- pillar, column
- Yahweh
- bless, blessed, blessing

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:26-29**UDB:**

²⁶ No women in your land will have miscarriages, and no women will be unable to become pregnant. I will enable you to live a long time.

²⁷ I will cause the people who oppose you to become very afraid of me. I will kill all of the people that you come close to. Then I will cause them to turn around and run away from you. ²⁸ I will cause your enemies to become terrified. I will expel the Hiv, Canaan, and Heth people groups from your land. ²⁹ I will not remove all of them in less than one year. If I did that, your land would become deserted, and there would be very many wild animals that would attack you.

ULB:

²⁶ No woman will be barren or will miscarry her young in your land. I will give you long lives. ²⁷ I will send fear of myself on those into whose land you advance. I will kill all the people whom you meet. I will make all your enemies turn their backs to you in fright. ²⁸ I will send hornets before you that will drive out the Hivites, Canaanites, and the Hittites from before you. ²⁹ I will not drive them out from before you in one year, or the land would become abandoned, and the wild animals would become too many for you.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

No woman will be barren or will miscarry her young in your land

This can be stated in positive form. AT: "Every woman will be able to become pregnant and give birth to healthy babies" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

miscarry

to have a pregnancy end early and unexpectedly

hornets

a flying insect that can sting people and cause pain

or the land would become abandoned

"because no one would be living in the land"

translationWords

- barren
- fear, fears, afraid
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Hivite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Hittite

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 23:30-33**UDB:**

³⁰ I will remove those people groups slowly, a few at a time, until the number of your people increases and you are able to live everywhere in the land. ³¹ I will cause the borders of your land to extend from the Sea of Reeds in the southeast to the Mediterranean Sea in the northwest, and from the wilderness of Sinai in the southwest to the Euphrates River in the northeast of the country. I will give you the power to remove the people who live there so that you will remove them as you occupy more of the country. ³² You must not make any agreement with those people or with their gods. ³³ Do not allow those people to live in your land in order that they do not cause you to sin against me. If you worship their gods, you will not be able to escape from worshiping them and sinning against me just as someone caught in a trap is unable to escape.”

ULB:

³⁰ Instead, I will drive them out little by little from before you until you become fruitful and inherit the land. ³¹ I will fix your borders from the Sea of Reeds to the Sea of the Philistines, and from the wilderness to the Euphrates River. I will give you victory over the land’s inhabitants. You will drive them out before yourselves. ³² You must not make a covenant with them or with their gods. ³³ They must not live in your land, or they would make you sin against me. If you worship their gods, this will surely become a trap for you.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses his laws for the people of Israel.

this will surely become a trap for you

This means worshiping other gods will lead the people of Israel to certain destruction as if they were an animal caught in a hunter’s trap. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [Sea of Reeds, Red Sea](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [desert, wilderness](#)
- [Euphrates River](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 24 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Moses' covenant

The people of Israel promise to obey the covenant Yahweh made with Moses. Their continued blessings were contingent upon their obedience to this covenant. (See: [promise](#), [promises](#), [promised](#) and [covenant](#), [covenants](#))

God's holiness

Because Yahweh is perfectly holy, he can only be approached in a certain way. Because of this, only Moses was allowed near Yahweh. This is also why Yahweh is described as a “devouring fire.” (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 24:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 24:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses. "Come up to me on top of this mountain, you and Aaron and his sons Nadab and Abihu. Also take along seventy of the Israelite elders. While you are still some distance from the top of the mountain, there you may worship me. ² Moses, I will allow you alone to come near to me. The others must not come near, and the rest of the people must not come up the mountain."

ULB:

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Come up to me—you, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy of Israel's elders, and worship me at a distance. ² Moses alone may come near to me. The others must not come near, nor may the people come up with him."

translationNotes**Nadab ... Abihu**

These are men's names. See how you translated these names in [Exodus 6:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

seventy of Israel's elders

"70 of Israel's elders" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [elder](#)
- [worship](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 24:3-4**UDB:**

³ Moses went and told the people everything that Yahweh had said and all that he had commanded. The people all replied together, saying, “We will do everything that Yahweh has told us to do.” ⁴ Then Moses wrote down everything that Yahweh had commanded. Early the next morning Moses built a stone altar. He also set up twelve stones, one for each of the Israelite tribes.

ULB:

³ Moses went and told the people all of Yahweh’s words and decrees. All the people answered with one voice and said, “We will do all the words that Yahweh has said.” ⁴ Then Moses wrote down all of Yahweh’s words. Early in the morning, Moses built an altar at the foot of the mountain and arranged twelve stone pillars, so that the stones would represent the twelve tribes of Israel.

translationNotes**with one voice**

This is an idiom that means the people were in complete agreement. AT: “together” or “in agreement” (See: [Idiom](#))

foot of the mountain

“base of the mountain” or “bottom of the mountain”

translationWords

- [word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures](#)
- [decree](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 24:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ He also chose some young men. They burned sacrifices to Yahweh and they also sacrificed some cattle as offerings to promise friendship with him. ⁶ Moses took half of the blood of the animals that were slaughtered and put it in bowls. The other half of the blood he threw against the altar.

ULB:

⁵ He sent some Israelite young men to offer burnt offerings and sacrifice fellowship offerings of oxen to Yahweh. ⁶ Moses took half of the blood and put it into basins; he sprinkled the other half onto the altar.

translationNotes**Moses took half of the blood and put it into basins**

Moses collected half of the blood in basins in order to splash it on the people in [Exodus 24:8](#). This would confirm the people's participation in the covenant between the people of Israel and God.

he sprinkled the other half onto the altar

Here the altar represents God. This would confirm God's participation in the covenant between God and the people of Israel.

translationWords

- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [fellowship offering](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 24:7-8

UDB:

⁷ Then he took the scroll on which he had written everything that Yahweh had commanded in the covenant that he had made, and he read it aloud while all the people were listening. Then all the people said, “We will do all that Yahweh has told us to do. We will obey everything.”

⁸ Then Moses took the blood that was in the bowls and threw it on the people. He said, “This is the blood that confirms the covenant that Yahweh has made with you when he gave you all these commands.”

ULB:

⁷ He took the book of the Covenant and read it aloud to the people. They said, “We will do all that Yahweh has spoken. We will be obedient.” ⁸ Then Moses took the blood and sprinkled it onto the people. He said, “This is the blood of the covenant that Yahweh has made with you by giving you this promise with all these words.”

translationNotes

We will be obedient

This can be stated in active form. AT: “We will obey everything” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Then Moses took the blood

This refers to the blood that Moses had put into the bowls. This can be stated clearly. AT: “Then Moses took the blood that was in the bowls” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [blood](#)
- [promise, promises, promised](#)
- [word, words](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 24:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ Then Moses along with Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and the seventy Israelite elders went up the mountain, ¹⁰ and they saw God, the one whom the Israelite people worship. Under his feet was something like a pavement made of blue stones called sapphires. They were as clear as the sky is when there are no clouds. ¹¹ God did not harm those Israelite elders because of their having seen him. They saw God, and they ate and drank together!

ULB:

⁹ Then Moses, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy of Israel's elders went up the mountain. ¹⁰ They saw the God of Israel. Under his feet there was a pavement made of sapphire stone, as clear as the sky itself. ¹¹ God did not lay a hand on the Israelite leaders. They saw God, and they ate and drank.

translationNotes**Nadab ... Abihu**

These are men's names. See how you translated these names in [Exodus 6:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Under his feet

This speaks of God as if he had human feet. (See: [Personification](#))

a pavement made of sapphire stone

“a pavement made of blue stones called sapphires”

pavement

a hard surface for walking or riding

sapphire stone

This is a gemstone that is blue in color. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

as clear as the sky itself

This is a simile. AT: “as clear as the sky is when there are no clouds” (See: [Simile](#))

God did not lay a hand on the Israelite leaders

This means that God did not harm the leaders. AT: “God did not harm the Israelite leaders” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [elder](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 24:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then Yahweh said to Moses, “Come up to me on top of this mountain. While you are here, I will give you two stone slabs on which I have written all the laws that I have given to you to teach the people.” ¹³ Then Moses went with his servant Joshua part of the way up the mountain where God was.

ULB:

¹² Yahweh said to Moses, “Come up to me on the mountain and stay there. I will give you the tablets of stone and the law and commandments that I have written, so that you may teach them.” ¹³ So Moses set out with his assistant Joshua and went up the mountain of God.

translationNotes**tablets of stone and the law and commandments**

God had written the law and commandments on the tablets of stone. This can be stated clearly. AT: “two stone slabs on which I have written all the laws” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with his assistant Joshua

“with Joshua who assisted him” or “with Joshua who helped him”

translationWords

- [law, law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Joshua](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 24:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Now Moses had said to the elders, “Stay here with the other people until we return! Do not forget that Aaron and Hur will be with you, so if anyone has a dispute while I am gone, he can go to those two men.” ¹⁵ Then Moses went the rest of the way up the mountain, and the cloud covered the mountain.

ULB:

¹⁴ Moses had said to the elders, “Stay here and wait for us until we come to you. Aaron and Hur are with you. If anyone has a dispute, let him go to them.” ¹⁵ So Moses went up the mountain, and the cloud covered it.

translationNotes**wait for us**

“wait for Joshua and me”

Hur

Hur was a man who was a friend of Moses and Aaron. See how you translated this name in [Exodus 17:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [elder](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 24:16-18**UDB:**

¹⁶ The glory of Yahweh came down on the mountain and covered it for six days. On the seventh day, Yahweh called to Moses from the middle of the cloud. ¹⁷ When the Israelite people looked at the top of the mountain, the glory of Yahweh was like a big fire burning there. ¹⁸ Moses went into the cloud on top of the mountain and was there for forty days and nights.

ULB:

¹⁶ Yahweh's glory settled on Mount Sinai, and the cloud covered it for six days. On the seventh day he called to Moses from within the cloud. ¹⁷ The appearance of Yahweh's glory was like a devouring fire on the top of the mountain in the eyes of the Israelites. ¹⁸ Moses entered the cloud and went up the mountain. He was up the mountain for forty days and forty nights.

translationNotes**Yahweh's glory**

This was the brilliant light of God's presence. AT: "The brilliant light showing God's presence" (See: [Metonymy](#))

like a devouring fire

This means the glory of Yahweh was very large and seemed to burn brightly like a fire. AT: "like a big fire burning" (See: [Simile](#))

in the eyes of the Israelites

Their eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents their thoughts or judgment about they saw. AT: "to the Israelites" (See: [Metaphor](#))

forty days and forty nights

"40 days and 40 nights" (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)

- [devour](#)
- [fire](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The tent of meeting

This chapter gives specific instructions regarding the building of a tent where Moses would meet Yahweh and the ark would be stored. This would eventually become the tabernacle. It was to be considered a very holy place. (See: [tabernacle](#) and [holy, holiness](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 25:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 25:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to Moses,

² "Tell the Israelites that they must give offerings to me. Receive from the people every offering that they want to give to me.

ULB:

¹ Yahweh said to Moses, ² "Tell the Israelites to take an offering for me from every person who is motivated by a willing heart. You must receive these offerings for me.

translationNotes**who is motivated by a willing heart**

This is an idiom that indicates a person's desire to give an offering. AT: "who wants to give an offering" (See: [Idiom](#))

You must receive

The word "you" refers to Moses and the leaders. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [receive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:3-7**UDB:**

³ These are the things that they may offer: gold, silver, bronze, ⁴ blue and purple and scarlet dyed wool, fine linen, goats' hair for making cloth, ⁵ ram skins that have been tanned, sea cow hides, hard wood from acacia trees, ⁶ olive oil to burn in the lamps, spices to put in the olive oil for anointing the priests, and spices to put in the sweet-smelling incense, ⁷ onyx stones and other expensive stones to be fastened to the priest's sacred apron and to be put on the chest pouch that is to be fastened to the apron.

ULB:

³ These are the offerings that you must receive from them: gold, silver, and bronze; ⁴ blue, purple, and scarlet material; fine linen; goats' hair; ⁵ ram skins dyed red and sea cow hides; acacia wood; ⁶ oil for the sanctuary lamps; spices for the anointing oil and the fragrant incense; ⁷ onyx stones and other precious stones to be set for the ephod and breastpiece.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

blue, purple, and scarlet material

Possible meanings are 1) "material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet," probably wool yarn, or 2) "blue, purple and scarlet dye" to dye the linen.

scarlet

"red"

sea cow

a large animal that lives in the sea and eats plants

spices

dried plants that people grind into a powder and put in oil or food to give it a nice smell or flavor (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

onyx

a valuable stone that has layers of white and black, red or brown. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

precious stones to be set

This can be stated in active form. AT: “precious stones for someone to set” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

precious stones

“valuable gems” or “treasured gems”

translationWords

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [goat, kid](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [acacia](#)
- [oil](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [incense](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Tell the people to make a big sacred tent for me so that I can live in it in their midst. ⁹ They must make the sacred tent and all the things that will be used inside it according to the plan that I will show you.

ULB:

⁸ Let them make me a sanctuary so that I may live among them. ⁹ You must make it exactly as I will show you in the plans for the tabernacle and for all its equipment.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

sanctuary ... tabernacle

Here these words mean the same thing.

You must make it

Here “you” is plural and refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

show you in the plans

“show you in the design” or “show you in the pattern.” Here “you” is singular and refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [sanctuary](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Tell the people to make a sacred chest from acacia wood. It is to be one meter long, three-quarters of a meter wide and three-quarters of a meter high. ¹¹ Cover the chest with pure gold inside and outside and put a gold border around the top of it.

ULB:

¹⁰ They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. ¹¹ You must cover it inside and out with pure gold, and you must make on it a border of gold around its top.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

two and a half cubits ... one cubit and a half

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “2.5 cubits ... 1.5 cubits” or “115 centimeters ... almost 69 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [acacia](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:12-14**UDB:**

¹² They must make four rings from gold and fasten them to the legs of the chest. Put two rings on each side of the chest. ¹³ They must make two poles from acacia wood, and they must cover them with gold. ¹⁴ They must put the poles into the rings on the sides of the chest so that the chest can be carried by the poles.

ULB:

¹² You must cast four rings of gold for it, and put them on the ark's four feet, with two rings on one side of it, and two rings on the other side. ¹³ You must make poles of acacia wood and cover them with gold. ¹⁴ You must put the poles into the rings on the ark's sides, in order to carry the ark.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

cast four rings of gold

Casting was a process in which gold was melted, poured into a mold that was in the shape of a ring, and then allowed to harden.

in order to carry the ark

“so that you can carry the ark”

translationWords

- [gold](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [acacia](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:15-18**UDB:**

¹⁵ The poles must always be left in the rings; they must not take the poles out of the rings. ¹⁶ Put inside the chest the two stone slabs that I will give you on which I have written my commandments.

¹⁷ Tell them to make a lid for the chest from pure gold; it will be the place where I will cover people's sins. It also is to be one meter long and three-quarters of a meter wide. ¹⁸ Tell them to hammer a large lump of gold into the form of two creatures that have wings for the two ends of the lid.

ULB:

¹⁵ The poles must remain in the rings of the ark; they must not be taken from it. ¹⁶ You must put into the ark the covenant decrees that I will give you. ¹⁷ You must make an atonement lid of pure gold. Its length must be two and a half cubits, and its width must be a cubit and a half. ¹⁸ You must make two cherubim of hammered gold for the two ends of the atonement lid.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made.

two and a half cubits ... a cubit and a half

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "2.5 cubits ... 1.5 cubits" or "115 centimeters ... 69 centimeters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

hammered gold

"beaten gold"

translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [atonement lid](#)
- [gold](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ One of these is to be put at each end of the chest, but the gold from which they are made must be joined to the gold from which the lid is made. ²⁰ Tell them to place the winged creatures so that their wings touch each other and spread out over the lid. The two winged creatures were facing each other and they both were looking toward the center of the chest. ²¹ Put the stone slabs that I will give you inside the chest. Then fasten the lid onto the top of the chest.

ULB:

¹⁹ Make one cherub for one end of the atonement lid, and the other cherub for the other end. They must be made as one piece with the atonement lid. ²⁰ The cherubim must spread out their wings upward and overshadow the atonement lid with them. The cherubim must face one another and look toward the center of the atonement lid. ²¹ You must put the atonement lid on top of the ark, and you must put into the ark the covenant decrees that I am giving you.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

They must be made

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must make them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You must put

Here "you" refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)
- [face](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:22**UDB:**

²² I will set times to talk with you there. From above the lid of the chest, between the two winged creatures, I will tell to you all my laws that you must transmit to the Israelite people.

ULB:

²² It is at the ark that I will meet with you. I will speak with you from my position above the atonement lid. It will be from between the two cherubim over the ark of the testimony that I will speak to you about all the commands I will give you for the Israelites.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Moses.

It is at the ark that I will meet with you

“I will meet with you at the ark.” In 25:22 the word “you” is singular and refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Tell them to make a table from acacia wood. It is to be one meter long, one-half of a meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high. ²⁴ Tell them to cover it with pure gold and put a gold border around it.

ULB:

²³ You must make a table of acacia wood. Its length must be two cubits; its width must be one cubit, and its height must be a cubit and a half. ²⁴ You must cover it with pure gold and put a border of gold around the top.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

two cubits ... one cubit ... a cubit and a half

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “2 cubits ... 1 cubit ... 1.5 cubits” or “92 centimeters ... 46 centimeters ... 69 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Tell them to make a rim all around it, four-fifths of a meter wide, and to put a gold border around the rim. ²⁶ Tell them to make four rings from gold and fasten them to the four corners of the table, one ring close to each leg of the table. ²⁷ The rings should be fastened to the table near the rim at the legs in order to carry the table with poles.

ULB:

²⁵ You must make a surrounding frame for it one handbreadth wide, with a surrounding border of gold for the frame. ²⁶ You must make for it four rings of gold and attach the rings to the four corners, where the four feet were. ²⁷ The rings must be attached to the frame to provide places for the poles, in order to carry the table.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

one handbreadth wide

a measurement of 7 to 8 centimeters

frame for it

“frame for the table”

feet were

“legs are”

The rings must be attached

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must attach the rings” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in order to carry

“so you can carry”

translationWords

- gold

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:28-30**UDB:**

²⁸ Make two poles from acacia wood and cover them with gold. The poles for carrying the table are to be inserted into the rings. ²⁹ Also tell them to make plates, spoons, jars, and bowls to be used when the priests pour out wine to offer to me. They must all be made from pure gold. ³⁰ On the table in front of the chest, there must always be the bread to display before me that the priests have offered to me.

ULB:

²⁸ You must make the poles out of acacia wood and cover them with gold so that the table may be carried with them. ²⁹ You must make the dishes, spoons, pitchers, and bowls to be used to pour out drink offerings. You must make them of pure gold. ³⁰ You must regularly set the bread of the presence on the table before me.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

so that the table may be carried with them

This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that you may carry the table with them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be used to pour out drink offerings

This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that you may use them to pour out drink offerings” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

bread of the presence

This bread represented the presence of God.

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [gold](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [bread](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:31-32

UDB:

³¹ Tell them to make a lampstand from pure gold. They must hammer one large lump of gold to make its base and its shaft. The branches of the lampstand, the cups for holding the oil, the flower buds and the flower petals that decorate the branches of the lamp, the base, and the shaft are all to be hammered from one big lump of gold. ³² There are to be six branches on the lampstand, three on each side of the shaft.

ULB:

³¹ You must make a lampstand of pure hammered gold. The lampstand is to be made with its base and shaft. Its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers are to be all made of one piece with it. ³² Six branches must extend out from its sides—three branches must extend from one side, and three branches of the lampstand must extend from the other side.

translationNotes

hammered gold

“beaten gold.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:18](#).

The lampstand is to be made

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Make the lampstand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers are to be all made of one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Make its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers all of one piece with the lampstand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [lampstand](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:33-34**UDB:**

³³ Each of the branches is to have on it three gold decorations that will look like almond blossoms. These decorations must also have flower buds and flower petals. ³⁴ On the shaft of the lampstand there are to be four gold decorations that also look like almond blossoms, each one with flower buds and petals.

ULB:

³³ The first branch must have three cups made like almond blossoms, with a leafy base and a flower, and three cups made like almond blossoms in the other branch, with a leafy base and a flower. It must be the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand. ³⁴ On the lampstand itself, the central shaft, there must be four cups made like almond blossoms, with their leafy bases and the flowers.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do. Yahweh is describing the lampstand. (See: [Exodus 25:31-32](#))

almond blossoms

white or pink flowers that have five petals

translationWords

- [lampstand](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:35-36**UDB:**

³⁵ On each side, there is to be one flower bud beneath each of the branches. ³⁶ All these buds and branches, along with the shaft, are to be hammered from one large lump of pure gold.

ULB:

³⁵ There must be a leafy base under the first pair of branches—made as one piece with it, and a leafy base under the second pair of branches—also made as one piece with it. In the same way there must be a leafy base under the third pair of branches, made as one piece with it. It must be the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand. ³⁶ Their leafy bases and branches must all be one piece with it, one beaten piece of work of pure gold.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do. Yahweh is describing the lampstand. (See: [Exodus 25:31-32](#))

made as one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must make them as one piece with the lampstand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [lampstand](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 25:37-40**UDB:**

³⁷ Also tell them to make seven small cups for holding oil. One is to be put on top of the shaft and the others are to be put on top of the branches. Place these cups so that when the lamps are lit, the light will shine toward the front of the lampstand. ³⁸ Tell them to make tongs from pure gold, to remove the burned wicks and trays in which to put the burned wicks. ³⁹ Tell them to use thirty-three kilograms of pure gold to make the lampstand, the tongs, and the trays. ⁴⁰ Make sure that they make these things according to the instructions that I am giving you here on this mountain.”

ULB:

³⁷ You must make the lampstand and its seven lamps, and set up its lamps for them to give light from it. ³⁸ The tongs and their trays must be made of pure gold. ³⁹ Use one talent of pure gold to make the lampstand and its accessories. ⁴⁰ Be sure to make them after the pattern that you are being shown on the mountain.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

for them to give light from it

“so they shine light from it”

The tongs and their trays must be made of pure gold

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Make the tongs and their trays of pure gold” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

one talent

A talent weighs about thirty-three kilograms. (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

its accessories

the tongs and the trays

you are being shown on the mountain

This can be stated in active form. AT: “I am showing you on the mountain” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [lampstand](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 25 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 25 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the material in the previous chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

The tent of meeting

This chapter gives specific instructions regarding the building of a tent where Moses would meet Yahweh and the ark would be stored. This would eventually become the tabernacle. It was to be considered a very holy place. (See: [tabernacle](#) and [holy, holiness](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 26:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 26:1-3**UDB:**

¹ "Tell the people to make the sacred tent using ten long strips of fine linen. They must take blue, purple, and red thread, and a skilled craftsman must embroider these strips with designs that represent the winged creatures that are above the chest. ² Each strip is to be twelve and one-half meters long and one and four-fifths meters wide. ³ Tell them to sew five strips together to make one set, and to sew the other five strips together to make another set.

ULB:

¹ You must make the tabernacle with ten curtains made from fine linen and blue, purple, and scarlet wool with the designs of cherubim. This will be the work of a very skilled craftsman. ² The length of each curtain must be twenty-eight cubits, the width four cubits. All the curtains must be of the same size. ³ Five curtains must be joined to each other, and the other five curtains must also be joined to each other.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do. (See: [Exodus 25:1](#))

You must make

Yahweh is speaking to Moses, so the word "you" is singular. Yahweh probably expected Moses to tell someone else to do the actual work, but Moses would be the one responsible for seeing that the work was done correctly. "Tell a craftsman to make" (See: [Forms of You](#))

curtains

These were large, heavy sections of woven cloth that were used to form the covering and dividing walls of the tabernacle.

scarlet wool

wool dyed a deep red color

craftsman

a person who is skilled in making beautiful objects by hand

twenty-eight cubits ... four cubits

“28 cubits ... 4 cubits.” A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

Five curtains must be joined to each other ... must also be joined to each other

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Sew five curtains together to make one set, and sew the other five curtains together to make another set” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [tabernacle](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ For each set, they must make loops of blue cloth and fasten them along the outer edge of the strip, at the end of each set. ⁵ They must put fifty loops on the edge of the first set, and fifty loops at the edge of the second set so that the loops are opposite to each other. ⁶ Tell them to make fifty gold clasps to fasten both of the sets together. As a result, the inside of the sacred tent will be as though it were one piece.

ULB:

⁴ You must make loops of blue along the outer edge of the end curtain of one set. In the same way, you must do the same along the outer edge of the end curtain in the second set. ⁵ You must make fifty loops on the first curtain, and you must make fifty loops on the end curtain in the second set. Do this so that the loops will be opposite to each other. ⁶ You must make fifty clasps of gold and join the curtains together with them so that the tabernacle becomes united.

translationNotes**loops ... clasps**

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together.

one set

“one set of five curtains”

the second set

“the second set of five curtains”

translationWords

- [gold](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Also tell them to make a cover for the sacred tent from eleven pieces of cloth made from goats' hair. ⁸ Each piece of cloth is to be thirteen and one-half meters long and one and four-fifths meters wide. ⁹ Tell them to sew five of these pieces of cloth together to make one set, and sew the other six pieces of cloth together to make another set. They must fold the sixth piece of cloth in half to make it double over the front of the sacred tent .

ULB:

⁷ You must make curtains of goats' hair for a tent over the tabernacle. You must make eleven of these curtains. ⁸ The length of each curtain must be thirty cubits, and the width of each curtain must be four cubits. Each of the eleven curtains must be of the same size. ⁹ You must join five curtains to each other and the other six curtains to each other. You must double over the sixth curtain in the front of the tent.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

eleven ... thirty ... four

"11 ... 30 ... 4" (See: [Numbers](#))

cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [goat, kid](#)
- [tent](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Tell them to make one hundred loops of blue cloth, and to fasten fifty of them to the outer edge of the one set and fasten fifty to the outer edge of the other set. ¹¹ Tell them to make fifty bronze clasps and put them in the cloth loops to join the two sets together. As a result, the cover for the sacred tent will be as though it were one piece.

ULB:

¹⁰ You must make fifty loops on the edge of the end curtain of the first set, and fifty loops on the edge of the end curtain that joins the second set. ¹¹ You must make fifty bronze clasps and put them into the loops. Then you join the tent together so that it may be one piece.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

loops ... clasps

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in [Exodus 26:4-6](#).

translationWords

- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Let the extra part of the cover, the part that extends beyond the linen cloth, hang over the back of the sacred tent. ¹³ The extra half-meter of each cover, the part that extends beyond the linen cloth on each side, must hang over the two sides of the sacred tent to protect the sides. ¹⁴ Tell them to make two more covers for the sacred tent. One is to be made from rams' skins that have been dyed red, and the top cover is to be made from fine leather.

ULB:

¹² The leftover half curtain, that is, the overhanging part remaining from the tent's curtains, must hang at the back of the tabernacle. ¹³ There must be one cubit of curtain on one side, and one cubit of curtain on the other side—that which is left over of the length of the tent's curtains must hang over the sides of the tabernacle on one side and on the other side, to cover it. ¹⁴ You must make for the tabernacle a covering of ram skins dyed red, and another covering of fine leather to go above that.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

cubit

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

dyed

“colored”

translationWords

- [tent](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:15-18**UDB:**

¹⁵ Tell them to make forty-eight frames from acacia wood, frames that will be set up to hang the sacred tent covers from them. ¹⁶ Each frame is to be four and one-half meters long and three-quarters of a meter wide. ¹⁷ They must make two projections at the bottom of each frame. These will be to fasten the frames to the bases underneath them. They must make these projections at the bottom of each frame. ¹⁸ Make twenty frames for the south side of the sacred tent.

ULB:

¹⁵ You must make upright frames out of acacia wood for the tabernacle. ¹⁶ The length of each frame must be ten cubits, and its width must be one and a half cubits. ¹⁷ There must be two wooden pegs in each frame for joining the frames to each other. You are to make all the tabernacle's frames in this way. ¹⁸ When you make the frames for the tabernacle, you must make twenty frames for the south side.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

frames

This refers to frames or panels that they made by joining together smaller pieces of wood.

ten cubits ... one and a half cubits

“10 cubits ... 1.5 cubits” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Tell them to make forty silver bases to go underneath them. Two bases will go under each frame. The projections at the bottom of each frame are to be made to fit into the bases. ²⁰ Similarly, tell them to make twenty frames for the north side of the sacred tent. ²¹ They must make forty silver bases for them also with two bases to be put under each frame.

ULB:

¹⁹ You must make forty silver bases to go under the twenty frames. There must be two bases under the first frame to be its two pedestals, and also two bases under each of the other frames for their two pedestals. ²⁰ For the second side of the tabernacle, on the north side, you must make twenty frames ²¹ and their forty silver bases. There must be two bases under the first frame, two bases under the next frame, and so on.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

silver bases

These were silver blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place.

pedestals

The silver bases kept the wooden board off the ground.

There must be two bases

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Put two bases" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

and so on

This means that what was said about the first two boards should be done for the rest of the boards. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: "and two bases for each of the rest of the boards" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- silver
- tabernacle

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:22-25**UDB:**

²² For the rear of the sacred tent, on the west side, tell them to make six frames. ²³ Also tell them to make two extra frames, one for each corner of the rear of the sacred tent, to provide more support. ²⁴ The two corner frames must be separated at the bottom but together at the top. At the top of each of the two corner frames there must be a gold ring for holding the crossbar. ²⁵ In that way, for the rear of the sacred tent there will be eight frames, and there will be sixteen bases, two under each frame.

ULB:

²² For the back side of the tabernacle on the west side, you must make six frames. ²³ You must make two frames for the back corners of the tabernacle. ²⁴ These frames must be separate at the bottom, but joined at the top to the same ring. It must be this way for both of the back corners. ²⁵ There must be eight frames, together with their silver bases. There must be sixteen bases in all, two bases under the first frame, two bases under the next frame, and so on.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

These frames must be separate at the bottom, but joined at the top

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Separate these frames at the bottom, but join them at the top" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

silver bases

These were silver blocks that had a slot in them to keep the frame in place. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:19](#).

in all

"total"

and so on

This means that what was said about the first two frames should be done for the rest of the frames. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:21](#). AT: "and two bases for each of the rest of the frames" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [tabernacle](#)
- [silver](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ Tell them to make fifteen crossbars from acacia wood. Five of them will be for the frames on the north side of the sacred tent, ²⁷ five will be for the south side, and five for the frames at the rear of the sacred tent, the west side. ²⁸ Tell them to fasten the crossbars on the north, south, and west sides of the sacred tent to the middle of the frames. The two long ones must extend from one end of the sacred tent to the other, and the crossbar on the west side must extend from one side of the sacred tent to the other.

ULB:

²⁶ You must make crossbars of acacia wood—five for the frames of the one side of the tabernacle, ²⁷ five crossbars for the frames of the other side of the tabernacle, and five crossbars for the frames for the back side of the tabernacle to the west. ²⁸ The crossbar in the center of the frames, that is, halfway up, must reach from end to end.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continue to tell Moses how the tabernacle was to be built.

crossbars

These are horizontal support beams that give stability to the structure.

the back side of the tabernacle to the west

The front was on the east side of the tabernacle.

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ Tell them to cover the frames with gold, and make gold rings to fasten the crossbars to the frames. The crossbars must also be covered with gold. ³⁰ Build the sacred tent in the way that I have shown you here on this mountain.”

ULB:

²⁹ You must cover the frames with gold. You must make their rings of gold, for them to serve as holders for the crossbars, and you must cover the bars with gold. ³⁰ You must set up the tabernacle by following the plan you were shown on the mountain.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses how the tabernacle must be constructed.

for them to serve as holders for the crossbars

“which will hold the crossbars” or “because they will hold the crossbars”

crossbars

These are horizontal support beams that give stability to the structure. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:26](#).

you were shown on the mountain

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that I have shown you here on this mountain” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [gold](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:31-33**UDB:**

³¹ "Tell them to make a curtain from fine linen. A skilled craftsman must embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn making designs to represent the winged creatures that are above the chest. ³² Tell them to suspend the curtain from four posts made from acacia wood and covered with gold. Set each post in a silver base. ³³ They must hang the top of the curtain by hooks that are fastened to the roof of the sacred tent. Behind the curtain, in the room called the very holy place, they must put the chest containing the two stone slabs on which I have written my commandments. That curtain will separate the holy place from the very holy place.

ULB:

³¹ You must make a curtain of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine linen, with designs of cherubim, the work of a skillful workman. ³² You must hang it on four pillars of acacia wood covered with gold. These pillars must have hooks of gold set on four silver bases. ³³ You must hang up the curtain under the clasps, and you must bring in the ark of the testimony. The curtain is to separate the holy place from the most holy place.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses how the tabernacle is to be constructed.

You must make

Yahweh is speaking to Moses, so the word "you" is singular. Yahweh probably expected Moses to tell someone else to do the actual work, but Moses would be the one responsible for seeing that the work was done correctly. "Tell a craftsman to make." See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:1](#). (See: [Forms of You](#))

clasps

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in [Exodus 26:4-6](#).

you must bring in the ark of the testimony

The ark of the testimony is the chest that contains the commandments. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: "you must bring in the chest containing the commandments" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The curtain is to separate the holy place

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The curtain will separate the holy place” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [acacia](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [holy place](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ On top of the chest in the very holy place they must put the lid. ³⁵ In the room that is outside of the very holy place, they must put the table for the sacred bread on the north side, and put the lampstand on the south side.

ULB:

³⁴ You must put the atonement lid on the ark of the testimony, which is in the most holy place. ³⁵ You must place the table outside the curtain. You must place the lampstand opposite the table on the south side of the tabernacle. The table must be on the north side.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

on the ark of the testimony

“on the chest that contains the commandments”

The table must be on the north side

This is the table that holds the bread that represents the presence of God. This can be stated in active form. AT: “Place the table for the bread of God’s presence on the north side” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [lampstand](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 26:36-37**UDB:**

³⁶ Tell them to make a curtain to cover the entrance of the sacred tent. They must make it from fine linen, and a skilled weaver must embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn. ³⁷ To hold up this curtain, they must make five posts from acacia wood. They must cover them with gold and fasten gold clasps to them. Also they must make a bronze base for each of these posts.

ULB:

³⁶ You must make a hanging for the tent entrance. You must make it out of blue, purple, and scarlet material and fine twined linen, the work of an embroiderer. ³⁷ For the hanging, you must make five pillars of acacia and cover them with gold. Their hooks must be of gold, and you must cast five bronze bases for them.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses how to construct the tabernacle.

a hanging

This was a large curtain made of cloth.

blue, purple, and scarlet material

Possible meanings are 1) “yarn that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or 2) “blue, purple, and scarlet dye” to dye the linen. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:4](#).

fine twined linen

“finely twisted linen.” This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread.

an embroiderer

“a person who sews designs into cloth” or “a person who embroiders”

translationWords

- [tent](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [acacia](#)
- [gold](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 26 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 26 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a continuation of the material in the previous chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

The tent of meeting

This chapter gives specific instructions regarding the building of a tent where Moses would meet Yahweh and the ark would be stored. This would eventually become the tabernacle. It was to be considered a very holy place. (See: [tabernacle](#) and [holy, holiness](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 27:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 27:1-2**UDB:**

¹ "Tell them to make an altar from acacia wood. It is to be square, two and one-tenth meters long on each side, and make it one and one-third meters high. ² They must make a projection that looks like a horn on each of the top corners. The projections must be carved from the same block of wood as the altar. Tell them to cover the whole altar with bronze.

ULB:

¹ You must make the altar of acacia wood, five cubits long and five cubits wide. The altar must be square and three cubits high. ² You must make extensions of its four corners shaped like ox horns. The horns will be made as one piece with the altar, and you must cover them with bronze.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do. (See: [Exodus 25:1](#))

five cubits long and five cubits wide

"2.2 meters long on each side" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

The altar must be square and three cubits high

"The altar must be square and 1.3 meters high" (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

You must make extensions of its four corners shaped like ox horns

"You must make projections that look like ox horns on its four corners"

The horns will be made

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must make the horns" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

must cover them

"must cover the altar and horns"

translationWords

- altar, altars
- acacia
- ox, oxen
- bronze

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27:3-4**UDB:**

³ They must make pans in which to put the ashes from the animal sacrifices. Also they must make shovels for cleaning out the ashes, basins, and forks for turning the meat as it cooks, and buckets for carrying hot coals. All of these things must be made from bronze. ⁴ Also tell them to make a bronze grating to hold the wood and burning coals. They must fasten to each of the corners of the altar a bronze ring for carrying the altar.

ULB:

³ You must make equipment for the altar: pots for ashes, and also shovels, basins, meat forks, and firepans. You must make all these utensils with bronze. ⁴ You must make a grate for the altar, a network of bronze. Make a bronze ring for each of the grate's four corners.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

basins

“bowls”

firepans

There were pans that held hot coals from the altar.

utensils

These were any instrument, vessel, or tool that served a useful purpose.

You must make a grate for the altar, a network of bronze

“You must make a bronze grate for the altar”

grate

a frame of crossed bars for holding wood when burning

translationWords

- altar, altars
- bronze

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ They must put the grating under the rim that is around the altar. They must make it so that it is inside the altar, halfway down. ⁶ For carrying the altar, they must make poles from acacia wood and cover them with bronze.

ULB:

⁵ You must put the grate under the ledge of the altar, halfway down to the bottom. ⁶ You must make poles for the altar, poles of acacia wood, and you must cover them with bronze.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people need to do.

You must put the grate under the ledge of the altar

The grate was placed inside the altar. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: “You must put the grate under the rim of the altar, on the inside of the altar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

grate

This is a frame of crossed bars for holding wood when burning. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:4](#).

You must make poles for the altar

These poles were used for carrying the altar. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: “You must make poles for carrying the altar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- altar, altars
- acacia
- bronze

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ They must put the poles through the rings on each side of the altar. The poles are for carrying the altar. ⁸ The altar will be like a box, made from boards of acacia wood. They must make it according to these instructions that I am giving you here on this mountain.

ULB:

⁷ The poles must be put into the rings, and the poles must be on the two sides of the altar, to carry it. ⁸ You must make the altar hollow, out of planks. You must make it in the way you were shown on the mountain.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people should do.

The poles must be put into the rings, and the poles must be on the two sides of the altar, to carry it

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must put the poles into the rings and place them on each side of the altar to carry it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

planks

a long, flat piece of wood that is thicker than a board

you were shown on the mountain

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that I have shown to you here on this mountain” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [altar, altars](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Around the sacred tent there is to be a courtyard. To form the courtyard, tell them to make curtains of fine linen. On the south side, the curtain is to be 44 meters long. ¹⁰ To support the curtain, tell them to make twenty bronze posts, and one bronze base for each post. To fasten the curtains to the posts, they must make silver hooks, and metal rods covered with silver to fasten the curtains to the hooks.

ULB:

⁹ You must make a courtyard for the tabernacle. There must be hangings on the south side of the courtyard, hangings of fine twined linen one hundred cubits long. ¹⁰ The hangings must have twenty posts, with twenty bronze bases. There must also be hooks attached to the posts, as well as silver rods.

translationNotes**There must be hangings ... courtyard**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must place hangings ... courtyard” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

hangings of fine twined linen

A “hanging” was a large curtain made of cloth. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#)

fine twined linen

“finely twisted linen.” This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread

one hundred cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “44 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

There must also be hooks ... posts

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must also attach hooks ... posts” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

posts

a strong piece of wood set upright and used as a support

translationWords

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [silver](#)
- [rod](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ They must make the same kind of curtains for the north side of the courtyard. ¹² On the west side of the courtyard they must make a curtain twenty-two meters long. The curtains are to be supported by ten posts, with a base under each post. ¹³ On the east side, where the entrance is, the courtyard must also be twenty-two meters wide.

ULB:

¹¹ Likewise along the north side, there must be hangings one hundred cubits long with twenty posts, twenty bronze bases, hooks attached to the posts, and silver rods. ¹² Along the courtyard on the west side there must be a curtain fifty cubits long. There must be ten posts and ten bases. ¹³ The courtyard must also be fifty cubits long on the east side.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

Likewise ... silver rods

For 27:11 see how you translated many similar words in [Exodus 27:9-10](#).

there must be hangings

This could be stated as a command. AT: “you must make hangings”

there must be a curtain

This could be stated as a command. AT: “you must make a curtain”

There must be ten posts

This could be stated as a command. AT: “You must make ten posts”

The courtyard must also be fifty cubits long

This could be stated as a command. AT: “Make the courtyard fifty cubits long”

translationWords

- [bronze](#)
- [silver](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴⁻¹⁵ Tell them to make a curtain seven meters wide with three posts and three bases for each side of the entrance to the courtyard. ¹⁶ They must make a curtain from finely twined linen nine meters long for the entrance. A skilled weaver must embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn. It must be supported by four posts, each one with a base under it.

ULB:

¹⁴ The hangings for one side of the entrance must be fifteen cubits long. They must have three posts with three bases. ¹⁵ The other side must also have hangings fifteen cubits long. They must have their three posts and three bases. ¹⁶ The courtyard gate must be a curtain twenty cubits long. The curtain must be made of blue, purple, and scarlet material and fine twined linen, the work of an embroiderer. It must have four posts with four bases.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

The hangings

These were large curtains made of cloth. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

posts

These were strong pieces of wood set upright and used as supports. See how you translated these in [Exodus 27:10](#).

bases

These were metal blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:19](#).

fifteen cubits

about seven meters (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

The courtyard gate must be a curtain twenty cubits long

This could be stated as a command. AT: "You must make a curtain twenty cubits long to be the courtyard gate"

The curtain must be made ... fine twined linen, the work of an embroiderer

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They must make the curtain ... fine twined linen, the work of an embroiderer” or “Embroiderers must make the curtain ... fine twined linen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

blue, purple, and scarlet material and fine twined linen

Possible meanings are 1) “yarn that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or 2) “blue, purple, and scarlet dye” to dye the linen.

an embroiderer

a person who sews designs into cloth

translationWords

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ All the posts around the courtyard must have bands of silver around them. The clasps must be made of silver, and the bases must be made of bronze. ¹⁸ The whole courtyard, from the east entrance to the west end, must be forty-six meters long and twenty-three meters wide, and the curtains that enclose it must be two and one-third meters high. All the curtains must be made of fine linen, and all the bases under the posts must be made of bronze. ¹⁹ All the things that are not made of gold that are to be used inside the sacred tent and in the courtyard, and all the tent pegs to support the sacred tent and the curtains, must be made of bronze.

ULB:

¹⁷ All the courtyard posts must have silver rods, silver hooks, and bronze bases. ¹⁸ The length of the courtyard must be one hundred cubits, the width fifty cubits, and the height five cubits with fine twined linen hangings all along, and bases of bronze. ¹⁹ All the equipment to be used in the tabernacle, and all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard must be made of bronze.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

one hundred cubits

“100 cubits.” A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

fine twined linen hangings

“finely twisted linen.” This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard must be made of bronze

This can be stated in active form. AT: “make all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard out of bronze” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

tent pegs

sharp pieces of wood or metal used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground

translationWords

- courtyard, court
- silver
- rod
- bronze
- tabernacle
- tent

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 27:20-21**UDB:**

²⁰ Command the Israelite people that they must bring to you the best kind of pure olive oil to burn in the lamp. They must bring this oil to you so that the lamp is always burning. ²¹ Outside the curtain of the tabernacle, where the sacred chest of Yahweh is kept, Aaron and his sons must take care to keep the lamps burning every day from evening to morning. The Israelite people must obey this regulation throughout all future generations.”

ULB:

²⁰ You must command the people of Israel to bring olive oil, pure and pressed, for the lamps so they may burn continually. ²¹ In the tent of meeting, outside the curtain that is in front of the tabernacle that contains the ark of testimony, Aaron and his sons must keep the lamps burning before Yahweh, from evening to morning. This requirement will be a lasting ordinance throughout the generations of the people of Israel.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle.

ark of testimony

This is the chest that contains the sacred slabs of stone on which Yahweh had written his commandments.

This requirement will be a lasting ordinance

“I require that the people do this as a lasting ordinance”

translationWords

- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Israel, Israelites
- pure, purify, purification
- olive

- oil
- lamp
- tent of meeting
- ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh
- Aaron
- Yahweh
- ordinance
- forever
- generation
- nation

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 27 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 27 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Holy garments

Because Yahweh is holy, only the priests could approach him, and when they did they must be wearing specially made clothing. (See: [priest](#), [priests](#), [priesthood](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 28:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 28:1-3**UDB:**

¹ "Call your older brother Aaron and his sons—Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar. Set them apart from the rest of the Israelite people in order that they can serve me as priests. ² Tell the people to make beautiful clothes for Aaron, clothes that are suitable for one who has this dignified and sacred work. ³ Talk to all the workmen, those to whom I have given skill to build things. Tell them to make clothes for Aaron to wear when he is set apart to become a priest to serve me.

ULB:

¹ Call to yourself Aaron your brother and his sons—Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar—from among the Israelites so that they may serve me as priests. ² You must make for Aaron, your brother, garments that are set apart to me. These garments will be for his honor and splendor. ³ You must speak to all people who are wise in heart, those whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, so that they may make Aaron's garments to set him apart to serve me as my priest.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do. (See: [Exodus 25:1](#))

Call to yourself

Here "yourself" refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

You must make

Here "you" refers to the people. (See: [Forms of You](#))

garments that are set apart to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: "garments that you will set apart to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)
- [splendor](#)
- [filled with the Holy Spirit](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [set apart](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ The clothes that they are to make are a sacred pouch for Aaron to wear over his breast, a sacred apron, a robe, an embroidered tunic, a turban, and a sash. These are the clothes that your older brother Aaron and his sons must wear as they serve me by doing the work that priests do. ⁵ The skilled workmen must use fine linen and blue, purple, and red yarn to make these clothes.

ULB:

⁴ The garments that they must make are a breastpiece, an ephod, a robe, a coat of woven work, a turban, and a sash. They must make these garments that are set them apart to me. They will be for your brother Aaron and his sons so that they may serve me as priests. ⁵ Craftsmen must use fine linen that is gold, blue, purple, and scarlet.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

a coat of woven work

“a coat with a design woven into it”

turban

a tall head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times.

sash

a piece of cloth that people wear around their waist or across their chest

translationWords

- breastplate, breastpiece
- ephod
- robe
- set apart
- Aaron
- serve, service
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:6-9**UDB:**

⁶ The skilled workmen must make the sacred apron from fine linen, and they must skillfully embroider it with blue, purple, and red yarn, and with fine gold wire. ⁷ It must have two shoulder straps that will join the front part to the back part. ⁸ A carefully woven belt, which must be made from the same materials as the sacred apron, must be sewn onto the apron. ⁹ A skilled workman must take two onyx stones and carve on them the names of the twelve sons of Jacob.

ULB:

⁶ They must make the ephod of gold, of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine-twined linen. It must be the work of a skillful craftsman. ⁷ It must have two shoulder pieces attached to its two upper corners. ⁸ Its finely-woven waistband must be like the ephod; it must be made of one piece with the ephod, made of fine twined linen that is gold, blue, purple, and scarlet. ⁹ You must take two onyx stones and engrave on them the names of Israel's twelve sons.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

fine-twined linen

“finely-twisted linen.” This was cloth made from fine linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

skillful craftsman

a person who can make beautiful objects by hand

it must be made of one piece

This can be stated in active form. AT: “they must make it in one piece” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

onyx stones

These are valuable stones that have layers of white and black, red or brown. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:7](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

translationWords

- [ephod](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ He must engrave the names in the order in which Jacob's sons were born. He must engrave six names on one stone and the other six names on the other stone. ¹¹ A gem cutter should engrave these names on the two stones. Then he should mount the stones in gold settings. ¹² Then he should fasten the stones onto the shoulder straps of the sacred apron to represent the twelve tribes of Israel. In that way, Aaron will carry the names of the tribes on his shoulders in order that I, Yahweh, will never forget my people.

ULB:

¹⁰ Six of their names must be on one stone, and six names must be on the other stone, in order of the sons' birth. ¹¹ With the work of an engraver in stone, like the engraving on a signet, you must engrave the two stones with the names of Israel's twelve sons. You must mount the stones in settings of gold. ¹² You must put the two stones on the shoulder pieces of the ephod, to be stones to remind Yahweh of Israel's sons. Aaron will carry their names before Yahweh on his two shoulders as a reminder to him.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

With the work of an engraver in stone, like the engraving on a signet

“In the same way a person engraves on a seal”

engraver

a person who cuts designs into a hard material such as wood, stone, or metal

signet

an engraved stone used to stamp a design into a wax seal

settings

pieces of metal that hold the stone onto the ephod

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [gold](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ The settings for the stones must be made from gold. ¹⁴ Tell them to make two chains of gold that are braided like cords and to fasten the chains to the settings.”

ULB:

¹³ You must make settings of gold ¹⁴ and two braided chains of pure gold like cords, and you must attach the chains to the settings.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

settings

These are pieces of metal that hold each stone onto the ephod. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:11](#).

two braided chains of pure gold like cords

“two chains of pure gold that are braided like cords”

translationWords

- [gold](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Tell the skilled workman to make a sacred pouch for Aaron to wear over his chest. He will use this to find out what I want the people to do. They must make it of the same materials as the sacred apron, and they must embroider it in the same way with gold, blue, purple, and red fine linen. ¹⁶ It is to be square, and the material must be folded double so that it is 23 centimeters long and 23 centimeters wide.

ULB:

¹⁵ You must make a breastpiece for decision making, the work of a skillful workman, fashioned like the ephod. Make it of gold, of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine linen. ¹⁶ It is to be square. You must fold the breastpiece double. It must be one span long and one span wide.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

the work of a skillful workman, fashioned like the ephod

“a skillful workman will make it like the ephod”

span

A span is 22 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:17-20**UDB:**

¹⁷ The skilled workman must fasten four rows of valuable stones onto the pouch. In the first row, he must put a red ruby, a yellow topaz, and a red garnet. ¹⁸ In the second row, he must put a green emerald, a blue sapphire, and a diamond. ¹⁹ In the third row he must put a red jacinth, a white agate, and a purple amethyst. ²⁰ In the fourth row, he must put a yellow beryl, an onyx, and a green jasper. All of these stones must be mounted in gold settings.

ULB:

¹⁷ You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. ¹⁸ The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. ¹⁹ The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. ²⁰ The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings.

translationNotes**General Information:**

The colors of the precious stones mentioned here may be different from those in the UDB.

precious stones

“valuable gems” or “treasured gems.” See how you translated these in [Exodus 25:7](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

ruby ... jasper

These are precious stones. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

sapphire

This is a gemstone that is blue in color. See how you translated this in [Exodus 24:10](#).

onyx

This is a valuable stone that has layers of white and black, red or brown. See how you translated these in [Exodus 25:7](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

They must be mounted in gold settings

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must mount them in gold settings” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:21-24**UDB:**

²¹ A gem cutter should engrave on each of these twelve stones the name of one of the sons of Jacob. These names will represent the twelve tribes of Israel. ²² The two chains that are made from pure gold and braided like cords are for attaching the sacred pouch to the sacred apron. ²³ The workman must make two gold rings and attach them to the upper corners of the sacred pouch. ²⁴ He must make two gold cords and fasten one end of each cord to one of the rings.

ULB:

²¹ The stones must be arranged by the names of Israel's twelve sons, each in order by name. They must be like the engraving on a signet ring, each name standing for one of the twelve tribes. ²² You must make on the breastpiece chains like cords, braided work of pure gold. ²³ You must make two rings of gold for the breastpiece and must attach them to the two ends of the breastpiece. ²⁴ You must attach the two golden chains to the two corners of the breastpiece.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

The stones must be arranged

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must arrange the stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

signet ring

A signet is an engraved stone used to stamp a design into a wax seal. Here the stone is mounted on a ring. See how you translated "signet" in [Exodus 28:11](#).

chains like cords, braided work of pure gold

"chains that are made of pure gold and are braided like cords." See how you translated similar phrases in [Exodus 28:14](#).

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ He must fasten the other end of each cord to the two settings that enclose the stones. In that way, the sacred pouch will be attached to the shoulder straps of the sacred apron. ²⁶ Then he must make two more gold rings and attach them to the lower corners of the sacred pouch on the inside edges next to the sacred apron.

ULB:

²⁵ You must attach the other ends of the two braided chains to the two settings. Then you must attach those to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at its front. ²⁶ You must make two rings of gold, and you must put them on the other two corners of the breastpiece, on the edge next to the inner border.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

braided chains

“chains braided like cords.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:14](#).

to the two settings

These are two settings that enclose the stones. This can be clearly stated in the translation. AT: “to the two settings that enclose the stones” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [ephod](#)
- [gold](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ He must make two more gold rings and attach them to the lower part of the front of the shoulder straps near to where the shoulder straps are joined to the sacred apron just above the sash. ²⁸ The skilled workman must tie the rings on the sacred pouch to the rings on the sacred apron with a blue cord so that the sacred pouch is above the sash and does not come loose from the sacred apron.

ULB:

²⁷ You must make two more gold rings, and you must attach them to the bottom of the two shoulder pieces of the front of the ephod, close to its seam above the finely-woven waistband of the ephod. ²⁸ They must tie the breastpiece by its rings to the ephod's rings with a blue cord, so that it might be attached just above the ephod's woven waistband. This is so that the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

finely-woven waistband

This was a cloth belt made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:8](#).

so that it might be attached

This can be stated in active form. AT: "so that they may attach it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod

This can be stated in positive form. AT: "the breastpiece would stay attached to the ephod" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

translationWords

- gold
- ephod
- breastplate, breastpiece

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ In that way, Aaron will have the names of the twelve tribes of Israel in the sacred pouch close to his chest for making decisions when he enters the holy place. ³⁰ Put into the sacred pouch the two things—named Urim and Thummim—that the priest will use to determine my answers to the questions he asks. In that way, they will be close to his chest when he enters the holy place to talk to me. He will use them to determine what my will is for the Israelite people.”

ULB:

²⁹ When Aaron goes into the holy place, he must carry the names of the people of Israel over his heart in the breastpiece for decision making, as a continuing memorial before Yahweh. ³⁰ You are to put the Urim and the Thummim in the breastpiece for decision making, so they may be over Aaron’s heart when he goes in before Yahweh. Thus Aaron will always carry the means for making decisions for the people of Israel over his heart before Yahweh.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

he must carry the names of the people of Israel over his heart in the breastpiece

This refers to the names of the tribes engraved on the twelve stones the breastplate as described in [Exodus 28:17-21](#).

over his heart

“over Aaron’s heart” or “on his chest”

the Urim and the Thummim ... the means for making decisions

The second phrase appears to refer to the Urim and Thummim and explain their purpose.

the Urim and the Thummim

It not clear what these are. They were objects, possibly stones, that the priest used to determine somehow the will of God. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:31-32**UDB:**

³¹ "Tell the workmen to weave only purple cloth for the robe that is to be worn underneath the priest's sacred apron. ³² It is to have an opening through which the priest can put his head. They must sew a border around this opening to keep the material from tearing.

ULB:

³¹ You must make the robe of the ephod completely of purple fabric. ³² It must have an opening for the head in the middle. The opening must have a woven edge round about so that it does not tear. This must be the work of a weaver.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

This must be the work of a weaver

This can be stated as a command. AT: "A weaver must make this robe"

a weaver

"a person who weaves" or "a person who creates cloth using thread"

translationWords

- robe
- ephod

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:33-35**UDB:**

³³ At the lower edge on the robe, they must fasten decorations that look like pomegranate fruit. They must be woven from blue, purple, and red yarn. ³⁴ Between each of these decorations, they must fasten a tiny gold bell. ³⁵ When Aaron enters the holy place in the sacred tent to do his work as a priest and when he leaves the sacred tent, the bells will ring as he walks. As a result, he will not die because of disobeying my instructions.

ULB:

³³ On the bottom hem, you must make pomegranates of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn all around. Gold bells must be between them all around. ³⁴ There must be a golden bell and a pomegranate, a golden bell and a pomegranate—and so on—all around the hem of the robe. ³⁵ The robe is to be on Aaron when he serves, so that its sound can be heard when he goes into the holy place before Yahweh and when he leaves. This is so that he does not die.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people do.

pomegranates

A pomegranate is a round fruit with a red outer skin. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

a golden bell and a pomegranate

This phrase is repeated to show the pattern of the design on the robe.

The robe is to be on Aaron when he serves

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Aaron must wear the robe when he serves” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

so that its sound can be heard

This can be stated in active form. AT: “so that the bells make a sound” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

This is so that he does not die

It is implied that he would die because he did not obey Yahweh. This can be stated. AT: “As a result, he will not die because of disobeying my instructions” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:36-38**UDB:**

³⁶ Tell them to make a tiny ornament of pure gold, and tell a skilled workman to engrave on it the words, ‘Dedicated to Yahweh.’ ³⁷ They should fasten this ornament to the front of the turban by a blue cord. ³⁸ Aaron must always wear the turban on his forehead. Aaron himself must accept the guilt of the Israelite people because of any failure to offer their holy gifts to Yahweh as he commanded. When Aaron does this, Yahweh may accept their gifts.

ULB:

³⁶ You must make a plate of pure gold and engrave on it, like the engraving on a signet, “Holy to Yahweh.” ³⁷ You must attach this plate by a blue cord to the front of the turban. ³⁸ It must be on Aaron’s forehead; he must always bear any guilt that might attach to the offering of the holy gifts that the Israelites set apart to Yahweh. The turban must be always on his forehead so that Yahweh may accept their gifts.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

engrave on it, like the engraving on a signet

“write on it in the same way a person engraves on a seal.” See how you translated similar words in [Exodus 28:11](#)

turban

This was a tall head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

It must be on Aaron’s forehead

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Aaron must wear it on his forehead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The turban must be always on his forehead

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Aaron must always wear the turban on his forehead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:39**UDB:**

³⁹ Tell them to weave the long-sleeved tunic from fine linen. Also they must make from fine linen a turban and a sash, and they must embroider designs on it.

ULB:

³⁹ You must make the coat with fine linen, and you must make a turban of fine linen. You must also make a sash, the work of an embroiderer.

translationNotes**General Information:**

God continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

turban

This was a tall head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

sash

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth that a person wears around his waist or across his chest. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

the work of an embroiderer

An embroiderer is a person who sews designs into cloth. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

translationWords

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:40-41**UDB:**

⁴⁰ Tell them to make beautiful long-sleeved tunics, sashes, waistbands, and caps for Aaron's sons. Make ones that will be suitable for those who have this dignified work. ⁴¹ Put these clothes on your older brother Aaron and on his sons. Then set them apart for this work by anointing them with olive oil in order that they may serve me by being priests.

ULB:

⁴⁰ For Aaron's sons you must make coats, sashes, and headbands for their honor and splendor. ⁴¹ You must clothe Aaron your brother, and his sons with him. You must anoint them, ordain them, and set them apart to me, so that they may serve me as priests.

translationNotes**General Information:**

God continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

sashes

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth that a person wears around his waist or across his chest. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

headbands

A headband is a narrow, decorative strip of cloth that is worn around the head above the eyes.

You must clothe Aaron your brother

Aaron was the older brother of Moses. You can state this clearly in the translation. AT: "Put these clothes on your older brother Aaron" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- Aaron
- honor, honors, to honor
- clothe, clothed
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- ordain
- set apart
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 28:42-43**UDB:**

⁴² Also tell them to make linen undershorts for them. The undershorts should extend from their waists to their thighs in order that no one can see their private parts. ⁴³ Aaron and his sons must always wear those undershorts when they enter the sacred tent or when they come near to the altar to offer sacrifices in the holy place. If they do not obey this ritual, I will cause them to die. Aaron and all his male descendants must obey this rule forever.”

ULB:

⁴² You must make for them linen undergarments to cover their naked flesh, that will cover them from the waist to the thighs. ⁴³ Aaron and his sons must wear these garments when they enter the tent of meeting or when they approach the altar to serve in the holy place. They must do this so they would not be guilty or else they would die. This is a permanent law for Aaron and his descendants after him.

translationNotes**General Information:**

God continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

undergarments

These are underwear, clothing worn under the outer clothes, next to the skin.

tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

a permanent law

“a law the will not end”

translationWords

- Aaron
- tent of meeting
- altar, altars
- serve, service
- holy place

- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Consecrating priests

This chapter records the process of consecrating priests. The priests were to be set apart from the rest of Israel because Yahweh is holy. (See: [consecrate](#), [consecrated](#), [consecration](#), [priest](#), [priests](#), [priesthood](#) and [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“I will live among the Israelites”

As God, Yahweh is everywhere and cannot be limited to a single space. This phrase indicates that he permanently remains within Israel in a special way while they have the ark.

Links:

- [Exodus 29:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 29:1-2**UDB:**

¹ "Do the following things to dedicate Aaron and his sons to serve me by being priests. Select one young bull and two rams that do not have any defects. ² Bake three kinds of bread using finely ground wheat flour without yeast. Bake some buns that do not have any olive oil in them, bake some buns that have olive oil in the dough, and bake some thin wafers that will be smeared with olive oil after they are baked.

ULB:

¹ Now this is what you must do to set them apart to me so that they may serve me as priests. Take one young bull and two rams without blemish, ² bread without yeast, and cakes without yeast mixed with oil. Also take wafers without yeast rubbed with oil. Make the wafers using fine wheat flour.

translationNotes**Now**

The word "now" marks a change in topic from garments for priests to consecrating priests.

you must do

Here "you" refers to Moses.

to set them apart

"to set apart Aaron and his sons"

serve me

Here "me" refers to Yahweh.

one young bull

a male cow

Also take wafers without yeast rubbed with oil

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Also take wafers without yeast and rub them with oil" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

bread ... cakes ... wafers

These are different kinds of food made from flour.

translationWords

- [set apart](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [bread](#)
- [yeast, leaven](#)
- [oil](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:3-4**UDB:**

³ Put them in a basket and offer them to me when you sacrifice the young bull and the two rams. ⁴ Take Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the sacred tent, and wash them with water.

ULB:

³ You must put them into a single basket, bring them in the basket, and present them with the bull and the two rams. ⁴ You must present Aaron and his sons at the entrance to the tent of meeting. You must wash Aaron and his sons in water.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to speak to Moses

You must put them

“You must put the bread, cake, and wafer”

present them with the bull and the two rams

Here “present” means to offer as a sacrifice. The full meaning of this can be translated clearly. AT: “offer them to me when you sacrifice the bull and the two rams” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

translationWords

- [basket](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Then put the special clothes on Aaron—the long-sleeved tunic, the robe that will be worn underneath the sacred apron, the sacred apron, the sacred pouch, and the sash. ⁶ Put the turban on his head, and fasten to the turban the ornament that has the words ‘Dedicated to Yahweh’ engraved on it. ⁷ Then take the oil and pour some on his head to dedicate him.

ULB:

⁵ You must take the garments and clothe Aaron with the coat, the robe of the ephod, the ephod, and the breastpiece, fastening the finely-woven waistband of the ephod around him. ⁶ You must set the turban on his head and put the holy crown on the turban. ⁷ Then take the anointing oil and pour it on his head, and in this way anoint him.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

coat

This was a coat with a design woven into it. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

finely-woven waistband

This was a cloth belt made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:8](#).

turban

This was a tall head covering made from cloth wrapped around the head several times. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

holy crown

This crown is described in [Exodus 29:6](#) as being engraved with the words “dedicated to Yahweh” and made of pure gold.

translationWords

- [clothe, clothed](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [robe](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [oil](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Then bring his sons and put the long-sleeved tunics on them. ⁹ Put the sashes around their waists and the caps on their heads. That is the ritual by which you are to dedicate them to be priests. Aaron and his male descendants must serve me by being priests forever.

ULB:

⁸ You must bring his sons and put coats on them. ⁹ You must clothe Aaron and his sons with sashes and put headbands on them. The work of the priesthood will belong to them by permanent law. In this way you must consecrate Aaron and his sons for them to serve me.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

bring his sons

“bring Aaron’s sons”

coats

These were coats with a design woven into them. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:4](#).

sashes

A sash is a decorative piece of cloth that people wear around their waist or across their chest. See how you translated this word in [Exodus 28:4](#).

headbands

A headband is a narrow, decorative strip of cloth that is worn around the head above the eyes. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:40](#).

The work of the priesthood

“the duty of being priests”

will belong to them

The duty of being priests will also belong to the descendants of Aaron's sons. You can state this clearly in the translation. AT: "will belong to them and their descendants" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

permanent law

"a law the will not end." See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:43](#).

translationWords

- [clothe, clothed](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [serve, service](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Then bring the young bull to the entrance of the sacred tent. Tell Aaron and his sons to put their hands on the head of the young bull. ¹¹ Then, while they are doing that, kill the young bull by slitting its throat and catch the blood in a bowl.

ULB:

¹⁰ You must all bring the bull before the tent of meeting, and Aaron and his sons must lay their hands on its head. ¹¹ You must kill the bull before Yahweh at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

You must kill the bull

The bull offering was to be killed by Moses, not the priests, at the doorway, not inside the tent of meeting.

kill the bull

Since the following verses will tell what to do with the blood from the bull, use a term for “kill” that will imply a method similar to “slitting its throat and catch the blood in a bowl.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- tent of meeting
- Aaron
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- Yahweh

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Take some of that blood with your finger and smear it on the projections of the altar. Throw the rest of the blood against the base of the altar. ¹³ Take all the fat that covers the inner organs of the young bull, the fatty covering of the liver and the two kidneys with the fat on them, and burn all these on the altar as an offering to me. ¹⁴ But the meat of the young bull and its hide and intestines must be burned outside the camp. That will be an offering for your sins.

ULB:

¹² You must take some of the bull's blood and put it on the horns of the altar with your finger, and you must pour out the rest of the blood at the base of the altar. ¹³ You must take all the fat that covers the inner parts, and also take the covering of the liver and the two kidneys with the fat that is on them; burn it all on the altar. ¹⁴ But as for the bull's flesh, as well as its skin and dung, you must burn it up outside the camp. It will be a sin offering.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

the horns

These were projections that looked like ox horns attached to the four corners of the altar. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:2](#).

the rest of the blood

“the remaining blood”

covers the inner parts

“covers the organs”

liver ... kidneys

These are organs in the body.

But as for the bull's flesh, as well as its skin and dung

“But as for the remaining parts of the bull”

translationWords

- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [blood](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [dung, manure](#)
- [sin offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:15-18**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then select one of the rams, and tell Aaron and his sons to put their hands on its head. ¹⁶ Then kill the ram by slitting its throat. Catch some of the blood and sprinkle it upon all four sides of the altar. ¹⁷ Then cut the ram into pieces. Wash its inner organs and its legs, and put those with the head. ¹⁸ Then burn them completely on the altar with the rest of the ram. That will be a burnt offering to me, Yahweh, and the smell will please me.

ULB:

¹⁵ You must also take the one ram, and Aaron and his sons must lay their hands on its head. ¹⁶ You must kill the ram, then take its blood and sprinkle it on all sides of the altar. ¹⁷ You must cut the ram into pieces and wash its inner parts and its legs, and you must put the inner parts, together with its pieces and with its head, ¹⁸ on the altar. Then burn the whole ram. It will be a burnt offering to Yahweh, a sweet aroma, an offering made to Yahweh by fire.

translationNotes**You must kill the ram**

For these consecration sacrifices for the priests, it was Moses, not Aaron or his sons, who had to kill the animals.

on the altar

Unlike the bull offering that was burned outside of the tent, the ram was to be burned on the inner altar.

the inner parts

“the organs.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 29:13](#).

translationWords

- sheep, ram, ewe
- Aaron
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- blood
- altar, altars
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- Yahweh
- sacrifice, offering

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Take the other ram that was selected for these rituals, and tell Aaron and his sons to put their hands on its head. ²⁰ Then kill the ram by slitting its throat, and catch some of the blood in a bowl. Smear some of the blood on the lobe of the right ears of Aaron and his sons, and on the thumbs of their right hands, and on the big toes of their right feet. Throw the rest of the blood against the four sides of the altar.

ULB:

¹⁹ You must then take the other ram, and Aaron and his sons must lay their hands on its head. ²⁰ Then you must kill the ram and take some of its blood. Put it on the tip of Aaron's right ear, and on the tip of his sons' right ears, on the thumb of their right hands, and on the great toe of their right feet. Then you must sprinkle the blood against the altar on every side.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Then you must kill the ram

The ram was killed by cutting its throat. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: "Then kill the ram by slitting its throat" or "Then kill the ram by cutting its throat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [blood](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:21**UDB:**

²¹ Wipe up some of the blood that is on the altar, mix it with some of the oil for anointing, and sprinkle it on Aaron and his clothes, and on his sons and their clothes. By doing this, you will dedicate them and their clothes to me.

ULB:

²¹ You must take some of the blood that is on the altar and some of the anointing oil, and sprinkle it all on Aaron and on his garments, and also on his sons and on their garments. Aaron will then be set apart for me, as well as his garments, his sons and his sons' garments with him.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Aaron will then be set apart for me

This can be stated in active form. AT: "By doing this, you will dedicate Aaron to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [blood](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [oil](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [set apart](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:22-23**UDB:**

²² Also, cut off the ram's fat, its fat tail, and the fat that covers the inner organs, the covering of the liver, the two kidneys with the fat on them, and the right thigh. (This ram is for setting Aaron and his sons apart for me as priests.) ²³ From the basket, also take one of each of the kinds of bread that was baked without yeast—one made with no oil, one with oil, and one thin wafer.

ULB:

²² You must take the ram's fat, the fat tail, the fat that covers the inner parts, the covering of the liver, the two kidneys and the fat on them, and the right thigh—for this ram is for the priests' consecration to me. ²³ Take one loaf of bread, one cake of bread made with oil, and one wafer out of the basket of bread without yeast that is before Yahweh.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

inner parts ... liver ... kidney

These refer to organs inside the body. See how you translated this in [Exodus 29:13](#).

Take one loaf ... before Yahweh

For 29:23 see how you translated similar words in [Exodus 29:2](#).

that is before Yahweh

“that you have placed before Yahweh”

translationWords

- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [bread](#)
- [oil](#)
- [basket](#)
- [yeast, leaven](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Put all these things in the hands of Aaron and his sons. Then tell them to lift them up high to dedicate them to me. ²⁵ Then take them from their hands and burn them on the altar, on top of the other things that were placed there. That also will be an offering to me, and its smell will please me.

ULB:

²⁴ You must put these in Aaron's hands and in the hands of his sons and wave them before me for a wave offering before Yahweh. ²⁵ You must then take the food from their hands and burn it on the altar with the burnt offering. It will produce a sweet aroma for me; it will be an offering made to me by fire.

translationNotes**General Information:**

God continues speaking to Moses.

You must put these

Here "these" refers to the parts of the sacrifice mentioned in the previous verses.

it will be an offering made to me by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "burn it as an offering to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ Then take the breast of the second ram that was killed, and lift it up high for an offering to me. But then this part of the animal will be for you to eat. ²⁷ Set apart for me the ram's breast that you lifted high to offer to me. Also set apart for me the ram's thigh that you presented to me, both of these pieces that came from the ram that was slaughtered when you set apart for me Aaron and his sons as priests. ²⁸ In the future, whenever the Israelite people present to me, Yahweh, offerings to restore fellowship with each other, the breast and the thigh of animals that they present to me will be for Aaron and his male descendants to eat.

ULB:

²⁶ You must take the breast of Aaron's ram of dedication and wave it for a wave offering before Yahweh, and it will be your share. ²⁷ You must set apart to me the breast of the wave offering that is waved, and the thigh that is the contribution for the priests—both the breast that was waved and the thigh that was contributed for Aaron and his sons. ²⁸ This will be a perpetual ordinance for Aaron and his sons. It will be a contribution from the people of Israel to give to Yahweh from their peace offerings.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

ram of dedication

“ram that you dedicated” or “ram that you killed”

Aaron's ram of dedication

“the ram that you used to dedicate Aaron”

a perpetual ordinance

“a permanent law”

translationWords

- Aaron
- sheep, ram, ewe

- set apart
- sacrifice, offering
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- forever
- descendant, descended from
- fellowship offering
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:29-30**UDB:**

²⁹ After Aaron dies, the special clothes that he wore will belong to his sons. They are to wear those clothes when they are set apart to become priests. ³⁰ Aaron's son who becomes priest and enters the sacred tent and performs rituals in the holy place must stay in the sacred tent, wearing these special clothes, for seven days.

ULB:

²⁹ The holy garments of Aaron must also be reserved for his sons after him. They are to be anointed in them and ordained to me in them. ³⁰ The priest who succeeds him from among his sons, who comes into the tent of meeting to serve me in the holy place, is to wear those garments for seven days.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

The holy garments of Aaron must also be reserved for his sons after him

These garments belong to the priesthood and are not just Aaron's personal clothing. AT: "Aaron must reserve the holy garments for his sons after him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

They are to be anointed in them and ordained to me in them

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They must wear the holy garments when you anoint his sons and ordain them to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

translationWords

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [ordain](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

- [tent of meeting](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [holy place](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:31-34**UDB:**

³¹ Take the meat of the other ram that was sacrificed to set apart Aaron and his sons, and boil it in the courtyard. ³² After it is cooked, Aaron and his sons must eat it, along with the bread that is left in the basket, at the entrance to the sacred tent. ³³ They must eat the meat of the ram that was sacrificed to cover your sins when they were dedicated to do this work. They are the only ones who are permitted to eat this meat. Those who are not priests are not allowed to eat it because it is reserved for the priests. ³⁴ If any of this meat or some of the bread is not eaten that night, no one is permitted to eat any of it the next day. It must be completely burned because it is sacred.

ULB:

³¹ You must take the ram for the installation of the priests to me and boil its meat in a holy place. ³² Aaron and his sons must eat the ram's meat and the bread that is in the basket at the entrance to the tent of meeting. ³³ They must eat the meat and bread that were given to atone for them and to ordain them, to be set apart to me. No one else may eat that food, because they must treat it as consecrated to me, reserved for me. ³⁴ If any of the meat of the ordination offering, or any of the bread, remains to the next morning, then you must burn it. It must not be eaten because it has been set apart to me.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

the ram for the installation of the priests

“the ram you killed when you installed the priests”

in a holy place

This is not the same as the holy place outside of the most holy place. This refers to a place within the courtyard. AT: “at the entrance to the tent of meeting” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

that were given

This can be stated in active form. AT: “that you sacrificed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

It must not be eaten

This can be stated in active form. AT: “No one must eat it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because it has been set apart to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: “because you have set it apart to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [dedicate, dedication](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [bread](#)
- [basket](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:35-37**UDB:**

³⁵ These are the rituals that you must follow during those seven days when you dedicate Aaron and his sons for this work. You must do all that I have commanded you. ³⁶ Each of those seven days you must also sacrifice a young bull for an offering to me in order that I may forgive sins. Also you must make another offering to make the altar pure in my sight. You must also anoint the altar with olive oil to set it apart. ³⁷ Perform these rituals every day for seven days to set apart the altar and make it pure. Then the altar will be most holy, and whatever touches it must be treated as holy.

ULB:

³⁵ In this way, by following all that I have commanded you to do, you must treat Aaron and his sons. For seven days you must prepare them. ³⁶ Every day you must offer a bull as a sin offering for atonement. You must purify the altar by making atonement for it, and you must anoint it in order to set it apart to me. ³⁷ For seven days you must make atonement for the altar and set it apart to Yahweh. Then the altar will be completely set apart to me. Whatever touches the altar will be set apart to Yahweh.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

In this way, by following all that I have commanded you to do, you must treat Aaron and his sons

“I have commanded you to treat Aaron and his sons this way”

Then the altar will be completely set apart to me

“Then the altar will be most holy”

will be set apart to Yahweh

“will also be very holy”

translationWords

- **command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments**
- **Aaron**

- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- sin offering
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- pure, purify, purification
- altar, altars
- anoint, anointed, anointing

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:38-39**UDB:**

³⁸ You must also sacrifice lambs and burn them on the altar. Each of those seven days you must sacrifice two lambs. ³⁹ One lamb must be sacrificed in the morning, and one must be sacrificed in the evening.

ULB:

³⁸ You must regularly offer on the altar every day two lambs a year old. ³⁹ One lamb you must offer in the morning, and the other lamb you must offer about sundown.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

You must regularly offer on the altar every day

“You must daily offer on the altar”

translationWords

- altar, altars
- lamb, Lamb of God

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:40**UDB:**

⁴⁰ With the first lamb, also offer two liters of finely ground wheat flour mixed with a liter of the best kind of olive oil, and one liter of wine as an offering.

ULB:

⁴⁰ With the first lamb, offer a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with the fourth part of a hin of oil from pressed olives, and the fourth part of a hin of wine as a drink offering.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

a tenth ... the fourth part

“1/10 ... 1/4” (See: [Fractions](#))

ephah

An ephah is 22 liters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

hin

A hin is 3.7 liters. (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [tenth, tithe](#)
- [oil](#)
- [olive](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)
- [drink offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:41-42**UDB:**

⁴¹ In the evening, when you sacrifice the other lamb, offer the same amounts of flour, olive oil, and wine as you did in the morning. This will be an offering to me, Yahweh, that will be burned, and its smell will please me. ⁴² You and your descendants must continue making these offerings to me, Yahweh, throughout all future generations. You must offer them at the entrance to the sacred tent. That is where I will meet with you and speak to you.

ULB:

⁴¹ You must offer the second lamb about sunset. You must offer the same grain offering as in the morning, and the same drink offering. These will produce a sweet aroma for me; it will be an offering made to me by fire. ⁴² These must be regular burnt offerings throughout your generations, at the entrance to the tent of meeting before Yahweh, where I will meet with you to speak to you there.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

it will be an offering made to me by fire

This can be stated in active form. AT: "it will be a burnt offering to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

throughout your generations

"through all the generations of your descendants." See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

translationWords

- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [drink offering](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [generation](#)

- [tent of meeting](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:43-44**UDB:**

⁴³ That is where I will meet with the Israelite people, and the brilliant light of my presence will cause that place to be holy. ⁴⁴ I will dedicate the sacred tent and the altar. I will also dedicate Aaron and his sons to serve me by being priests.

ULB:

⁴³ That is where I will meet with the Israelites; the tent will be set apart for me by my glory. ⁴⁴ I will set apart the tent of meeting and the altar for these to belong to me alone. I will also set apart Aaron and his sons to serve me as priests.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

the tent will be set apart for me by my glory

This can be stated in active form. AT: “My awesome presence will dedicate the tent to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 29:45-46**UDB:**

⁴⁵ I will live among the Israelite people, and I will be their God. ⁴⁶ They will know that I am Yahweh God, the one who brought them out of Egypt in order that I might live among them. I am Yahweh, the God whom they worship.”

ULB:

⁴⁵ I will live among the Israelites and will be their God. ⁴⁶ They will know that I am Yahweh, their God, who brought them out from the land of Egypt so that I might live among them. I am Yahweh, their God.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Atonement

The atonement offered by the priests was very important in the religious life of Israel. In order to offer sacrifices, the priests had to maintain ritual cleanliness by washing themselves. (See: [atone-ment](#), [atone](#), [atones](#), [atoned](#), [priest](#), [priests](#), [priesthood](#) and [clean](#), [cleans](#), [cleaned](#), [cleanse](#), [cleansed](#), [cleansing](#), [wash](#), [washing](#), [washed](#), [washes](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 30:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 30:1-2

UDB:

¹ "Tell the skilled workers to make an altar from acacia wood for burning incense. ² It is to be square, one-half meter on each side. It is to be one meter high. Tell them to make a projection that looks like a horn on each of the top corners. The projections must be carved from the same block of wood from which the altar is made.

ULB:

¹ You must make an altar to burn incense. You must make it with acacia wood. ² Its length must be one cubit, and its width one cubit. It must be square, and its height must be two cubits. Its horns must be made as one piece with it.

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh tells Moses how to build the worship equipment.

You must make

Here "you" refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Its horns must be made

These were projections that looked like ox horns attached to the four corners of the altar. See how you translated "horns" in [Exodus 27:2](#). AT: "You must make its horns" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- altar, altars
- incense
- acacia

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:3-4**UDB:**

³ They must cover the top and the four sides, including the projections, with pure gold. Put a gold border around the altar near the top. ⁴ They must make two gold rings for carrying the altar. They must attach them to the altar below the border, one on each side of the altar. These rings are for the poles for carrying the altar.

ULB:

³ You must cover the incense altar with pure gold—its top, its sides, and its horns. You must make a surrounding border of gold for it. ⁴ You must make two golden rings to be attached to it under its border on its two opposite sides. The rings must be holders for poles to carry the altar.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

the incense altar

“an altar to burn incense”

to be attached to it

This can be stated in active form. AT: “which you will attach to the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [altar of incense](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ Tell them to make these two poles from acacia wood and cover them with gold. ⁶ They must put this incense altar outside the curtain that hangs in front of the sacred chest and its lid. That is the place where I will talk with you.

ULB:

⁵ You must make the poles of acacia wood, and you must cover them with gold. ⁶ You must put the incense altar before the curtain that is by the ark of the testimony. It will be before the atonement lid that is over the ark of the testimony, where I will meet with you.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

ark of the testimony

The ark is the chest that contains the commandments. This can be stated clearly in the translation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:33](#). AT: “the chest containing the commandments” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

where I will meet with you

Here “you” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [gold](#)
- [altar of incense](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [atonement lid](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Aaron must burn sweet-smelling incense on this altar. He must burn some every morning when he takes care of the lamps, ⁸ and he must burn some in the evening when he lights the lamps. The incense must always be burning throughout all future generations. ⁹ The priests must not burn on the altar any incense that I have not told you to burn, or burn any animal on it, nor any flour offering for me, nor pour any wine on it as an offering.

ULB:

⁷ Aaron must burn fragrant incense every morning. He must burn it when he tends the lamps, ⁸ and Aaron lights the lamps again in the evening so incense will burn on it regularly before Yahweh, throughout your generations. ⁹ But you must offer no other incense on the incense altar, nor any burnt offering or grain offering. You must pour no drink offering on it.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

throughout your generations

“through all the generations of your descendants.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

But you must offer

Though the word “you” is addressed to Moses, the instruction is given specifically to Aaron and his descendants as to when and what they are to offer on the altar of incense.

translationWords

- Aaron
- incense
- lampstand
- altar of incense
- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- generation
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [drink offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ One time every year Aaron must perform the ritual for making this altar pure. He must do it by putting on its four projections some of the blood from the animal that was sacrificed to cover people's sins. Aaron and his descendants must do this ritual throughout all future generations. This altar must be dedicated to me, Yahweh."

ULB:

¹⁰ Aaron must make atonement on its horns once a year. With the blood of the sin offering he will make atonement for it once a year throughout your generations. It is completely set apart to Yahweh."

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

horns

These were projections that looked like ox horns attached to the four corners of the altar. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:2](#).

throughout your generations

"through all the generations of your descendants." See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

translationWords

- Aaron
- atonement, atone, atones, atoned
- altar of incense
- blood
- sin offering
- high priest
- generation
- set apart
- Yahweh

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:11-14**UDB:**

¹¹ Yahweh said to Moses, ¹² "When your leaders take a census of the Israelite people, each man who is counted must pay to me a price to save his life. They must do this in order that no disaster will happen to them while the people are being counted. ¹³ Every man who is counted must pay to me six grams of silver. They must use the official standard of the tabernacle when they weigh the silver. This silver is to be an offering to Yahweh. ¹⁴ All the men who are at least twenty years old must pay this amount to me when the people are counted.

ULB:

¹¹ Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ¹² "When you take a census of the Israelites, then each person must give a ransom for his life to Yahweh. You must do this after you count them, so that there will be no plague among them when you count them. ¹³ Everyone who is counted in the census is to pay half a shekel of silver, according to the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary (a shekel is the same as twenty gerahs). This half shekel will be an offering to Yahweh. ¹⁴ Everyone who is counted, from twenty years old and up, must give this offering to me.

translationNotes**When you take**

Possible meanings are 1) "you" refers to just Moses or 2) "you" refers to Moses and the leaders of Israel in future generations when they take a census. (See: [Forms of You](#))

a census of the Israelites

The leaders only counted the Israelite men.

Everyone who is counted

This can be stated in active form. They counted only the men. AT: "Everyone you count" or "Every man you count" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

half a shekel of silver

"1/2 a shekel of silver." Translators may use a unit of measure that people understand and a round number: "5.5 grams of silver" or "six grams of silver" (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Biblical Weight and Fractions](#))

according to the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary

There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time. This specified which one was to be used.

twenty gerahs

“20 gerahs.” A gerah is a unit that people used for measuring how much something very small weighed. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#) and [Numbers](#))

from twenty years old and up

Larger numbers are spoken of as being up or above smaller numbers. AT: “from twenty years old and more” or “who is twenty years old or older” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [census](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ransom, ransomed](#)
- [plague](#)
- [silver](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Rich men must not pay more than this amount, and poor men must not pay less than this amount when they pay this money to save their lives. ¹⁶ Your leaders must collect this money from the Israelite people and give it to those who will take care of the sacred tent. You Israelites will see the leaders collect this money and remember that you need to make payment to me so you can live.”

ULB:

¹⁵ When the people give this offering to me to make atonement for their lives, the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less. ¹⁶ You must receive this atonement money from the Israelites and you must allocate it to the work of the tent of meeting. It must be a reminder to the Israelites before me, to make atonement for your lives.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

the people

Only the men made this offering.

the half shekel

Translators may use a unit of measure that people understand and a round number: “the 5.5 grams of silver” or “the 6 grams of silver.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 3:13](#). (See: [Biblical Money](#) and [Biblical Weight](#) and [Fractions](#))

It must be a reminder to the Israelites before me, to make atonement for your lives

Possible meanings are 1) “It will remind the Israelites to make atonement for their lives” or 2) “It will remind the Israelites that they have made atonement for their lives.”

translationWords

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)
- [receive](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

- [tent of meeting](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Yahweh said to Moses, ¹⁸ "Tell the skilled workers to make a bronze washbasin and a bronze base for it. They must put it between the sacred tent and the altar and must fill it with water.

ULB:

¹⁷ Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ¹⁸ "You must also make a large bronze basin with a bronze stand, a basin for washing. You must put it between the tent of meeting and the altar, and you must put water in it.

translationNotes**You must also make**

Here "you" refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

basin

"bowl" or "tub"

a bronze stand

This is what the basin would be put on.

a basin for washing

This phrase explains what the priests were to use the large bronze basin for.

the altar

the altar of sacrifice

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:19-21**UDB:**

¹⁹ Aaron and his sons must wash their hands and their feet with this water ²⁰ before they enter the sacred tent and before they come to the altar to burn offerings as sacrifices. If they wash, they will obey my instructions and will not die. ²¹ They must wash their hands and their feet in order that they will not die. They and the males descended from them must obey this ritual throughout all generations.”

ULB:

¹⁹ Aaron and his sons must wash their hands and their feet with the water in it. ²⁰ When they go into the tent of meeting or when they go near to the altar to serve me by burning an offering, they must wash with water so that they do not die. ²¹ They must wash their hands and feet so that they do not die. This must be a permanent law for Aaron and his descendants throughout their people’s generations.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

water in it

“water in the basin”

for Aaron and his descendants throughout their people’s generations

“for Aaron and all the generations of his descendants.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 12:14](#).

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [generation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:22-25**UDB:**

²² Yahweh said to Moses, ²³ "Tell the people to collect some of the finest spices—six kilograms of liquid myrrh, three kilograms of sweet-smelling cinnamon, three kilograms of a sweet-smelling cane, ²⁴ and six kilograms of cassia. Be sure that they use the official standard when they weigh these things. ²⁵ Tell an expert perfumer to mix these with four liters of olive oil to make sacred oil for anointing.

ULB:

²² Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ²³ "Take these fine spices: five hundred shekels of flowing myrrh, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cinnamon, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cane, ²⁴ five hundred shekels of cassia, measured by the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary, and one hin of olive oil. ²⁵ You must make holy anointing oil with these ingredients, the work of a perfumer. It will be a holy anointing oil, reserved for me.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

spices

dried plants that people grind into a powder and put in oil or food to give it a nice smell or flavor. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:6](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

five hundred shekels ... 250 shekels

"500 shekels ... two hundred and fifty shekels." A shekel is about 11 grams. Translators may use units that people know and round numbers: "5.7 kilograms ... 11.4 kilograms" or "six kilograms ... three kilograms" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight and Fractions](#))

cinnamon ... cane ... cassia

These are sweet spices. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary

There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time. This specified which one was to be used. See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:13](#). (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

one hin

Translators may use units that people know and round numbers: “3.7 liters” or “four liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#) and [Fractions](#))

with these ingredients

“with these items”

the work of a perfumer

Possible meanings are 1) Moses was to have a perfumer do the work or 2) Moses was to do the work himself the way a perfumer would do it.

a perfumer

a person who is skilled in mixing spices and oils

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [myrrh](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [olive](#)
- [oil](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:26-28**UDB:**

²⁶ Use this oil for anointing the sacred tent, the sacred chest, ²⁷ the table and all the things that are used with it, the lampstand and all the things that are used to take care of it, the altar for burning incense, ²⁸ and the altar for offering sacrifices that the priests will burn, along with all the things that are used with it, and the basin and its stand.

ULB:

²⁶ You must anoint the tent of meeting with this oil, as well as the ark of the testimony, ²⁷ the table and all its utensils, the lampstand and its equipment, the incense altar, ²⁸ the altar for burnt offerings with all its equipment, and the basin with its stand.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

You must anoint

Here “you” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

ark of the testimony

The ark is the chest that contains the commandments. This can be stated clearly in the translation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:33](#). AT: “the chest containing the commandments” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the altar for burnt offerings

“the altar on which offering were burnt”

translationWords

- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [oil](#)
- [ark](#)
- [lampstand](#)
- [altar of incense](#)

- altar, altars
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ Dedicate them by anointing them in order that they will be reserved for me. If any person or thing that is not allowed to do so touches the altar, no one will be allowed to touch that person or thing. ³⁰ Anoint Aaron and his sons. By doing that, you will dedicate them to serve me by being priests. ³¹ Tell the Israelite people, "This oil will be my special oil that must be used throughout all future generations.

ULB:

²⁹ You must set them apart to me so that they may be holy to me. Anything that touches them will also be holy. ³⁰ You must anoint Aaron and his sons and set them aside to me so that they may serve me as priests. ³¹ You must say to the Israelites, "This must be an anointing oil that is set apart to Yahweh throughout your people's generations.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

set them apart

This refers to the items listed in [Exodus 30:26-28](#).

throughout your people's generations

"all the generations of your descendants." See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

translationWords

- [set apart](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [oil](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [generation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:32-33**UDB:**

³² You must not pour it on the bodies of people who are not priests, and you must not make other oil to be like it by mixing those same things. This oil is reserved for me, and you must consider it to be such. ³³ Yahweh will view anyone who makes ointment like this for any other purpose, or anyone who puts any of this ointment on someone who is not a priest, as no longer belonging to his people.”

ULB:

³² It must not be applied to people’s skin, nor must you make any oil like it with the same formula, because it is set apart to Yahweh. You must regard it in this manner. ³³ Whoever makes perfume like it, or whoever puts any of it on someone, that person must be cut off from his people.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what Moses must tell the people.

It must not be applied to people’s skin

This can be stated in active form. AT: “You must not put the anointing oil that is dedicated to Yahweh on a person’s skin” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

with the same formula

“with the same ingredients” or “with the same items”

that person must be cut off from his people

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” 2) “the people of Israel must send him away” or 3) “the people of Israel must kill him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- oil
- set apart
- Yahweh
- cut off
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:34-36**UDB:**

³⁴ Yahweh also said to Moses, "Have an expert perfumer take equal parts of several sweet spices: Stacte—a resin from certain gum plants, onycha—from certain shellfish or mollusks, galbanum—another kind of gum resin, and pure frankincense—yet another sort of gum resin. ³⁵ Have him mix them together to make some perfume and add some salt to keep it pure and special for me. ³⁶ Have him beat some of it into a fine powder. Then I want you to take some of it into the sacred tent and sprinkle it in front of the sacred chest. You all must consider this incense to be completely reserved for me.

ULB:

³⁴ Yahweh said to Moses, "Take spices—stacte, onycha, and galbanum—sweet spices along with pure frankincense, each in equal amounts. ³⁵ Make it into the form of incense, blended by a perfumer, seasoned with salt, pure and set apart. ³⁶ You will grind it into a very fine mixture. Put part of it in front of the ark of the testimony, which is in the tent of meeting, where I will meet with you. You will regard it as very holy to me.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what to do. Yahweh gives the commands only to Moses: all instances of "you" are singular. However, the words "blended by a perfumer" might mean that Moses could have the perfumer take the spices, blend them, grind them, and give them to Moses so Moses could put part of the mixture in front of the ark, as in UDB.

stacte, onycha, and galbanum

These are spices. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

Make it into the form of incense, blended by a perfumer

The phrase with "blended" can be translated in active form. AT: "Make it into the form of incense that a perfumer has blended" or "A perfumer must blend it into a kind of incense" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

blended by a perfumer

Possible meanings are 1) Moses was to have a perfumer do the work or 2) Moses was to do the work himself the way a perfumer would do it. See how you translated these words in [Exodus 30:25](#).

You will grind it

“You will crush it.” Here “you” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

You will regard

Here “you” is plural and refers to Moses and all the people. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [frankincense](#)
- [incense](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [ark](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 30:37-38**UDB:**

³⁷ The people must not mix the same spices to make incense for themselves. This incense must be dedicated to me, Yahweh. ³⁸ I will view anyone who makes incense like this to use it for perfume as no longer belonging to my people.”

ULB:

³⁷ As for this incense that you will make, you must not make any with the same formula for yourselves. It must be most holy to you. ³⁸ Whoever makes anything like it to use as a perfume must be cut off from his people.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

you must not make any

The word “you” here refers to the people of Israel.

with the same formula

“with the same ingredients” or “with the same items.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:32](#).

It must be most holy to you

“You must consider it to be most holy”

perfume

This is a pleasant smelling liquid a person puts on his or her body.

must be cut off from his people

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” 2) “the people of Israel must send him away” or 3) “the people of Israel must kill him.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:33](#). (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- incense
- holy, holiness
- cut off
- people group, peoples, the people, a people

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 31 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the end of Exodus' recording of the law of Moses. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Sabbath

As described in this chapter, the Sabbath is more than just a day of worship or celebration. Its significance extends beyond a way to help people rest. It is a major part of the identity of the Hebrew people. (See: [Sabbath](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 31:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 31:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to Moses, ² "I have chosen Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur, from the tribe of Judah.

ULB:

¹ Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ² "See, I have called by name Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah.

translationNotes**I have called by name**

God speaks of choosing specific people as calling them by name. AT: "I have chosen" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Bezalel ... Uri ... Hur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Judah](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 31 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 31:3-5**UDB:**

³ I have filled him with my Spirit, and I have given him special ability to make things; I have enabled him to know how to do very skilled work. ⁴ He can engrave skillful designs in gold, silver, and bronze. ⁵ He can cut jewels and enclose them in tiny gold settings. He can carve things from wood and do other skilled work.

ULB:

³ I have filled Bezalel with my Spirit, to give him wisdom, understanding, and knowledge, for all kinds of craftsmanship, ⁴ to make artistic designs and to work in gold, silver, and bronze; ⁵ also to cut and set stones and to carve wood—to do all kinds of craftsmanship.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

I have filled Bezalel with my Spirit

Yahweh speaks of giving Bezalel his Spirit as if Bezalel were a container and God's Spirit were a liquid. AT: "I have given my Spirit to Bezalel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for all kinds of craftsmanship

The abstract noun "craftsmanship" can be translated as "making crafts" or "making things." AT: "for making all kinds of crafts" or "so that he can make all kinds of things" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [filled with the Holy Spirit](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 31 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 31:6-9**UDB:**

⁶ I have also appointed Oholiab son of Ahisamach, from the tribe of Dan, to work with him. I have given special ability to other men also in order that they can make all the things that I have commanded you to be made. ⁷ Those things include: The sacred tent, the sacred chest and its lid, all the other things that will be inside the sacred tent, ⁸ the table and all the things that are used with it, the pure gold lampstand and all the things that are used to take care of it, the altar for burning incense, ⁹ the altar for offering sacrifices that will be burned and all the things that will be used with it, and the washbasin and its base.

ULB:

⁶ In addition to him, I have appointed Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan. I have put skill into the hearts of all who are wise so that they may make all that I have commanded you. This includes ⁷ the tent of meeting, the ark of the testimony, the atonement lid on the ark, and all the furniture of the tent— ⁸ the table and its utensils, the pure lampstand with all its equipment, the incense altar, ⁹ the altar for burnt offerings with all its equipment, and the large basin with its base.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Oholiab ... Ahisamak

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

I have put skill into the hearts of all who are wise

God speaks of making people able to make things as if he were putting the ability into their hearts. AT: “I have given skill to all who are wise” or “I have made all who are wise able to make things well”

tent of meeting

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:21](#).

ark of the testimony

The ark is the chest that contains the commandments. This can be stated clearly in the translation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:33](#). AT: “the chest containing the commandments” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

incense altar

“altar to burn incense.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:03](#).

altar for burnt offerings

“altar on which offering were burnt.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:28](#).

translationWords

- [appoint, appoints, appointed](#)
- [Dan](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)
- [tent](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [altar of incense](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 31 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 31:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Also included in these things were all the beautiful, special clothes for Aaron and his sons to wear when they work as priests; ¹¹ the oil for anointing, and the sweet-smelling incense for the holy place. The craftsmen must make all these things exactly as I have told you that they should do.”

ULB:

¹⁰ This also includes the finely-woven garments—the holy garments for Aaron the priest and those of his sons, reserved for me so that they may serve as priests. ¹¹ This also includes the anointing oil and the sweet incense for the holy place. These craftsmen must make all these things just as I have commanded you.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

finely-woven garments

These were clothing made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 28:8](#).

These craftsmen

“These people who are skilled in making beautiful things”

translationWords

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [oil](#)
- [incense](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 31 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 31:12-15**UDB:**

¹² Yahweh said to Moses, ¹³ "Tell the Israelite people, 'Obey my instructions regarding the Sabbath days for rest. Those days will remind me and you and your descendants, throughout all future generations, that I, Yahweh, have set you apart to be my people. ¹⁴ You must obey my rules about the Sabbath days for rest because you must regard them as special for me. Those who treat these days with disrespect must be killed; this will show that I no longer consider them to belong to my people. ¹⁵ You may work for six days each week, but the seventh day of each week is a solemn rest day, dedicated to me, Yahweh. Anyone who does any work on a Sabbath day of rest is to be killed.

ULB:

¹² Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ¹³ "Tell the Israelites: 'You must certainly keep Yahweh's Sabbath days, for these will be a sign between him and you throughout your people's generations so that you may know that he is Yahweh, who sets you apart for himself. ¹⁴ So you must keep the Sabbath, for it must be treated by you as holy, reserved for him. Everyone who defiles it must surely be put to death. Whoever works on the Sabbath, that person must surely be cut off from his people. ¹⁵ Work will be done for six days, but the seventh day is to be a Sabbath of complete rest, holy, reserved for Yahweh's honor. Whoever does any work on the Sabbath day must surely be put to death.

translationNotes**You must certainly keep Yahweh's Sabbath days**

God speaks of obeying his instructions about the Sabbath as keeping the Sabbath. AT: "You must certainly obey Yahweh's instructions about the Sabbath" (See: [Metaphor](#))

throughout your people's generations

"through all the generations of your descendants." See how you translated this in [Exodus 12:14](#).

who sets you apart for himself

God speaks of choosing people to be his as setting them apart for himself. AT: "who has chosen you to be his people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

for it must be treated by you as holy

This can be stated in active form. AT: "for you must treat it as holy" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Everyone who defiles it

God speaks of treating the Sabbath with disrespect as defiling it. AT: “Everyone who treats the Sabbath with disrespect” or “Everyone who does not obey the laws about the Sabbath” (See: [Metaphor](#))

must surely be put to death

“must surely be killed.” This can be stated in active form. AT: “you must surely kill” or “you must surely execute” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

must surely be cut off from his people

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: 1) “Yahweh will no longer consider him to be one of his people” 2) “you must surely send him away” or 3) “you must surely kill him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

but the seventh day

“but day 7” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [generation](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [rest](#)
- [honor, honors, to honor](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 31 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 31:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ You Israelite people must respect the Sabbath days of rest, and you and your descendants must observe them throughout all future generations. I will always require this of you. ¹⁷ The Sabbath days of rest will remind you Israelite people and me of our covenant because I, Yahweh, created the heavens and the earth in six days, and on the seventh day I stopped doing that work and rested.”

ULB:

¹⁶ Therefore the Israelites must keep the Sabbath. They must observe it throughout their people’s generations as a permanent law. ¹⁷ The Sabbath will always be a sign between Yahweh and the Israelites, for in six days Yahweh made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested and was refreshed.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what he must tell the people of Israel.

must keep the Sabbath

God speaks of obeying his instructions about the Sabbath as keeping the Sabbath. AT: “must obey Yahweh’s instructions about the Sabbath” (See: [Metaphor](#))

They must observe it throughout their people’s generations

“They and all the generations of their descendants must observe it.” See how you translated “throughout their people’s generations” in [Exodus 12:42](#).

permanent law

“a law the will not end.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:43](#).

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [generation](#)
- [sign, signs, proof, reminder](#)
- [heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly](#)

- [earth, earthly](#)
- [rest](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 31 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 31:18**UDB:**

¹⁸ When Yahweh finished talking with Moses on the top of Mount Sinai, he gave him the two stone slabs on which he had engraved his commandments with his own fingers.

ULB:

¹⁸ When God had finished talking with Moses on Mount Sinai, he gave him two tablets of covenant decrees, made of stone, written on by his own hand.

translationNotes**written on by his own hand**

This can be translated with an active verb. AT: “which Yahweh wrote on with his own hand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 31 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The events of this chapter occur while Moses spoke with God and therefore happen at the same time as chapters 20-31.

Some translations prefer to set apart extended quotations, prayers or songs. The ULB and many other English translations indent the lines of 32:18, which is an important quotation.

Special concepts in this chapter

Idolatry

The making of the golden calf was considered a form of idolatry. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 32:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 32:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Moses stayed on top of the mountain a long time. When the people saw that he was not returning, they went to Aaron and said to him, “Make us gods who will lead us on our journey. We do not know what happened to that man Moses, who brought us here out of Egypt.” ² Aaron said to them, “All right, I will do that. Tell your wives and your children to take off all their gold earrings and bring them to me.”

ULB:

¹ When the people saw that Moses delayed in coming down the mountain, they gathered around Aaron and said to him, “Come, make us an idol that will go before us. As for this Moses, the man who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him.” ² So Aaron said to them, “Take off the golden rings that are on your wives’ ears, and the ears of your sons and daughters, and bring them to me.”

translationNotes**the people saw**

Here understanding something is spoken of as if it were being seen. AT: “the people realized” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Come, make us an idol

The word “come” strengthens the force of the command following it. The people were demanding that Aaron make an idol for them.

go before us

“lead us” or “be our leader”

bring them to me

The word “them” refers to the golden rings.

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:3-4**UDB:**

³ So the people took off all their gold earrings and brought them to Aaron. ⁴ He melted the gold in a fire. He poured the gold into a mold and made a statue that looked like a young bull. The people saw it and said, "This is the god of the Israelite people! This is the one who rescued us from the land of Egypt!"

ULB:

³ All the people took off the golden rings that were on their ears and brought them to Aaron. ⁴ He received the gold from them, fashioned it in a mold, and made it into a molded calf. Then the people said, "Israel, this is your god who brought you up out of the land of Egypt."

translationNotes**All the people**

This refers to all the people who rejected Moses as their leader and Moses' God as their God.

fashioned it in a mold, and made it into a molded calf

Aaron melted the gold and poured it into a mold that had the shape of a calf. When the gold became hard, he removed the mold, and the hardened gold had the shape of a calf.

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [receive](#)
- [mold](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ When Aaron saw how the people reacted, he built an altar in front of the bull. Then he announced, “Tomorrow we will have a festival to honor Yahweh!” ⁶ So the people got up early the next morning and brought animals to kill and burn as sacrifices on the altar. They also brought sacrifices to restore fellowship with others. Then they sat down to eat and to drink wine. After a while, they got up and had a wild party.

ULB:

⁵ When Aaron saw this, he built an altar before the calf and made a proclamation; he said, “Tomorrow will be a festival in Yahweh’s honor.” ⁶ The people arose early the next day and offered burnt offerings and brought fellowship offerings. Then they sat down to eat and to drink, and then got up to carouse in wild celebration.

translationNotes**When Aaron saw this**

You may need to make explicit what he saw. “When Aaron saw what the people did” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to carouse in wild celebration

“to have a wild party.” The people likely behaved in sexually immoral ways at the party.

translationWords

- Aaron
- altar, altars
- cow, calf, bull, cattle
- proclaim, proclamation
- festival
- Yahweh
- honor, honors, to honor
- raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- fellowship offering

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Go down from the mountain because your people, the ones that you brought up here from Egypt, have become bad. ⁸ They have already left the road that I showed them and have stopped obeying me! They have made a statue of a young bull from melted gold. They have worshiped it and offered sacrifices to it. They are saying, "This is the god of the Israelite people! This is the one who brought us up from Egypt!"

ULB:

⁷ Then Yahweh spoke to Moses, "Go quickly, for your people, whom you brought up out of the land of Egypt, have corrupted themselves. ⁸ They have quickly left the way that I commanded them. They have molded for themselves a calf and have worshiped it and sacrificed to it. They have said, "Israel, this is your god who brought you up out of the land of Egypt."

translationNotes**left the way that I commanded them**

Here God speaks of the people disobeying what he commanded them as if he had told them to walk on a certain road and they left that road. AT: "stopped doing what I commanded them to do" or "have stopped obeying what I commanded them to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

They have molded for themselves a calf

"They have made a gold statue for themselves shaped like a calf"

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [corrupt, corruption](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [worship](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 32 translationQuestions

Exodus 32:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ I know that these people are very stubborn. ¹⁰ I am very angry with them, so I am going to get rid of them. Do not try to stop me! Then I will cause you and your descendants to become a great nation.”

¹¹ But Moses pleaded with his God, Yahweh, and said, ”Yahweh, you should not be angry with your people! These are the people whom you saved from Egypt with very great power!

ULB:

⁹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, ”I have seen this people. Look, they are a stiff-necked people. ¹⁰ Now then, do not try to stop me. My anger will burn hot against them, so I will destroy them. Then I will make a great nation from you.” ¹¹ But Moses tried to calm down Yahweh his God. He said, ”Yahweh, why does your anger burn against your people, whom you have brought out of the land of Egypt with great power and with a mighty hand?

translationNotes**I have seen this people**

Here Yahweh compares knowing the people to seeing them. AT: “I know this people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a stiff-necked people

Yahweh speaks of the people being stubborn as if they had stiff necks. AT: “a stubborn people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Now then

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in what Yahweh was telling Moses. Here Yahweh tells what he will do to the people.

My anger will burn hot against them

Yahweh speaks of his anger as if it were a fire that could burn hot. AT: “My anger towards them will be terrible” or “I am extremely angry with them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

from you

The word “you” refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

why does your anger burn against your people ... a mighty hand?

Moses used this question to try to persuade Yahweh not to be so angry with his people. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “Do not let your anger burn against your people ... a mighty hand.” or “Do not be so angry with your people ... a mighty hand.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

great power ... mighty hand

These two phrases share similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Doublet](#))

a mighty hand

Here the word “hand” refers to the things Yahweh did. AT: “and the powerful things you did” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [nation](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [mighty, might](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:12-14**UDB:**

¹² Do not do anything that would allow the people of Egypt to say, 'Their god led them out from our country, but he did that only because he wanted to kill them in the mountains and get rid of them completely! Do not do to your people this terrible thing that you have just said that you will do! Stop being so angry! Change your mind! ¹³ Think about your servants Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. You solemnly promised them, saying, 'I will enable you to have as many descendants as the stars that are in the sky.' You said to them, 'I will give to your descendants all the land that I am promising to give them. It will be their land forever.'"

¹⁴ So Yahweh changed his mind. He did not do to his people the terrible thing that he said he would do.

ULB:

¹² Why should the Egyptians say, 'He led them out with evil intent, to kill them in the mountains and to destroy them from the face of the earth?' Turn from your burning anger and relent from this punishment on your people. ¹³ Call to mind Abraham and Isaac and Israel, your servants, to whom you swore by your own self and said to them, 'I will make your descendants as many as the stars in the heavens, and I will give to your descendants all this land of which I have spoken. They will inherit it forever.'" ¹⁴ Then Yahweh relented from the punishment that he had said he would inflict on his people.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Moses continues to reason with God not to destroy Israel.

Why should the Egyptians say, 'He led them out ... to destroy them from the face of the earth?'

Moses used this question to try to persuade God not to destroy his people. This rhetorical question can be translated with a statement. AT: If you destroy your people, the Egyptians might say, 'He led them out ... to destroy them from the face of the earth.' (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

face of the earth

"from the surface of the earth" or "from the earth"

Turn from your burning anger

"Stop your burning anger" or "Stop being so angry"

your burning anger

Moses speaks of God's anger as if it were a fire that was burning. AT: "your terrible anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Call to mind Abraham

"Remember Abraham" or "Think about Abraham"

swore

"made an oath" or "solemnly promised"

They will inherit it forever

God speaks about them possessing the land as if they would inherit it. AT: "They will possess it forever" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [face](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Isaac](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [oath, swear, swear by](#)
- [descendant, descended from](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [forever](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ Then Moses left from where God was; he went down the mountain, carrying in his hands the two stone slabs on which Yahweh had engraved his commandments. He had written on both sides of the slabs. ¹⁶ God himself had made the slabs, and he was the one who had engraved the commandments on them.

ULB:

¹⁵ Then Moses turned around and went down the mountain, carrying the two tablets of the covenant decrees in his hand. The tablets were written on both their sides, on both the front and the back. ¹⁶ The tablets were God's own work, and the writing was God's own writing, engraved on the tablets.

translationNotes**tablets of the covenant decrees**

These are the two stone slabs on which God had engraved his commandments.

The tablets were God's own work, and the writing was God's own writing

These two phrases share similar meanings. The second explains how the tablets were "God's own work." (See: [Parallelism](#))

translationWords

- [written](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Joshua heard the people shouting very loudly. So when Moses got near the camp, Joshua met him and said, “There is a noise in the camp that sounds like the noise of a battle!” ¹⁸ But Moses said,

”No, that does not sound as though the people have won a victory;
it does not sound as though they have been defeated in a battle!
It sounds as though they are singing!”

ULB:

¹⁷ When Joshua heard the noise of the people as they shouted, he said to Moses, “There is the noise of combat in the camp.” ¹⁸ But Moses said,

”It is not the sound of a victor,
and not the sound of defeated people,
but the sound of singing that I hear.”

translationNotes**he said to Moses**

It is assumed that Joshua met Moses while Moses was going back to the camp. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Joshua](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ As soon as Moses came close to the camp and saw the statue of the bull and the people dancing, he became very angry. He threw the stone tablets down onto the ground at the base of the mountain, and they broke. ²⁰ Then he took the statue of the bull that they had made and melted it in the fire. When it cooled, he ground it into fine powder. Then he mixed the powder with water and forced the Israelite people to drink it.

ULB:

¹⁹ When Moses approached the camp, he saw the calf and the people dancing. He became very angry. He threw the tablets out of his hands and broke them at the bottom of the mountain. ²⁰ He took the calf that the people had made, burned it, ground it to powder, and poured it into the water. Then he made the people of Israel drink it.

translationNotes**the tablets**

“the two stone slabs that Yahweh had written on”

translationWords

- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:21-24**UDB:**

²¹ Then Moses said to Aaron, “Did these people do something to you that led you to make them sin in this way?” ²² Aaron replied, “Please do not be angry with me, my lord. You know that these people are likely to do wicked things. ²³ They said to me, ‘Make for us an idol who will lead us on our journey! As for that man Moses, the one who brought us up here from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him.’ ²⁴ So I said to them, ‘Everyone who is wearing gold earrings should take them off.’ So they took them off and gave them to me. I threw them into the fire, and out came this statue of a young bull!”

ULB:

²¹ Then Moses said to Aaron, “What did this people do to you, that you have brought such a great sin on them?” ²² Aaron said, “Do not let your anger burn hot, my master. You know these people, how they are set on doing evil. ²³ They said to me, ‘Make us a god who will go before us. As for this Moses, the man who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him.’ ²⁴ So I said to them, ‘Whoever has any gold, let him take it off.’ They gave me the gold and I threw it into the fire, and out came this calf.”

translationNotes**Then Moses said to Aaron, “What did this people ... a great sin on them?”**

This can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “Then Moses asked Aaron what the people do to him, that he have brought such a great sin on them” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

you have brought such a great sin on them

Moses spoke of causing people to sin as if sin were an object and Aaron put it on them. AT: “you have caused them to sin so terribly” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Do not let your anger burn hot

Aaron spoke of Moses’ anger as if it were a fire that could burn. “Do not be so angry” (See: [Metaphor](#))

they are set on doing evil

Being determined to do evil is spoken of as being set on evil. AT: “they are determined to do what is evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

this Moses

People showed disrespect by putting the word “this” before his name, as if Moses were someone they did not know and could not trust.

So I said to them, ‘Whoever has any gold, let him take it off.’

This can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “So I told them that whoever had any gold should take it off” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

I threw it into the fire, and out came this calf

Instead of taking ownership for making the calf, Aaron claims the calf came out of the fire supernaturally.

translationWords

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:25-27**UDB:**

²⁵ Moses saw that Aaron had allowed the people to get out of control and to do things that would make their enemies think the Israelite people were foolish. ²⁶ So he stood at the entrance to the camp and shouted, “Everyone who is loyal to Yahweh should come close to me!” So all the men in the tribe of Levi gathered around him. ²⁷ Then he said to them, “Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people, commands that every one of you should fasten your sword to your side, and then go through the camp from this gate to the other one. Each one of you must kill the other men, whether they are your brother, your friend, or your neighbor.”

ULB:

²⁵ Moses saw that the people were running wild (for Aaron had let them get out of control, causing their enemies to mock them). ²⁶ Then Moses stood at the entrance to the camp and said, “Whoever is on Yahweh’s side, come to me.” All the Levites gathered around him. ²⁷ He said to them, “Yahweh, the God of Israel, says this: ‘Let each man fasten his sword on his side and go back and forth from entrance to entrance throughout the camp, and kill his brother, his companion, and his neighbor.’”

translationNotes**were running wild**

“were behaving wildly” or “were not controlling themselves”

Then Moses stood at the entrance ... “Whoever is on Yahweh’s side, come to me.”

This can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “Then Moses stood at the entrance to the camp and said that whoever was on Yahweh’s side should come to him” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Whoever is on Yahweh’s side

Moses speaks of being loyal to Yahweh as being on Yahweh’s side. AT: “Whoever is loyal to Yahweh” or “Whoever serves Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

go back and forth from entrance to entrance

“go from side of the camp to the other, starting at one entrance to the camp and going to the entrance on the other side of the camp”

translationWords

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [sword](#)
- [neighbor](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:28-29**UDB:**

²⁸ The men in the tribe of Levi did what Moses told them to do, and they killed three thousand men on that day. ²⁹ Moses said to the men in the tribe of Levi, “Today you have become special servants of Yahweh by killing even your own sons and your brothers. As a result Yahweh has blessed you.”

ULB:

²⁸ The Levites did what Moses ordered. That day about three thousand of the people died. ²⁹ Moses said to the Levites, “You have been placed into Yahweh’s service today, for each of you has taken action against his son and his brother, so Yahweh might give you a blessing today.”

translationNotes**three thousand of the people**

“3000 of the people” (See: [Numbers](#))

You have been placed into Yahweh’s service

This probably means “You have been chosen to serve Yahweh” or “You have become Yahweh’s servants.”

for each of you has taken action against his son and his brother

The fact that they did this in obedience to God can be stated clearly. AT: “for you have obeyed Yahweh and killed your sons and your brothers” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [death, die, dead](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:30-32**UDB:**

³⁰ The next day, Moses said to the people, “You have sinned very greatly. But I will now climb up the mountain again to talk with Yahweh. Perhaps I can persuade him to forgive you for sinning like this.” ³¹ So Moses went up the mountain and said to Yahweh, “I am sorry to admit that these people sinned very greatly when they made for themselves a gold idol and worshiped it. ³² But now I ask you to forgive them for their sin. If you will not forgive them, then erase my name from the book in which you have written the names of your people.”

ULB:

³⁰ The next day Moses said to the people, “You have committed a very great sin. Now I will go up to Yahweh. Perhaps I can make atonement for your sin.” ³¹ Moses returned to Yahweh and said, “Oh, these people have committed a great sin and made themselves an idol of gold. ³² But now, please forgive their sin; but if you do not, blot me out of the book that you have written.”

translationNotes**You have committed a very great sin**

They worshiped an idol.

Perhaps I can make atonement for your sin

Moses spoke of persuading God to forgive the people as if he could make atonement for their sin. AT: “Perhaps I can persuade Yahweh to forgive you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

blot me out of the book

The word “me” here refers to the name of Moses. AT: “erase my name from the book” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the book that you have written

What God had written in the book can be stated clearly. AT: “the book in which you have written the names of your people” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [atonement, atone, atones, atoned](#)

- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [gold](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness](#)
- [blot out, wipe out](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 32:33-35**UDB:**

³³ But Yahweh said to Moses, "It is only those who have sinned against me whose names I will erase from that book. ³⁴ Now go back down and lead the Israelite people to the place about which I told you. Keep in mind that my angel will go in front of you. But, at the time that I decide, I will punish them for their sin."

³⁵ Later Yahweh caused the people to become sick because they had told Aaron to make the statue of a young bull.

ULB:

³³ Yahweh said to Moses, "Whoever has sinned against me, that person I will blot out of my book. ³⁴ So now go, lead the people to the place of which I have spoken to you. See, my angel will go before you. But on the day that I punish them, I will punish them for their sin." ³⁵ Then Yahweh sent a plague on the people because they had made the calf, the one that Aaron made.

translationNotes**that person I will blot out of my book**

The phrase "that person" represents "that person's name." AT: "I will erase that person's name from my book" (See: [Metonymy](#))

my book

This refers to the book of Yahweh that Moses spoke of in [Exodus 32:32](#).

But on the day that I punish them, I will punish them

On the day that God decides to punish them, it will be clear that it is God who is judging them.

Yahweh sent a plague on the people

This plague may have been a serious illness. AT: "Yahweh made the people very sick"

they had made the calf, the one that Aaron made

Even though Aaron made the calf, the people were also guilty because they told Aaron to do it. AT: "they told Aaron to make the calf"

translationWords

- blot out, wipe out
- angel, angels, archangel
- punish, punishment
- send, send out, sent
- plague

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 32 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 32 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 33 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Covenant

While the covenants Yahweh made may not be conditioned upon the obedience of Israel, it is clear that their conquering of the Promised Land was conditioned on their obedience to Yahweh. (See: [covenant](#), [covenants](#) and [Promised Land](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 33:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 33:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, "Leave this place and go with the people whom you led out of Egypt. Go to the land that I promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that I would give to their descendants. ² I will send my angel ahead of you, and I will remove from that land the people of Canaan, Amor, Heth, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus. ³ You will go to a land that will be very good for raising livestock and growing crops. But I will not go with you myself because if I did that, I might annihilate you while you are traveling because you are very stubborn people."

ULB:

¹ Yahweh spoke to Moses, "Go from here, you and the people whom you have brought up out of the land of Egypt. Go to the land about which I made an oath to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, when I said, 'I will give it to your descendants.' ² I will send an angel before you, and I will drive out the Canaanites, Amorites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites. ³ Go to that land, which is flowing with milk and honey, but I will not go up with you, because you are a stubborn people. I might destroy you on the way."

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses of his anger.

that land, which is flowing with milk and honey

The land was good for raising livestock and growing crops. See how you translated this in [Exodus 3:8](#). AT: "a land that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops" (See: [Metonymy](#))

flowing with

"full of" or "with an abundance of"

milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, this represents food produced by livestock. AT: "food from livestock" (See: [Metonymy](#))

honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, this represents food from crops. AT: "food from crops" (See: [Metonymy](#))

a stubborn people

“people who refuse to change”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- Egypt, Egyptian
- oath, swear, swear by
- Abraham, Abram
- Isaac
- Jacob, Israel
- descendant, descended from
- send, send out, sent
- angel, angels, archangel
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Amorite
- Hittite
- Perizzite
- Hivite
- Jebusites, Jebus
- honey, honeycomb
- stiff-necked, stubborn

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 33 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 33:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ When the people heard these words, they were sad, and no one wore fancy clothing anymore. ⁵ Yahweh had said to Moses, “Tell the Israelite people, ‘You are very stubborn. If I were to go with you for even a moment, I would kill you. Now take off your fine clothing to show that you are sorry for your sin. Then I will decide how I will punish you.’” ⁶ After the Israelite people left Mount Sinai, they wore no more fancy clothing.

ULB:

⁴ When the people heard these troubling words, they mourned, and no one put on any jewelry. ⁵ Yahweh had said to Moses, “Say to the Israelites, ‘You are a stubborn people. If I went among you for even one moment, I would destroy you. So now, take off your jewelry so that I may decide what to do with you.’” ⁶ So the Israelites wore no jewelry from Mount Horeb onward.

translationNotes**jewelry**

beautiful clothing as well as chains and rings with jewels in them

a stubborn people

“people who refuse to change.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 33:3](#).

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [trouble, troubles, troubled](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [mourn, mourning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)
- [Horeb](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 33 translationQuestions

Exodus 33:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ As the Israelite people were traveling, whenever they stopped and set up their tents, Moses set up the sacred tent outside the camp, far from the camp. He called it “the tent of meeting.” Everyone who wanted Yahweh to decide something for them would go out of the camp to the tent of meeting. ⁸ Whenever Moses went out to the tent of meeting, all the people would stand at their own tent entrances and watch him until he had walked into the tent of meeting. ⁹ Whenever Moses went into the tent of meeting, the tall cloud would come down and stay at the tent entrance, and then Yahweh would talk with Moses.

ULB:

⁷ Moses took a tent and pitched it outside the camp, some distance from the camp. He called it the tent of meeting. Everyone who asked Yahweh for anything went out to the tent of meeting, outside the camp. ⁸ When Moses would go out to the tent, all the people would stand up at their tent entrances and look at Moses until he had gone inside. ⁹ Whenever Moses entered the tent, the pillar of cloud would come down and stand at the tent entrance, and Yahweh would speak with Moses.

translationNotes**the pillar of cloud**

The cloud had the shape of a pillar. See how you translated this in [Exodus 13:22](#). AT: “the cloud shaped like a pillar” (See: [Metaphor](#))

would come down

Where it came down from can be stated clearly. AT: “would come down from the sky” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [tent](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [pillar, column](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 33 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 33:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ When the people saw the tall cloud at the entrance of the tent of meeting, they would all worship Yahweh at their own tent entrances. ¹¹ Yahweh would speak to Moses face to face like someone speaks to his friend. Then Moses would return to the camp. But his young helper, Joshua son of Nun, would stay in the tent of meeting.

ULB:

¹⁰ Whenever all the people saw the pillar of cloud stand at the entrance to the tent, they would get up and worship, every man at his own tent entrance. ¹¹ Yahweh would speak to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend. Then Moses would return to the camp, but his servant Joshua son of Nun, a young man, would stay in the tent.

translationNotes**Yahweh would speak to Moses face to face**

Speaking directly rather than through dreams and visions, is spoken of as if Moses and God saw each other's faces while they spoke. AT: "Yahweh would speak directly to Moses" (See: [Metaphor](#))

young man

old enough to be a soldier ([Exodus 17:9-10](#)), but much younger than Moses

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [tent](#)
- [worship](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [face](#)
- [servant, slave, slavery](#)
- [Joshua](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 33 translationQuestions

Exodus 33:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Moses said to Yahweh, "It is true that you have told me, 'Lead the people to the land that I will show you,' but you have not told me whom you will send with me! Nevertheless, you have said that you know me well and that you are pleased with me. ¹³ So now, if you are truly pleased with me, I ask you, please tell me the things that you are going to do in order that I may know you better and continue to please you. Please remember that the Israelite people are the people whom you chose to belong to you."

ULB:

¹² Moses said to Yahweh, "See, you have been saying to me, 'Take this people on their journey,' but you have not let me know whom you will send with me. You have said, 'I know you by name, and you have also found favor in my eyes.' ¹³ Now if I have found favor in your eyes, show me your ways so that I may know you and continue to find favor in your eyes. Remember that this nation is your people."

translationNotes**See**

"Look!" or "Listen!" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you."

I know you by name

To know someone by name is to know them well. AT: "I know you well" (See: **Idiom**)

you have also found favor in my eyes

Here "found favor" is an idiom that means be approved of or that God is pleased with Moses. Here "eyes" are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing God's evaluation. AT: "I have evaluated you and approve" or "I am pleased with you" (See: **Idiom** and **Metonymy** and **Metaphor**)

Now if I have found favor in your eyes

Here "found favor" is an idiom that means be approved of or that God is pleased with Moses. Here "eyes" are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing God's evaluation. AT: "Now If you are pleased with me" or "Now if you approve of me" (See: **Idiom** and **Metonymy** and **Metaphor**)

show me your ways

Possible meanings: 1) "show me what you are going to do in the future" or 2) "show me how people can do what pleases you."

translationWords

- Moses
- Yahweh
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- know, knowledge, make known
- send, send out, sent
- name, names, named
- favor, favors, favorable, favoritism
- nation

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 33 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 33:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Yahweh replied, "I will go with you, and I will give you rest." ¹⁵ Moses replied, "If you do not go with me, do not make us leave this place. ¹⁶ The only way that others will know that you are pleased with me and with your people is if you go with us! If you go with us, it will show that we are different from all the other people on the earth."

ULB:

¹⁴ Yahweh answered, "My own presence will go with you, and I will give you rest." ¹⁵ Moses said to him, "If your presence does not go with us, do not take us up from here. ¹⁶ For otherwise, how will it be known that I have found favor in your eyes, I and your people? Will it not only be if you go with us so that I and your people are different from all the other peoples that are on the surface of the earth?"

translationNotes**My own presence will go**

God's presence represents himself. AT: "I will go" (See: [Metonymy](#))

go with you ... give you

The word "you" here refers to Moses. It is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

I will give you rest

"I will let you rest"

For otherwise

"For if your presence does not go with us"

how will it be known

This can be expressed with an active form. AT: "how will people know" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

how will it be known ... people?

Moses used this question in order to emphasize that if God does not go with them, no one will know that Moses had found favor in God's sight. AT: "no one will know ... people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Will it not only be if

“Will it not only be known if”

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [rest](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 33 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 33:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ Yahweh replied to Moses, “I will do what you have asked because I know you well and I am pleased with you.”

¹⁸ Then Moses said, “Please let me see you in all your power.”

ULB:

¹⁷ Yahweh said to Moses, “I will also do this thing that you have requested, for you have found favor in my eyes, and I know you by name.” ¹⁸ Moses said, “Please show me your glory.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

When Yahweh uses the word “you” in this verse, it is singular and refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

you have found favor in my eyes

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means that God is pleased with Moses. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 33:12](#). AT: “I am pleased with you” or “I approve of you” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

I know you by name

To know someone by name is to know them well. See how you translated this in [Exodus 33:12](#). AT: “I know you well” (See: [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 33 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 33:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Yahweh replied, "I will let you see how great and powerful I am, and I will tell you clearly that my name is Yahweh. I will act very kindly and be merciful to all those whom I choose. ²⁰ But I will not let you see my face because anyone who sees my face will die.

ULB:

¹⁹ Yahweh said, "I will make all my goodness pass before you, and I will proclaim my name 'Yahweh' before you. I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and I will show mercy on whom I will show mercy." ²⁰ But Yahweh said, "You may not see my face, for no one can see me and live."

translationNotes**I will make all my goodness pass before you**

God speaks of walking past Moses so that Moses can see his goodness as if only his goodness would go past Moses. AT: "I will move past you so that you may see my goodness" (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)
- [face](#)
- [life, live, lived, lives, living, alive](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 33 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 33:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ But look! Here is a place close to me where you can stand on a large rock. ²² When I come past you in all my power, I will put you in a large hole in the rock, and I will cover your face with my hand until I have passed by. ²³ Then I will take my hand away, and you will see my back, but you will not see my face.”

ULB:

²¹ Yahweh said, ”See, here is a place by me; you will stand on this rock. ²² While my glory passes by, I will put you in a crevice of the rock and cover you with my hand until I have passed by. ²³ Then I will take away my hand, and you will see my back, but my face will not be seen.”

translationNotes**See**

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you.”

you will see my back

This is because Yahweh will be walking away from Moses.

but my face will not be seen

This can be expressed in active form. AT: “but you will not see my face” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 33 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34 General Notes

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

“He will bring the punishment for the fathers’ sin on their children”

This phrase does not mean that a child is necessarily punished for the sins of their parents. Many scholars believe that this passage indicates that a parent’s sins will have consequences that will affect their children and grandchildren. (See: [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 34:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 34:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh said to Moses, "Cut two slabs of stone that will be like the first slabs, the ones that you broke. Then I will write on them the words that were on the first slabs. ² Get ready tomorrow morning, and come up to the top of Mount Sinai again to talk with me there.

ULB:

¹ Yahweh said to Moses, "Cut two tablets of stone like the first tablets. I will write on these tablets the words that were on the first tablets, the tablets that you broke. ² Be ready by morning and come up Mount Sinai, and present yourself there to me on the mountain top.

translationNotes**tablets**

"flat slabs of stone." See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:18](#)

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:3-4**UDB:**

³ Do not allow anyone to come up with you. I do not want anyone else to be anywhere on the mountain. Do not even allow any sheep or cattle to graze at the base of the mountain.” ⁴ So Moses cut two slabs of stone that were like the first ones. He rose early the next morning, picked up the slabs, and carried them in his hands up to the top of Mount Sinai, as Yahweh had told him.

ULB:

³ No one is to come up with you. Do not let anyone else be seen anywhere on the mountain. No flocks or herds are even to graze in front of the mountain.” ⁴ So Moses cut two tablets of stone like the first ones, and he got up early in the morning and went up Mount Sinai, as Yahweh had instructed him. Moses carried the tablets of stone in his hand.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Do not let anyone else be seen anywhere on the mountain

Being seen doing something represents doing that. AT: “Do not let anyone else be anywhere on the mountain” (See: [Metonymy](#))

No flocks or herds are even to graze in front of the mountain

“Even flocks or herds are not allowed to come near the mountain to eat.”

translationWords

- [flock, herd](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Then Yahweh came down in the tall cloud and stood with Moses there. Then he pronounced his own name, Yahweh, in front of Moses. ⁶ Yahweh passed in front of him and said, "I am Yahweh God. I always act mercifully and kindly toward people and I do not get angry quickly. I truly love people and I do what I promise to do for them. ⁷ I love people for thousands of generations. I forgive people for all kinds of sins. But I will certainly punish those who are guilty. I will punish not only them, but also I will punish their descendants, down to the third and fourth generation."

ULB:

⁵ Yahweh came down in the cloud and stood with Moses there, and he pronounced the name "Yahweh." ⁶ Yahweh passed by before him and proclaimed, "Yahweh, Yahweh, God is merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and abounding in covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness, ⁷ keeping covenant faithfulness for thousands of generations, forgiving iniquities, transgressions, and sins. But he will by no means clear the guilty. He will bring the punishment for the fathers' sin on their children and on their children's children, as far as the third and fourth generations."

translationNotes**stood with Moses there**

"stood with Moses on the mountain"

he pronounced the name "Yahweh."

Possible meanings are 1) "he spoke the name 'Yahweh.'" or 2) "he proclaimed who Yahweh is." For the second meaning, "name" would represent who God is. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Yahweh, Yahweh, God is merciful and gracious

God is speaking about himself. AT: "I, Yahweh, am God, and I am merciful and gracious" (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

abounding in covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness

"always showing covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness"

abounding in covenant faithfulness and trustworthiness

The abstract nouns "faithfulness" and "trustworthiness" can be stated as "faithful" and "trustworthy." AT: "always being faithful to my covenant and always being trustworthy" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

keeping covenant faithfulness for thousands of generations

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithfully” or “faithful.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 20:6](#). AT: “faithfully loving thousands of generations” or “faithful to his covenant with thousands of generation” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

But he will

Yahweh is speaking about himself. AT: “But I will” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

he will by no means clear the guilty

Yahweh is speaking about himself. AT: “I will by no means clear the guilty” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

will by no means clear the guilty

“will certainly not clear the guilty” or “will certainly not say that the guilty are innocent” or “will certainly not free guilty people”

He will bring the punishment for the fathers’ sin on their children

Punishing people is spoken of as if punishment were an object that someone could bring on people. AT: “He will punish the children for their fathers’ sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

their children

The word “children” represents descendants. AT: “their descendants” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [God](#)
- [mercy, merciful](#)
- [grace, gracious](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [generation](#)
- [forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)

- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [guilt, guilty](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)
- [children, child](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ Moses bowed low down on the ground and worshiped Yahweh. ⁹ He said, “My Lord, if you are now pleased with me, I ask that you go with us. These people are very stubborn, but forgive us for all our sins, and accept us as the people who belong to you forever.”

ULB:

⁸ Moses quickly bowed his head to the ground and worshiped. ⁹ Then he said, “If now I have found favor in your eyes, my Lord, please go among us, for this people is stubborn. Pardon our iniquity and our sin, and take us as your inheritance.”

translationNotes**If now I have found favor in your eyes**

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that God is pleased with Moses. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. See how you translated this in [Exodus 33:12](#). AT: “Now If you are pleased with me” or “Now if you approve of me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

our iniquity and our sin

The words “iniquity” and “sin” mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. AT: “all our sins” (See: [Doublet](#))

take us as your inheritance

Something that someone possesses forever is spoken of as if it were something that they had inherited. AT: “take us as the people that you possess forever” or “accept us as the people who belong to you forever” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [worship](#)
- [favor, favors, favorable, favoritism](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [stiff-necked, stubborn](#)

- [pardon](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Yahweh replied, "I am about to make a covenant with your people, the Israelite people. As they are watching, I will perform great miracles. They will see miracles that no one has ever done on the earth in any people group. Everyone among your people will see the great things that I, Yahweh, will do. I will do things for you all that will make you fear me. ¹¹ Do what I tell you to do today. I am about to make the Amor, Canaan, Heth, Periz, Hiv, and Jebus people groups leave the land.

ULB:

¹⁰ Yahweh said, "See, I am about to make a covenant. Before all your people, I will do marvels such as have not been done in all the earth nor in any nation. All the people among you will see my deeds, for it is a fearful thing that I am doing with you. ¹¹ Obey what I command you today. I am about to drive out before you the Amorites, Canaanites, Hittites, Perizzites, Hivites, and Jebusites.

translationNotes**your people**

Here "your" refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

it is a fearful thing that I am doing with you

A fearful thing is a thing that causes people to be afraid. In this case, people will fear God when they see what he does. AT: "what I do for you will cause people to fear me" (See: [Idiom](#))

I am doing with you

Here "you" refers to Moses and the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished](#)
- [nation](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [obey, obedient, obedience](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

- cast out, drive out, throw out
- Amorite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Hittite
- Perizzite
- Hivite
- Jebusites, Jebus

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:12-14**UDB:**

¹² But be careful that you do not make a covenant to live peacefully with any of the people who live in the land into which you are going because if you do that, you will begin to do the evil things that they do. It will be like falling into a trap. ¹³ You must tear down their altars, destroy their idols, and cut down the poles that they use to worship Asherah. ¹⁴ You must worship only me, and not worship any other god because I, Yahweh, always guard my honor, and I will not allow you to worship any other gods.

ULB:

¹² Be careful not to make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land where you are going, or they will become a trap among you. ¹³ Instead, you must break down their altars, smash their stone pillars, and cut down their Asherah poles. ¹⁴ For you must worship no other god, for Yahweh, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses. Here he tells him what Moses and the people must do.

they will become a trap among you

People who tempt others to sin are spoken of as if they were a trap. AT: “they will tempt you to sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Yahweh, whose name is Jealous

The word “Jealous” here means that God is concerned to keep his honor. If his people worship other gods, he loses honor, because when his people do not honor him, other people also will not honor him. AT: “I, Yahweh, always guard my honor” (See: [Metonymy](#))

whose name is Jealous,

The word “name” here represents God’s character. AT: “I, Yahweh, who am always jealous” or “I, Yahweh, am always jealous” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [covenant, covenants](#)

- altar, altars
- pillar, column
- Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth
- worship
- god, gods, goddess
- Yahweh
- name, names, named
- jealous, jealousy
- God

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:15-17**UDB:**

¹⁵ Do not make a covenant to live peacefully with any group that lives in that land. When they worship their gods and offer sacrifices to them and invite you to join them, do not join them. If you join them, you will eat the food that they sacrifice to their gods, and you will not be faithful to me. You will be like women who commit adultery, who are not faithful to their husbands. ¹⁶ If you take some of their women to be wives for your sons, these women will worship their own gods, and they will also make your sons worship their gods.

¹⁷ Do not pour melted metal into molds to make statues to worship.

ULB:

¹⁵ So be careful not to make a covenant with the inhabitants of the land, for they prostitute themselves to their gods, and they sacrifice to their gods. Then one of them will invite you and you will eat some of his sacrifice, ¹⁶ and then you will even take some of his daughters for your sons, and his daughters will prostitute themselves to their gods, and they will make your sons prostitute themselves to their gods. ¹⁷ Do not make for yourselves gods of molten metal.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses how his people are to behave towards outsiders.

for they prostitute themselves to their gods

God speaks of people worshiping other gods as if they were prostitutes going to other men. AT: “for they worship other gods” or “because they worship other gods like prostitutes who go to other men” (See: [Metaphor](#))

you will eat some of his sacrifice

The consequence of eating food that is sacrificed to another god can be stated clearly. AT: “you will eat some of his sacrifice and become guilty of worshiping his gods” or “and you will prostitute yourself to his god by eating some of his sacrifice” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)

- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:18

UDB:

¹⁸ Each year, during the month of Aviv, celebrate the Festival of Bread with no Yeast. During that festival, for seven days you must not eat bread made with yeast, as I commanded you, because it was in that month that you left Egypt.

ULB:

¹⁸ You must keep the Festival of Unleavened Bread. As I commanded you, you must eat bread without yeast for seven days at the fixed time in the month of Aviv, for it was in the month of Aviv you came out from Egypt.

translationNotes

General Information:

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

seven days

“7 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

in the month of Aviv

This is the name of the first month of the Hebrew calendar. Aviv is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. See how you translated “Aviv” in [Exodus 13:4](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [festival](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [bread](#)
- [yeast, leaven](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Your firstborn sons and the firstborn male animals of your cattle and sheep and goats belong to me. ²⁰ The firstborn of your male donkeys also belong to me. But you may buy them back by offering to me lambs in their place. If you do not do that, you must kill these animals by breaking their necks. You must also buy back your firstborn sons. You must bring an offering to me each time you come to worship me.

ULB:

¹⁹ All the firstborn are mine, even every male firstborn of your cattle, both of oxen and sheep. ²⁰ You must buy back the firstborn of a donkey with a lamb, but if you do not buy it back, then you must break its neck. You must buy back all the firstborn of your sons. No one may appear before me empty-handed.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

buy back

Firstborn sons and firstborn donkeys belonged to Yahweh, but Yahweh did not want them sacrificed to Him. Instead, the Israelites were to sacrifice a lamb in their place. This allowed the Israelites to buy the donkeys and sons back from Yahweh.

No one may appear before me empty-handed

God speaks of the offering as if the person was to carry it in his hands. AT: “No one may come to me without an offering” or “Everyone who comes to me must bring me an offering” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [firstborn](#)
- [ox, oxen](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [lamb, Lamb of God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:21-22**UDB:**

²¹ Each week you may work for six days, but on the seventh day you must rest. Even during the times when you are plowing the ground and harvesting your crops, you must rest on the seventh day.

²² Each year celebrate the Festival of Harvest when you begin to harvest the first crop of wheat, and also celebrate the Festival of Finished Harvest when you finish harvesting the grain and fruit.

ULB:

²¹ You may work for six days, but on the seventh day you must rest. Even at plowing time and in harvest, you must rest. ²² You must observe the Festival of Weeks with the first yield of the wheat harvest, and you must observe the Festival of Ingathering at the year's end.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

Even at plowing time and in harvest

“Even when you are preparing the soil or gathering the crops”

Festival of Ingathering

This festival was also known as the Festival of Shelters or the Festival of Booths. The idea came from the practice of the farmers living in temporary booths, or huts, out in the fields to guard the crop as it ripened. The word “Ingathering” means when they harvest their crop.

translationWords

- rest
- harvest
- Pentecost, Festival of Weeks
- wheat

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Three times each year all the men must come to worship me, Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people. ²⁴ I will make the people groups leave the land, and I will make your territory larger. No one will try to conquer your country when you come to worship Yahweh your God three times each year, during your festivals.

ULB:

²³ Three times a year all your men must appear before Lord Yahweh, the God of Israel. ²⁴ For I will drive out nations before you and expand your borders. No one will desire to have your land as their own when you go up to appear before Yahweh your God three times in a year.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [cast out, drive out, throw out](#)
- [nation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ When you sacrifice an animal to me, do not offer bread that is made with yeast. During the Passover festival, when you sacrifice lambs, do not keep any of the meat until the next morning.

²⁶ You must bring to my tent of meeting the first part of the grain that you harvest every year. When you kill a young animal, do not cook it by boiling it in its mother's milk."

ULB:

²⁵ You must not offer the blood of my sacrifice with any yeast, nor may any meat from the sacrifice at the Festival of the Passover be left over to the morning. ²⁶ You must bring the best of the firstfruits from your fields to my house. You must not boil a young goat in its mother's milk."

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

the blood of my sacrifice

The fact that the blood is from an animal can be stated clearly. AT: "the blood of an animal that you sacrifice to me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with any yeast

The fact that any yeast would be in bread can be stated clearly. AT: "with bread that has yeast in it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- blood
- sacrifice, offering
- yeast, leaven
- Passover
- firstfruits
- house of God, Yahweh's house
- goat, kid

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ Yahweh said to Moses, “Write down the words that I have told you. By giving you these commands, I have made a covenant with you and with the Israelite people.”

²⁸ Moses was there on the top of the mountain with Yahweh for forty days and nights. During that time he did not eat or drink anything. He engraved on the stone slabs the words of the Ten Commandments which belonged to Yahweh’s covenant.

ULB:

²⁷ Yahweh said to Moses, “Write down these words, for I pledge myself to these words I have spoken, and have made a covenant with you and Israel.” ²⁸ Moses was there with Yahweh for forty days and nights; he did not eat any food nor drink any water. He wrote on the tablets the words of the covenant, the ten Commandments.

translationNotes**Moses was there**

“Moses was on the mountain”

forty days

“40 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

for forty days and nights

“for forty days, both day and night”

He wrote

“Moses wrote”

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [pledge](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Ten Commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:29-31**UDB:**

²⁹ When Moses came back down the mountain carrying in his hand the two stone slabs on which were written the Ten Commandments, he did not know that his face was shining. ³⁰ When Aaron and the Israelite people saw Moses, they were amazed that his face was shining, and they were afraid to come near him. ³¹ But Moses called to them, and Aaron and the other Israelite leaders came to him, and he talked with them.

ULB:

²⁹ When Moses came down from Mount Sinai with the two tablets of the covenant decrees in his hand, he did not know that the skin of his face had become radiant while speaking with God. ³⁰ When Aaron and the Israelites saw Moses, the skin of his face was shining, and they were afraid to come near him. ³¹ But Moses called to them, and Aaron and all the leaders of the community came up to him. Then Moses spoke with them.

translationNotes**had become radiant**

“had started to shine”

came up to him

“approached him” or “went to him.” They did not go up the mountain.

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [God](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 34 translationQuestions

Exodus 34:32-33**UDB:**

³² Afterwards, all the Israelite people came near, and he told them all the commands that Yahweh had given to him on Mount Sinai. ³³ When Moses finished talking to the people, he covered his face with a cloth.

ULB:

³² After this, all the people of Israel came up to Moses, and he told them all the commands that Yahweh had given him on Mount Sinai. ³³ When Moses had finished speaking with them, he put a veil over his face.

translationNotes**all the commands that Yahweh had given him**

Telling commands is spoken of as if the commands were objects that could be given. AT: “all the commands that Yahweh had told him” or “everything that Yahweh had commanded them” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Sinai, Mount Sinai](#)
- [veil](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 34:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ Whenever Moses entered the tent of meeting to talk with Yahweh, he would remove the cloth. When he came back out, he would always tell the Israelite people everything that Yahweh had commanded him to tell them. ³⁵ The Israelite people would see that Moses' face was still shining. Then he would put the cloth back on his face again until the next time that he went to talk with Yahweh.

ULB:

³⁴ Whenever Moses went before Yahweh to speak with him, he would remove the veil, until he came out. When he came out, he would tell the Israelites what he was commanded to say. ³⁵ When the Israelites saw Moses' face shining, he would put the veil over his face again until he went back in to speak with Yahweh.

translationNotes**he would remove**

“Moses would remove”

what he was commanded

This can be stated in active form. AT: “what Yahweh had commanded him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [veil](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 34 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sacrifice

All of the people offered sacrifices to Yahweh. This was a form of worship and a sign of repentance from making the golden calf idol. (See: [worship](#) and [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 35:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 35:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Moses gathered all the Israelite people together and said to them, "This is what Yahweh has commanded you to do. ² Each week you may work for six days, but on the seventh day, you must rest. It is a sacred day, dedicated to Yahweh. Anyone who does any work on the seventh day must be killed. ³ Do not light a fire in your homes on the rest days."

ULB:

¹ Moses assembled all the community of the Israelites and said to them, "These are the things that Yahweh has commanded you to do. ² On six days work may be done, but for you, the seventh day must be a holy day, a Sabbath day of complete rest, holy to Yahweh. Whoever does any work on that day must be put to death. ³ You must not light a fire in any of your homes on the Sabbath day."

translationNotes**the seventh day**

"day number seven" or "Saturday" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Whoever does any work on that day must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. AT: "You must kill anyone who does work on that day" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [rest](#)
- [fire](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 35 translationQuestions

Exodus 35:4-9**UDB:**

⁴ Moses also said to all the Israelite people, "This is what Yahweh has commanded. ⁵ Make offerings to Yahweh. Everyone who wants to should bring to Yahweh an offering. The offerings can be gold, silver, or bronze, ⁶ fine white linen, blue, purple or red woolen cloth, cloth made from goats' hair, ⁷ rams' skins that are tanned, sea cow skins, wood from acacia trees, ⁸ oil for the lamps, spices to put into the olive oil for anointing and to put into the sweet-smelling incense, ⁹ onyx stones or other valuable stones to fasten onto the priest's sacred apron and to put on his sacred chest pouch.

ULB:

⁴ Moses spoke to all the community of the Israelites, saying, "This is the thing that Yahweh commanded. ⁵ Take an offering for Yahweh, all of you who have a willing heart. Bring an offering to Yahweh—gold, silver, bronze, ⁶ blue, purple, and scarlet wool and fine linen; goats' hair; ⁷ ram skins dyed red and sea cow hides; acacia wood; ⁸ oil for the sanctuary lamps, spices for the anointing oil and the fragrant incense, ⁹ onyx stones and other precious stones to be set for the ephod and breastpiece.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Moses tells the Israelites to make the things Yahweh commanded him in [Exodus 25:3-7](#).

Take an offering for Yahweh

"Take up a collection for Yahweh"

all of you who have a willing heart

Here "heart" refers to the person bringing the offering. AT: "everyone who is willing" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [goat, kid](#)

- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [acacia](#)
- [oil](#)
- [sanctuary](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [incense](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:10-12**UDB:**

¹⁰ All the skilled workers among you should come and make all the things that Yahweh has commanded— ¹¹ the sacred tent with its covering, its fasteners, its frames, its crossbars, its posts, and its bases: ¹² the sacred chest with its poles and its lid; the curtain that will separate the holy place from the very holy place.

ULB:

¹⁰ Every skilled man among you is to come and make everything that Yahweh has commanded— ¹¹ the tabernacle with its tent, its covering, its clasps, frames, bars, posts, and bases; ¹² also the ark with its poles, the atonement lid, and the curtain to conceal it.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Moses continues telling the people what God commanded them to do.

Every skilled man

“Every man with a skill”

clasps

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in [Exodus 26:4-6](#).

bases

These are heavy objects that rest on the ground and keep the object attached to them from moving. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:31](#).

atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [tent](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [atonement lid](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:13-16**UDB:**

¹³ The workers also made the table with the poles for carrying it and all the things that will be used with the table; the bread to display before God; ¹⁴ the lampstand for the lamps with all the things that will be used to take care of them; the oil for the lamps; ¹⁵ the altar for burning incense and the poles for carrying the altar; the oil for anointing and the sweet-smelling incense; the curtain for the entrance of the sacred tent; ¹⁶ the altar for offering sacrifices that will be burned and its bronze grating; the poles for carrying the altar and all the things that will be used with it; the washbasin and its base.

ULB:

¹³ They brought the table with its poles, all its utensils, and the bread of the presence; ¹⁴ the lampstand for the lights, with its accessories, its lamps, and the oil for the lamps; ¹⁵ the incense altar with its poles, the anointing oil and the fragrant incense; the hanging for the tabernacle entrance; ¹⁶ the altar for burnt offerings with its bronze grate and its poles and utensils; and the large basin with its base.

translationNotes**They brought**

“The people of Israel brought”

bread of the presence

This bread represented the presence of God. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:30](#).

bronze grate

This is a frame of crossed bronze bars for holding wood when burning. See how you translated “grate” in [Exodus 27:4](#).

translationWords

- [bread](#)
- [lampstand](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [oil](#)
- [altar of incense](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

- [tabernacle](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ They workers made the curtains to surround the courtyard and the posts and bases for the posts to support the curtains; the curtain for the entrance to the courtyard; ¹⁸ the pegs and ropes for the sacred tent; ¹⁹ and the beautiful clothes that Aaron and his sons are to wear when they do their work in the holy place.”

ULB:

¹⁷ They brought the hangings for the courtyard with its posts and bases, and the curtain for the courtyard entrance; ¹⁸ and the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard, together with their ropes. ¹⁹ They brought the finely-woven garments for serving in the holy place, the holy garments for Aaron the priest and his sons, for them to serve as priests.”

translationNotes**hangings**

These were large curtains made of cloth. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:36](#).

posts

These were strong pieces of wood set upright and used as supports. See how you translated these in [Exodus 27:10](#).

bases

These were blocks that had a slot in them to keep the board in place. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:19](#).

tent pegs

sharp pieces of wood or metal used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:19](#).

finely-woven garments

This was clothing made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:8](#).

translationWords

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ Then all the Israelite people returned to their tents. ²¹ Everyone who wished to bring an offering to Yahweh did so. They brought some of the things that would be used to make the sacred tent, all the other items that would be used in the rituals, and everything needed to make the sacred clothes for the priests. ²² All the men and women who wished to brought gold ornaments, earrings, rings, necklaces, and many other kinds of things made of gold, and they dedicated them to Yahweh.

ULB:

²⁰ Then all the tribes of Israel left and went away from Moses's presence. ²¹ Everyone whose heart stirred him up and whom his spirit made willing came and brought an offering to Yahweh for the construction of the tabernacle, for all the items of service in it, and for the holy garments. ²² They came, both men and women, all who had a willing heart. They brought brooches, earrings, rings, and ornaments, all kinds of gold jewelry. They all presented offerings of gold as a wave offering to Yahweh.

translationNotes**all the tribes of Israel**

This refers to the people in the tribes. AT: "the people from all the tribes of Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

whose heart stirred him up

Here "heart" refers to the person. The heart that responded to God is spoken of as if it were water stirred up by a storm. AT: "who responded to God" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

whom his spirit made willing

Here "spirit" refers to the person. AT: "who was willing" or "who wanted to" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

all who had a willing heart

Here "heart" refers to the person. AT: "everyone who was willing" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

brooches, earrings, rings, and ornaments

These are different kinds of jewelry.

translationWords

- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [spirit, spirits, spiritual](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Many people who had blue, purple, or red woolen cloth or fine white linen or cloth made from goats' hair, or rams' skins that were tanned, or leather made from sea cow skins, brought some of these things. ²⁴ All those who had silver or bronze brought them as offerings to Yahweh. All those who had some acacia wood that could be used for any of the work for the people to worship Yahweh brought it.

ULB:

²³ Everyone who had blue, purple, or scarlet wool, fine linen, goat hair, ram skins dyed red, or sea cow skins brought them. ²⁴ Everyone making an offering of silver or bronze brought it as an offering to Yahweh, and everyone who had acacia wood for any use in the work brought it.

translationNotes**Everyone who had ... brought them**

For 35:23 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:4-5](#).

translationWords

- [goat, kid](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [acacia](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ All the women who were skilled to make cloth brought fine linen thread and blue, purple, or red woolen yarn that they had made. ²⁶ All the women who wanted to made thread from goats' hair.

ULB:

²⁵ Every skilled woman spun wool with her hands and brought what she had spun—blue, purple, or scarlet wool, or fine linen. ²⁶ All the women whose hearts stirred them up and who had skill spun goats' hair.

translationNotes**blue, purple, or scarlet wool**

Possible meanings are 1) “material that is dyed blue, purple, and scarlet,” probably wool yarn, or 2) “blue, purple and scarlet dye” to dye the linen. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 25:4](#).

whose hearts stirred them up

Here “hearts” refers to the women. The hearts of the women who responded to God are spoken of as if they were water stirred up by a storm. AT: “who responded to God” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [heart, hearts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ All the leaders brought onyx stones and other fine stones to be fastened to Aaron's sacred apron and his sacred chest pouch. ²⁸ They also brought spices to put into the sweet-smelling incense, and they brought olive oil for the lamps and for the oil for anointing and for putting in the sweet-smelling incense. ²⁹ All the Israelite men and women who wanted to brought these things to offer them to Yahweh for doing the work that he had commanded Moses to do.

ULB:

²⁷ The leaders brought onyx stones and other gems to be set into the ephod and the breastpiece; ²⁸ they brought spices and oil for the lamps, for the anointing oil, and for the fragrant incense. ²⁹ The Israelites brought a freewill offering to Yahweh; every man and woman whose heart was willing brought materials for all the work that Yahweh had commanded through Moses to be made.

translationNotes**The leaders brought ... Moses to be made**

For 35:27-29 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:1-2](#) and [Exodus 25:3-7](#).

whose heart was willing

Here "heart" refers to the people. AT: "who was willing" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [ephod](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [oil](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [incense](#)
- [freewill offering](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:30-33**UDB:**

³⁰ Moses said to the Israelite people, "Listen carefully. Yahweh has chosen Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur, from the tribe of Judah. ³¹ Yahweh has enabled his Spirit to live in Bezalel, has given him ability and knowledge, and has enabled him to know how to do very skilled work. ³² He can engrave skillful designs in gold, silver, and bronze. ³³ He can cut jewels and enclose them in tiny gold frames and can carve things from wood and do other skilled work.

ULB:

³⁰ Moses said to the Israelites, "See, Yahweh has called by name on Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah. ³¹ He has filled Bezalel with his Spirit, to give him wisdom, understanding, and knowledge, for all kinds of craftsmanship, ³² to make artistic designs and to work in gold, silver, and bronze; ³³ also to cut and set stones and to carve wood—to do all kinds of design and craftsmanship.

translationNotes**He has filled Bezalel with his Spirit**

God's Spirit who gave Bezalel the ability to work is spoken of here as if he was something that filled up Bezalel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

design and craftsmanship

For 35:30-33 see how you translated these words in [Exodus 31:1-2](#) and [Exodus 31:3-5](#).

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [call, calls, calling, called](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [filled with the Holy Spirit](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 35:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ Yahweh has also given to him and to Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan, the ability to teach their skills to others. ³⁵ He has given to them the ability to do all kinds of work that is done by craftsmen—those who create artistic things, those who make fine white linen, those who embroider designs using blue, purple, or red woolen yarn, and those who make linen cloth. They are able to plan many kinds of artistic work.

ULB:

³⁴ He has put it in his heart to teach, both he and Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan. ³⁵ He has filled them with skill to do all kinds of work, to work as craftsmen, as engravers, as embroiderers in blue, purple, and scarlet wool and fine linen, and as weavers. They are craftsmen in all sorts of work, and they are artistic designers.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Moses continues speaking to the people.

He has put it in his heart to teach

Here “heart” refers to Bezalel. The ability to teach is spoken of as if it something that could be placed in a heart. AT: “He gave Bezalel the ability to teach” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

filled them with skill

Skill to create beautiful objects is spoken of as if it was something that could fill up a person. AT: “made them very skillful” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan

“Oholiab” and “Ahisamak” are names of men. See how you translated these names in [Exodus 31:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

engravers

a person who cuts designs into a hard material such as wood, stone, or metal

embroiderers

people who sew designs into cloth

craftsmen

people who are skilled in making beautiful objects by hand

weavers

a person who creates cloth using thread

artistic designers

a person who creates beauty with materials

translationWords

- [heart, hearts](#)
- [Dan](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 35 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Tent of meeting

The tent of meeting, or tabernacle, mentioned in previous chapters is constructed in this chapter.
(See: [tabernacle](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 36:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 36:1**UDB:**

¹ Bezalel and Oholiab will take up this work along with all the other gifted men to whom Yahweh had given skills and the understanding to do all the work needed to build up the sacred tent. These men followed all the instructions that Yahweh gave them.

ULB:

¹ So Bezalel and Oholiab and every skilled person to whom Yahweh has given skill and ability to know how to do any work in the construction of the holy place are to do the work according to all that Yahweh has commanded.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Moses continues speaking to the people.

Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:1-2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Oholiab

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

to whom Yahweh has given skill and ability

Here skill and ability are spoken of as if they are something that Yahweh can place inside a person. (See: [Metaphor](#))

according to all that Yahweh has commanded

“just as Yahweh has commanded”

translationWords

- works, deeds, work, acts
- heart, hearts

- [Yahweh](#)
- [know, knowledge, make known](#)
- [holy place](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:2-4**UDB:**

² So the cra called Bezalel and Oholiab and all the other skilled men to whom Yahweh had given special ability and who wanted to do some of the work. ³ Moses gave them all the things that the people had brought as offerings to Yahweh for making the sacred tent. But the people continued bringing more things every morning. ⁴ As a result, the men who were doing various things to make the sacred tent came to Moses, each of them what Yahweh commanded them.

ULB:

² Moses summoned Bezalel, Oholiab, and every skillful person in whose mind Yahweh had given skill, and whose heart stirred within him to come and do the work. ³ They received from Moses all the offerings that the Israelites had brought for constructing the holy place. The people were still bringing freewill offerings every morning to Moses. ⁴ So all the skilled people working on the holy place came from the work that they had been doing.

translationNotes**Bezalel**

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:1-2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Oholiab

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in whose mind Yahweh had given skill

Here “mind” refers to the person who was made skillful by Yahweh. AT: “to whom Yahweh had given skill” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

whose heart stirred within him

Here “heart” refers to the person. The heart that responded to God is spoken of as if it were water stirred up by a storm. AT: “who responded to God” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Moses](#)

- [mind](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [heart, hearts](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [freewill offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ So the craftsmen said to Moses, “The people are bringing more than we need to do the work that Yahweh has commanded us!” ⁶ So Moses gave them a message that others proclaimed throughout the camp, saying “No one should bring anything more as an offering to make the sacred tent!” When the people heard that, they did not bring anything more. ⁷ What they had already brought was enough to do all the work. In fact, it was more than was needed!

ULB:

⁵ The craftsmen told Moses, “The people are bringing much more than enough for doing the work that Yahweh has commanded us to do.” ⁶ So Moses instructed that no one in the camp should bring any more offerings for the construction of the holy place. Then the people stopped bringing these gifts. ⁷ They had more than enough materials for all the work.

translationNotes**The craftsmen told Moses ... commanded us to do.”**

The can be stated as an indirect quote. AT: “The craftsmen told Moses that the people were bringing much more than enough for doing the work that Yahweh has commanded them to do” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

The craftsmen told Moses

“The men working on the sanctuary told Moses”

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ All the most skilled men among the workmen made the sacred tent. They made it from ten strips of fine linen, and they carefully embroidered it using blue, purple, and red woolen yarn to make figures that resembled the winged creatures. Bezalel designed all this. ⁹ Each strip was twelve and four-fifths meters long and one and four-fifths meters wide. ¹⁰ Bezalel and his men sewed five strips together to make one set, and they sewed the other five strips together to make the other set.

ULB:

⁸ So all the craftsmen among them constructed the tabernacle with ten curtains made from fine linen and blue, purple, and scarlet wool with the designs of cherubim. This was the work of Bezalel, the very skilled craftsman. ⁹ The length of each curtain was twenty-eight cubits, the width four cubits. All the curtains were of the same size. ¹⁰ Bezalel joined five curtains to each other, and the other five curtains he also joined to each other.

translationNotes**So all the craftsmen ... joined to each other**

For 38:8-10 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:1-3](#).

ten curtains made from fine linen

These curtains are sheets of cloth woven and sewed together so that they can hang to form a wall or tent.

Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:1-2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [tabernacle](#)
- [cherubim, cherub](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ For each set, Bezalel and his men made loops of blue cloth and fastened them on the outer edge of the strip, at the end of each set. ¹² They put 50 loops on the edge of the first set, and 50 loops on the edge of the second set. ¹³ They made 50 gold fasteners to attach both of the sets together. In that way, the inside of the sacred tent was as though it were one piece.

ULB:

¹¹ He made loops of blue along the outer edge of the end curtain of one set, and he did the same along the outer edge of the end curtain in the second set. ¹² He made fifty loops on the first curtain and fifty loops on the edge of the end curtain in the second set. So the loops were opposite to each another. ¹³ He made fifty gold clasps and joined the curtains together with them so that the tabernacle became united.

translationNotes**He made loops ... became united**

For 36:11-13 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:4-6](#).

loops of blue

loops of blue cloth

curtain

These were large, heavy sections of woven cloth that were used to form the covering and dividing walls of the tabernacle. See how you translated this in [Exodus 26:01](#).

He made

Here “he” refers to Bezalel, but it includes all the men working on the sanctuary.

fifty gold clasps

“50 gold clasps” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- gold
- tabernacle

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:14-17**UDB:**

¹⁴ Bezalel and his men made a cover for the sacred tent from 11 pieces of cloth made from goats' hair. ¹⁵ Each piece of cloth was eighteen and one-third meters long and one and four-fifths meters wide. ¹⁶ They sewed five of these pieces of cloth together to make one set, and they sewed the other six pieces of cloth together to make another set. ¹⁷ They made one hundred loops of blue cloth. They fastened fifty of them to the outer edge of the one set and they fastened fifty to the outer edge of the other set.

ULB:

¹⁴ Bezalel made curtains of goat hair for a tent over the tabernacle; he made eleven of these curtains. ¹⁵ The length of each curtain was thirty cubits, and the width of each curtain was four cubits. Each of the eleven curtains was of the same size. ¹⁶ He joined five curtains to each other and the other six curtains to each other. ¹⁷ He made fifty loops on the edge of the end curtain of the first set, and fifty loops along the edge of the end curtain that joined the second set.

translationNotes**Bezalel made curtains ... the second set**

For 36:14-17 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:7-9](#) and [Exodus 26:10](#).

made eleven

“made 11” (See: [Numbers](#))

thirty cubits

“30 cubits” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

fifty loops

“50 loops” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [goat, kid](#)
- [tent](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:18-19**UDB:**

¹⁸ Bezalel and his men made 50 bronze clasps and joined the two sets together with them. In that way it formed one cover. ¹⁹ They made two more covers for the sacred tent. They made one from rams' skins that had been tanned, and they made the top cover from goatskin leather.

ULB:

¹⁸ Bezalel made fifty bronze clasps to join the tent together so that it might be one piece. ¹⁹ He made for the tabernacle a covering of ram skins dyed red, another covering of fine leather to go above that.

translationNotes**Bezalel made ... to go above that**

For 36:18-19 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:11](#) and [Exodus 26:14](#).

fifty bronze clasps

“50 bronze clasps” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [bronze](#)
- [tent](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:20-23**UDB:**

²⁰ Bezalel and his men made forty-eight frames from acacia wood and set them up to support the covers for the sacred tent. ²¹ Each frame was four and three-fifths meters long and three-quarters of a meter wide. ²² They made two projections at the bottom of each frame. These were for fastening the frames to the bases underneath them. Each frame had these projections. ²³ The skilled workmen made twenty frames for the south side of the sacred tent.

ULB:

²⁰ Bezalel made vertical frames out of acacia wood for the tabernacle. ²¹ The length of each frame was ten cubits, and the width of each frame was one and a half cubits. ²² Each frame had two wooden pegs for joining the frames together. He did this for all the frames of the tabernacle. ²³ He made the frames for the tabernacle in this way: twenty frames for the south side.

translationNotes**Bezalel made ... for the south side**

For 36:20-23 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:15-18](#).

ten cubits ... one and a half cubits

“10 cubits ... 1.5 cubits” (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers and Fractions](#))

two wooden pegs for joining

A wooden peg is a small piece of wood sticking out beyond the end of the board so it can be secured.

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:24-26**UDB:**

²⁴ Bezalel and his men made forty silver bases to go underneath them. Two bases went under each frame. The projections on each frame fit into these bases. ²⁵ Similarly, they made twenty frames for the north side of the sacred tent. ²⁶ They also made forty silver bases for them with two bases under each frame.

ULB:

²⁴ Bezalel made forty silver bases to go under the twenty frames. There were two bases under one frame to join the frames together, and also two bases under each of the other frames to join frames together. ²⁵ For the second side of the tabernacle, on the north side, he made twenty frames ²⁶ and their forty silver bases. There were two bases under the first frame, two bases under the next frame, and so on.

translationNotes**Bezalel made ... and so on**

For 36:24-26 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:19-21](#).

forty silver bases

“40 silver bases” (See: [Numbers](#))

twenty frames

“20 frames” (See: [Numbers](#))

and so on

There will be two bases under each and every frame.

translationWords

- [silver](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:27-28**UDB:**

²⁷ For the rear of the sacred tent, on the west side, Bezalel and his men made six frames. ²⁸ They also made two extra frames, one for each corner of the rear of the sacred tent, to provide extra support.

ULB:

²⁷ For the back of the tabernacle on the west, Bezalel made six frames. ²⁸ He made two frames for the back corners of the tabernacle.

translationNotes**For the back ... of the tabernacle**

For 36:27-28 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:22-23](#).

on the west

on the side that is on the west

for the back corners

for the corners at the rear of the tabernacle

translationWords

- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:29-30

UDB:

²⁹ The two corner frames were separate from each other at the bottom but joined together at the top. At the top of each of the two corner frames, Bezalel and his men fastened a gold ring for holding the crossbar. ³⁰ In that way, for the rear of the sacred tent there were eight frames, and there were 16 bases, two bases under each frame.

ULB:

²⁹ These frames were separate at the bottom, but joined at the top in one ring. He made two of them in this way for the two corners. ³⁰ There were eight frames, together with their silver bases. There were sixteen bases in all, two bases under the first frame, two bases under the next frame, and so on.

translationNotes

These frames ... and so on

For 36:29-30 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:24-25](#).

sixteen bases in all

“16 bases in all” (See: [Numbers](#))

and so on

There will be two bases under each and every frame.

translationWords

- [silver](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:31-34**UDB:**

³¹ Bezalel and his men made 15 crossbars from acacia wood. Five of them were for the frames on the north side of the sacred tent, ³² five for the south side, and five for the frames at the rear of the sacred tent, the west side. ³³ The workmen made crossbars on the north, south, and west sides of the sacred tent and fastened them to the middle of the frames. The two long crossbars extended from one end of the sacred tent to the other, and the crossbar on the west side extended from one side of the sacred tent to the other. ³⁴ The workmen covered the frames with gold and fastened gold rings to the poles. They then put the crossbars into the rings. They also covered the crossbars with gold.

ULB:

³¹ Bezalel made crossbars of acacia wood—five for the frames of the one side of the tabernacle, ³² five crossbars for the frames of the other side of the tabernacle, and five crossbars for the frames for the back side of the tabernacle to the west. ³³ He made the crossbar in the center of the frames, that is, halfway up, to reach from end to end. ³⁴ He covered the frames with gold. He made their rings of gold, for them to serve as holders for the crossbars, and he covered the bars with gold.

translationNotes**Bezalel made ... with gold**

For 36:31-34 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:26-28](#) and [Exodus 26:29](#).

to the west

on the west side

from end to end

from one side of the tabernacle to the other side

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:35-36**UDB:**

³⁵ Bezalel and his men made a curtain from fine white linen. Skilled craftsmen embroidered it with blue, purple, and red woolen yarn, making designs to represent the winged creatures. ³⁶ They hung the curtain from four posts that were made from acacia wood and covered with gold. They set each post in a silver base.

ULB:

³⁵ Bezalel made the curtain of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine linen, with designs of cherubim, the work of a skillful workman. ³⁶ He made for the curtain four pillars of acacia wood, and he covered them with gold. He also made gold hooks for the pillars, and he cast for them four silver bases.

translationNotes**Bezalel made ... silver bases**

For 36:35-36 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:31-32](#).

translationWords

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [acacia](#)
- [gold](#)
- [silver](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 36:37-38**UDB:**

³⁷ Bezalel and his men made a curtain to cover the entrance of the sacred tent. They made it from fine linen, and a skilled weaver embroidered it with blue, purple, and red woolen yarn. ³⁸ To support this curtain, they also made five posts from acacia wood and fastened gold clasps to them. They covered the posts and their rods with gold and made a bronze base for each of those posts.

ULB:

³⁷ He made a hanging for the tent entrance. It was made of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, using fine linen, the work of an embroiderer. ³⁸ He also made the hanging's five pillars with hooks. He covered their tops and their rods with gold. Their five bases were made of bronze.

translationNotes**He made ... made of bronze**

For 36:37-38 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 26:36-37](#).

He made

Here “he” refers to Bezalel and those working for him. “Bezalel and his men made”

a hanging

a curtain

translationWords

- [tent](#)
- [gold](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 36 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 36 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The ark of the covenant

The ark, mentioned in previous chapters, is constructed in this chapter. There are other furnishings of the tabernacle that are also produced in this chapter. (See: [tabernacle](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 37:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 37:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Then Bezalel and his men made the sacred chest from acacia wood. It was one meter long, three-quarters of a meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high. ² They covered it with pure gold inside and outside the chest, and they made a gold border around the top of it. ³ They made four rings from gold and fastened them to the legs of the chest. They put two rings on each side of the chest.

ULB:

¹ Bezalel made the ark of acacia wood. Its length was two and a half cubits; its width was one cubit and a half; and its height was one cubit and a half. ² He covered it inside and out with pure gold and made for it a border of gold around its top. ³ He cast four rings of gold for its four feet, with two rings on one side of it, and two rings on the other side.

translationNotes**Bezalel**

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:1-2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

two and a half cubits ... one cubit and a half

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: “2.5 cubits ... 1.5 cubits” or “115 centimeters ... 69 centimeters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

its four feet

These four pieces of wood that supported the ark are spoken of as if they were human or animal feet. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [acacia](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:4-6**UDB:**

⁴ They made two poles from acacia wood and covered them with gold. ⁵ They put the poles into the rings on the sides of the chest, in order that Levites could carry the chest using the poles. ⁶ They made a lid for the chest. It also was one meter long and three-quarters of a meter wide.

ULB:

⁴ He made poles of acacia wood and covered them with gold. ⁵ He put the poles into the rings on the ark's sides, in order to carry the ark. ⁶ He made an atonement lid of pure gold. Its length was two and a half cubits, and its width was one and a half cubits.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

He made ... and a half cubits

For 37:4-6 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:13-14](#) and [Exodus 25:17](#).

He made

Though "he" refers to Bezalel, "he" may include all of the workers who assisted him.

two and a half cubits ... one and a half cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "2.5 cubits ... 1.5 cubits" or "115 centimeters ... 69 centimeters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [gold](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [atonement lid](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:7-9**UDB:**

⁷ Bezalel and his men made two winged creatures from hammered gold, to put them on the two ends of the chest's lid. ⁸ They put one creature at each end of the chest, and they joined the gold of the creatures to the gold of the lid so that the creatures were one piece with the lid. ⁹ They placed the winged creatures so that their wings touched each other and spread out over the lid. The creatures faced each other, looking toward the lid's center.

ULB:

⁷ Bezalel made two cherubim of hammered gold for the two ends of the atonement lid. ⁸ One cherub was for one end of the atonement lid, and other cherub was for the other end. They were made as one piece with the atonement lid. ⁹ The cherubim spread out their wings upward and overshadowed the atonement lid with them. The cherubim faced one another and looked toward the center of the atonement lid.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

Bezalel made ... the center of the atonement lid

For 37:7-9 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:18](#) and [Exodus 25:19-20](#).

They were made as one piece

This can be stated in active form. AT: "He made them as one piece" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The cherubim spread out their wings upward and overshadowed

Bezalel placed the statues of the cherubim as if they were real cherubim which were spreading their wings and overshadowing the atonement lid. AT: "They placed the winged creatures so that their wings touched each other and spread out over" (See: [Personification](#))

The cherubim faced one another and looked toward

"The faces of the cherubim were towards each other, and they looked toward"

translationWords

- [cherubim, cherub](#)
- [gold](#)
- [atonement lid](#)
- [face](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:10-13**UDB:**

¹⁰ Bezalel and his men made a table from acacia wood. It was one meter long, one-half meter wide, and three-quarters of a meter high. ¹¹ They covered it with pure gold, and they put a gold border around it. ¹² They made a rim all around it, four-fifths of a meter wide. Then they put a gold border around the rim. ¹³ They made four rings from gold and fastened the rings to the four corners of the table, one ring close to each leg of the table.

ULB:

¹⁰ Bezalel made the table of acacia wood. Its length was two cubits, its width was one cubit, and its height was one and a half cubits. ¹¹ He covered it with pure gold and put a border of pure gold around the top. ¹² He made a surrounding frame for it one handbreadth wide, with a surrounding border of gold for the frame. ¹³ He cast for it four rings of gold and attached the rings to the four corners, where the four feet were.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

Bezalel made ... four feet were

For 37:10-13 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:23-24](#) and [Exodus 25:25-26](#).

two cubits ... one cubit ... one and a half cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. AT: "2 cubits ... 1 cubit ... 1.5 cubits" or "92 centimeters ... 46 centimeters ... 69 centimeters" (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Fractions](#))

handbreadth

This was the width of a man's hand with fingers spread out. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

the four feet

These four pieces of wood that supported the ark are spoken of as if they were human or animal feet. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Bezalel and his men fastened the rings to the table near the rim. ¹⁵ They made two poles from acacia wood and covered them with gold. They then inserted the poles for carrying the table into the rings. ¹⁶ They also made from pure gold all the things for the table—the plates, the cups, the jars and the bowls to be used when the priests poured out wine to offer to Yahweh.

ULB:

¹⁴ The rings were attached to the frame to provide places for the poles, in order to carry the table.
¹⁵ He made the poles out of acacia wood and covered them with gold, in order to carry the table.
¹⁶ He made the objects that would be on the table—the dishes, spoons, the bowls, and pitchers to be used to pour out the offerings. He made them out of pure gold.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture

The rings ... out of pure gold

For 37:14-16 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:27](#) and [Exodus 25:28-29](#).

The rings were attached

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Bezalel attached the rings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

dishes, spoons, the bowls, and pitchers to be used to pour out the offerings

It is only the bowls and pitchers that are used to pour out the offerings. AT: "plates and cups, and also the jars and bowls which the priests will use for pouring out the offerings" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [gold](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:17-19**UDB:**

¹⁷ Bezalel and his men made the lampstand from pure gold. Its base and shaft were hammered from one large lump of gold. The cups for holding the oil, the flower buds and the petals that decorated the branches of the lamp, the base, and the shaft were all hammered from one big lump of gold. ¹⁸ There were six branches on the lampstand, three on each side of the shaft. ¹⁹ Each of the six branches had on it three things that looked like almond blossoms. These things also had flower buds and flower petals.

ULB:

¹⁷ He made the lampstand of pure hammered gold. He made the lampstand with its base and shaft. Its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers were all made of one piece with it. ¹⁸ Six branches extended out from its sides—three branches extended from one side, and three branches of the lampstand extended from the other side. ¹⁹ The first branch had three cups made like almond blossoms, with a leafy base and a flower, and three cups made like almond blossoms in the other branch, with a leafy base and a flower. It was the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

General Information:

(See: [Numbers](#))

He made ... from the lampstand

For 37:17-19 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:31-32](#) and [Exodus 25:33](#).

Its cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers were all made of one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. AT: "He made the cups, its leafy bases, and its flowers as one piece with the lampstand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

three cups made like almond blossoms

This can be stated in active form. AT: "he made the 3 cups look like almond blossoms" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

almond blossoms

An almond blossom is a white or pink flower with five petals that grows on an almond tree.

translationWords

- [lampstand](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:20-22**UDB:**

²⁰ On the shaft of the lampstand there were four gold cups that also looked like almond blossoms, each one with flower buds and flower petals. ²¹ On each side, beneath and extending from each branch, there was one flower bud. ²² All these flower buds and branches, along with the shaft, were hammered from one large lump of pure gold.

ULB:

²⁰ On the lampstand itself, the central shaft, there were four cups made like almond blossoms, with their leafy bases and the flowers. ²¹ There was a leafy base under the first pair of branches—made as one piece with it, and a leafy base under the second pair of branches—also made as one piece with it. In the same way there was a leafy base under the third pair of branches, made as one piece with it. It was the same for all six branches extending out from the lampstand. ²² Their leafy bases and branches were all one piece with it, one beaten piece of work of pure gold.

translationNotes**On the lampstand ... of pure gold**

For 37:20-22 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:34](#) and [Exodus 25:35-36](#).

there were four cups made like almond blossoms

This can be stated in active form. AT: “there were 4 cups which Bezalel made to look like almond blossoms” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

made as one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. AT: “which he made as one piece with the lampstand” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [lampstand](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:23-24**UDB:**

²³ Bezalel and his men also made seven small cups for holding oil. They made from pure gold the tongs for removing the burned wicks and the trays in which to put the burned wicks. ²⁴ They used thirty-three kilograms of pure gold to make the lampstand and all the things that the priests would use to take care of it.

ULB:

²³ Bezalel made the lampstand and its seven lamps, its tongs and their trays of pure gold. ²⁴ He made the lampstand and its accessories with one talent of pure gold.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

Bezalel made ... talent of pure gold

For 37:23-24 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 25:37-39](#).

tongs

This is a tool made from two sticks of wood or metal connected at one end and used for picking up objects.

one talent

“33 kilograms” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

translationWords

- [lampstand](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ Bezalel and his men made the altar for burning incense from acacia wood. It was square, one-half meter on each side and one meter high. They made a projection that looked like a horn on each of the top corners. The projections were carved from the same block of wood as the altar. ²⁶ They covered the top and the four sides, including the projections, with pure gold. They put a gold border around the altar near the top.

ULB:

²⁵ Bezalel made the incense altar. He made it with acacia wood. Its length was one cubit, and its width one cubit. It was square, and its height was two cubits. Its horns were made as one piece with it. ²⁶ He covered the incense altar with pure gold—its top, its sides, and its horns. He also made a surrounding border of gold for it.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

Bezalel made ... gold for it

For 37:25-26 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 30:1-2](#) and [Exodus 30:3](#).

cubit

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Its horns were made as one piece with it

This can be stated in active form. AT: "He made the horns as one piece with the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [altar of incense](#)
- [acacia](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 37:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ Bezalel and his men made two gold rings for carrying the altar. Then they attached them to the altar below the border, one on each side of the altar. The poles for carrying the altar fit into those rings. ²⁸ They made those two poles from acacia wood and covered them with gold. ²⁹ They also made the sacred oil for anointing and the pure sweet-smelling incense. A skilled perfumer mixed the incense together.

ULB:

²⁷ He made two golden rings to be attached to it under its border on its two opposite sides. The rings were holders for poles to carry the altar. ²⁸ He made the poles of acacia wood, and he covered them with gold. ²⁹ He made the holy anointing oil and the pure fragrant incense, the work of a perfumer.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

He made two golden rings ... with gold

For 37:27-28 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 30:4](#) and [Exodus 30:5](#)

to be attached to it

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which they attached to the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the work of a perfumer

A perfumer is skilled in mixing spices and oils. See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:25](#).

translationWords

- gold
- altar, altars
- acacia
- holy, holiness
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- oil
- pure, purify, purification

- [incense](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 37 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 37 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The altar

The altar is constructed in this chapter. There are other furnishings of the tabernacle that are also produced in this chapter. (See: [tabernacle](#))

Materials

The list of materials being used is intended to give the reader an understanding of the scale of the tabernacle. It should fill the reader with awe concerning the power of Yahweh. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 38:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 38:1-3**UDB:**

¹ Bezalel and his men made the altar for burning sacrifices out of acacia wood. It was square, two and one-third meters on each side, and it was one and two-fifths meters high. ² They made a projection that looked like a horn on each of the top corners. The projections were carved from the same block of wood from which the altar was made. They covered the whole altar with bronze. ³ They made the pans in which to put the ashes from the animal sacrifices. They also made the shovels for cleaning out the ashes. They made the basins and forks for turning the meat as it cooked, and buckets for carrying hot coals. They made all of these things from bronze.

ULB:

¹ Bezalel made the altar for burnt offerings of acacia wood. It was five cubits long and five cubits wide—a square—and three cubits high. ² He made extensions of its four corners shaped like ox horns. The horns were made of one piece with the altar, and he covered it with bronze. ³ He made all the equipment for the altar—pots for ashes, shovels, basins, meat forks, and firepans. He made all this equipment with bronze.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

Bezalel made ... equipment with bronze

For 38:1-3 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:1-2](#) and [Exodus 27:3](#).

cubits

One cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

The horns were made of one piece

This can be stated in active form. AT: "He made the horns as one piece" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- altar, altars
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- acacia

- [ox, oxen](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ They also made a bronze grate to hold the wood and burning coals. They put the grate under the rim that was around the altar. They made it so that it was inside the altar, halfway down. ⁵ They made bronze rings in which to put the poles for carrying the altar, and fastened them to each of the corners of the altar.

ULB:

⁴ He made a grate for the altar, a network of bronze to be placed under the ledge, halfway down to the bottom. ⁵ He cast four rings for the four corners of the bronze grate, as holders for the poles.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

He made ... for the poles

For 38:4-5 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:4](#) and [Exodus 27:5](#).

to be placed under the ledge

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which they placed under the ledge" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [altar, altars](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ They made the poles from acacia wood and covered them with bronze. ⁷ They put the poles for carrying the altar through the rings on each side of the altar. The altar was like an open box, made from boards of acacia wood.

ULB:

⁶ Bezalel made poles of acacia wood and covered them with bronze. ⁷ He put the poles through the rings on the sides of the altar, to carry it. He made the altar hollow, out of planks.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

Bezalel made ... out of planks

A plank is a long, flat piece of wood that is thicker than a board. See how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:7-8](#).

translationWords

- [acacia](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [altar, altars](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:8**UDB:**

⁸ Bezalel and his men made the washbasin and its base from bronze. The bronze was from the mirrors that belonged to the women who worked at the entrance of the sacred tent.

ULB:

⁸ Bezalel made the large bronze basin with a bronze stand. He made the basin out of mirrors belonging to the women who served at the entrance to the tent of meeting.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

large bronze basin with a bronze stand

The stand supported the bronze basin. See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:18](#).

He made the basin out of mirrors

The bronze came from the mirrors. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: "The bronze for the basin came from the mirrors" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

mirrors

A mirror is a piece of polished metal or glass that reflects an image.

translationWords

- [bronze](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ Around the sacred tent Bezalel and his helpers made a courtyard. To form the courtyard, they made curtains of fine white linen. On the south side, the curtain was forty-five and three-quarters meters long. ¹⁰ To support the curtain, they made twenty bronze posts and twenty bronze bases, one for under each post. To fasten the curtains to the posts, they made silver hooks, and they made metal rods covered with silver.

ULB:

⁹ He also made the courtyard. The hangings on the south side of the courtyard were of fine linen, one hundred cubits long. ¹⁰ The hangings had twenty posts, with twenty bronze bases. There were hooks attached to the posts, as well as silver rods.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

He also made ... as well as silver rods

For 38:9-10 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:9-10](#).

one hundred ... twenty

"100 ... 20" (See: [Numbers](#))

cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [courtyard, court](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [silver](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ They made the same kind of curtains, posts, bases and hooks for the north side of the courtyard.

¹² On the west side of the courtyard, they made a curtain twenty-three meters long. They also made ten posts to support the curtains and ten bases, with silver hooks and metal rods covered with silver.

ULB:

¹¹ Likewise along the north side, there were hangings one hundred cubits long with twenty posts, twenty bronze bases, hooks attached to the posts, and silver rods. ¹² The hangings of the west side were fifty cubits long, with ten posts and bases. The hooks and rods of the posts were silver.

translationNotes**Likewise along the north side ... posts were silver**

For 38:11-12 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:11-12](#).

one hundred ... twenty ... fifty ... ten

“100 ... 20 ... 50 ... 10” (See: [Numbers](#))

cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [bronze](#)
- [silver](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:13-16**UDB:**

¹³ On the east side, where the entrance is, the courtyard was twenty-three meters wide. ¹⁴ On one side of the entrance, Bezalel and his men made a curtain about seven meters wide with three posts and three bases. ¹⁵ On the other side of the entrance, they made a curtain about seven meters wide with three posts and three bases. ¹⁶ They made all the curtains around the courtyard from fine linen.

ULB:

¹³ The courtyard was also fifty cubits long on the east side. ¹⁴ The hangings for one side of the entrance were fifteen cubits long. They had three posts with three bases. ¹⁵ On the other side of the entrance of the court were also hangings fifteen cubits long, with three posts and three bases. ¹⁶ All the hangings around the courtyard were made of fine linen.

translationNotes**The courtyard**

For 38:13-16 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:13](#) and [Exodus 27:14-16](#).

fifty ... fifteen ... three

“50 ... 15 ... 3” (See: [Numbers](#))

cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

All the hangings around the courtyard were made of fine linen

This can be stated in active form. AT: “Bezalel and the workers made all the hangings around the courtyard with fine linen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [courtyard, court](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:17-20**UDB:**

¹⁷ All the posts around the courtyard were made of bronze, but they covered the tops with silver. They connected the posts with metal rods that they covered with silver. They also made the clasps and hooks with silver. ¹⁸ For the entrance of the courtyard, they made a curtain from fine white linen, and a skilled weaver embroidered it with blue, purple, and red woolen yarn. The curtain was nine meters long and two and one-third meters high, just like the other curtains around the courtyard. ¹⁹ All the curtains were made of fine linen. They were supported by four posts, and under each post was a base made of bronze. All the posts around the courtyard were connected with metal rods covered with silver. The clasps were made of silver, and the tops of the posts were covered with silver. ²⁰ All the tent pegs to support the sacred tent and the curtains around the courtyard were made of bronze.

ULB:

¹⁷ The bases for the posts were made of bronze. The hooks and rods for the posts were made of silver, and the covering for the tops of the posts was also made of silver. All the courtyard posts were covered with silver. ¹⁸ The curtain at the courtyard gate was twenty cubits long. The curtain was made of blue, purple, and scarlet linen, fine twined linen, and was twenty cubits long. It was twenty cubits in length and five cubits in height, like the courtyard curtains. ¹⁹ It had four bronze bases and silver hooks. The covering for their tops and its rods were made of silver. ²⁰ All the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard were made of bronze.

translationNotes**The bases ... courtyard were made of bronze**

For 38:17-20, see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 27:16](#) and [Exodus 27:17-19](#).

The bases for the posts were made of bronze

This can be stated in active form. AT: "Bezalel and the workers made the bases for the posts out of bronze" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The hooks and rods for the posts were made of silver, and the covering for the tops of the posts was also made of silver

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They made the hooks, the rods for the posts, and the covering for the tops of the posts out of silver" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

All the courtyard posts were covered with silver

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They covered the courtyard posts with silver” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

twenty ... five ... four

“20 ... 5 ... 4” (See: [Numbers](#))

cubits

A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

The curtain was made of

This can be stated in active form. “They made the curtain out of” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The covering for their tops and its rods were made of silver

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They made the covering for the tops of the posts and their rods out of silver” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

All the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard were made of bronze

This can be stated in active form. AT: “They made all of the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard out of bronze” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [bronze](#)
- [silver](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [tent](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ Here is a list of the amounts of metal used to make the sacred tent. Moses told some men from the tribe of Levi to count all the materials used and write down the amounts. Ithamar son of Aaron the priest, supervised those men. ²² Bezalel son of Uri and grandson of Hur made all the things that Yahweh had commanded Moses to make. ²³ Bezalel's helper was Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan. Oholiab was a skilled engraver who made artistic things. He embroidered designs using blue, purple, and red woolen yarn, and linen.

ULB:

²¹ This is the inventory of the tabernacle, the tabernacle of the covenant decrees, as it was taken following Moses' instructions. It was the work of the Levites under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest. ²² Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah, made everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses. ²³ Oholiab son of Ahisamak, from the tribe of Dan, worked with Bezalel as an engraver, as a skillful workman, and as an embroiderer in blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and in fine linen.

translationNotes**Connecting Statement:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

General Information:

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

as it was taken

This can be stated in active form. AT: "which Moses instructed the Levites to write down" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Ithamar

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Exodus 6:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bezalel son of Uri son of Hur

"Bezalel" and "uri" are the name of men. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:1-2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Yahweh had commanded Moses

“everything that Yahweh told Moses to do”

Oholiab son of Ahisamak

“Oholiab” and “Ahisamak” are names of men. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:6](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

an engraver, as a skillful workman, and as an embroiderer

“as a skilled engraver and embroiderer”

translationWords

- [tabernacle](#)
- [covenant, covenants](#)
- [decree](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [Levite, Levi](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [tribe](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Dan](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:24-26**UDB:**

²⁴ All the gold that was used to make the sacred tent weighed 965 kilograms. They used the official standard when they weighed the gold. ²⁵ All the silver that the people contributed when the leaders took the census weighed about 3,320 kilograms. They also used the official standard when they weighed the silver. ²⁶ All the men who were at least twenty years old were counted, and they each paid the required amount. That was a total of 603,550 men.

ULB:

²⁴ All the gold that was used for the project, in all the work connected with the holy place—the gold from the wave offering—was twenty-nine talents and 730 shekels, measured by the standard of the sanctuary shekel. ²⁵ The silver given by the community weighed one hundred talents and 1,775 shekels, according to the sanctuary shekel, ²⁶ or one beka per man, which is half a shekel, measured by the sanctuary shekel. This figure was reached on the basis of every person who was counted in the census, those twenty years old and older—603,550 men in all.

translationNotes**All the gold that was used for the project**

This can be stated in active form. AT: “All the gold that the people used for the project” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

twenty-nine talents ... one hundred talents

“29 talents ... 100 talents.” A talent is about 33 kilograms. AT: “29 talents ... 100 talents” or “about 960 kilograms ... about 330 kilograms” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

730 shekels ... 1,775 shekels

“Seven hundred and thirty shekels ... one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five shekels.” A shekel is 11 grams. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

measured by the standard of the sanctuary shekel

There were evidently shekels of more than one weight at the time. This specified which one was to be used. See how you translated this in [Exodus 30:13](#). (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

The silver given by the community

This can be stated in active form. AT: “The silver which the community gave” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

one beka

A beka is 1/2 a shekel. (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

half a shekel

A shekel is 11 grams. AT: “1/2 a shekel” or “five and a half grams” or “5 1/2 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Fractions](#))

This figure was reached on the basis of every person who was counted in the census

Every man who was 20 years old or older was included in the census and was required to give half a shekel.

twenty years old

“20 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

translationWords

- gold
- works, deeds, work, acts
- holy place
- sacrifice, offering
- silver
- census
- year

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ They used 33 kilograms of silver for making each of the one hundred bases to put under the posts to support the curtains of the sacred tent, for a total of 3,300 kilograms in all. ²⁸ Bezalel and his helpers used the twenty kilograms of silver that was not used for the bases to make the rods and the hooks for the posts and to cover the tops of the posts. ²⁹ The bronze that the people contributed weighed about 2,300 kilograms.

ULB:

²⁷ One hundred talents of silver were cast for the bases of the holy place and the curtain's bases—one hundred bases, one talent for each base. ²⁸ With the remaining 1,775 shekels of silver, Bezalel made the hooks for the posts, covered the tops of the posts, and made the rods for them. ²⁹ The bronze from wave offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.

translationNotes**One hundred talents of silver were cast**

A talent is about 33 kilograms. AT: “The workers cast 100 talents of silver” or “The workers cast 3,300 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

One hundred talents

“100 talents” (See: [Numbers](#))

1,775 shekels

“one thousand seven hundred and seventy-five shekels” (See: [Numbers](#))

shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:1-2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

“70 talents and two thousand four hundred shekels.” This would be about 2,300 kilograms. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

translationWords

- [silver](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [sacrifice, offering](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 38:30-31**UDB:**

³⁰ With the bronze Bezalel and his helpers made the bases to support the posts at the entrance of the sacred tent. They also made the altar for burning sacrifices with its grate and the tools to be used with it, ³¹ the bases for the posts that supported the curtains that surrounded the courtyard, the bases for the entrance to the courtyard, and the pegs for the sacred tent and for the curtains around the courtyard.

ULB:

³⁰ With this he made the bases for the entrance to the tent of meeting, the bronze altar, its bronze grate, all the equipment for the altar, ³¹ the bases for the courtyard, the bases for the courtyard entrance, all the tent pegs for the tabernacle, and all the tent pegs for the courtyard.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to build the tabernacle and furniture.

grate

This is a frame of crossed bars for holding wood when burning. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:04](#).

tent pegs

These are sharp bronze stakes that were used to secure the corners of a tent to the ground. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:19](#).

translationWords

- [tent of meeting](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [tent](#)
- [tabernacle](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 38 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 38 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The holy clothing

The special, holy clothing mentioned in previous chapters is produced in this chapter to the correct specifications. (See: [holy](#), [holiness](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 39:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 39:1**UDB:**

¹ Bezalel, Oholiab, and the other skilled workmen made the beautiful clothes for Aaron to wear while he did his work as a priest in the holy place. They made them from blue, purple, and red woolen cloth, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

ULB:

¹ With the blue, purple, and scarlet wool, they made finely-woven garments for service in the holy place. They made Aaron's garments for the holy place, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew shifts to making the priestly garments.

they made

The word "they" refers to Bezalel, Oholiab, and the other workmen.

as Yahweh had commanded Moses

"just as Yahweh told Moses to do"

translationWords

- [serve, service](#)
- [holy place](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:2-3**UDB:**

² They made the sacred apron from fine white linen and from blue, purple, and red woolen cloth. ³ They hammered some thin sheets of gold and cut them into thin strips that they embroidered into the fine linen and into the blue, purple, and red cloth.

ULB:

² Bezalel made the ephod of gold, of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine twined linen. ³ They hammered gold sheets and cut them into wires, to work them into the blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and into the fine linen, the work of a skillful workman.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:1-2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- [ephod](#)
- [gold](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ The sacred apron had two shoulder straps, to join the front part to the back part at its sides. ⁵ A carefully woven belt, which was made from the same materials as the sacred apron, was sewn onto the sacred apron. This was made exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

ULB:

⁴ They made shoulder pieces for the ephod, attached at its two upper corners. ⁵ Its finely-woven waistband was like the ephod; it was made of one piece with the ephod, made of fine twined linen that was gold, blue, purple, and scarlet, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

it was made of one piece with the ephod, made of fine twined linen

This can be stated in active form. AT: "they made it as one piece with the ephod with fine twisted linen" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

as Yahweh had commanded Moses

"just as Yahweh told Moses to do." See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 39:01](#).

translationWords

- [ephod](#)
- [gold](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Bezalel and his men cut two onyx stones and enclosed them in a tiny frame, and a skilled gem cutter engraved on the stones the names of the twelve sons of Jacob. ⁷ They fastened the stones to the shoulder straps of the sacred apron to represent the twelve tribes of Israel, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

ULB:

⁶ They crafted the onyx stones, enclosed in settings of gold, set with engravings as on a signet, and engraved with the names of Israel's twelve sons. ⁷ Bezalel put them on the shoulder pieces of the ephod, as stones to remind Yahweh of Israel's twelve sons, as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

signet

This was an engraved stone that was used to stamp a design in a wax seal. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:11](#).

twelve sons

"12 sons" (See: [Numbers](#))

as Yahweh had commanded Moses

"just as Yahweh told Moses to do." See how you translated this phrase in [Exodus 39:01](#).

translationWords

- [gold](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [son, sons](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ They made the sacred chest pouch with the same materials as the sacred apron and embroidered it in the same way. ⁹ It was square, and the material was folded double, so that it was twenty-three centimeters on each side.

ULB:

⁸ He made the breastpiece, the work of a skillful workman, fashioned like the ephod. He made it of gold, of blue, purple, and scarlet wool, and of fine linen. ⁹ It was square. They folded the breastpiece double. It was one span long and one span wide.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

He made

“Bezalel made” or “Bezalel and the workers made”

span

A span is 23 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

translationWords

- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:10-13**UDB:**

¹⁰ They fastened four rows of valuable stones onto the pouch. In the first row, they put a red ruby, a yellow topaz, and a red garnet. ¹¹ In the second row, they put a green emerald, a blue sapphire, and a white diamond. ¹² In the third row they put a red jacinth, a white agate, and a purple amethyst. ¹³ In the fourth row, they put a yellow beryl, a red carnelian, and a green jasper. They put tiny gold frames around each of the stones.

ULB:

¹⁰ They set in it four rows of precious stones. The first row had a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. ¹¹ The second row had an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. ¹² The third row had a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. ¹³ The fourth row had a beryl, an onyx, and a jasper. The stones were mounted in gold settings.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

They set in it

"The workers set in the breastpiece"

ruby ... jasper

Some languages may not have words for each of these stones. The important fact is that they were valuable and different from one another. See how you translated these in [Exodus 28:17-20](#). (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

The stones were mounted in gold settings

This can be stated in active form. AT: "They mounted the stones in gold settings" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- gold

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ On each of the twelve stones they engraved the name of one of the sons of Jacob, to represent one of the twelve tribes of Israel. ¹⁵ They made two chains from pure gold and braided them like cords, to attach the sacred pouch to the sacred apron. ¹⁶ They made two gold rings, and they attached them to the upper corners of the sacred pouch.

ULB:

¹⁴ The stones were arranged by the names of Israel's twelve sons, each in order by name. They were like the engraving on a signet ring, each name standing for one of the twelve tribes. ¹⁵ On the breastpiece they made chains like cords, braided work of pure gold. ¹⁶ They made two settings of gold and two gold rings, and they attached the two rings to the two corners of the breastpiece.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

The stones were arranged

This can be stated in active form. AT: "The workers arranged the stones" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [name, names, named](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [twelve tribes of Israel](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:17-18**UDB:**

¹⁷ They fastened one end of each gold chain to a ring. ¹⁸ They fastened the other end of each chain to one of the two settings that enclosed the stones and then attached the sacred pouch to the shoulder straps of the sacred apron.

ULB:

¹⁷ They put the two braided chains of gold in the two rings at the corners of the breastpiece. ¹⁸ They attached the other two ends of the braided chains to the two settings. They attached them to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at its front.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

two braided chains

“chains that are made of pure gold and are braided like cords.” See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:14](#).

translationWords

- gold
- breastplate, breastpiece
- ephod

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ Then they made two more gold rings and attached them to the lower corners of the sacred pouch, on the inside edges, next to the sacred apron. ²⁰ They made two more gold rings and attached them to the lower part of the front of the shoulder straps, near to where the shoulder straps were joined to the sacred apron, just above the carefully woven sash.

ULB:

¹⁹ They made two rings of gold and put them on the two other corners of the breastpiece, on the edge next to the inner border. ²⁰ They made two more gold rings and attached them to the bottom of the two shoulder pieces of the front of the ephod, close to its seam above the finely-woven waistband of the ephod.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments that were commanded in [Exodus 28:26](#) and [Exodus 28:27](#).

finely-woven waistband

This was a cloth belt made from narrow linen threads that someone twisted together to make a stronger thread. See how you translated this in [Exodus 28:8](#).

translationWords

- [gold](#)
- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [ephod](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:21**UDB:**

²¹ They tied the rings on the sacred pouch to the rings on the sacred apron with a blue cord, so that the sacred pouch was above the sash and would not come loose from the sacred apron. They did these things just as Yahweh had instructed Moses to do.

ULB:

²¹ They tied the breastpiece by its rings to the ephod's rings with a blue cord, so that it might be attached just above the ephod's finely-woven waistband. This was so that the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod. This was done as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments as commanded in [Exodus 28:28](#).

so that it might be attached

This can be stated in active form. AT: "so they could attach it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod

The double negative can be translated as a positive. AT: "the breastpiece would stay attached to the ephod" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

translationWords

- [breastplate, breastpiece](#)
- [ephod](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:22-24

UDB:

²² They made the robe that was to be worn underneath the priest's sacred apron; they used only blue cloth. ²³ It had an opening through which the priest would put his head. They sewed a border around this opening to prevent the material from tearing. ²⁴ At the lower edge on the robe they fastened decorations that resembled pomegranate fruit. The decorations were woven from blue, purple, and red woolen yarn.

ULB:

²² Bezalel made the robe of the ephod completely of purple fabric, the work of a weaver. ²³ It had an opening for the head in the middle. The opening had a woven edge round about so that it did not tear. ²⁴ On the bottom hem, they made pomegranates of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn and of fine linen.

translationNotes

General Information:

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments as commanded in [Exodus 28:31-32](#) and [Exodus 28:33](#).

Bezalel

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Exodus 31:1-2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

translationWords

- robe
- ephod

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:25-26**UDB:**

²⁵ Between each of these decorations, they fastened a tiny bell made from pure gold ²⁶ for Aaron to wear while he did his work as a priest. They made all these things exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

ULB:

²⁵ They made bells of pure gold, and they put the bells between the pomegranates all around on the bottom edge the robe, between the pomegranates— ²⁶ a bell and a pomegranate, a bell and a pomegranate—on the edge of the robe for Aaron to serve in. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments as commanded in [Exodus 28:34-35](#).

bells of pure gold

These were tiny bells.

a bell and a pomegranate, a bell and a pomegranate

This is how the pattern is supposed to repeat all along the bottom edge of the robe.

translationWords

- pure, purify, purification
- gold
- robe
- Aaron
- serve, service
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments
- Moses

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:27-29**UDB:**

²⁷ They wove long-sleeved tunics from fine linen for Aaron and his sons. ²⁸ They also made a turban of fine linen for Aaron to wear around his head. They made the caps and the undershorts for Aaron's sons from fine linen. ²⁹ They made the embroidered sash for Aaron from fine linen and from blue, purple, and red woolen cloth, and they embroidered designs on it using blue, purple, and red woolen yarn, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

ULB:

²⁷ They made the coats of fine linen for Aaron and for his sons. ²⁸ They made the turban of fine linen, the ornate head bands of fine linen, the linen undergarments of fine linen, ²⁹ and the sash of fine linen and of blue, purple, and scarlet yarn, the work of an embroiderer. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to make the priestly garments.

They made ... commanded Moses

For 39:27-29 see how you translated many of these words in [Exodus 28:39](#) and [Exodus 28:40](#) and [Exodus 28:42](#).

turban

This is a head covering worn by men made of a long strip of cloth wound around the head.

undergarments

This is clothing worn under the outer clothes, next to the skin. AT: "underwear" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

sash

This is a long piece of cloth worn over the shoulder or around the waist.

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:30-31

UDB:

³⁰ They also made the tiny ornament of pure gold and had a skilled workman engrave on it the words, “Dedicated to Yahweh.” ³¹ They fastened this to the front of the turban by a blue cord, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

ULB:

³⁰ They made the plate of the holy crown of pure gold; they engraved on it, like the engraving on a signet, “Holy to Yahweh.” ³¹ They attached to the turban a blue cord to the top of the turban. This was as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

translationNotes

General Information:

Bezalel’s work crew continues to make the priestly garments as commanded in [Exodus 28:36-37](#).

holy crown

This was an engraved crown made of pure gold. See how you translated this in [Exodus 29:6](#).

translationWords

- [holy, holiness](#)
- [crown, to crown](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:32-35**UDB:**

³² Finally, they finished all the work of making the sacred tent and brought everything to Moses. They had made them exactly as Yahweh had commanded them to. ³³ They brought to him the sacred tent and all the things that were used with it—the hooks, the frames, the crossbars, the posts and their bases; ³⁴ the coverings for the sacred tent that were made of tanned rams' skins and goatskins; the curtains; ³⁵ the sacred chest that contained the stone slabs on which the commandments were written and the lid for the chest.

ULB:

³² So the work on the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, was finished. The people of Israel did everything. They followed all the instructions that Yahweh had given to Moses. ³³ They brought the tabernacle to Moses—the tent and all its equipment, its clasps, frames, bars, posts, and bases; ³⁴ the covering of ram skins dyed red, the covering of sea cow leather, and the curtain to conceal ³⁵ the ark of the testimony, as well as the poles and the atonement lid.

translationNotes**General Information:**

The Israelites finish making the things Yahweh commanded in [Exodus 35:4-9](#) and [Exodus 35:10-12](#).

So the work on the tabernacle, the tent of meeting, was finished. The people of Israel did everything

The “tabernacle” and “tent of meeting” are the same thing. This can be stated in active form. AT: “So the people of Israel finished all of the work on the tabernacle” (See: [Doublet](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

clasps

The clasps fit into the loops to hold the curtains together. See how you translated these in [Exodus 26:4-6](#).

bases

These are heavy objects that rest on the ground and keep the object attached to them from moving. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:31](#).

atonement lid

This is the lid that sits on top of the ark where the atonement offering was made. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:17](#).

translationWords

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [tent](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [atonement lid](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:36-39**UDB:**

³⁶ The workers also finished these items for the sacred tent: The table with all the things to be used with it and the bread to display before God; ³⁷ the lampstand made of pure gold with all its lamps and the things that were used to take care of it, and the oil for the lamps; ³⁸ the golden altar for burning incense, the oil for anointing, the sweet-smelling incense, and the curtain for the entrance to the sacred tent; ³⁹ the bronze altar for burning sacrifices with its bronze grating, the poles for carrying it, and all the other things that were used with it, as well as the washbasin and its base.

ULB:

³⁶ They brought the table, all its utensils, and the bread of the presence; ³⁷ the lampstand of pure gold and its lamps in a row, with its accessories and the oil for the lamps; ³⁸ the golden altar, the anointing oil and the fragrant incense; the hanging for the tabernacle entrance; ³⁹ the bronze altar with its bronze grate and its poles and utensil and the large basin with its base.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to present all that they made to Moses.

bread of the presence

This bread represented the presence of God. See how you translated this in [Exodus 25:30](#).

grate

This is a frame of crossed bars that held wood while burning. See how you translated this in [Exodus 27:4](#).

translationWords

- [bread](#)
- [lampstand](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [gold](#)
- [lamp](#)
- [oil](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)

- [incense](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [bronze](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:40-41**UDB:**

⁴⁰ They also brought the curtains that would surround the courtyard, the posts and bases that supported them, the curtain for the entrance to the courtyard and its ropes, the tent pegs, and all the other things that would be used in the sacred tent; ⁴¹ the beautiful sacred clothes for Aaron and his sons to wear when they did their work in the holy place, and the clothes for his sons to wear as they did their work as priests.

ULB:

⁴⁰ They brought the hangings for the courtyard with its posts and bases, and the curtain for the courtyard entrance; its ropes and tent pegs; and all the equipment for the service of the tabernacle, the tent of meeting. ⁴¹ They brought the fine woven garments for serving in the holy place, the holy garments for Aaron the priest and his sons, for them to serve as priests.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Bezalel's work crew continues to present all that they made to Moses.

They brought

"The people of Israel brought"

the tabernacle, the tent of meeting

These refer to the same place.

translationWords

- courtyard, court
- tent
- tabernacle
- tent of meeting
- holy place
- Aaron
- priest, priests, priesthood

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 39:42-43**UDB:**

⁴² The people of Israel had done all this work exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses. ⁴³ Then Moses saw all the work that they had done. Truly, they had done everything exactly as Yahweh had commanded that it should be done. Then Moses blessed the workmen.

ULB:

⁴² Thus the people of Israel did all the work as Yahweh had commanded Moses. ⁴³ Moses examined all the work, and, behold, they had done it. As Yahweh had commanded, in that way they did it. Then Moses blessed them.

translationNotes**Thus the people**

“And so the people”

behold

The word “behold” here draws attention to the information that follows.

As Yahweh had commanded, in that way they did it

“They did it in the way that Yahweh had commanded them”

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 39 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 39 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is repetitive and should read as a series of instructions. It is repeated as well to show that Moses was obedient to every detail of Yahweh's command.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Yahweh's glory filled the tabernacle"

This phrase indicates that Yahweh began to dwell within the tabernacle, among Israel, in a special way. (See: [glory](#), [glorious](#) and [tabernacle](#))

Links:

- [Exodus 40:01 Notes](#)

Exodus 40:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Then Yahweh said to Moses, ² "Next year, on the first day of the first month, tell the people to set up the sacred tent.

ULB:

¹ Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, ² "On the first day of the first month of the new year you must set up the tabernacle, the tent of meeting.

translationNotes**the first day of the first month of the new year**

The new year marks the time when God rescued his people from Egypt. This happens around the middle of March on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [day](#)
- [year](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:3-4**UDB:**

³ Put inside it the sacred chest that contains the stone slabs on which are engraved the Ten Commandments, and hang its curtain in front of it. ⁴ Bring the table into the sacred tent, and place on it all the things that they made for it. Then bring in the lampstand and set the lamps in it.

ULB:

³ You must place the ark of the testimony in it, and you must shield the ark with the curtain. ⁴ You must bring in the table and set in order the things that belong on it. Then you must bring in the lampstand and set up the lamps.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

place the ark of the testimony in it

“place the ark of the covenant decrees in the sacred chest”

shield the ark with the curtain

“put the ark behind the curtain”

translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [lampstand](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ Put the gold altar for burning incense in front of the sacred chest, and set up the curtain at the entrance of the sacred tent. ⁶ Put the altar for burning sacrifices in front of the sacred tent. ⁷ Put the washbasin between the sacred tent and the altar, and fill it with water.

ULB:

⁵ You must put the golden incense altar before the ark of the testimony, and you must put the curtain at the entrance to the tabernacle. ⁶ You must put the altar for burnt offerings in front of the entrance to the tabernacle, the tent of meeting. ⁷ You must put the large basin between the tent of meeting and the altar and you must put water in it.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

ark of the testimony

This refers to the “sacred chest.”

translationWords

- [gold](#)
- [altar of incense](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:8-11**UDB:**

⁸ Hang the curtains around the courtyard, and also hang up the curtain that your workmen made for the entrance. ⁹ Then take the oil for anointing and put it on the sacred tent and everything that is in it, to set it all apart for me. Then it will be very special, reserved only for me. ¹⁰ Also put some of the oil on the altar on which the priests will burn the sacrifices that they will offer to me. Also put some of the oil on all the things that they will use at the altar, and set them apart for me. Then they will be special, reserved only for me. ¹¹ Also put some of the oil on the washbasin and its base, to set them apart for me.

ULB:

⁸ You must set up the courtyard around it, and you must hang up the curtain at the courtyard entrance. ⁹ You must take the anointing oil and anoint the tabernacle and everything that is in it. You must set it apart and all its furnishings to me; then it will be holy. ¹⁰ You must anoint the altar for burnt offerings and all its utensils. You must set apart the altar to me and it will become very holy to me. ¹¹ You must anoint the bronze basin and its base and set it apart to me.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues to tell Moses what the people must do.

all its furnishings

“all the things that are a part of it”

translationWords

- courtyard, court
- anoint, anointed, anointing
- oil
- tabernacle
- set apart
- holy, holiness
- altar, altars
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- bronze

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:12-13**UDB:**

¹² Then bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the sacred tent, and wash them with water. ¹³ Then set Aaron apart for me by putting his special clothes on him and by pouring oil on him. Do this so he may serve me as a priest who comes before me.

ULB:

¹² You are to bring Aaron and his sons to the entrance of the tent of meeting and you must wash them with water. ¹³ You are to clothe Aaron with the garments that are set apart to me, anoint him and set him apart so that he may serve as my priest.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

You are to bring

Moses will do these things himself.

that are set apart to me

This can be stated in active form. AT: "that you have set apart to me" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [Aaron](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [clothe, clothed](#)
- [set apart](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:14-16**UDB:**

¹⁴ Also bring Aaron's sons and put their special tunics on them; ¹⁵ then pour oil on them just as you did on their father. Do this so that they also may worship me as priests. By pouring oil on them, you will cause them and their descendants to be priests throughout all their future generations."

¹⁶ Moses and the men working with him did all these things exactly as Yahweh had commanded him to do.

ULB:

¹⁴ You are to bring his sons and clothe them with coats. ¹⁵ You must anoint them as you anointed their father so that they may serve me as priests. Their anointing will make for them a permanent priesthood throughout their people's generations." ¹⁶ This is what Moses did; he followed all that Yahweh had commanded him. He did all these things.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

throughout their people's generations

"through all the generations of their descendants." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Exodus 12:14](#).

translationWords

- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [serve, service](#)
- [priest, priests, priesthood](#)
- [generation](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:17-20**UDB:**

¹⁷ On the first day of the first month of the next year, the year after the people had come out of Egypt, the people set up the sacred tent. ¹⁸ They did what Moses told them to do; they set up the sacred tent and its bases; they set up the frames, attached the crossbars, and put up the posts for the curtains. ¹⁹ Then they spread out the coverings over the sacred tent, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses. ²⁰ Then Moses took the two stone slabs on which the commandments were written and put them into the sacred chest. He caused the workmen to put the carrying poles into the rings on the chest and put the lid on top of it.

ULB:

¹⁷ So the tabernacle was set up on the first day of the first month in the second year. ¹⁸ Moses set up the tabernacle, put its bases in place, set up its frames, attached its bars, and set up its pillars and posts. ¹⁹ He spread the covering over the tabernacle and put tent over it, as Yahweh had commanded him. ²⁰ He took the covenant decrees and put them into the ark. He also placed the poles on the ark and put the atonement lid on it.

translationNotes**So the tabernacle was set up**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "So the people set up the tabernacle" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the first day of the first month

This refers to exactly one year after God rescued his people from Egypt. This happens around the middle of March on Western calendars. See how you translated this in [Exodus 40:2](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the second year

This is the second year after Yahweh brought his people out of Egypt. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Moses set up

Moses was the leader. The people helped him set up the tabernacle. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

posts

a strong piece of wood set upright and used as a support

translationWords

- [tabernacle](#)
- [year](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [tent](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [atonement lid](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:21-23**UDB:**

²¹ Then Moses took the chest into the holy place inside the sacred tent and hung the curtain. After he did that, the people who were outside could not see the chest. He did all this exactly as Yahweh had commanded him. ²² He caused the workmen to set the table inside the sacred tent, on the north side, outside the curtain. ²³ They placed on the table the bread in order to display it before Yahweh, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses to do.

ULB:

²¹ He brought the ark into the tabernacle. He set up the curtain for it to shield the ark of the testimony, as Yahweh had commanded him. ²² He put the table into the tent of meeting, on the north side of the tabernacle, outside the curtain. ²³ He placed the bread in order on the table before Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded him.

translationNotes**He brought**

Moses was the leader. He had workers helping him.

for it to shield

“in front of”

translationWords

- [ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [bread](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:24-25**UDB:**

²⁴ Moses's workmen set the lampstand inside the sacred tent, on the south side, on the other side of the table. ²⁵ Then they set the lamps on the lampstand in Yahweh's presence, exactly as Yahweh had commanded.

ULB:

²⁴ He put the lampstand into the tent of meeting, across from the table, on the south side of the tabernacle. ²⁵ He lit the lamps before Yahweh, as Yahweh had commanded him.

translationNotes**He put the lampstand into the tent of meeting**

Moses instructed his workers to move the lampstand. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: "Moses' workmen set the lampstand inside the sacred tent" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [lampstand](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:26-27**UDB:**

²⁶ Moses's workmen set the gold altar for burning incense inside the sacred tent, in front of the curtain that separated the holy place from the very holy place, ²⁷ and they burned some sweet-smelling incense on it, exactly as Yahweh had commanded Moses to do.

ULB:

²⁶ He put the golden incense altar into the tent of meeting in front of the curtain. ²⁷ He burned fragrant incense on it, as Yahweh had commanded him.

translationNotes**in front of the curtain**

This curtain separated the holy place from the very holy place. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: "in front of the curtain that separated the holy place from the very holy place" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- gold
- altar of incense
- tent of meeting
- Yahweh
- command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:31-33**UDB:**

³¹⁻³² Every time Moses, Aaron, or Aaron's sons went into the sacred tent or went up to the altar, they washed their hands and feet, exactly as Yahweh had commanded them through Moses to do.

³³ Moses's workmen hung up the curtains that surrounded the courtyard and the altar, and they hung the curtain at the entrance to the courtyard. In this way Moses caused the people to complete all that work.

ULB:

³¹ Moses, Aaron, and his sons washed their hands and their feet from the basin ³² whenever they would go into the tent of meeting and whenever they would go up to the altar. They washed themselves, as Yahweh had commanded Moses. ³³ Moses set up the courtyard around the tabernacle and the altar. He set up the curtain at the courtyard entrance. In this way, Moses finished the work.

translationNotes**washed their hands and their feet from the basin**

They washed with water from the basin. This can be stated clearly in the translation. AT: "washed their hands and their feet with water from the basin" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

In this way

"And so"

translationWords

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [tent of meeting](#)
- [altar, altars](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments](#)
- [courtyard, court](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:34-35**UDB:**

³⁴ Then the tall cloud covered the sacred tent, and Yahweh's power and brilliant light filled the sacred tent. ³⁵ Because the light was very bright, Moses was not able to enter the sacred tent.

ULB:

³⁴ Then the cloud covered the tent of meeting, and Yahweh's glory filled the tabernacle. ³⁵ Moses was not able to enter the tent of meeting because the cloud had settled on it, and because Yahweh's glory filled the tabernacle.

translationNotes**Yahweh's glory filled**

"Yahweh's awesome presence filled"

translationWords

- [tent of meeting](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [glory, glorious](#)
- [tabernacle](#)
- [Moses](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

Exodus 40:36-38**UDB:**

³⁶ From that day, whenever the people of Israel wanted to move to another place, they went only when the cloud rose from above the sacred tent and moved on. ³⁷ If the cloud did not rise, they stayed where they were and waited for the cloud to rise and move. ³⁸ Wherever they traveled, the cloud that showed Yahweh's presence was above the sacred tent during the day, and a bright fire was over it at night. All the people of Israel could see it at any time, for as long as they were traveling to the land that God had promised to give them.

ULB:

³⁶ Whenever the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle, the people of Israel would set out on their journey. ³⁷ But if the cloud did not rise up from the tabernacle, then the people would not travel. They would stay until the day that it was lifted up. ³⁸ For Yahweh's cloud was over the tabernacle by day, and his fire was over it by night, in plain view of all the people of Israel throughout their journey.

translationNotes**was taken up from over**

This can be stated in active form. AT: "rose up from" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that it was lifted up

This can be stated in active form. AT: "when it rose up" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

translationWords

- [tabernacle](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [fire](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40 translationQuestions](#)

translationQuestions

Exodus 1

Into what country did the sons of Israel come with Jacob?

The sons of Israel came into Egypt with Jacob. [1:1]

How many descendants of Jacob were there?

All of the descendants of Jacob were seventy in number. [1:5]

Who did not care for the memory of Joseph?

A new king arose over Egypt, who did not care for the memory of Joseph. [1:8]

What did the king of the Egyptians think would happen if they did not deal wisely with the Israelites?

The king of the Egyptians was afraid that the Israelites would continue to multiply, and if war would break out, they would join the Egyptians' enemies, fight against them and leave the land. [1:8]

How did the taskmasters oppress the Israelites?

The taskmasters oppressed the Israelites with hard labor. [1:11]

What happened the more the Egyptians oppressed the Israelites?

The more the Egyptians oppressed the Israelites, the more the Israelites increased in number and spread. [1:12]

What did the king of Egypt tell the midwives to do if the baby was a male?

The king of Egypt told them that if the baby was male, then they must kill him. [1:16]

Why did the midwives not do as the king of Egypt ordered them?

The midwives feared God and did not do as the king of Egypt ordered them. [1:17]

How did the midwives say the Hebrew women were not like the Egyptian women?

They said Hebrew women were vigorous and finished giving birth before a midwife came to them. [1:19]

What did Pharaoh order all his people to do to the male babies?

Pharaoh ordered all his people, “You must throw every male that is born into the river”. [1:22]

Exodus 2**For how long did the woman of Levi hide her son?**

The woman of Levi hid her son for three months. [2:2]

With what did the woman of Levi seal the papyrus basket?

She sealed the papyrus basket with bitumen and pitch. [2:3]

Why did the baby's sister stand at a distance?

The baby's sister stood at a distance to see what would happen to him. [2:4]

What did Pharaoh's daughter do while her attendants walked along by the riverside?

Pharaoh's daughter came down to bathe at the river while her attendants walked along by the riverside. [2:5]

Who did the young girl get to nurse the child for Pharaoh's daughter?

The young girl went and got the child's mother to nurse the child for Pharaoh's daughter. [2:7]

Who did the young girl get to nurse the child for Pharaoh's daughter?

The young girl went and got the child's mother to nurse the child for Pharaoh's daughter. [2:8]

Who named the child Moses?

Pharaoh's daughter named the child Moses. [2:10]

Where did Moses hide the body of the Egyptian whom he killed?

Moses killed the Egyptian and hid his body in the sand. [2:12]

When two Hebrew men were fighting, whom did Moses ask, "Why are you hitting your companion?"

When two Hebrew men were fighting, Moses said to the one who was in the wrong, "Why are you hitting your companion?" [2:13]

Why did Pharaoh not kill Moses?

Pharaoh tried to kill Moses. But Moses fled from Pharaoh and stayed in the land of Midian. [2:15]

Who tried to drive away the daughters of the priest of Midian?

The shepherds came and tried to drive away the daughters of the priest of Midian. [2:17]

When did God call to mind his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob?

When God heard their groaning, God called to mind his covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob. [2:24]

Exodus 3

Who was Moses' father-in-law?

Jethro, the priest of Midian, was Moses' father-in-law [3:1]

How did the angel of the Lord appear to Moses?

The angel of Yahweh appeared to Moses in a flame of fire in a bush. [3:2]

Who called to Moses out of the bush?

God called to Moses out of the bush [3:4]

Why did God tell Moses to take off his shoes from his feet?

God said, "Do not come any closer! Take off your shoes from your feet, for the place where you are standing is ground consecrated for my own purpose". [3:5]

Why did Yahweh come down?

Yahweh came down to free the Israelites from the Egyptians' power and to bring them up from that land to a good, large land, to a land flowing with milk and honey. [3:8]

Why did Yahweh send Moses to Pharaoh?

Yahweh sent Moses to Pharaoh so that Moses would bring Yahweh's people, the Israelites, out of Egypt. [3:10]

What would be a sign to Moses that Yahweh was sending him?

The sign to Moses that Yahweh has sent him would be that when Moses had brought the people out of Egypt, he would worship Yahweh on this mountain. [3:12]

When the Israelites would ask Moses what God's name is, what should he say to them?

When the Israelites would ask Moses what God's name is, he should say, "I AM THAT I AM." [3:14]

How long will the Israelites go into the wilderness, in order that they may sacrifice to Yahweh, their God?

The Israelites will go three days' journey into the wilderness, in order that they might sacrifice to Yahweh, their God. [3:18]

The king of Egyptian would not let the Israelites go unless what happens?

The king of Egyptian would not let the Israelites go unless his hand would be forced. [3:19]

Exodus 4

What was in Moses' hand?

A staff was in Moses' hand. [4:2]

What did Moses' staff become when he threw it on the ground?

Moses' staff became a snake when he threw it on the ground. [4:4]

By what should Moses take hold of the snake?

Moses should take the snake by the tail. [4:4]

When Moses first brought his hand out from inside his robe, what happened?

When Moses first brought his hand out from inside his robe, it was leprous. [4:6]

Who will be Moses' mouth and teach him what to say?

Yahweh will be Moses' mouth and teach him what to say. [4:12]

When Aaron sees Moses, how will he feel?

When Aaron sees Moses, he will be glad in his heart. [4:14]

Like who will Moses be to Aaron?

Moses will be like God to Aaron. [4:16]

Why can Moses return to Egypt?

Moses can return to Egypt, for all the men who were trying to take his life are dead. [4:19]

Why will Yahweh harden Pharaoh's heart?

Yahweh will harden Pharaoh's heart, and Pharaoh will not let the people go. [4:21]

Since Pharaoh has refused to let Yahweh's firstborn son go, what will Yahweh do to Pharaoh's firstborn son?

Since Pharaoh has refused to let Yahweh's firstborn son go, Yahweh will certainly kill Pharaoh's firstborn son. [4:22]

Since Pharaoh has refused to let Yahweh's firstborn son go, what will Yahweh do to Pharaoh's firstborn son?

Since Pharaoh has refused to let Yahweh's firstborn son go, Yahweh will certainly kill Pharaoh's firstborn son. [4:23]

When they stopped for the night, what did Yahweh try to do to Moses?

When they stopped for the night, Yahweh met Moses and tried to kill him. [4:24]

Where did Aaron meet Moses?

Aaron met Moses at the mountain of God. [4:27]

Who displayed the signs of Yahweh's power in the sight of the people?

Aaron displayed the signs of Yahweh's power in the sight of the people. [4:30]

Exodus 5

Why should Pharaoh let Yahweh's people go?

They should let Yahweh's people go, so they can have a festival for him in the wilderness. [5:1]

Why should the Israelites go on a three-day journey into the wilderness and sacrifice to Yahweh their God ?

The Israelites should go on a three-day journey into the wilderness and sacrifice to Yahweh their God so that he does not attack them with plague or with the sword. [5:3]

To whom did Pharaoh give a command to no longer give the Israelites straw to make bricks?

Pharaoh gave a command to the people's taskmasters and foremen to no longer give the Israelites straw to make bricks. [5:6]

To whom did Pharaoh give a command to no longer give the Israelites straw to make bricks?

Pharaoh gave a command to the people's taskmasters and foremen to no longer give the Israelites straw to make bricks. [5:7]

Although the Israelites must go and get straw wherever they can find it, what will not be reduced?

Although the Israelites must go and get straw wherever they can find it, their workload will not be reduced. [5:11]

Who did Pharaoh's taskmasters beat?

Pharaoh's taskmasters beat the Israelite foremen, those same men whom they had put in charge of the workers. [5:14]

Whose fault was it that the Israelite foremen were beaten?

It was the fault of Pharaoh's own people that the Israelite foremen were beaten. [5:15]

Whose fault was it that the Israelite foremen were beaten?

It was the fault of Pharaoh's own people that the Israelite foremen were beaten. [5:16]

Where were Moses and Aaron as they went away from Pharaoh?

Moses and Aaron were standing outside the palace as they went away from Pharaoh. [5:20]

Who did Moses say caused trouble for the people of Israel?

Moses said the Lord caused trouble for the people of Israel. [5:22]

Exodus 6**Why will Pharaoh let the people of Israel go?**

Pharaoh will let the people of Israel go because of Yahweh's strong hand. [6:1]

How did Yahweh appear to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob?

Yahweh appeared to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob as God Almighty. [6:2]

What has Yahweh heard, and what has he called to mind?

Yahweh has heard the groaning of the Israelites whom the Egyptians have enslaved, and he has called to mind his covenant. [6:5]

What will Yahweh give to the Israelites as a possession?

Yahweh will give the land that he swore to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob to the Israelites as a possession. [6:8]

Why does Moses think Pharaoh will not listen to him?

Moses thinks Pharaoh will not listen to him, since he is not good at speaking. [6:12]

How long did Kohath live?

Kohath lived until he was 133 years old [6:18]

Who did Amram marry?

Amram married Jochebed, his father's sister. [6:20]

Who bore Nadab and Abihu?

Elisheba bore Nadab and Abihu. [6:23]

How should Aaron and Moses bring out the Israelites from the land of Egypt?

Aaron and Moses should bring out the Israelites from the land of Egypt by their groups of fighting men. [6:26]

Exodus 7

What has Yahweh made Moses like to Pharaoh?

Yahweh has made Moses like a god to Pharaoh. [7:1]

What will Yahweh do to Pharaoh's heart?

Yahweh will harden Pharaoh's heart. [7:3]

When will the Egyptians know who Yahweh is?

The Egyptians will know who Yahweh is when he reaches out with his hand on Egypt and brings out the Israelites from among them. [7:5]

What will Moses' staff become?

Moses' staff will become a snake. [7:9]

How did the staffs of Pharaoh's wiseman and sorcerers become snakes?

The staffs of Pharaoh's wiseman and sorcerers became snakes by their magic. [7:11]

Where should Moses stand to meet Pharaoh?

Moses should stand on the riverbank to meet Pharaoh. [7:15]

To what will the river be turned?

The river will be turned to blood. [7:17]

What water will turn to blood?

The Egyptians' rivers, streams, pools, and all their ponds, and even the water in containers of wood and stone will be turned to blood. [7:19]

What happened to Pharaoh's heart?

Pharaoh's heart was hardened. [7:22]

How did the Egyptians try to get water to drink?

The Egyptians dug around the river for water to drink. [7:24]

Exodus 8

What would Yahweh do if Pharaoh refused to let Yahweh's people go?

If Pharaoh refused to let Yahweh's people go, Yahweh would afflict all Pharaoh's country with frogs. [8:2]

Where will the frogs from the river go?

The frogs will come up and go into Egyptians' houses, bedrooms, and beds. They will go into their servants' houses. They will go onto the people, into their ovens, and into their kneading bowls. [8:3]

Where did Aaron reach out with his hand?

Aaron reached out with his hand over Egypt's waters. [8:6]

What privilege did Moses give Pharaoh?

Moses gave Pharaoh the privilege of telling him when he should pray for Pharaoh, his servants, and his people, so that the frogs may be removed from them and their houses and stay only in the river. [8:9]

What did Pharaoh do after he saw that there was relief from the frogs?

When Pharaoh saw that there was relief from the frogs, he hardened his heart and did not listen to Moses and Aaron. [8:15]

What did the dust on the ground become?

All the dust on the ground became gnats throughout the whole land of Egypt. [8:17]

When the magicians tried with their magic to produce gnats, what happened?

The magicians tried with their magic to produce gnats, but they could not. [8:18]

What will be full of flies?

The Egyptians' houses will be full of swarms of flies, and even the ground on which they stand will be full of flies. [8:21]

Why will there be no flies in Goshen?

Yahweh would treat the land of Goshen differently, so that no swarms of flies would be there. This would happen so that Pharaoh would know that Yahweh is in the midst of this land. [8:22]

Why do the Israelites not sacrifice in Egypt?

The sacrifices the Israelites make to Yahweh their God are something disgusting to the Egyptians. [8:25]

Why do the Israelites not sacrifice in Egypt?

The sacrifices the Israelites make to Yahweh their God are something disgusting to the Egyptians. [8:26]

Who hardened Pharaoh's heart after the flies left?

Pharaoh hardened his heart this time also. [8:32]

Exodus 9**On what will Yahweh's hand be?**

Yahweh's hand will be on the Egyptians' cattle in the fields and on the horses, donkeys, camels, herds, and flocks. [9:3]

Even after the cattle died, why did Pharaoh not let the people of Israel go?

Pharaoh's heart was stubborn, so he did not let the people go. [9:7]

What will become fine dust over all the land of Egypt?

Ashes from a kiln will become fine dust over all the land of Egypt. [9:8]

What will become fine dust over all the land of Egypt?

Ashes from a kiln will become fine dust over all the land of Egypt. [9:9]

Why could the magicians not resist Moses?

The magicians could not resist Moses because of the blisters. [9:11]

Why did Yahweh not reach out with his hand and attack Pharaoh and his people with disease and eradicate them from the land?

Yahweh did not attack Pharaoh and his people in order to show them His power, so that His name may be spread throughout all the earth. [9:15]

Why did Yahweh not reach out with his hand and attack Pharaoh and his people with disease and eradicate them from the land?

Yahweh did not attack Pharaoh and his people in order to show them His power, so that His name may be spread throughout all the earth. [9:16]

What warning did Yahweh give about the hail?

Yahweh said that every man and animal that is in the field and is not brought home—the hail will come down on them, and they will die. [9:19]

Who brought their slaves and cattle into their houses?

Those of Pharaoh's servants who believed in Yahweh's message hurried to bring their slaves and cattle into the houses. [9:20]

Throughout all the land of Egypt, what did the hail strike?

Throughout all the land of Egypt, the hail struck everything in the fields, both people and animals. It struck every plant in the fields and broke every tree. [9:25]

During the hail, what did Pharaoh admit?

He said he has sinned this time. Yahweh is righteous, and he and his people are wicked. [9:27]

What plants were not harmed by the hail? Why?

The wheat and the spelt were not harmed because they were later crops. [9:32]

Exodus 10**Why did Yahweh harden the hearts of Pharaoh and his servants?**

Yahweh hardened the hearts of Pharaoh and his servants to show these signs of his power among them. He also did this so that the Israelites might tell their children and grandchildren the things he has done. [10:1]

Why did Yahweh harden the hearts of Pharaoh and his servants?

Yahweh hardened the hearts of Pharaoh and his servants to show these signs of his power among them. He also did this so that the Israelites might tell their children and grandchildren the things he has done. [10:2]

What animal will cover the surface of the ground so that no one will be able to see the earth?

Locusts will cover the surface of the ground so that no one will be able to see the earth. [10:5]

What did Pharaoh say when Moses told him the Israelites will go with their young and with their old, with their sons and their daughters?

Pharaoh said, "No! Go, just the men among you,". [10:9]

What did Pharaoh say when Moses told him the Israelites will go with their young and with their old, with their sons and their daughters?

Pharaoh said, "No! Go, just the men among you,". [10:10]

What did Pharaoh say when Moses told him the Israelites will go with their young and with their old, with their sons and their daughters?

Pharaoh said, "No! Go, just the men among you,". [10:11]

What brought the locusts?

The east wind brought the locusts. [10:13]

What did Pharaoh say he has done against Yahweh?

Pharaoh said he has sinned against Yahweh, Moses' God. [10:16]

How many locusts remained in all the territory of Egypt after Yahweh brought a very strong west wind?

Not a single locust remained in all the territory of Egypt after Yahweh brought a very strong west wind. [10:19]

What happened to the Egyptians during the three days of darkness?

During the three days of darkness no one could see anyone else; no one left his home for three days. [10:22]

After the darkness, what did Pharaoh say must remain behind when the Israelites go worship Yahweh?

Pharaoh said the flocks and herds must remain behind when the Israelites go worship Yahweh. [10:24]

What did Pharaoh say would happen to Moses if Pharaoh would see his face again?

Pharaoh said on the day Moses see his face, Moses would die. [10:28]

Exodus 11

For what should every Israelite man and woman ask of his or her neighbor after the final plague?

Every Israelite man and woman should ask of his or her neighbor for jewels of silver, and jewels of gold after the final plague. [11:1]

For what should every Israelite man and woman ask of his or her neighbor after the final plague?

Every Israelite man and woman should ask of his or her neighbor for jewels of silver, and jewels of gold after the final plague. [11:2]

In the sight of whom was Moses was very impressive?

Moses was very impressive in the sight of Pharaoh's servants and the people of Egypt. [11:3]

Which of the firstborns would die?

All the firstborns in the land of Egypt would die, from the firstborn of Pharaoh, who sits on his throne, to the firstborn of the slave girl who is behind the handmill grinding it, and to all the firstborn of the cattle. [11:5]

When has there been such a great cry throughout all the land of Egypt like the one caused by the last plague?

There has never been such a great cry, nor ever will be again. [11:6]

Exodus 12**What must each Israelite family do on the tenth day of this first month?**

On the tenth day of this month each family must take a lamb or young goat for themselves. [12:3]

If the household is too small for a lamb, what should they do?

If the household is too small for a lamb, the man and his next door neighbor are to take lamb or young goat meat that will be enough for the number of the people. [12:4]

When must the whole assembly of Israel kill these animals?

The whole assembly of Israel must kill these animals at twilight. [12:6]

With what must the Israelites eat the lamb or goat?

They must eat it with bread made without yeast, along with bitter herbs. [12:8]

What must the Israelites do if any of the lamb is left over?

They must not let any of it be left over until morning. They must burn whatever is left over in the morning. [12:10]

What will happen when Yahweh sees the blood on the houses?

When Yahweh sees the blood, he will pass over them. [12:13]

What must happen to whoever eats leavened bread from the first day until the seventh day?

Whoever eats leavened bread from the first day until the seventh day, that person must be cut off from Israel. [12:15]

What is the only work the Israelites can do during the seven days of unleavened bread?

No work will be done on these days, except the cooking for everyone to eat. [12:16]

When must the Israelites eat unleavened bread?

The Israelites must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. [12:18]

Where should the Israelites apply the blood in the basin?

The Israelites should apply the blood in the basin to the top of the door frame and the two doorposts. [12:22]

When will Yahweh pass over someone's door?

Yahweh will pass over someone's door when he sees the blood on the top of the doorframe and on the two doorposts. [12:23]

When the Israelites' children ask them, 'What does this act of worship mean?' what must they say?

When the Israelites' children ask them, 'What does this act of worship mean?' then they must say, 'It is the sacrifice of Yahweh's Passover, because Yahweh passed over the Israelites' houses in Egypt when he attacked the Egyptians. He set our households free.' [12:26]

When the Israelites' children ask them, 'What does this act of worship mean?' what must they say?

When the Israelites' children ask them, 'What does this act of worship mean?' then they must say, 'It is the sacrifice of Yahweh's Passover, because Yahweh passed over the Israelites' houses in Egypt when he attacked the Egyptians. He set our households free.' [12:27]

Why was there was a great outcry in Egypt?

There was a great outcry in Egypt, for there was not a house where there was not someone dead. [12:30]

For what did the Israelites ask the Egyptians?

The Israelites asked the Egyptians for jewels of silver, jewels of gold, and clothing. [12:35]

Why was the bread without yeast?

The bread was without yeast because the Israelites had been driven out of Egypt and could not delay to prepare food. [12:39]

How long had the Israelites been in Egypt?

They had been in Egypt 430 years. [12:41]

Who may not share in eating the Passover?

No foreigner may share in eating the Passover. [12:43]

If a foreigner lives with the Israelites and wants to observe the Passover for Yahweh, what must all his male relatives do?

If a foreigner lives with the Israelites and wants to observe the Passover for Yahweh, all his male relatives must be circumcised. [12:48]

Exodus 13

To whom does the firstborn belong?

The firstborn belongs to Yahweh. [13:1]

In what month did the Israelites go out of Egypt?

The Israelites went out of Egypt in the month of Abib. [13:4]

Why will this rescue become reminders for the Israelites on their hands, and reminders on their forehead?

This rescue will become reminders for the Israelites on their hands, and reminders on their forehead, so that Yahweh's Law may be in their speech. [13:9]

With what must the Israelites buy back every firstborn donkey?

Every firstborn donkey the Israelites must buy back with a lamb. [13:13]

Why did God not lead the Israelites by way of the land of the Philistines?

God did not lead them by way of the land of the Philistines. For God said, "Perhaps the people will change their minds when they experience war and will then return to Egypt. [13:17]

What had Joseph made the Israelites solemnly swear?

Joseph had made the Israelites solemnly swear, "You must carry away my bones with you". [13:19]

How did Yahweh go before the Israelites by night? Why?

By night he went in a pillar of fire to give them light. In this way they could travel by day and by night. [13:21]

Exodus 14

When the king of Egypt was told that the Israelites had fled, what happened to the minds of Pharaoh and his servants?

When the king of Egypt was told that the Israelites had fled, the minds of Pharaoh and his servants turned against the Israelites. [14:5]

Where did the Egyptians overtake the Israelites?

The Egyptians overtook the Israelites camping by the sea beside Pi Hahiroth, before Baal Zephon. [14:9]

What did the Israelites say would have been better than to die in the wilderness?

They said it would have been better for them to work for the Egyptians than to die in the wilderness. [14:12]

Because Yahweh will fight for the Israelites, what will they have to do?

Yahweh will fight for the Israelites, and they will only have to stand still. [14:14]

Why would the Egyptians go after the Israelites into the sea?

Yahweh would harden the Egyptians' hearts so they will go after the Israelites. [14:17]

How did the cloud hinder the Egyptians, but help the Israelites?

The cloud was a dark cloud to the Egyptians, but it lit the night for the Israelites, so one side did not come near the other all night. [14:20]

For how long did Yahweh drive the sea back by a strong east wind?

Yahweh drove the sea back by a strong east wind all that night. [14:21]

When did Yahweh look down on the Egyptian army through the pillar of fire and cloud?

In the early morning hours, Yahweh looked down on the Egyptian army through the pillar of fire and cloud. [14:24]

How many soldiers of Pharaoh's army survived crossing the sea?

No one survived crossing the sea. [14:28]

What did Israel do when they saw the great power that Yahweh used against the Egyptians?

When Israel saw the great power that Yahweh used against the Egyptians, the people honored Yahweh, and they trusted in Yahweh and in his servant Moses. [14:31]

Exodus 15**Whom has Yahweh thrown into the sea?**

Yahweh has thrown the horse and its rider into the sea. [15:1]

How did the Egyptians go down into the depths?

They went down into the depths like a stone. [15:5]

How were the waters piled up?

By the blast of Yahweh's nostrils, the waters were piled up. [15:8]

In what has Yahweh led the people he rescued?

In his covenant loyalty Yahweh has led the people he has rescued. In his strength he has led them to the holy place where he lives. [15:13]

What will the people do when they hear of Yahweh rescuing the Israelites?

The peoples will hear, and they will tremble. [15:14]

Where will Yahweh bring the Israelites?

Yahweh will bring the Israelites and plant them on the mountain of his inheritance, the place Yahweh has made to live in. [15:17]

Who played tambourines?

Miriam the prophetess and all the women played tambourines. [15:20]

Why could the Israelites not drink the water at Marah?

The Israelites could not drink the water at Marah because it was bitter. [15:23]

How did the bitter water at Marah become sweet?

Yahweh showed Moses a tree. Moses threw it into the water, and the water became sweet to drink. [15:25]

Exodus 16

Where is the wilderness of Sin?

The wilderness of Sin is between Elim and Sinai. [16:1]

According to the Israelites, why did Moses bring them out into the wilderness?

They said Moses brought them out into this wilderness to kill their whole community with hunger. [16:3]

Why will the people go out and gather a day's portion every day?

The people will go out and gather a day's portion every day so that Yahweh may test them to see whether or not they will walk in his law. [16:4]

How will the Israelites know Yahweh has brought them out from the land of Egypt?

The Israelites will know Yahweh has brought them out from the land of Egypt when Yahweh gives them meat in the evening and bread in the morning to the full. [16:6]

How will the Israelites know Yahweh has brought them out from the land of Egypt?

The Israelites will know Yahweh has brought them out from the land of Egypt when Yahweh gives them meat in the evening and bread in the morning to the full. [16:8]

What appeared in the cloud?

Yahweh's glory appeared in the cloud. [16:10]

What size was the bread that Yahweh has given the Israelites to eat?

The bread that Yahweh has given the Israelites to eat was a small round thing as thin as hoarfrost. [16:14]

What size was the bread that Yahweh has given the Israelites to eat?

The bread that Yahweh has given the Israelites to eat was a small round thing as thin as hoarfrost. [16:15]

When the Israelites measured the bread from Yahweh, how much did each person have?

When they measured it with an omer measure, those who had gathered much had nothing over, and those who had gathered little had no lack. Each person gathered enough to meet their need. [16:18]

What happened to the bread from Yahweh that some of the Israelites left until morning?

The bread from Yahweh that some of the Israelites left until morning bred worms and became foul. [16:20]

How much bread did the Israelites gather on the sixth day?

On the sixth day they gathered twice as much bread, two omers for each person. [16:22]

What happened to the bread of Yahweh that was set aside until the seventh day?

The bread of Yahweh that was set aside until the seventh day did not become foul, nor was there any worm in it. [16:24]

How much manna did the Israelites find on the seventh day?

When some of the people went out to gather manna on the seventh day, they found none. [16:27]

What must each of the Israelites do on the seventh day?

Each of them must stay in his own place; no one must go out from his place on the seventh day. [16:29]

What was manna?

Manna was white like coriander seed, and its taste was like wafers made with honey. [16:31]

Why will an omer of manna be kept?

An omer of manna will be kept throughout the people's generations so that their descendants might see the bread with which Yahweh fed them in the wilderness. [16:32]

Where will an omer of manna be kept?

An omer of manna will be kept in a pot and stored beside the covenant decrees in the ark. [16:33]

Where will an omer of manna be kept?

An omer of manna will be kept in a pot and stored beside the covenant decrees in the ark. [16:34]

For how long did the people of Israel eat manna?

The people of Israel ate manna forty years until they came to inhabited land. [16:35]

Exodus 17**Why did the people blame Moses for their situation?**

There was no water for the people to drink. So the people blamed Moses for their situation. [17:1]

Why did the people blame Moses for their situation?

There was no water for the people to drink. So the people blamed Moses for their situation. [17:2]

What was Moses afraid the people would do to him?

Moses was afraid that the Israelites were ready to stone him. [17:4]

What did Yahweh tell Moses to do to provide water for the people to drink?

Yahweh told Moses to strike the rock with his staff. Water would come out of the rock for the people to drink. [17:6]

Where did Moses stand when the Amalek people attacked Israel?

Moses stood on top of the hill with the staff of God in his hand. [17:9]

What happened while Moses was holding his hands up, and when he let his hands rest?

While Moses was holding his hands up, Israel was winning. When he let his hands rest, Amalek would begin to win. [17:11]

How did Aaron and Hur help Moses hold his hands up?

Aaron and Hur took a stone and put it under him for him to sit on. At the same time, Aaron and Hur held his hands up, one person on one side of him, and the other person on the other side. [17:12]

Why did Yahweh tell Moses write about the battle against the Amalek?

Yahweh told Moses to write about the battle in a book, because Yahweh will completely blot out the memory of Amalek from under the skies. [17:14]

Exodus 18

Who was Jethro?

Jethro was the priest of Midian, Moses' father-in-law. [18:1]

What were the names of the two sons of Moses?

The sons of Moses were Gershom and Eliezer. [18:2]

Where was Moses when Jethro brought his wife and sons?

Moses was camped in the wilderness at the mountain of God when Jethro brought Moses' sons and his wife to him. [18:6]

How did Moses greet his father-in-law?

He bowed down, and kissed him. [18:7]

Over what did Jethro rejoice?

Jethro rejoiced over all the good that Yahweh had done for Israel, in that he had rescued them from the Egyptians' power. [18:9]

How did Jethro know that Yahweh was greater than all the gods?

Jethro knew that Yahweh was greater than all the gods, because when the Egyptians treated the Israelites arrogantly, God rescued his people. [18:11]

Who ate the meal before God?

Aaron and all the elders of Israel came to eat a meal before God with Moses' father-in-law. [18:12]

How long did the people stand around Moses as he sat down to judge the people?

The people stood around Moses from morning until evening . [18:13]

Why did the people come to Moses?

The people came to Moses to ask for God's direction. When they had a dispute, they came to him. [18:15]

Why did the people come to Moses?

The people came to Moses to ask for God's direction. When they had a dispute, they came to him. [18:16]

Why did Jethro say that what Moses was doing was not good?

Jethro said that what Moses was doing was not very good because he would certainly wear out himself and the people who came to him, because the burden was too heavy for him. He could not do it himself alone. [18:17]

Why did Jethro say that what Moses was doing was not good?

Jethro said that what Moses was doing was not very good because he would certainly wear out himself and the people who came to him, because the burden was too heavy for him. He could not do it himself alone. [18:18]

What kind of men did Jethro tell Moses to choose to put over the people?

Jethro told Moses to choose capable men from all the people, men who honor God, men of truth who hate unjust gain. [18:21]

What cases would the capable men judge?

The capable men would judge the people in all routine cases, but the difficult cases they would bring to Moses. As for all the small cases, they could judge those themselves. [18:22]

Exodus 19

When did the people of Israel come to the wilderness of Sinai?

In the third month after the people of Israel had gone out from the land of Egypt, on the same day, they came to the wilderness of Sinai. [19:1]

What must the Israelites do if they want to be Yahweh's special possession?

The Israelites must obediently listen to Yahweh's voice and keep his covenant, then they would be his special possession from among all peoples. [19:5]

Why did Yahweh come to the people in a thick cloud?

Yahweh came to them in a thick cloud so that the people might hear when he spoke with them and might also believe Moses forever. [19:9]

How were the people to consecrate themselves?

They were to consecrate themselves by preparing for Yahweh's coming, and by washing their garments. [19:10]

What would happen to anyone who touched the mountain?

Whoever touched the mountain would surely be put to death. [19:12]

How were the people to put to death anyone who touched the mountain?

They were to stone or shoot the person who touched the mountain. [19:13]

Why did the people tremble?

There was thunder and lightning bolts and a thick cloud on the mountain, and the sound of a very loud trumpet. So, all the people in the camp trembled. [19:16]

What should the priests do so Yahweh would not attack them?

The priests who come near to Yahweh should set themselves apart—prepare themselves for Yahweh's coming—so that Yahweh would not attack them. [19:22]

Who could come up the mountain with Moses?

Only Aaron could come up the mountain with Moses. [19:24]

Exodus 20**What must the Israelites not have before Yahweh?**

They must have no other gods before him. [20:3]

Why must the Israelites not make carved figures or bow down to them?

The Israelites must not make carved figures or bow down to them because Yahweh is a jealous God. [20:4]

Why must the Israelites not make carved figures or bow down to them?

The Israelites must not make carved figures or bow down to them because Yahweh is a jealous God. [20:5]

For how long does Yahweh punish the ancestors' wickedness?

Yahweh punishes the ancestors' wickedness by bringing punishment on their descendants, to the third and the fourth generation of those who hate him. [20:5]

Whose name must the Israelites not take in vain?

They must not take the name of Yahweh their God in vain. [20:7]

Why must the Israelites keep the Sabbath day holy and rest on it?

The Israelites must keep the Sabbath day holy and rest on it, for in six days Yahweh, made the heavens, earth, and sea, and everything that is in them, and then rested on the seventh day. [20:8]

Who should keep the Sabbath day holy and rest on it?

The Israelites must not do any work, you, nor their son, nor their daughter, nor their male servant, nor their female servant, nor their cattle, nor the foreigner who is within their gates. [20:10]

Why must the Israelites keep the Sabbath day holy and rest on it?

The Israelites must keep the Sabbath day holy and rest on it, for in six days Yahweh, made the heavens, earth, and sea, and everything that is in them, and then rested on the seventh day. [20:11]

What is the result of the Israelites' honoring their father and mother?

The Israelites must honor their father and your mother, so that they might live a long time in the land which Yahweh their God was giving them. [20:12]

Why did the people tremble?

All the people saw the thundering and the lightning, and heard the voice of the trumpet, and saw the mountain smoking. When the people saw it, they trembled and stood far off. [20:18]

What did the Israelites think would happen if God spoke to them?

They thought that if God spoke to them, they would die. [20:19]

What would have happened if the Israelites used their tools on the stone altar?

If they used their tools on the stone altar, they would defile it. [20:25]

Exodus 21

Who must set the decrees before the Israelites?

Moses must set the decrees before the Israelites. [21:1]

If a master gave a servant a wife and she bore him sons or daughters, what would happen to them if the servant went free?

If a master gave a servant a wife and she bore him sons or daughters, the wife and her children would belong to her master, and he must go free by himself [21:4]

If the servant would not go free, what would happen?

If the servant would not go free, the master must bring him to a door or doorpost, and his master must bore his ear through with an awl. Then the servant would serve him for the rest of his life. [21:6]

To whom can a master not sell a female servant?

A master has no right to sell a female servant to a foreign people. [21:8]

When can a female servant go free without paying money?

If a master's son marries a female servant and then takes another wife for himself, he can not diminish her food, clothing, or her marital rights. But if he does not provide these three things for her, then she can go free without paying any money. [21:9]

When can a female servant go free without paying money?

If a master's son marries a female servant and then takes another wife for himself, he can not diminish her food, clothing, or her marital rights. But if he does not provide these three things for her, then she can go free without paying any money. [21:10]

When can a female servant go free without paying money?

If a master's son marries a female servant and then takes another wife for himself, he can not diminish her food, clothing, or her marital rights. But if he does not provide these three things for her, then she can go free without paying any money. [21:11]

What did Yahweh provide for a man who killed someone by accident?

If the man killed someone by accident, Yahweh would fix a place where he could flee. [21:13]

What must happen to whoever curses his father or his mother?

Whoever curses his father or his mother must surely be put to death. [21:17]

If men fight and one hits the other with a stone or with his fist and the other is confined to his bed, what must the man who struck him do?

If men fight and one hits the other with a stone or with his fist and the other is confined to his bed, the man who struck him must pay for the loss of his time. [21:18]

If men fight and one hits the other with a stone or with his fist and the other is confined to his bed, what must the man who struck him do?

If men fight and one hits the other with a stone or with his fist and the other is confined to his bed, the man who struck him must pay for the loss of his time. [21:19]

If a man hits his male servant or his female servant with a staff, and if the servant lives for a day or two, how will the the master be punished?

If a man hits his male servant or his female servant with a staff, and if the servant lives for a day or two, the master must not be punished, for he will have suffered the loss of the servant.. [21:20]

If a man hits his male servant or his female servant with a staff, and if the servant lives for a day or two, how will the the master be punished?

If a man hits his male servant or his female servant with a staff, and if the servant lives for a day or two, the master must not be punished, for he will have suffered the loss of the servant.. [21:21]

If men fight together and hurt a pregnant woman so that she miscarries, but there is no other injury to her, what must happen to the guilty man?

If men fight together and hurt a pregnant woman so that she miscarries, but there is no other injury to her, then the guilty man must surely be fined, if the woman's husband demands it from him, and he must pay as the judges determine. [21:22]

What must the guilty man give if there is serious injury?

If there is serious injury, then the guilty man must give a life for a life, an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, a hand for a hand, a foot for a foot, a burn for a burn, a wound for a wound, or a bruise for a bruise. [21:23]

What must the guilty man give if there is serious injury?

If there is serious injury, then the guilty man must give a life for a life, an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, a hand for a hand, a foot for a foot, a burn for a burn, a wound for a wound, or a bruise for a bruise. [21:24]

What must the guilty man give if there is serious injury?

If there is serious injury, then the guilty man must give a life for a life, an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth, a hand for a hand, a foot for a foot, a burn for a burn, a wound for a wound, or a bruise for a bruise. [21:25]

If a man hits the eye of his male servant or of his female servant and destroys it, or if he knocks out a tooth of his male servant or female servant, what is the compensation?

If a man hits the eye of his male servant or of his female servant and destroys it, or if he knocks out a tooth of his male servant or female servant, he must let the servant go free as compensation for the tooth. [21:26]

If a man hits the eye of his male servant or of his female servant and destroys it, or if he knocks out a tooth of his male servant or female servant, what is the compensation?

If a man hits the eye of his male servant or of his female servant and destroys it, or if he knocks out a tooth of his male servant or female servant, he must let the servant go free as compensation for the tooth. [21:27]

If an ox had a habit of goring in the past, and its owner was warned but did not keep it in, and the ox kills a man or a woman, what must happen to the ox and its owner?

If an ox had a habit of goring in the past, and its owner was warned but did not keep it in, and the ox kills a man or a woman, that ox must be stoned, and its owner also must be put to death. [21:29]

If a man opens a pit, or if a man digs a pit and does not cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it, what must the owner of the pit do?

If a man opens a pit, or if a man digs a pit and does not cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it, the owner of the pit must repay the loss. [21:33]

If a man opens a pit, or if a man digs a pit and does not cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it, what must the owner of the pit do?

If a man opens a pit, or if a man digs a pit and does not cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it, the owner of the pit must repay the loss. [21:34]

If one man's ox hurts another man's ox so that it dies, what must happen to the oxen?

If one man's ox hurts another man's ox so that it dies, then they must sell the live ox and divide its price, and they must also divide the dead ox. [21:35]

Exodus 22**If someone kills a thief after the sun has risen, who is guilty?**

If the sun has risen before a thief breaks in, guilt for murder will attach to the person who kills him. [22:2]

If someone kills a thief after the sun has risen, who is guilty?

If the sun has risen before a thief breaks in, guilt for murder will attach to the person who kills him. [22:3]

If a thief has nothing, what is his restitution?

If a thief has nothing, then he must be sold for his theft. [22:3]

If a man gives money or goods to his neighbor for safe keeping, and if it is stolen out of the man's house, but the thief is not found, what will happen?

If a man gives money or goods to his neighbor for safe keeping, and if it is stolen out of the man's house, if the thief is found, that thief must pay double. But if the thief is not found, then the owner of the house must come before the judges to see whether he has put his own hand on his neighbor's property. [22:7]

If a man gives money or goods to his neighbor for safe keeping, and if it is stolen out of the man's house, but the thief is not found, what will happen?

If a man gives money or goods to his neighbor for safe keeping, and if it is stolen out of the man's house, if the thief is found, that thief must pay double. But if the thief is not found, then the owner of the house must come before the judges to see whether he has put his own hand on his neighbor's property. [22:8]

If a man gives his neighbor a donkey, an ox, a sheep, or any animal to keep, and if it dies or is hurt or is carried away without anyone seeing it, what is the restitution?

If a man gives his neighbor a donkey, an ox, a sheep, or any animal to keep, and if it dies or is hurt or is carried away without anyone seeing it, the other will make no restitution. [22:10]

If a man gives his neighbor a donkey, an ox, a sheep, or any animal to keep, and if it dies or is hurt or is carried away without anyone seeing it, what is the restitution?

If a man gives his neighbor a donkey, an ox, a sheep, or any animal to keep, and if it dies or is hurt or is carried away without anyone seeing it, the other will make no restitution. [22:11]

If a man seduces a virgin who is not engaged, and if he sleeps with her, how must he make her his wife?

If a man seduces a virgin who is not engaged, and if he sleeps with her, he must surely make her his wife by paying the bride wealth required for this. [22:16]

Why must the Israelites not wrong a foreigner?

The Israelites must not wrong a foreigner or oppress him, for they were foreigners in the land of Egypt. [22:21]

What would happen if the Israelites mistreat any widow or fatherless child?

If the Israelites mistreats them at all, and if they cry out to Yahweh, he will surely hear their cry. His anger will burn, and he will kill them with the sword; their wives will become widows, and their children will become fatherless. [22:22]

What would happen if the Israelites mistreat any widow or fatherless child?

If the Israelites mistreats them at all, and if they cry out to Yahweh, he will surely hear their cry. His anger will burn, and he will kill them with the sword; their wives will become widows, and their children will become fatherless. [22:23]

What would happen if the Israelites mistreat any widow or fatherless child?

If the Israelites mistreats them at all, and if they cry out to Yahweh, he will surely hear their cry. His anger will burn, and he will kill them with the sword; their wives will become widows, and their children will become fatherless. [22:24]

If someone takes his neighbor's garment in pledge, when must he return it to the owner?

If someone takes his neighbor's garment in pledge, he must return it to him before the sun goes down. [22:26]

What meat must the Israelites not eat? What should they do with it?

The Israelites must not eat any meat that was torn by animals in the field. Instead, they must throw it to the dogs. [22:31]

Exodus 23

If the Israelites see the donkey of someone who hates them fallen to the ground under its load, what must they do?

If the Israelites see the donkey of someone who hates them fallen to the ground under its load, they must not leave that person. They must surely help him with his donkey. [23:5]

Why should the Israelites not take a bribe?

They should not take a bribe, for a bribe blinds those who see, and perverts honest people's words. [23:8]

Why should the Israelites leave their fields unplowed in the seventh year?

In the seventh year the Israelites should leave the fields unplowed and fallow, so that the poor among their people may eat. [23:11]

Why must the Israelites rest on the seventh day?

On the seventh day they must rest so that their ox and their donkey may have rest, and so that their female slave's son and any foreigner may rest and be refreshed. [23:12]

In what month was the Festival of Unleavened Bread to be observed?

The Festival of Unleavened Bread was to be observed in the month of Abib. [23:15]

In what month did the Israelites come out of Egypt?

They came out of Egypt in the month of Abib. [23:15]

When were the Festival of Harvest and the Festival of Ingathering to be observed?

You must observe the Festival of Harvest, with the first fruits of your labors when you sowed seed in the fields. Also you must observe the Festival of Ingathering at the end of the year, when you gather in your produce from the fields. [23:16]

For how long can the fat from the sacrifices at Yahweh's festivals remain?

The fat from the sacrifices at Yahweh's festivals must not remain all night until the morning. [23:18]

What would happen if the Israelites provoke Yahweh's angel?

If they provoke him, he will not pardon their transgressions. [23:21]

What must the Israelites do to foreign gods?

They must completely overthrow them and smash their sacred stone pillars in pieces. [23:24]

Why wouldn't Yahweh drive out the foreign nations before the Israelites in one year?

Yahweh would not drive them out in one year, or the land would become abandoned, and the wild animals would become too many for them. [23:29]

Why must foreign nations not live in the Israelites' land?

They must not live in the Israelites' land, or they would make the Israelites sin against Yahweh. [23:33]

Exodus 24

How many elders should come up to worship Yahweh at a distance?

70 elders should come up to worship Yahweh at a distance. [24:1]

What would the twelve stones represent?

The twelve stones would represent the twelve tribes of Israel. [24:4]

Where did Moses put the blood of the oxen from the fellowship offerings to Yahweh?

Moses took half of the blood of the oxen from the fellowship offerings to Yahweh and put it into basins; he splashed the other half onto the altar. [24:5]

Where did Moses put the blood of the oxen from the fellowship offerings to Yahweh?

Moses took half of the blood of the oxen from the fellowship offerings to Yahweh and put it into basins; he splashed the other half onto the altar. [24:6]

How did Yahweh make a covenant with the Israelites?

Yahweh made the covenant with the Israelites by giving them the promise with all the words. [24:8]

Who saw Yahweh?

Moses, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy of Israel's elders saw Yahweh. [24:9]

Who saw Yahweh?

Moses, Aaron, Nadab, Abihu, and seventy of Israel's elders saw Yahweh. [24:10]

Why did Yahweh give Moses the tablets of stone and the law and commandments?

Yahweh gave Moses the tablets of stone and the law and commandments that he had written, so that Moses might teach them. [24:12]

If anyone had a dispute, to whom should he go?

If anyone had a dispute, he should go to Aaron and Hur. [24:14]

What was the appearance of Yahweh's glory like?

The appearance of Yahweh's glory was like a devouring fire on the top of the mountain in the eyes of the Israelites. [24:17]

Exodus 25**From whom should the Israelites take an offering?**

The Israelites should take an offering from every person who is motivated by a willing heart. [25:1]

For what were the onyx stones and other precious stones to be set?

The onyx stones and other precious stones were to be set for the ephod and breast piece. [25:7]

Why would the Israelites make Yahweh a sanctuary?

The Israelites would make Yahweh a sanctuary so that he might live among them. [25:8]

With what must Moses cover the acacia wood?

He must cover it inside and out with pure gold. [25:10]

With what must Moses cover the acacia wood?

He must cover it inside and out with pure gold. [25:11]

Into what must Moses put the poles? Why?

He must put the poles into the rings on the ark's sides, in order to carry the ark. [25:14]

Where must the poles remain?

The poles must remain in the rings of the ark. They must not be taken from it. [25:15]

Which direction must the cherubim face?

The cherubim must face one another and look toward the center of the atonement lid. [25:20]

From where would Yahweh speak to Moses?

Yahweh would speak with him from above the atonement lid, from between the two cherubim over the ark of the covenant decrees [25:22]

What border must Moses put around the top of the table of acacia wood?

He must put a border of gold around the top of the table of acacia wood. [25:23]

What border must Moses put around the top of the table of acacia wood?

He must put a border of gold around the top of the table of acacia wood. [25:24]

Why must the rings be attached to the frame?

The rings must be attached to the frame to provide places for the poles, in order to carry the table. [25:27]

What was to be used to pour out drink offerings?

The dishes, spoons, pitchers, and bowls were to be used to pour out drink offerings. [25:29]

How many branches must extend out from the sides of the lampstand of pure hammered gold?

Six branches must extend out from its sides—three branches must extend from one side, and three branches of the lampstand must extend from the other side. [25:31]

How many branches must extend out from the sides of the lampstand of pure hammered gold?

Six branches must extend out from its sides—three branches must extend from one side, and three branches of the lampstand must extend from the other side. [25:32]

On which part of the lampstand must there be four cups made like almond blossoms?

On the lampstand itself, the central shaft, there must be four cups made like almond blossoms. [25:33]

On which part of the lampstand must there be four cups made like almond blossoms?

On the lampstand itself, the central shaft, there must be four cups made like almond blossoms. [25:34]

What must be under each pair of branches?

There must be a leafy base under each pair of branches. [25:35]

How much gold should Moses use to make the lampstand and its accessories?

He must use one talent of pure gold to make the lampstand and its accessories. [25:39]

Exodus 26

Who would Moses have to make the tabernacle with ten curtains made from fine linen and blue, purple, and scarlet wool with the designs of cherubim?

Moses must have a very skilled craftsman make the tabernacle with ten curtains made from fine linen and blue, purple, and scarlet wool with the designs of cherubim. [26:1]

Why must Moses make fifty loops on the first curtain and fifty loops on the end curtain in the second set?

He must make fifty loops on the first curtain and fifty loops on the end curtain in the second set so that the loops will be opposite to each other. [26:5]

Of what must Moses make curtains for a tentlike covering over the tabernacle?

He must make curtains of goats' hair for a tentlike covering over the tabernacle. [26:7]

Where must the overhanging part remaining from the tent's curtains hang?

The overhanging part remaining from the tent's curtains must hang at the back of the tabernacle. [26:12]

What must be in each board for joining them to each other?

There must be two projections in each board for joining the boards to each other. [26:17]

Why must there be two bases under each board?

There must be two bases under each board to be its two pedestals. [26:19]

How must Moses set up the tabernacle?

He must set up the tabernacle by following the plan God showed him on the mountain. [26:30]

What is the purpose of the curtain?

The curtain is to separate the holy place from the most holy place. [26:33]

On what side of the tabernacle is the lampstand?

The lampstand is opposite the table on the south side of the tabernacle. [26:35]

Exodus 27

How must Moses make extensions of the altar's four corners?

He must make extensions of its four corners shaped like ox horns. [27:2]

With what must Moses make all the utensils for the altar?

He must make all the utensils with bronze. [27:3]

What kind of hangings must be on the south side of the courtyard?

There must be hangings of fine twined linen one hundred cubits long on the south side of the courtyard. [27:9]

Of what must all the equipment to be used in the tabernacle, and all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard be made?

All the equipment to be used in the tabernacle, and all the tent pegs for the tabernacle and courtyard must be made of bronze. [27:19]

What would be a lasting ordinance forever throughout the generations of the Israelite nation?

Aaron and his sons must maintain the lamps from evening to morning before Yahweh. This requirement would be a lasting ordinance forever throughout the generations of the Israelite nation. [27:21]

Exodus 28**Who would serve Yahweh as priests?**

Aaron and his sons—Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar—would serve Yahweh as priests. [28:1]

What material must craftsmen use for the priests' clothing?

Craftsmen must use fine linen that is gold, blue, purple, and scarlet. [28:5]

What must be engraved on two onyx stones?

The names of Israel's twelve sons must be engraved on two onyx stones. [28:9]

In what order must the names of Israel's twelve sons be on the two onyx stones?

The names of Israel's twelve sons must be on the two onyx stones in order of the sons' births. [28:10]

Why would Aaron carry the names of the Israel's twelve sons on his two shoulders?

Aaron would carry their names on his two shoulders as a reminder to Yahweh. [28:12]

What shape must the breastpiece for decision making be?

The breastpiece for decision making must be square. [28:15]

What shape must the breastpiece for decision making be?

The breastpiece for decision making must be square. [28:16]

How must the precious stones be mounted?

They must be mounted in gold settings. [28:17]

How must the precious stones be mounted?

They must be mounted in gold settings. [28:20]

Where must Moses attach the two golden chains?

He must attach the two golden chains to the two corners of the breastpiece. [28:24]

Why must Moses tie the breastpiece by its rings to the ephod's rings?

He must tie the breastpiece by its rings to the ephod's rings so that the breastplate might not become unattached from the ephod. [28:28]

What must Moses put in the breastpiece for decision making?

He must put in the breastpiece for decision making the Urim and the Thummim. [28:30]

Who must make the robe of the ephod?

A weaver must make the robe of the ephod. [28:31]

Who must make the robe of the ephod?

A weaver must make the robe of the ephod. [28:32]

Why is the robe to be on Aaron when he serves?

The robe is to be on Aaron when he serves, so that its sound can be heard when he goes into the holy place before Yahweh and when he leaves. This is so that he does not die. [28:35]

How would Aaron bear any guilt that might attach to the offering of the holy gifts that the Israelites consecrated?

He would bear any guilt that might attach to the offering of the holy gifts that the Israelites consecrated by wearing the engraved plate on his turban. [28:36]

How would Aaron bear any guilt that might attach to the offering of the holy gifts that the Israelites consecrated?

He would bear any guilt that might attach to the offering of the holy gifts that the Israelites consecrated by wearing the engraved plate on his turban. [28:37]

How would Aaron bear any guilt that might attach to the offering of the holy gifts that the Israelites consecrated?

He would bear any guilt that might attach to the offering of the holy gifts that the Israelites consecrated by wearing the engraved plate on his turban. [28:38]

What must Moses make for the honor and splendor of Aaron's sons?

He must make coats, sashes, and headbands for the honor and splendor of Aaron's sons. [28:40]

How much would the undergarments cover?

The undergarments would cover from the waist to the thighs. [28:42]

Exodus 29**What must be brought to dedicate Aaron and his sons?**

The following were to be brought to dedicate Aaron and his sons: One young bull and two rams without blemish, bread without yeast, and cakes without yeast mixed with oil, and wafers made with fine wheat flour without yeast rubbed with oil. [29:1]

What must be brought to dedicate Aaron and his sons?

The following were to be brought to dedicate Aaron and his sons: One young bull and two rams without blemish, bread without yeast, and cakes without yeast mixed with oil, and wafers made with fine wheat flour without yeast rubbed with oil. [29:2]

In what must Moses wash Aaron and his sons?

Moses must wash Aaron and his sons in water. [29:4]

To whom would the work of the priesthood belong?

The work of the priesthood would belong to Aaron and his sons. [29:9]

What must Moses do with the fat and the covering of the liver and the two kidneys?

He must burn the fat that covers the inner parts, and the covering of the liver and the two kidneys with the fat that is on them, on the altar. [29:13]

What would a burning ram produce for Yahweh?

It would produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh. [29:18]

What must Moses do with blood from the second ram?

He must put it on the tip of Aaron's right ear, and on the tip of his sons' right ears, on the thumb of their right hands, and on the great toe of their right feet. Then he must splash against the altar on every side. [29:20]

What was Moses to splash on Aaron, his garments, Aaron's sons and their garments?

Moses was to splash some of the blood from the altar and some of the anointing oil on Aaron, his sons and their garments. [29:21]

What was the ram for?

The ram was for the priest's consecration to Yahweh. [29:22]

What must forever belong to Aaron and his descendants?

The breast of the offering that is raised high and the thigh of the offering that is presented must forever belong to Aaron and his descendants. [29:26]

What must forever belong to Aaron and his descendants?

The breast of the offering that is raised high and the thigh of the offering that is presented must forever belong to Aaron and his descendants. [29:27]

What must forever belong to Aaron and his descendants?

The breast of the offering that is raised high and the thigh of the offering that is presented must forever belong to Aaron and his descendants. [29:28]

From among whom would the next priest come?

The next priest would come from among Aaron's sons. [29:30]

How must the ram for the consecration be cooked?

The ram for the consecration must be boiled in a holy place. [29:31]

After the altar is consecrated, what happens to anything that touches it?

Whatever touches the altar will be the holy, the same as the altar. [29:37]

When must Moses offer each of the lambs?

He must offer one lamb in the morning, and the other lamb about sundown. [29:39]

What must be offered with the first lamb?

With the first lamb a tenth of an ephah of fine flour mixed with the fourth part of a hin of oil from pressed olives, and the fourth part of a hin of wine as a drink offering, must be offered. [29:40]

Where were the lambs to be offered?

The lambs had to be offered at the entrance to the tent of meeting before Yahweh. [29:42]

Where would Yahweh live?

Yahweh would live among the Israelites and be their God. [29:45]

Exodus 30

What is the purpose of the rings?

The rings must be holders for poles to carry the altar. [30:4]

Where must Moses put the incense altar?

Moses must put the incense altar before the curtain that is by the ark of the covenant decree. [30:6]

What is the only incense that can be burned on the incense altar?

When Aaron lights the lamps again in the evening, he must burn incense on the incense altar. But no other incense must be offered on the incense altar. [30:8]

What is the only incense that can be burned on the incense altar?

When Aaron lights the lamps again in the evening, he must burn incense on the incense altar. But no other incense must be offered on the incense altar. [30:9]

How often must Aaron make atonement on the horns of the incense altar?

Aaron must make atonement on the horns of the incense altar once a year. [30:10]

Why must each person give a ransom for his life to Yahweh?

Each person must give a ransom for his life to Yahweh, so that there would be no plague among them when Moses counted them. [30:12]

After Moses received the atonement money from the Israelites, how must he allocate it?

After Moses received the atonement money from the Israelites, he must allocate it to the work of the tent of meeting. [30:16]

Where must Moses put the large bronze basin?

Moses must put it between the tent of meeting and the altar. [30:18]

What must Aaron and his sons do when they go into the tent of meeting or when they go near to the altar to serve Yahweh by burning an offering?

When they go into the tent of meeting or when they go near to the altar to serve Yahweh by burning an offering, they must wash with water. [30:20]

What are the ingredients in holy anointing oil?

The ingredients in holy anointing oil are five hundred shekels of flowing myrrh, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cinnamon, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cane, five hundred shekels of cassia, measured by the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary, and one hin of olive oil. [30:23]

What are the ingredients in holy anointing oil?

The ingredients in holy anointing oil are five hundred shekels of flowing myrrh, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cinnamon, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cane, five hundred shekels of cassia, measured by the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary, and one hin of olive oil. [30:24]

What are the ingredients in holy anointing oil?

The ingredients in holy anointing oil are five hundred shekels of flowing myrrh, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cinnamon, 250 shekels of sweet-smelling cane, five hundred shekels of cassia, measured by the weight of the shekel of the sanctuary, and one hin of olive oil. [30:25]

What must not be done with the holy anointing oil?

It must not be applied to people's skin, nor must any oil like it with the same formula be made because it is consecrated. [30:32]

What must happen to the person who makes anything like the incense or holy anointing oil to use as a perfume?

Whoever makes anything like it to use as a perfume must be cut off from his people. [30:33]

What must happen to the person who makes anything like the incense or holy anointing oil to use as a perfume?

Whoever makes anything like it to use as a perfume must be cut off from his people. [30:38]

Exodus 31

What abilities would Bezabel have because Yahweh filled him with his spirit?

Yahweh filled Bezalel with his spirit to give him wisdom, understanding, and knowledge, for all kinds of craftsmanship, to make artistic designs and to work in gold, silver, and bronze; also to cut and set stones and to carve wood—to do all kinds of craftsmanship. [31:3]

What abilities would Bezabel have because Yahweh filled him with his spirit?

Yahweh filled Bezalel with his spirit to give him wisdom, understanding, and knowledge, for all kinds of craftsmanship, to make artistic designs and to work in gold, silver, and bronze; also to cut and set stones and to carve wood—to do all kinds of craftsmanship. [31:4]

What abilities would Bezabel have because Yahweh filled him with his spirit?

Yahweh filled Bezalel with his spirit to give him wisdom, understanding, and knowledge, for all kinds of craftsmanship, to make artistic designs and to work in gold, silver, and bronze; also to cut and set stones and to carve wood—to do all kinds of craftsmanship. [31:5]

Why did Yahweh put skill into the hearts of all who were wise?

Yahweh put skill into the hearts of all who were wise so that they may make all that he commanded them. [31:6]

What would happen to anyone who defiled or worked on the Sabbath?

Everyone who defiled the Sabbath must surely be put to death. Anyone who worked on the Sabbath must surely be cut off from his people. [31:14]

Why would the Sabbath always be a sign between Yahweh and the Israelites?

The Sabbath would always be a sign between Yahweh and the Israelites, for in six days Yahweh made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested and was refreshed. [31:17]

Who wrote the on two tablets of covenant decrees?

Yahweh gave Moses two tablets of covenant decrees, written on by Yahweh's own hand. [31:18]

Exodus 32

When did the people gather around Aaron and ask him to make an idol?

When the people saw that Moses delayed in coming down the mountain, they gathered around Aaron and asked him to make an idol. [32:1]

Who received the gold from the people, fashioned it in a mold, and made it into a molded calf?

Aaron received the gold from them, fashioned it in a mold, and made it into a molded calf. [32:4]

After the people offered burnt offerings and brought fellowship offerings, what did they do?

After the people offered burnt offerings and brought fellowship offerings, they sat down to eat and to drink, and then got up to carouse in wild celebration. [32:6]

What did the people say was the god who brought them up out of the land of Egypt?

The people said the golden calf was the god who brought them up out of the land of Egypt. [32:8]

After Yahweh became angry, what did Moses do?

Moses tried to calm down Yahweh his God. [32:11]

From what did Yahweh relent?

Yahweh relented from the punishment that he had said he would inflict on his people. [32:14]

On which parts of the tablets did Yahweh write?

The tablets were written on both their sides, on both the front and the back. [32:15]

When Joshua heard the noise of the people as they shouted, what did he think was the problem?

When Joshua heard the noise of the people as they shouted, he thought there was the noise of combat in the camp. [32:17]

After Moses saw the calf, what did he do to the tablets?

He threw the tablets out of his hands and broke them at the bottom of the mountain. [32:19]

What did Moses do to the calf?

Moses took the calf that the people had made, burned it, ground it to powder, and poured it into the water. Then he made the people of Israel drink it. [32:20]

According to Aaron, how was the calf made?

According to Aaron, the people gave him gold and he threw it into the fire, and out came the calf. [32:24]

Who had let the people get out of control?

Aaron had let them get out of control. [32:25]

Who gathered around Moses when he commanded everyone on Yahweh's side to come to him?

When Moses commanded everyone on Yahweh's side to come to him, all the Levites gathered around him. [32:26]

What did the Levites do?

The Levites did what Moses ordered and about three thousand men out of the people died. [32:28]

Why were the Levites placed into Yahweh's service?

They were placed into Yahweh's service, for each of them acted against his brother. [32:29]

What did Moses want Yahweh to do if Yahweh would not forgive the people's sin?

Moses wanted Yahweh to blot him out of the book Yahweh had written if Yahweh would not forgive the people's sin. [32:32]

How did Yahweh punish the people because they had made the calf?

Yahweh sent a plague on the people because they had made the calf. [32:35]

Exodus 33

What did Yahweh say he would send before Moses?

Yahweh would send an angel before Moses. [33:2]

Why would Yahweh not go up with Moses?

Yahweh would not go up with him, because they were a stubborn people. Yahweh might destroy them on the way. [33:3]

What did Yahweh command the Israelites to take off?

They must take off their jewelry. [33:5]

What would happen whenever Moses entered the tent of meeting?

Whenever Moses entered the tent of meeting, the pillar of cloud would come down and stand at the tent entrance, and Yahweh would speak with Moses. [33:9]

How would Yahweh speak to Moses?

Yahweh would speak to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend. [33:11]

What did Moses want Yahweh to show him? Why?

Moses wanted Yahweh to show him his ways so that Moses might know him and continue to find favor in his sight. [33:13]

How would it be known that Moses found favor in Yahweh's sight?

It would be known that Moses found favor in Yahweh's sight if Yahweh went with them so that they were different from all the other peoples that were on the surface of the earth. [33:16]

Who did Yahweh say he would be gracious and merciful to?

Yahweh said he would be gracious to whom he would be gracious and that he would show mercy on whom he would show mercy. [33:19]

Why could Moses not see Yahweh's face?

Moses could not see Yahweh's face, for no one could see him and live. [33:20]

When Yahweh would take away his hand, what would Moses see?

When Yahweh would take away his hand, Moses would see his back, but Yahweh's face would not be seen. [33:23]

Exodus 34**What would Yahweh write on the new tablets?**

Yahweh would write on the new tablets the words that were on the first tablets, the tablets that Moses broke. [34:1]

Who was allowed anywhere on the mountain?

No one besides Moses was allowed anywhere on the mountain. [34:3]

When Yahweh came down in the cloud and stood with Moses, what did he pronounce?

When Yahweh came down in the cloud and stood with Moses, he pronounced the name “Yahweh”. [34:5]

Would Yahweh clear the guilty?

Yahweh would by no means clear the guilty. [34:7]

What was Yahweh about to make?

Yahweh was about to make a covenant. [34:10]

What would happen if the Israelites made a covenant with the inhabitants of the land where they were going?

If they made a covenant with the inhabitants of the land where they were going, the inhabitants would become a trap among the Israelites. [34:12]

Why must the Israelites worship no other god?

They must worship no other god, for Yahweh, whose name is ‘Jealous,’ is a jealous God. [34:14]

What would happen if the Israelites ate some of the sacrifices of the inhabitants of the land?

If the Israelites ate some of the sacrifices of the inhabitants of the land, they would even take some of their daughters for their sons, and their daughters would commit adultery and go after their own gods, and they would make their sons commit adultery and go after their gods. [34:15]

What would happen if the Israelites ate some of the sacrifices of the inhabitants of the land?

If the Israelites ate some of the sacrifices of the inhabitants of the land, they would even take some of their daughters for their sons, and their daughters would commit adultery and go after their own gods, and they would make their sons commit adultery and go after their gods. [34:16]

Why must the Israelites eat bread without yeast for seven days at the fixed time in the month of Abib?

The Israelites must eat bread without yeast for seven days at the fixed time in the month of Abib, for it was in the month of Abib that the Israelites came out from Egypt. [34:18]

What must happen if the Israelites did not buy back the firstborn of a donkey with a lamb?

If the Israelites did not buy back the firstborn of a donkey with a lamb, then they must break its neck. [34:20]

What must the Israelites do on the seventh day, even at plowing time and in harvest?

On the seventh day, the Israelites must rest. Even at plowing time and in harvest, they must rest. [34:21]

How often must all the men appear before Yahweh?

All the men must appear before Yahweh three times every year. [34:23]

Who would desire to invade the land and take it when the Israelites went up to appear before Yahweh three times every year?

No one would desire to invade the land and take it when the Israelites went up to appear before Yahweh three times every year. [34:24]

What must the Israelites bring to Yahweh's house?

They must bring the best of the first fruits from their fields to Yahweh's house. [34:26]

What did Moses not do when he was with Yahweh for forty days and nights?

When Moses was with Yahweh for forty days and nights; he did not eat any food nor drink any water. [34:28]

When Aaron and the Israelites saw Moses, why were they afraid to come near him?

When Aaron and the Israelites saw Moses, the skin of his face was shining, and they were afraid to come near him. [34:30]

When Moses finished speaking with them, what did he put over his face?

When Moses finished speaking with them, he put a veil over his face. [34:33]

When did Moses remove the veil?

Whenever Moses went before Yahweh to speak with him, he would remove the veil. [34:34]

Exodus 35

When must the Israelites not light a fire?

They must not light a fire in any of their homes on the Sabbath day. [35:3]

Who should take an offering for Yahweh?

All who have a willing heart should take an offering for Yahweh. [35:5]

Where did all the tribes of Israel go?

All the tribes of Israel left and went away from Moses's presence. [35:20]

Who came and brought an offering to Yahweh for the construction of the tabernacle?

Everyone whose heart stirred him up and whom his spirit made willing came and brought an offering to Yahweh for the construction of the tabernacle. [35:21]

What were to be set into the ephod and the breastpiece?

Onyx stones and other gems were to be set into the ephod and the breastpiece. [35:27]

On whom did Yahweh call by name?

Yahweh called by name on Bezalel, son of Uri, son of Hur, from the tribe of Judah. [35:30]

Exodus 36

Who would do the work of building the sanctuary?

Bezalel and Oholiab would work, as well as every wise hearted person in whom Yahweh put skill and understanding to know how to build the sanctuary. [36:1]

What were the people still doing?

The people were still bringing freewill offerings every morning to Moses. [36:3]

What did Moses instruct the people to do?

Moses instructed that no one in the camp should bring any more offerings for the construction of the sanctuary. [36:6]

Where did Bezalel make loops?

He made loops of blue along the outer edge of the end curtain of one set, and he did the same along the outer edge of the end curtain in the second set. [36:11]

How did Bezalel join the curtains together?

He made fifty gold clasps and joined the curtains together with them. [36:13]

Why did Bezalel make fifty bronze clasps?

Bezalel made fifty bronze clasps to join the tentlike covering together so that it might be one. [36:18]

How many bases were under each of the boards?

There were two bases under each of the boards. [36:24]

Where did Bezalel make the crossbar?

He made the crossbar in the center of the boards, that is, halfway up, to reach from end to end. [36:33]

With what did Bezalel cover the hanging's five pillars?

Bezalel covered the hanging's five pillars with gold. [36:38]

Exodus 37

Of what material did Bezalel make the ark?

Bezalel made the ark of acacia wood. [37:1]

Why did Bezalel put the poles into the rings on the ark's sides?

He put the poles into the rings on the ark's sides in order to carry the ark. [37:5]

Which direction did the cherubim face?

The cherubim faced each another and looked toward the center of the atonement lid. [37:9]

What objects would be on the table?

The dishes, spoons, the bowls, and pitchers to be used to pour out the offerings would be on the table. [37:16]

What was located on each branch extending out from the lampstand?

Each branch had three cups made like almond blossoms, with a leafy base and a flower, and three cups made like almond blossoms in the other branch, with a leafy base and a flower. [37:19]

How much gold did Bezalel use to make the the lampstand and its accessories?

He made the lampstand and its accessories with one talent of pure gold. [37:24]

What surrounded the incense altar?

A border of gold surrounded the incense altar. [37:26]

Who made the holy anointing oil and the pure fragrant incense?

Bezalel made the holy anointing oil and the pure fragrant incense. [37:29]

Exodus 38**How long and wide was the altar for burnt offerings?**

The altar for burnt offerings was five cubits long and five cubits wide. [38:1]

How did Bezalel make the altar?

He made the altar hollow, out of planks. [38:7]

To whom did the mirrors belong?

The mirrors belonged to the women who served at the entrance to the tent of meeting. [38:8]

Of what were all the hangings around the courtyard made?

All the hangings around the courtyard were made of fine linen. [38:16]

How many courtyard posts were covered with silver?

All the courtyard posts were covered with silver. [38:17]

Who directed the Levites?

Ithamar, son of Aaron the priest, directed the Levites. [38:21]

How much gold was used for the project?

All the gold that was used for the project was twenty-nine talents and 730 shekels, measured by the standard of the sanctuary shekel. [38:24]

How many men twenty years old and older were counted in the census?

There were 603,550 men twenty years old and older counted in the census. [38:26]

Exodus 39**What was made of one piece with the ephod?**

The waistband was made of one piece with the ephod. [39:5]

What was engraved with the names of Israel's twelve sons?

The onyx stones were engraved with the names of Israel's twelve sons. [39:5]

How many rows of precious stones were on the breastpiece?

There were four rows of precious stones on the breastpiece. [39:10]

What did the braided chains connect?

The braided chains connected the corners of the breastpiece to the two settings, which were attached to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at its front. [39:17]

What did the braided chains connect?

The braided chains connected the corners of the breastpiece to the two settings, which were attached to the shoulder pieces of the ephod at its front. [39:18]

Why did they tie the breastpiece by its rings to the ephod's rings with a blue cord?

They tied the breastpiece by its rings to the ephod's rings with a blue cord, so that it might be attached just above the ephod's finely woven waistband. This was so that the breastpiece might not become unattached from the ephod. [39:21]

What was in the middle of the robe of the ephod?

The robe of the ephod had an opening for the head in the middle. [39:22]

What was in the middle of the robe of the ephod?

The robe of the ephod had an opening for the head in the middle. [39:23]

What did they put between the pomegranates all around on the bottom edge the robe?

They put the bells between the pomegranates all around on the bottom edge the robe. [39:25]

What did they engrave on the plate of the holy crown of pure gold?

They engraved “HOLY TO YAHWEH” on the plate of the holy crown of pure gold. [39:30]

What did Moses find when he examined all the work?

Moses examined all the work, and, behold, they had done it as Yahweh had commanded, in that way they did it. [39:43]

Exodus 40**When must Moses set up the tabernacle?**

On the first day of the first month of the new year Moses must set up the tabernacle. [40:2]

How must Moses shield the ark?

Moses must shield the ark with the curtain. [40:3]

Where must Moses put the large basin?

Moses must put the large basin between the tent of meeting and the altar. [40:7]

Why must Moses anoint the bronze basin and its base?

Moses must anoint the bronze basin and its base to prepare it for service to Yahweh. [40:11]

Where did Moses put the covenant decrees?

Moses put the covenant decrees into the ark. [40:20]

Where did Moses put the golden incense altar?

Moses put the golden incense altar into the tent of meeting in front of the curtain. [40:26]

How often did Moses, Aaron, and his sons wash their hands and their feet from the basin?

Moses, Aaron, and his sons washed their hands and their feet from the basin whenever they would go into the tent of meeting and whenever they would go up to the altar. [40:31]

How often did Moses, Aaron, and his sons wash their hands and their feet from the basin?

Moses, Aaron, and his sons washed their hands and their feet from the basin whenever they would go into the tent of meeting and whenever they would go up to the altar. [40:32]

Why was Moses not able to enter the tent of meeting?

Moses was not able to enter the tent of meeting because the cloud had settled on it, and because Yahweh's glory filled the tabernacle. [40:35]

When would the people of Israel set out on their journey?

Whenever the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle, the people of Israel would set out on their journey. [40:36]

translationWords

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the **priest** priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 23:12-14](#)
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- [Exodus 28:1-3](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Numbers 16:44-46](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)

- Exodus 4:27-28
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 5:19-21
- Exodus 6:10-13
- Exodus 6:26-27
- Exodus 7:1-2
- Exodus 7:6-7
- Exodus 7:8-10
- Exodus 7:19
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 9:8-10
- Exodus 9:11-12
- Exodus 9:27-28
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Exodus 11:9-10
- Exodus 12:1-2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 12:43-44
- Exodus 12:49-51
- Exodus 15:19-21
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 16:9-12
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 17:11-13
- Exodus 19:23-25
- Exodus 24:1-2
- Exodus 24:9-11
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Exodus 28:10-12
- Exodus 28:29-30
- Exodus 28:33-35
- Exodus 28:36-38
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Exodus 29:3-4
- Exodus 29:5-7
- Exodus 29:8-9
- Exodus 29:10-11
- Exodus 29:15-18
- Exodus 29:19-20
- Exodus 29:21

- Exodus 29:24-25
- Exodus 29:26-28
- Exodus 29:29-30
- Exodus 29:31-34
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Exodus 29:43-44
- Exodus 30:7-9
- Exodus 30:10
- Exodus 30:19-21
- Exodus 30:29-31
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Exodus 32:1-2
- Exodus 32:3-4
- Exodus 32:5-6
- Exodus 34:29-31
- Exodus 35:17-19
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 39:1
- Exodus 39:25-26
- Exodus 39:27-29
- Exodus 39:40-41
- Exodus 40:12-13
- Exodus 40:31-33

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Chaldea, Sarah, [Isaac](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Matthew 01:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham**’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Uses:

- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 3:4-6
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Exodus 4:4-5
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 33:1-3

acacia

Definition:

The term “acacia” is the name of a common shrub or tree growing in the land of Canaan in ancient times; it is still plentiful in that region today.

- The orange-brown wood of the acacia tree is very hard and durable, making it a useful material for building things.
- This wood is highly resistant to decay because it is so very dense that it keeps out water, and it has natural preservatives that keep insects from destroying it.
- In the Bible, acacia wood was used to build the tabernacle and the ark of the covenant.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [tabernacle](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 10:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 38:6-7](#)
- [Isaiah 41:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7848

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 25:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 25:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 25:23-24](#)
- [Exodus 25:28-30](#)
- [Exodus 26:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 26:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 26:31-33](#)
- [Exodus 26:36-37](#)
- [Exodus 27:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 27:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 30:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 30:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 35:4-9](#)

- Exodus 35:23-24
- Exodus 36:20-23
- Exodus 36:31-34
- Exodus 36:35-36
- Exodus 37:1-3
- Exodus 37:4-6
- Exodus 37:10-13
- Exodus 37:14-16
- Exodus 37:25-26
- Exodus 37:27-29
- Exodus 38:1-3
- Exodus 38:6-7

acquit

Definition:

The term “acquit” means to formally declare someone to be not guilty of an unlawful or immoral behavior he was accused of.

- This term is sometimes used in the Bible to talk about forgiving sinners.
- Often the context is about wrongly acquitting people who are wicked and rebel against God.
- This could be translated as “declare innocent” or “judge to be not guilty.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 25:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 21:28-30](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)
- [Isaiah 05:22-23](#)
- [Job 10:12-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3444, H5352, H5355, H6403, H6663

Uses:

- [Exodus 21:28-30](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)

adultery, adulterous, adulterer, adulteress, adulterers, adulteresses

Definition:

The term “adultery” refers to a sin that occurs when a married person has sexual relations with someone who is not that person’s spouse. Both of them are guilty of adultery. The term “adulterous” describes this kind of behavior or any person who commits this sin.

- The term “adulterer” refers generally to any person who commits adultery.
- Sometimes the term “adulteress” is used to specify that it was a woman who committed adultery.
- Adultery breaks the promises that a husband and wife made to each other in their covenant of marriage.
- God commanded the Israelites to not commit adultery.
- The term “adulterous” is often used in a figurative sense to describe the people of Israel as being unfaithful to God, especially when they worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the target language does not have one word that means “adultery,” this term could be translated with a phrase such as “having sexual relations with someone else’s wife” or “being intimate with another person’s spouse.”
- Some languages may have an indirect way of talking about adultery, such as “sleeping with someone else’s spouse” or “being unfaithful to one’s wife.” (See: [euphemism](#))
- When “adulterous” is used in a figurative sense, it is best to translate it literally in order to communicate God’s view of his disobedient people as being compared to an unfaithful spouse. If this does not communicate accurately in the target language, the figurative use of “adulterous” could be translated as “unfaithful” or “immoral” or “like an unfaithful spouse.”

(See also: [commit](#), [covenant](#), sexual immorality, [sleep with](#), unfaithful)

Bible References:

- [Exodus 20:12-14](#)
- [Hosea 04:1-2](#)
- [Luke 16:18](#)
- [Matthew 05:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 12:38-40](#)
- [Revelation 02:22-23](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [13:06](#) ”Do not commit **adultery**.”

- **28:02** Do not commit **adultery**.
- **34:07** "The religious leader prayed like this, 'Thank you, God, that I am not a sinner like other men-such as robbers, unjust men, **adulterers**, or even like that tax collector.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5003, H5004, H5005, G3428, G3429, G3430, G3431, G3432

Uses:

- **Exodus 20:12-14**

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:14-16](#)
- [Isaiah 09:11-12](#)
- [Job 06:21-23](#)
- [Lamentations 04:12-13](#)
- [Luke 12:57-59](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:20-22](#)

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: [leprosy](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Amos 05:12-13](#)
- [Colossians 01:24-27](#)
- [Exodus 22:22-24](#)
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804,

G4777, G4778, G5003

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:22-24](#)

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: [leprosy](#), [plague](#), [suffer](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Amos 05:12-13](#)
- [Colossians 01:24-27](#)
- [Exodus 22:22-24](#)
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804,

G4777, G4778, G5003

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful”; in the Bible, it always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 06:2-5](#)
- [Genesis 17:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 35:11-13](#)
- [Job 08:1-3](#)
- [Numbers 24:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 01:7-8](#)
- [Ruth 01:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7706, G3841

Uses:

- [Exodus 6:2-5](#)

altar of incense

Facts:

The altar of incense was a piece of furniture on which a priest would burn incense as an offering to God. It was also called the golden altar.

- The altar of incense was made of wood, and its top and sides were covered with gold. It was about a half meter long, a half meter wide, and one meter tall.
- At first it was kept in the tabernacle. Then it was kept in the temple.
- Every morning and evening a priest would burn incense on it.
- This can also be translated as “altar for burning incense” or “golden altar” or “incense burner” or “incense table.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [incense](#))

Bible References:

- [Luke 01:11-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4196, H7004, G2368, G2379

Uses:

- [Exodus 30:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 30:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 30:7-9](#)
- [Exodus 30:10](#)
- [Exodus 30:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 35:13-16](#)
- [Exodus 37:25-26](#)
- [Exodus 40:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 40:26-27](#)

altar, altars

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:9-10
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Luke 11:49-51](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 23:18-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

Uses:

- [Exodus 17:14-16](#)
- [Exodus 20:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 21:12-14](#)

- Exodus 24:5-6
- Exodus 27:1-2
- Exodus 27:3-4
- Exodus 27:5-6
- Exodus 27:7-8
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Exodus 29:12-14
- Exodus 29:15-18
- Exodus 29:19-20
- Exodus 29:21
- Exodus 29:24-25
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Exodus 29:38-39
- Exodus 29:43-44
- Exodus 30:1-2
- Exodus 30:17-18
- Exodus 30:19-21
- Exodus 30:26-28
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 32:5-6
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 35:13-16
- Exodus 37:27-29
- Exodus 38:1-3
- Exodus 38:4-5
- Exodus 38:6-7
- Exodus 38:30-31
- Exodus 39:36-39
- Exodus 40:5-7
- Exodus 40:8-11
- Exodus 40:31-33

Amalek, Amalekite

Facts:

The Amalekites were a nomadic people group who lived throughout the southern part of Canaan, from the Negev desert to the country of Arabia. This people group was descended from Amalek, the grandson of Esau.

- The Amalekites were bitter enemies of Israel from the time when Israel first came to live in Canaan.
- Sometimes the term “Amalek” is used figuratively to refer to all the Amalekites. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- In one battle against the Amalekites, when Moses held up his hands, the Israelites were winning. When he got tired and his hands came down, they started losing. So Aaron and Hur helped Moses keep his hands up until the Israelite army had defeated the Amalekites.
- Both King Saul and King David led military expeditions against the Amalekites.
- After one victory over the Amalekites, Saul disobeyed God by keeping some of the plunder and by not killing the Amalekite king as God had commanded him to do.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Arabia](#), [David](#), [Esau](#), [Negev](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 04:42-43](#)
- [2 Samuel 01:8-10](#)
- [Exodus 17:8-10](#)
- [Numbers 14:23-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6002, H6003

Uses:

- [Exodus 17:8-10](#)

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- [Amos 02:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 10:15-18](#)
- [Genesis 15:14-16](#)
- [Joshua 09:9-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon. ***15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them. ***15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**. ***15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 23:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

ancestor, father, forefather

Definition:

When used literally, the term “father” refers to a person’s male parent. There are also several figurative uses of this term.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to the male ancestors of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader.”
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:31-32](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [Acts 22:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 31:29-30](#)
- [Genesis 31:41-42](#)
- [Genesis 31:51-53](#)
- [Hebrews 07:4-6](#)
- [John 04:11-12](#)
- [Joshua 24:3-4](#)
- [Malachi 03:6-7](#)
- [Mark 10:7-9](#)

- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 03:7-9
- Matthew 10:21-23
- Matthew 18:12-14
- Romans 04:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G256, G540, G1080, G2495, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

Uses:

- Exodus 3:4-6
- Exodus 6:14-15
- Exodus 15:2-3
- Exodus 18:1-4

angel, angels, archangel

Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term “archangel” refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

- The word “angel” literally means “messenger.”
- The term “archangel” literally means “chief messenger.” The only angel referred to in the Bible as an “archangel” is Michael.
- In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
- Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
- Angels have God’s authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
- Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
- A special phrase, “angel of Yahweh,” has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean “angel who represents Yahweh” or “messenger who serves Yahweh.” 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel’s use of “I” as if Yahweh himself was talking.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “angel” could include “messenger from God” or “God’s heavenly servant” or “God’s spirit messenger.”
- The term “archangel” could be translated as “chief angel” or “head ruling angel” or “leader of the angels.”
- Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
- The phrase “angel of Yahweh” should be translated using the words for “angel” and “Yahweh.” This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include “angel from Yahweh” or “angel sent by Yahweh” or “Yahweh, who looked like an angel.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: chief, [head](#), messenger, Michael, [ruler](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 24:15-16](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 12:22-23](#)

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Genesis 48:14-16
- Luke 02:13-14
- Mark 08:38
- Matthew 13:49-50
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Zechariah 01:7-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:12** God placed large, powerful **angels** at the entrance to the garden to keep anyone from eating the fruit of the tree of life.
- **22:03** The **angel** responded to Zechariah, "I was sent by God to bring you this good news."
- **23:06** Suddenly, a shining **angel** appeared to them (the shepherds), and they were terrified. The **angel** said, "Do not be afraid, because I have some good news for you."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with **angels** praising God!
- **25:08** Then **angels** came and took care of Jesus.
- **38:12** Jesus was very troubled and his sweat was like drops of blood. God sent an **angel** to strengthen him.
- **38:15** "I could ask the Father for an army of **angels** to defend me."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, G2465

Uses:

- Exodus 3:1-3
- Exodus 14:19-20
- Exodus 23:20-22
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 32:33-35
- Exodus 33:1-3

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 32:9-11](#)
- [Isaiah 57:16-17](#)
- [John 06:52-53](#)
- [Mark 10:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 26:6-9](#)
- [Psalms 018:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)
- [Exodus 11:6-8](#)
- [Exodus 22:22-24](#)
- [Exodus 32:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), [consecrate](#), [high priest](#), [King of the Jews](#), [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:20-21](#)
- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)
- [Acts 04:27-28](#)
- [Amos 06:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [James 05:13-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

Uses:

- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Exodus 29:5-7
- Exodus 29:21
- Exodus 29:29-30
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 30:26-28
- Exodus 30:29-31
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:13-16
- Exodus 35:27-29
- Exodus 37:27-29
- Exodus 39:36-39
- Exodus 40:8-11
- Exodus 40:12-13
- Exodus 40:14-16

appoint, appoints, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 08:10-12](#)
- [Acts 03:19-20](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Acts 13:48-49](#)
- [Genesis 41:33-34](#)
- [Numbers 03:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:8-10](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)

Arabia, Arabian

Facts:

Arabia is the largest peninsula in the world, covering nearly 3,000,000 square kilometers. It is located southeast of Israel, and is bordered by the Red Sea, the Arabian Sea, and the Persian Gulf.

- The term “Arabian” is used to refer to someone who lives in Arabia or to something that is connected with Arabia.
- The earliest people to live in Arabia were grandchildren of Shem. Other early inhabitants of Arabia included Abraham’s son Ishmael and his descendants, as well as descendants of Esau.
- The desert region where the Israelites wandered for 40 years was located in Arabia.
- After becoming a believer in Jesus, the apostle Paul spent a few years in the desert of Arabia.
- In his letter to the Christians in Galatia, Paul mentioned that Mt. Sinai was located in Arabia.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Esau](#), Galatia, Ishmael, Shem, [Sinai](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 10:14-15](#)
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- [Jeremiah 25:24-26](#)
- [Nehemiah 02:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6152, H6153, H6163, G688, G690

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [basket](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 16:33-36](#)
- [Exodus 30:5-6](#)
- [Genesis 08:4-5](#)
- [Luke 17:25-27](#)
- [Matthew 24:37-39](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

ark

Definition:

The term “ark” literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

- In the English Bible, the word “ark” is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
- Ways to translate this term could include “very large boat” or “barge” or “cargo ship” or “large, box-shaped boat.”
- The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as “basket.”
- In the phrase “ark of the covenant,” a different Hebrew word is used for “ark.” This could be translated as “box” or “chest” or “container.”
- When choosing a term to translate “ark,” it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [basket](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 16:33-36](#)
- [Exodus 30:5-6](#)
- Genesis 08:4-5
- [Luke 17:25-27](#)
- [Matthew 24:37-39](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

Uses:

- [Exodus 30:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 30:34-36](#)

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [holy place](#), [testimony](#), [witness](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 06:14-15](#)
- [Exodus 25:10-11](#)
- [Hebrews 09:3-5](#)
- [Judges 20:27-28](#)
- [Numbers 07:89](#)
- [Revelation 11:19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068

Uses:

- [Exodus 16:33-36](#)
- [Exodus 25:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 25:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 25:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 25:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 25:22](#)
- [Exodus 26:31-33](#)
- [Exodus 26:34-35](#)

- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 35:10-12
- Exodus 37:1-3
- Exodus 37:4-6
- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 40:3-4
- Exodus 40:5-7
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Exodus 40:21-23

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: [ark](#), [covenant](#), [atonement](#), [holy place](#), [testimony](#), [witness](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 06:14-15](#)
- [Exodus 25:10-11](#)
- [Hebrews 09:3-5](#)
- [Judges 20:27-28](#)
- [Numbers 07:89](#)
- [Revelation 11:19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H727, H1285, H3068

armor

Definition:

The term “armor” refers to the equipment a soldier uses to fight in a battle and protect himself from enemy attacks. It is also used in a figurative way to refer to spiritual armor.

- Parts of a soldier’s armor include a helmet, a shield, a breastplate, leg coverings, and a sword.
- Using the term figuratively, the apostle Paul compares physical armor to spiritual armor that God gives the believer to help him fight spiritual battles.
- The spiritual armor God gives his people to fight against sin and Satan includes truth, righteousness, the gospel of peace, faith, salvation, and the Holy Spirit.
- This could be translated with a term that means “soldier gear” or “protective battle clothing” or “protective covering” or “weapons.”

(See also: [faith](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [peace](#), [salvation](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 31:9-10](#)
- [2 Samuel 20:8](#)
- [Ephesians 06:10-11](#)
- [Jeremiah 51:3-4](#)
- [Luke 11:21-23](#)
- [Nehemiah 04:15-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2185, H2290, H2488, H3627, H4055, H5402, G3696, G3833

Asher

Facts:

Asher was the eighth son of Jacob. His descendants formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel and this tribe was also called “Asher.”

- Asher’s mother was Zilpah, the servant of Leah.
- His name means “happy” or “blessed.”
- Asher was also the name of the territory assigned to the tribe of Asher when the Israelites entered the promised land.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:1-2](#)
- [1 Kings 04:15-17](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 30:12-13](#)
- [Luke 02:36-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H836

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)

Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [idol](#), Baal, Gideon, [image](#), Solomon)

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 18:4-5](#)
- [2 Kings 21:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 27:9](#)
- [Judges 03:7-8](#)
- [Micah 05:12-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H842, H6252, H6253

Uses:

- [Exodus 34:12-14](#)

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 08:14-16](#)
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- [Ezra 10:12-13](#)
- [Hebrews 12:22-24](#)
- [Leviticus 04:20-21](#)
- [Nehemiah 08:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

Uses:

- Exodus 12:3-4

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))

(See also: [council](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 08:14-16](#)
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- [Ezra 10:12-13](#)
- [Hebrews 12:22-24](#)
- [Leviticus 04:20-21](#)
- [Nehemiah 08:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

astray, go astray, led astray, stray

Definition:

The terms “stray” and “go astray” mean to disobey God’s will. People who are “led astray” have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

- The word “astray” gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
- Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have “strayed.” God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and “gone astray.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “go astray” could be translated as “go away from God” or “take a wrong path away from God’s will” or “stop obeying God” or “live in a way that goes away from God.”
- To “lead someone astray” could be translated as “cause someone to disobey God” or “influence someone to stop obeying God” or “cause someone to follow you down a wrong path.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:7-8](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:10-13](#)
- [Exodus 23:4-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 18:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 24:3-5](#)
- [Psalms 058:3-5](#)
- [Psalms 119:109-110](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G4105

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:4-5](#)

atonement lid

Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [atonement](#), [cherubim](#), propitiation, redeem)

Bible References:

- [Exodus 25:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 30:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 40:17-20](#)
- [Leviticus 16:1-2](#)
- [Numbers 07:89](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3727, G2435

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 30:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 35:10-12](#)
- [Exodus 37:4-6](#)
- [Exodus 37:7-9](#)

- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 40:17-20

atonement, atone, atones, atoned

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](#), [forgive](#), propitiation, reconcile, redeem)

Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 43:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Leviticus 04:20-21](#)
- [Numbers 05:8-10](#)
- [Numbers 28:19-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G2643

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 25:22](#)
- [Exodus 26:34-35](#)
- [Exodus 29:31-34](#)
- [Exodus 29:35-37](#)

- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30:10](#)
- [Exodus 30:15-16](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 32:30-32](#)

authority, authorities

Definition:

The term “authority” refers to the power of influence and control that someone has over someone else.

- Kings and other governing rulers have authority over the people they are ruling.
- The word “authorities” can refer to people, governments, or organizations that have authority over others.
- The word “authorities” can also refer to spirit beings who have power over people who have not submitted themselves to God’s authority.
- Masters have authority over their servants or slaves. Parents have authority over their children.
- Governments have the authority or right to make laws that govern their citizens.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “authority” can also be translated as “control” or “right” or “qualifications.”
- Sometimes “authority” is used with the meaning of “power.”
- When “authorities” is used to refer to people or organizations who rule people, it could also be translated as “leaders” or “rulers” or “powers.”
- The phrase “by his own authority” could also be translated as, “with his own right to lead” or “based on his own qualifications.”
- The expression, “under authority” could be translated as, “responsible to obey” or “having to obey others’ commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [obey](#), [power](#), [ruler](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:10-12](#)
- [Esther 09:29](#)
- [Genesis 41:35-36](#)
- [Jonah 03:6-7](#)
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Luke 20:1-2](#)
- [Mark 01:21-22](#)
- [Matthew 08:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 28:18-19](#)
- [Titus 03:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8633, G831, G1413, G1849, G1850, G2003, G2715, G5247

avenge, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “to avenge” could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 24:12-13](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:15-17](#)
- [Isaiah 47:3-5](#)
- [Leviticus 19:17-18](#)
- [Psalms 018:46-47](#)
- [Romans 12:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H6544, H6546, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G1558, G2917, G3709

Uses:

- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)

barren**Definition:**

To be “barren” means to not be fertile or fruitful.

- Soil or land that is barren is not able to produce any plants.
- A woman who is barren is one who is physically unable to conceive or bear a child.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “barren” is used to refer to land, it could be translated as “not fertile” or “unfruitful” or “without plants.”
- When it is referring to a barren woman, it could be translated as “childless” or “not able to bear children” or “unable to conceive a child.”

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 02:5](#)
- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 11:29-30](#)
- [Job 03:6-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4420, H6115, H6135, H6723, H7909, H7921, G692, G4723

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:26-29](#)

basket

Definition:

The term “basket” refers to a container made of woven material.

- In biblical times, baskets were probably woven with strong plant materials, such as wood from peeled tree branches or twigs.
- A basket could be coated with a waterproof substance so that it could float.
- When Moses was a baby, his mother made a waterproof basket to put him in and floated it among the reeds of the Nile River.
- The word translated as “basket” in that story is the same word that is translated as “ark” referring to the boat that Noah built. The common meaning of its use in these two contexts may be “floating container.”

(See also: [ark](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), Noah)

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 11:32-33](#)
- [Acts 09:23-25](#)
- [Amos 08:1-3](#)
- [John 06:13-15](#)
- [Judges 06:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 14:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H374, H1731, H1736, H2935, H3619, H5536, H7991, G2894, G3426, G4553, G4711

Uses:

- [Exodus 29:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 29:22-23](#)
- [Exodus 29:31-34](#)

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: [authority](#), [Daniel](#), [livestock](#), [nation](#), [power](#), [reveal](#), [Beelzebul](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:31-32](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:44-45](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)
- [Jeremiah 16:1-4](#)
- [Leviticus 07:21](#)
- [Psalms 049:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

Uses:

- [Exodus 11:6-8](#)

believe, believes, believed, belief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”

(See also: [faith](#), [believer](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:23-24](#)
- [Acts 09:40-43](#)
- [Acts 28:23-24](#)
- [Genesis 15:6-8](#)
- [Genesis 45:24-26](#)
- [Habakkuk 01:5-7](#)
- [Job 09:16-18](#)
- [John 01:12-13](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G544, G569, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

Uses:

- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 4:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 4:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 4:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 19:7-9](#)

believer

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

(See also: apostle, [believe](#), Christian, disciple)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 09:3-6](#)
- [Acts 06:5-6](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.

- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called “Christians.”
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4100, G4103

Benjamin

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, “son of my right hand.”

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Paul](#), [Rachel](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:1-2](#)
- [1 Kings 02:8-9](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 35:16-20](#)
- [Genesis 42:1-4](#)
- [Genesis 42:35-36](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as “to restrain” or “to prevent” or “to keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), [prison](#), [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- [Leviticus 08:6-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

blasphemy, blaspheme, blasphemous, blasphemies

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “blasphemy” refers to speaking in a way that shows a deep disrespect for God or people. To “blaspheme” someone is to speak against that person so that others think something false or bad about him.

- Most often, to blaspheme God means to slander or insult him by saying things that are not true about him or by behaving in an immoral way that dishonors him.
- It is blasphemy for a human being to claim to be God or to claim that there is a God other than the one true God.
- Some English versions translate this term as “slander” when it refers to blaspheming people.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “blaspheme” can be translated as to “say evil things against” or to “dishonor God” or to “slander.”
- Ways to translate “blasphemy” could include “speaking wrongly about others” or “slander” or “spreading false rumors.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [slander](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 01:12-14](#)
- [Acts 06:10-11](#)
- [Acts 26:9-11](#)
- [James 02:5-7](#)
- [John 10:32-33](#)
- [Luke 12:8-10](#)
- [Mark 14:63-65](#)
- [Matthew 12:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 26:65-66](#)
- [Psalms 074:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1288, H1442, H2778, H5006, H5007, H5344, G987, G988, G989

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:28](#)

blemish

Facts:

The term “blemish” refers to a physical defect or imperfection on an animal or person. It can also refer to spiritual imperfections and faults in people.

- For certain sacrifices, God instructed the Israelites to offer an animal with no blemishes or defects.
- This is a picture of how Jesus Christ was the perfect sacrifice, without any sin.
- Believers in Christ have been cleansed from their sin by his blood and are considered to be without blemish.
- Ways to translate this term could include “defect” or “imperfection” or “sin,” depending on the context.

(See also: [believer](#), [clean](#), [sacrifice](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:18-19](#)
- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Deuteronomy 15:19-21](#)
- [Numbers 06:13-15](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04:6-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3971, H8400, H8549, G3470

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:5-8](#)

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: [praise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 10:14-17](#)
- [Acts 13:32-34](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [Isaiah 44:3-4](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [Luke 06:20-21](#)
- [Matthew 26:26](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:5-6](#)
- [Romans 04:9-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

Uses:

- Exodus 12:31-33
- Exodus 20:8-11
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 32:28-29
- Exodus 39:42-43

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 016:4](#)
- [Psalms 105:28-30](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

Uses:

- Exodus 4:24-26
- Exodus 7:16-18
- Exodus 12:5-8
- Exodus 12:21-22
- Exodus 24:7-8
- Exodus 29:12-14
- Exodus 29:15-18
- Exodus 29:19-20
- Exodus 29:21
- Exodus 30:10
- Exodus 34:25-26

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 29:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 32:30-32](#)
- [Genesis 07:23-24](#)
- [Psalm 051:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3971, H4229, G631, G1591, G1813

Uses:

- [Exodus 32:30-32](#)
- [Exodus 32:33-35](#)

bow, bow down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)
- [Genesis 24:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 44:14-15](#)
- [Isaiah 44:19](#)
- [Luke 24:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 02:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4781, G4794

Uses:

- Exodus 4:29-31
- Exodus 11:6-8
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 18:7-8
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 34:8-9

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast.
- Bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. In the Bible this is called “unleavened bread” and was used for the Jews’ passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#))
- The term “bread of the presence” referred to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The figurative term “bread from heaven” referred to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert.
- Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”
- When Jesus and his disciples were eating the Passover meal together before his death, he compared the unleavened Passover bread to his body which would be wounded and killed on a cross.
- Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:46-47](#)
- [Acts 27:33-35](#)
- [Exodus 16:13-15](#)
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)
- [Mark 06:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 04:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)

- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Exodus 16:22-23
- Exodus 25:28-30
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Exodus 29:22-23
- Exodus 29:31-34
- Exodus 34:18
- Exodus 35:13-16
- Exodus 39:36-39
- Exodus 40:21-23

breastplate, breastpiece

Definition:

The term “breastplate” refers to a piece of armor covering the front of the chest to protect a soldier during battle. The term “breastpiece” refers to a special piece of clothing that the Israelite high priest wore over the front part of his chest.

- A “breastplate” used by a soldier could be made of wood, metal, or animal skin. It was made to prevent arrows, spears, or swords from piercing the chest of the soldier.
- The “breastpiece” worn by the Israelite high priest was made of cloth and had valuable gems attached to it. The priest wore this when he was performing his duties of service to God in the temple.
- Other ways to translate the term “breastplate” could include “metal protective chest covering” or “armor piece protecting the chest.”
- The term “breastpiece” could be translated with a word that means “priestly clothing covering the chest” or “priestly garment piece” or “front piece of priest’s clothing.”

(See also: [armor](#), [high priest](#), [pierce](#), [priest](#), [temple](#), [warrior](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:8-11](#)
- [Exodus 39:14-16](#)
- [Isaiah 59:17-18](#)
- [Revelation 09:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2833 , H8302, G2382

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 28:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 28:15-16](#)
- [Exodus 28:21-24](#)
- [Exodus 28:25-26](#)
- [Exodus 28:27-28](#)
- [Exodus 28:29-30](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 35:4-9](#)
- [Exodus 35:27-29](#)

- Exodus 39:8-9
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Exodus 39:17-18
- Exodus 39:19-20
- Exodus 39:21

bribe

Definition:

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as, “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 08:1-3](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 07:7](#)
- [Isaiah 01:23](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Proverbs 15:27-28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8641, G5260

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)

bride

Definition:

A bride is the woman in a wedding ceremony who is getting married to her husband, the bridegroom.

- The term “bride” is used as a metaphor for believers in Jesus, the Church.
- Jesus is metaphorically called the “bridegroom” for the Church. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [bridegroom](#), [church](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 22:16-17](#)
- [Isaiah 62:5](#)
- [Joel 02:15-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3618, G3565

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:16-17](#)

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the “Bridegroom” who will someday come for his “Bride,” the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: [bride](#))

Bible References:

- [Isaiah 62:5](#)
- [Joel 02:15-16](#)
- [John 03:29-30](#)
- [Luke 05:33-35](#)
- [Mark 02:18-19](#)
- [Mark 02:20-21](#)
- [Matthew 09:14-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [armor](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 07:15-17](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:37-38](#)
- [Daniel 02:44-45](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 26:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 26:36-37](#)
- [Exodus 27:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 27:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 27:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 27:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 27:11-13](#)
- [Exodus 27:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 30:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 31:3-5](#)

- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:13-16
- Exodus 35:23-24
- Exodus 35:30-33
- Exodus 36:18-19
- Exodus 36:37-38
- Exodus 38:1-3
- Exodus 38:4-5
- Exodus 38:6-7
- Exodus 38:8
- Exodus 38:9-10
- Exodus 38:11-12
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:27-29
- Exodus 38:30-31
- Exodus 39:36-39
- Exodus 40:8-11

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Genesis 29:9-10](#)
- [Leviticus 19:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 03:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:6-7](#)

burden

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 03:6-9](#)
- [Galatians 06:1-2](#)
- [Galatians 06:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 49:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 11:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 23:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H92, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4858, H4864, H4942, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G1117, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

Uses:

- [Exodus 18:17-20](#)

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 40:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 08:20-22](#)
- [Genesis 22:1-3](#)
- [Leviticus 03:3-5](#)
- [Mark 12:32-34](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

Uses:

- [Exodus 10:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 20:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 24:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 29:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 29:24-25](#)
- [Exodus 29:41-42](#)
- [Exodus 30:7-9](#)
- [Exodus 30:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 30:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 32:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 35:13-16](#)
- [Exodus 38:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 40:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 40:8-11](#)

call, calls, calling, called

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” literally means to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. There are also several figurative meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- The term “called” is used in the Bible to mean that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of calling someone a name. For example, “He is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God knows a person’s name personally and has specifically chosen him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know your name and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 18:22-24](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- [Ephesians 04:1-3](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 02:13-15](#)
- [Philippians 03:12-14](#)

{{tag>publish ktlink }}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 17:4-7](#)
- [Exodus 17:14-16](#)
- [Exodus 19:3-6](#)
- [Exodus 24:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 31:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 33:7-9](#)
- [Exodus 34:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 35:30-33](#)

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), unclean)

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 05:20-22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 09:1-4](#)
- [Mark 10:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 19:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H327, H1581, G2574

Uses:

- [Exodus 9:1-4](#)

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Exodus 03:7-8](#)
- Genesis 09:18-19
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:5-7
- Genesis 47:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G2581, G5478

Uses:

- Exodus 3:7-8
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 6:14-15
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Exodus 15:14-15
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 23:26-29
- Exodus 33:1-3
- Exodus 34:10-11

captive, captivity

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression “to take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, [prison](#), [seize](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 10:5-6](#)
- [Isaiah 20:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 43:1-3](#)
- [Luke 04:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H2925, H6808, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7870, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

cast out, drive out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, lots)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:17-19](#)
- [Mark 03:13-16](#)
- [Mark 09:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 07:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 09:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 12:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 17:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:37-40](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 34:23-24](#)

census

Definition:

The term “census” refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

- The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
- Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.
- For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
- When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

Translation Suggestions

- Possible ways to translate this term could include, “name counting” or “list of names” or “enrollment.”
- The phrase “take a census” could be translated as “register people’s names” or “enroll people” or “write down people’s names.”

(See also: [nation](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:35-37](#)
- [Exodus 30:11-14](#)
- [Exodus 38:24-26](#)
- [Luke 02:1-3](#)
- [Numbers 04:1-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, H5674, H5921, H6485, H7218, G582, G583

Uses:

- [Exodus 30:11-14](#)
- [Exodus 38:24-26](#)

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 09:22](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)
- [Acts 08:29-31](#)
- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Daniel 11:40-41](#)
- [Exodus 14:23-25](#)
- [Genesis 41:42-43](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H668, H2021, H4817, H4818, H5699, H7393, H7395, H7396, H7398, G716, G4480

Uses:

- [Exodus 14:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 14:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 15:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 15:19-21](#)

cherubim, cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 13:5-6](#)
- [1 Kings 06:23-26](#)
- [Exodus 25:15-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 09:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 03:22-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3742, G5502

Uses:

- Exodus 25:15-18
- Exodus 25:19-21
- Exodus 25:22
- Exodus 26:1-3
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 36:8-10
- Exodus 36:35-36
- Exodus 37:7-9

chief priests

Definition:

The chief priests were important Jewish religious leaders during the time that Jesus lived on earth.

- The chief priests were responsible for everything needed for the worship services at the temple. They were also in charge of the money that was given to the temple.
- They were higher in rank and power than the ordinary priests. Only the high priest had more authority.
- The chief priests were some of Jesus' main enemies and they strongly influenced the Roman leaders to arrest and kill him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "chief priests" could also be translated as "head priests" or "leading priests" or "ruling priests."
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term "high priest."

(See also: chief, [high priest](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:13-16](#)
- [Acts 22:30](#)
- [Acts 26:12-14](#)
- [Luke 20:1-2](#)
- [Mark 08:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 16:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 26:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 26:59-61](#)
- [Matthew 27:41-42](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3548, H7218, G749

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believer](#), beloved)

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 04:19-20](#)
- [Genesis 45:9-11](#)
- [Joshua 08:34-35](#)
- [Nehemiah 05:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

Uses:

- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 34:5-7

chosen one, chosen ones, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones) or ”the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), [Christ](#))

Bible References:

- [2 John 01:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 03:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 65:22-23](#)
- [Luke 18:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 24:19-22](#)

- [Romans 08:33-34](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H970, H972, H977, H1254, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G138, G140, G1586, G1588, G1589, G1951, G4400, G4401, G4758, G4899, G5500

Uses:

- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, [David](#), [Jesus](#), [anoint](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 05:40-42](#)
- [John 01:40-42](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [John 04:25-26](#)
- [Luke 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 01:15-17](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

church, churches, Church

Definition:

In the New Testament, the term “church” refers to a local group of believers in Jesus who regularly met together to pray and hear God’s word preached. The term “the Church” often refers to all Christians.

- This term literally refers to a “called out” assembly or congregation of people who meet together for a special purpose.
- When this term is used to refer to all believers everywhere in the whole body of Christ, some Bible translations capitalize the first letter (“Church”) to distinguish it from the local church.
- Often the believers in a particular city would meet together in someone’s home. These local churches were given the name of the city such as the “church at Ephesus.”
- In the Bible, “church” does not refer to a building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “church” could be translated as a “gathering together” or “assembly” or “congregation” or “ones who meet together.”
- The word or phrase that is used to translate this term should also be able to refer to all believers, not just one small group.
- Make sure that the translation of “church” does not just refer to a building.
- The term used to translate “assembly” in the Old Testament could also be used to translate this term.
- Also consider how it is translated in a local or national Bible translation. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#).)

(See also: [assembly](#), [believer](#), Christian)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:11-13](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [1 Timothy 03:4-5](#)
- [Acts 09:31-32](#)
- [Acts 14:23-26](#)
- [Acts 15:39-41](#)
- [Colossians 04:15-17](#)
- [Ephesians 05:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 16:17-18](#)
- [Philippians 04:14-17](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **43:12** About 3,000 people believed what Peter said and became disciples of Jesus. They were baptized and became part of the **church** at Jerusalem.
- **46:09** Most of the people in Antioch were not Jews, but for the first time, very many of them also became believers. Barnabas and Saul went there to teach these new believers more about Jesus and to strengthen the **church**.
- **46:10** So the **church** in Antioch prayed for Barnabas and Saul and placed their hands on them. Then they sent them off to preach the good news of Jesus in many other places.
- **47:13** The good news of Jesus kept spreading, and the **Church** kept growing.
- **50:01** For almost 2,000 years, more and more people around the world have been hearing the good news about Jesus the Messiah. The **Church** has been growing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G1577

circumcise, circumcised, circumcision

Definition:

The term “circumcise” means to cut off the foreskin of a man or male child. A circumcision ceremony may be performed in connection with this.

- God commanded Abraham to circumcise every male among his family and servants as a sign of God’s covenant with them.
- God also commanded Abraham’s descendants to continue to do this for every baby boy born into their households.
- The phrase, “circumcision of the heart” refers figuratively to the “cutting away” or removal of sin from a person.
- In a spiritual sense, “the circumcised” refers to people whom God has purified from sin through the blood of Jesus and who are his people.
- The term “uncircumcised” refers to those who have not been circumcised physically. It can also refer figuratively to those who have not been circumcised spiritually, who do not have a relationship with God.

Translation Suggestions:

- If the culture of the target language performs circumcisions on males, the word used to refer to this should be used for this term.
- Other ways to translate this term would be, “cut around” or “cut in a circle” or “cut off the foreskin.”
- In cultures where circumcision is not known, it may be necessary to explain it in a footnote or glossary.
- Make sure the term used to translate this does not refer to females. It may be necessary to translate this with a word or phrase that includes the meaning of “male.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [uncircumcised](#), [covenant](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 10:44-45](#)
- [Acts 11:1-3](#)
- [Acts 15:1-2](#)
- [Colossians 02:10-12](#)
- [Exodus 12:47-48](#)
- [Galatians 05:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 17:9-11](#)
- [Genesis 17:12-14](#)

- [Joshua 05:2-3](#)
- [Philippians 03:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:03** "You must **circumcise** every male in your family."
- **05:05** That day Abraham **circumcised** all the males in his household.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4135, H4139, H5243, G203, G1986, G4059, G4061

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 12:43-44](#)
- [Exodus 12:47-48](#)

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 06:33-35](#)
- [Genesis 10:2-5](#)
- [Genesis 36:15-16](#)
- [Genesis 36:29-30](#)
- [Genesis 36:40-43](#)
- [Joshua 15:20](#)
- [Numbers 03:38-39](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

Uses:

- [Exodus 6:14-15](#)

clean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes

Definition:

The term “clean” literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, it is often used figuratively to mean, “pure,” “holy,” or “free from sin.”

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.

(See also: [holy](#), [unclean](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 12:15-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 24:13](#)
- [Genesis 07:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 07:8-10](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Proverbs 20:29-30](#)
- [Psalms 051:7-9](#)

translationWordsclean, cleans, cleaned, cleanse, cleansed, cleansing, wash, washing, washed, washes

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H3001, H3722, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6565, H6663, H8552, H8562, G2511, G2512, G2513, G3689

Uses:

- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)

clothe, clothed

Definition:

When used figuratively in the Bible, “clothed with” means to be endowed or equipped with something. To “clothe” oneself with something means to seek to have a certain character quality.

- In the same way that clothing is external to your body and is visible to all, when you are “clothed” with a certain character quality, others can readily see it. To “clothe yourself with kindness” means to let your actions be so characterized by kindness that it is easily seen by everyone.
- To be “clothed with power from on high” means to have power given to you.
- This term is also used to express negative experiences, such as “clothed with shame” or “clothed with terror.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the literal figure of speech, “clothe yourselves with.” Another way to translate this could be “put on” if this refers to putting on clothes.
- If that does not give the correct meaning, other ways to translate “clothed with” could be “showing” or “manifesting” or “filled with” or “having the quality of.”
- The term “clothe yourself with” could also be translated as “cover yourself with” or “behave in a way that shows.”

Bible References:

- [Luke 24:48-49](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H899, H1545, H3680, H3736, H3830, H3847, H3848, H4055, H4346, H4374, H5497, H8008, H8071, H8516, G294, G1463, G1737, G1742, G1746, G1902, G2066, G2439, G2440, G3608, G4016, G4470, G4616, G4683, G4749, G5509, G6005

Uses:

- [Exodus 28:40-41](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 29:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 40:12-13](#)

command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [law](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 01:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)
- [Numbers 01:17-19](#)
- [Romans 07:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

Uses:

- Exodus 4:27-28
- Exodus 5:6-9
- Exodus 6:10-13
- Exodus 7:1-2
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 12:49-51
- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 16:16-18
- Exodus 16:28-30
- Exodus 18:21-23
- Exodus 19:7-9
- Exodus 19:23-25
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Exodus 24:12-13
- Exodus 25:22
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Exodus 32:7-8
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Exodus 34:18
- Exodus 34:32-33
- Exodus 35:1-3
- Exodus 35:10-12
- Exodus 35:27-29
- Exodus 36:5-7
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 39:1
- Exodus 39:4-5
- Exodus 39:6-7
- Exodus 39:21
- Exodus 39:25-26
- Exodus 39:27-29
- Exodus 39:30-31
- Exodus 39:42-43
- Exodus 40:14-16
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Exodus 40:21-23

- Exodus 40:24-25
- Exodus 40:26-27
- Exodus 40:31-33

command, commands, commanded, commandment, commandments

Definition:

The term “to command” means to order someone to do something. A “command” or “commandment” is what the person was ordered to do.

- Although these terms have basically the same meaning, “commandment” often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](#), [statute](#), [law](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 01:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)
- [Numbers 01:17-19](#)
- [Romans 07:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H559, H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

commit, committed, commitment

Definition:

The terms “commit” and “commitment” refers to making a decision or promising to do something.

- A person who promises to do something is also described as being “committed” to doing it.
- To “commit” to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has “committed” (or “given”) to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
- The terms “commit” and “committed” also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as “commit a sin” or “commit adultery” or “commit murder.”
- The expression “committed to him the task” could also be translated as “gave him the task” or “entrusted to him the task” or “assigned the task to him.”
- The term “commitment” could be translated by, “task that was given” or “promise that was made.”

(See also: [adultery](#), [faithful](#), [promise](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 28:6-7](#)
- [1 Peter 02:21-23](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 13:40-43](#)
- [Psalm 058:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H5003, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4160, G4203

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- [Daniel 01:8-10](#)
- [Hosea 13:14](#)
- [James 05:9-11](#)
- [Jonah 04:1-3](#)
- [Mark 01:40-42](#)
- [Romans 09:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 22:25-27](#)

confidence, confident

Definition:

The term “confidence” refers to being sure that something is true or certain to happen.

- In the Bible, the term “hope” often means to wait expectantly for something that is sure to happen. The ULB often translates this as “confidence” or “confidence for the future” or “future confidence” especially when it means to be assured of receiving what God has promised to believers in Jesus.
- Often the term “confidence” refers especially to the certainty that believers in Jesus have that they will someday be with God forever in heaven.
- The phrase, “have confidence in God” means to fully expect to receive and experience what God has promised.
- Being “confident” means believing in God’s promises and acting with the assurance that God will do what he has said. This term can also have the meaning of acting boldly and courageously.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “confident” could be translated as “assured” or “very sure.”
- The phrase “be confident” could also be translated as “trust completely” or “be completely sure about” or “know for certain.”
- The term “confidently” could also be translated as “boldly” or “with certainty.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confidence” could include, “complete assurance” or “sure expectation” or “certainty.”

(See also: [believe](#), [believer](#), bold, faithful, hope, [trust](#))

Bible References:

{{topic>confidence&nocomments}}

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H982, H983, H985, H986, H3689, H3690, H4009, G1340, G2292, G3954, G3982, G4006, G5287

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or “to make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 04:3-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:8-9](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

Uses:

- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 29:22-23](#)

consume

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 18:38-40](#)
- [Deuteronomy 07:16](#)
- [Jeremiah 03:23-25](#)
- [Job 07:8-10](#)
- [Numbers 11:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H1497, H1846, H2000, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3631, H3857, H4127, H4529, H4743, H5486, H5487, H5595, H6244, H6789, H7332, H7646, H7829, H8046, H8552, G355, G1159, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315, G5723

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:6-8](#)
- [Exodus 22:6](#)

corrupt, corruption

Definition:

The terms “corrupt” and “corruption” refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

- The term “corrupt” literally means to be “bent” or “broken” morally.
- A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
- To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to corrupt” could be translated as “to influence to do evil” or “to cause to be immoral.”
- A corrupt person could be described as a person “who has become immoral” or “who practices evil.”
- This term could also be translated as “bad” or “immoral” or “evil.”
- The term “corruption” could be translated as “the practice of evil” or “evil” or “immorality.”

(See also: [evil](#))

Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 20:42-44](#)
- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- [Genesis 06:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 12:33-35](#)
- [Psalm 014:1](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1097, H1605, H2254, H2610, H4167, H4743, H4889, H4893, H7843, H7844, H7845, G853, G862, G1311, G1312, G2585, G2704, G4550, G4595, G5349, G5351, G5356

Uses:

- [Exodus 32:7-8](#)

council

Definition:

A council is a group of people who meet to discuss, give advice, and make decisions about important matters.

- A council is usually organized in an official and somewhat permanent way for a specific purpose, such as making decisions about legal matters.
- The “Jewish Council” in Jerusalem, also known as the “Sanhedrin,” had 70 members, which included Jewish leaders such as chief priests, elders, scribes, Pharisees, and Sadducees who met regularly to decide matters of Jewish law. It was this council of religious leaders who put Jesus on trial and decided that he should be killed.
- There were also smaller Jewish councils in other cities.
- The apostle Paul was brought before a Roman council when he was arrested for teaching the gospel.
- Depending on the context, the word “council” could also be translated as “legal assembly” or “political assembly.”
- To be “in council” means to be in a special meeting to decide something.
- Note that this is a different word than “counsel,” which means, “wise advice.”

(See also: [assembly](#), [counsel](#), [Pharisee](#), [law](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:57-58](#)
- [Acts 24:20-21](#)
- [John 03:1-2](#)
- [Luke 22:66-68](#)
- [Mark 13:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 05:21-22](#)
- [Matthew 26:59-61](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4186, H5475, H7277, G1010, G4824, G4892

courage, courageous

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

(See also: [confidence](#), [exhort](#), [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 17:25-27](#)
- [2 Kings 18:19-21](#)
- [Acts 05:12-13](#)
- [Hebrews 13:5-6](#)
- [Matthew 09:20-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2428, H7307, G2114, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3954, G5111

courtyard, court

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as, “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: Gentile, [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 20:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 27:9-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 19:14-15](#)
- [Luke 22:54-55](#)
- [Matthew 26:69-70](#)
- [Numbers 03:24-26](#)
- [Psalms 065:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, G2681, H2691, H5835, H6503, H7339, G833, G933, G4259

Uses:

- Exodus 8:13-15
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Exodus 27:11-13
- Exodus 27:14-16
- Exodus 27:17-19
- Exodus 35:17-19
- Exodus 38:9-10
- Exodus 38:13-16
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:30-31
- Exodus 39:40-41
- Exodus 40:8-11
- Exodus 40:31-33

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- [Ezra 03:10-11](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

Uses:

- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)

covenant, covenants

Definition:

A covenant is a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.

(See also: new covenant, [promise](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 18:11-12](#)
- [2 Samuel 23:5](#)
- [Acts 07:6-8](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)
- [Galatians 03:17-18](#)
- [Genesis 09:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 17:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 31:43-44](#)
- [Joshua 24:24-26](#)
- [Luke 01:72-75](#)
- [Mark 14:22-25](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

Uses:

- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 2:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 6:2-5](#)
- [Exodus 15:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19:3-6](#)
- [Exodus 20 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23:30-33](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 34:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 34:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 34:27-28](#)
- [Exodus 34:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 38:21-23](#)

cow, calf, bull, cattle

Definition:

The term “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: heifer, [ox](#), yoke)

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:9-10](#)
- [1 Samuel 01:24-25](#)
- [2 Chronicles 11:13-15](#)
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 22:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022

Uses:

- [Exodus 9:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 9:18-19](#)
- [Exodus 10:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 12:29-30](#)
- [Exodus 17:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 29:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 29:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 29:12-14](#)

- Exodus 29:35-37
- Exodus 32:3-4
- Exodus 32:5-6
- Exodus 32:19-20
- Exodus 32:21-24

crime, criminal

Definition:

The term “crime” usually refers to a sin that involves breaking the law of a country or state. The term “criminal” refers to someone who has committed a crime.

- Types of crimes include such things as killing a person or stealing someone’s property.
- A criminal is usually captured and kept in some form of captivity such as a prison.
- In Bible times, some criminals became fugitives, wandering from place to place to escape people who wanted to harm them out of revenge for their crime.

(See also: thief)

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Hosea 06:8-9](#)
- [Job 31:26-28](#)
- [Luke 23:32](#)
- [Matthew 27:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2400, H4639, H5771, H7563, H7564, G156, G1462, G2556, G2557, G4467

CROSS**Definition:**

In Bible times, a cross was an upright wooden post stuck into the ground, with a horizontal wooden beam attached to it near the top.

- During the time of the Roman Empire, the Roman government would execute criminals by tying or nailing them to a cross and leaving them there to die.
- Jesus was falsely accused of crimes he did not commit and the Romans put him to death on a cross.
- Note that this is a completely different word from the verb “cross” that means to go over to the other side of something, such as a river or lake.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using a term in the target language that refers to the shape of a cross.
- Consider describing the cross as something on which people were killed, using phrases such as “execution post” or “tree of death.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [crucify](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 01:17](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Galatians 06:11-13](#)
- [John 19:17-18](#)
- [Luke 09:23-25](#)
- [Luke 23:26](#)
- [Matthew 10:37-39](#)
- [Philippians 02:5-8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to crucify him. They made him carry the **cross** on which he would die.
- **40:02** The soldiers brought Jesus to a place called “the Skull” and nailed his arms and feet to the **cross**.

- **40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd mocked Jesus. They said to him, "If you are the Son of God, come down from the **cross** and save yourself! Then we will believe you."
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the **cross**, he received your punishment.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the **cross** instead of you, and that God raised him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G4716

crown, to crown

Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term “to crown” means to put a crown on someone’s head; figuratively it means, “to honor.”

- Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
- A crown was intended to be a symbol of a king’s power and wealth.
- By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus’ head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
- In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
- Used figuratively, “to crown” means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
- Pauls calls fellow believers his “joy and crown.” In this expression, “crown” is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.
- When used figuratively, “crown” could be translated as “prize” or “honor” or “reward.”
- The figurative use of “to crown” could be translated as “to honor” or “to decorate.”
- If a person is “crowned” this could be translated as “a crown was put on his head.”
- The expression, “he was crowned with glory and honor” could be translated as, “glory and honor were bestowed on him” or “he was given glory and honor” or “he was endowed with glory and honor.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [olive](#))

Bible References:

- [John 19:1-3](#)
- [Lamentations 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)
- [Philippians 04:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 021:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2213, H3803, H3804, H4502, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

Uses:

- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 39:30-31](#)

crucify, crucified

Definition:

The term “crucify” means to execute someone by attaching him to a cross and leaving him there to suffer and die in great pain.

- The victim was either tied to the cross or nailed to it. Crucified people died from blood loss or from suffocation.
- The ancient Roman Empire frequently used this method of execution to punish and kill people who were terrible criminals or who had rebelled against the authority of their government.
- The Jewish religious leaders asked the Roman governor to order his soldiers to crucify Jesus. The soldiers nailed Jesus to a cross. He suffered there for six hours, and then died.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “crucify” could be translated as, “kill on a cross” or “execute by nailing to a cross.”

(See also: [cross](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:22-24](#)
- [Galatians 02:20-21](#)
- [Luke 23:20-22](#)
- [Luke 23:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 27:23-24](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***39:11** But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “**Crucify** him (Jesus)!” ***39:12** Pilate became afraid that the crowd would begin to riot, so he ordered his soldiers to **crucify** Jesus. played a major role in the crucifixion of Jesus Christ. ***40:01** After the soldiers mocked Jesus, they led him away to **crucify** him. They made him carry the cross on which he would die. ***40:04** Jesus was **crucified** between two robbers. ***43:06** ”Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know. But you **crucified** him!” ***43:09** ”You **crucified** this man, Jesus.” ***44:08** Peter answered them, ”This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You **crucified** Jesus, but God raised him to life again!”

Word Data:

- Strong's: G388, G4362, G4717, G4957

cry, cry out

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” often mean to say something loudly and urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain or in distress or in anger.

- The phrase “cry out” also means to shout or call out, often with the intent to ask for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), [plead](#))

Bible References:

- [Job 27:8-10](#)
- [Mark 05:5-6](#)
- [Mark 06:48-50](#)
- [Psalm 022:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H603, H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7769, H7771, H7773, H7775, H8173, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

Uses:

- [Exodus 14:10-12](#)

curse, cursed, curses, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as, “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as, “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as, “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- “Cursed be the day I was born” could also be translated as, “I am so miserable it would have been better not to be born.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 14:24-26](#)
- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Galatians 03:10-12](#)
- [Galatians 03:13-14](#)
- [Genesis 03:14-15](#)
- [Genesis 03:17-19](#)
- [James 03:9-10](#)
- [Numbers 22:5-6](#)
- [Psalms 109:28-29](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

Uses:

- **Exodus 21:15-17**
- **Exodus 22:28**

cut off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, “to cut off” could be translated as, “to destroy” or “to send away” or “to separate from” or “to destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:12-14
- Judges 21:6-7
- Proverbs 23:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G609, G851, G1581, G2407, G5257, H1214, H1219, H1438, H1468, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H1824, H1826, H2498, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6202, H6789, H6990, H7082, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113

Uses:

- Exodus 12:15-16
- Exodus 30:32-33
- Exodus 30:37-38
- Exodus 31:12-15

Dan

Facts:

Dan was the fifth son of Jacob and was one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The region settled by the tribe of Dan in the northern part of Canaan also was given this name.

- During the time of Abram, there was a city named Dan located west of Jerusalem.
- Years later, during the time the nation of Israel entered the promised land, a different city named Dan was located about 60 miles north of Jerusalem.
- The term “Danites” refers to the descendants of Dan, who were also members of his clan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jerusalem](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 12:34-35](#)
- [1 Kings 04:24-25](#)
- [Exodus 01:1-5](#)
- [Genesis 14:13-14](#)
- [Genesis 30:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1835, H1839, H2051

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 35:34-35](#)
- [Exodus 38:21-23](#)

Daniel

Facts:

Daniel was an Israelite prophet who as a young man was taken captive by the Babylonian king Nebuchadnezzar around 600 BC.

- This was during the time that many other Israelites from Judah were held captive in Babylon for 70 years.
- Daniel was given the Babylonian name Belteshazzar.
- Daniel was an honorable and righteous young man who obeyed God.
- God enabled Daniel to interpret several dreams or visions for the Babylonian kings.
- Because of this ability and because of his honorable character, Daniel was given a high leadership position in the Babylonian empire.
- Many years later, Daniels enemies tricked the Babylonian king Darius into making a law forbidding the worship of anyone except the king. Daniel continued to pray to God, so he was arrested and thrown into a den of lions. But God rescued him and he was not harmed at all.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Babylon, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- [Daniel 01:6-7](#)
- [Daniel 05:29-31](#)
- [Daniel 07:27-28](#)
- [Ezekiel 14:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 24:15-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1840, H1841, G1158

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: [corrupt](#), [dominion](#), [kingdom](#), [light](#), [redeem](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:4-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:10-12](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [Isaiah 05:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:15-17](#)
- [Joshua 24:7](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), [Saul \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 17:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:1-2](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 02:25-26](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.

***17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath. ***17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul. ***17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.

***17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices. ***17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God. ***17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was.

David repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

day

Definition:

The term “day” literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

- For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
- Sometimes the term “day” is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the “day of Yahweh” or “last days.”
- Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate “day” nonfiguratively.
- Other translations of “day” could include, “time” or “season” or “occasion” or “event,” depending on the context.

(See also: judgment day, last day)

Bible References:

- [Acts 20:4-6](#)
- [Daniel 10:4-6](#)
- [Ezra 06:13-15](#)
- [Ezra 06:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 09:14-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H3118, H6242, G2250

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 12:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 16:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 19:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 40:1-2](#)

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:20-21](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Colossians 02:20-23](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 34:27-29](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Romans 05:10-11](#)
- [Romans 05:12-13](#)
- [Romans 06:10-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. *

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1478, H4191, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8546, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G599, G615, G684, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G5053, G5054

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:6-7](#)

- Exodus 6:20-22
- Exodus 7:16-18
- Exodus 8:13-15
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:18-19
- Exodus 10:16-18
- Exodus 12:31-33
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Exodus 20:18-21
- Exodus 22:10-13
- Exodus 32:28-29

death, die, dead

Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- A person’s spirit leaves his body when he dies.
- When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Spiritual death

- Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
- Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, “to die” may be expressed as “to not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as “to pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, physical life and death are often compared to spiritual life and death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and spiritual death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “spiritual death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)

- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faith](#), [life](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:20-21](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Colossians 02:20-23](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 34:27-29](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Romans 05:10-11](#)
- [Romans 05:12-13](#)
- [Romans 06:10-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** “Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt.”
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** “Jesus replied, “I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**.”
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** “Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead.”
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**. *

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1478, H4191, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8546, G336, G337, G520, G581, G599, G599, G615, G684, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G5053, G5054

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 03:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 31:26-28](#)
- [Leviticus 19:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 27:62-64](#)
- [Micah 06:11-12](#)

{{tag>publish review}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

Uses:

- [Exodus 8:28-29](#)
- [Exodus 21:7-8](#)

decree

Definition:

A decree is a proclamation or law that is publicly declared to all the people.

- God's laws are also called decrees, statutes, or commandments.
- Like laws and commands, decrees must be obeyed.
- An example of a decree by a human ruler was the proclamation by Caesar Augustus that everyone living in the Roman Empire must go back to their hometown in order to be counted in a census.
- To decree something means to give an order that must be obeyed. This could be translated as "to order" or "to command" or "to formally require" or "to publicly make a law."
- Something that is "decreed" to happen means that this "will definitely happen" or "has been decided upon and will not be changed" or "declared absolutely that this will happen."

(See also: [command](#), declare, [law](#), [proclaim](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 15:13-15](#)
- [1 Kings 08:57-58](#)
- [Acts 17:5-7](#)
- [Daniel 02:12-13](#)
- [Esther 01:21-22](#)
- [Luke 02:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H633, H1697, H5715, H1504, H1510, H1881, H1882, H1696, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2711, H2782, H2852, H2940, H2941, H2942, H3791, H3982, H4055, H4406, H4941, H5407, H5713, H6599, H6680, H7010, H8421, G1378

Uses:

- [Exodus 21:1](#)
- [Exodus 21:31-32](#)
- [Exodus 24:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 38:21-23](#)

dedicate, dedication

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: [commit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 15:11-12](#)
- [1 Corinthians 06:9-11](#)
- [1 Kings 07:51](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:3-5](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02:4-5](#)
- [John 17:18-19](#)
- [Luke 02:22-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G1456, G1457

Uses:

- [Exodus 29:31-34](#)

deer, doe, buck, roebuck, fawn**Definition:**

A deer is a large, graceful, four-legged animal that lives in forests or on mountains. The male animal has large horns or antlers on its head.

- The term “doe” refers to a female deer and a “fawn” is the name of a baby deer.
- The term “buck” refers to a male deer.
- A “roebuck” is the male of the specific variety called “roedeer.”
- Deer have strong, thin legs that help them jump high and run fast.
- Their feet have split hooves which help them walk or climb easily on most any terrain.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 22:34-35](#)
- [Genesis 49:19-21](#)
- [Job 39:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 018:33-34](#)
- [Song of Solomon 02:7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H354, H355, H365, H3180, H3280, H6643, H6646

defile, be defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: unclean, [clean](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 23:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 20:24-26](#)
- [Genesis 34:27-29](#)
- [Genesis 49:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 43:27-28](#)
- [Leviticus 11:43-45](#)
- [Mark 07:14-16](#)
- [Matthew 15:10-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351

Uses:

- Exodus 20:24-26
- Exodus 31:12-15

descendant, descended from

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), [Noah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 09:4-5](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [Deuteronomy 02:20-22](#)
- [Genesis 10:1](#)
- [Genesis 28:12-13](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:09** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.” ***04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.” ***05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.” ***17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**” ***18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David. ***21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**. ***48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

Uses:

- [Exodus 6:16-19](#)
- [Exodus 12:24-25](#)
- [Exodus 16:31-32](#)
- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)

- Exodus 28:42-43
- Exodus 29:26-28
- Exodus 30:19-21
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 33:1-3

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 13:16-18](#)
- [Acts 21:37-38](#)
- [Exodus 04:27-28](#)
- [Genesis 37:21-22](#)
- [John 03:14-15](#)
- [Luke 01:80](#)
- [Luke 09:12-14](#)
- [Mark 01:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 04:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 11:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 4:27-28](#)
- [Exodus 5:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 7:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 8:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 13:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 13:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 14:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 14:10-12](#)

- Exodus 15:22-23
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 16:31-32
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 18:5-6
- Exodus 19:1-2
- Exodus 23:30-33

destroyer

Definition:

The term “destroyer” literally means “person who destroys.”

- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 12:23](#)
- [Hebrews 11:27-28](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:25-26](#)
- [Judges 16:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2717, H7843, H7703, G3645

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:23](#)

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:8-9](#)
- [Amos 01:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 24:16-18](#)
- [Ezekiel 16:20-22](#)
- [Luke 15:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 23:13-15](#)
- [Psalms 021:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

Uses:

- [Exodus 24:16-18](#)

dishonor, dishonorable

Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: disgrace, [honor](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [2 Corinthians 06:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)
- [John 08:48-49](#)
- [Leviticus 18:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: 03639 05034 06173 07036 07043 818 819 2617 pizza

disobey, disobedient, disobedience

Definition:

The term “disobey” means to not obey what someone in authority has commanded or instructed. A person who does this is being “disobedient.”

- A person who does something he was told not to do is disobeying.
- To disobey also means to refuse to do something that was commanded.
- The term “disobedient” is also used to describe the character of someone who habitually disobeys or rebels. It means that they are sinful or wicked.
- The term “disobedience” means “the act of not obeying” or “behavior that is against what God wants.”
- A “disobedient people” could be translated by “people who keep on disobeying” or “people who do not do what God commands.”

(See also: [authority](#), [evil](#), [sin](#), [obey](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 13:20-22](#)
- [Acts 26:19-21](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- [Luke 01:16-17](#)
- [Luke 06:49](#)
- [Psalms 089:30-32](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:11** God said to the man, “You listened to your wife and **disobeyed** me.”
- **13:07** If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they **disobeyed** them, God would punish them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept **disobeying** God, he punished them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked faithfully for you! I never **disobeyed** you, and still you did not give me one small goat so I could celebrate with my friends.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4784, H5674, G506, G543, G544, G545, G3847, G3876

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:32-34](#)
- [1 Samuel 09:3-4](#)
- [2 Kings 04:21-22](#)
- [Deuteronomy 05:12-14](#)
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 21:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, H7409, G3678, G3688, G5268

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 9:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 13:11-13](#)
- [Exodus 20:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 21:33-34](#)
- [Exodus 22:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 22:10-13](#)
- [Exodus 23:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 34:19-20](#)

doorpost

Definition:

The “doorpost” is a vertical beam on either side of a door, which supports the top of the door frame.

- Just before God helped the Israelites escape from Egypt, he instructed them to kill a lamb and put its blood on their doorposts.
- In the Old Testament, a slave who desired to serve his master the rest of his life would place his ear on the doorpost of his master’s house to have a nail hammered through his ear into the doorpost.
- This could also be translated as “wooden post on either side of a door” or “sides of a wooden doorframe” or “wood beams on the sides of a doorway.”

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 06:31-32](#)
- [Deuteronomy 11:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 12:5-8](#)
- [Isaiah 57:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H352, H4201

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:5-8](#)
- [Exodus 12:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 21:5-6](#)

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be “offering of grape wine.”
- When Paul says he is being “poured out like an offering” this could also be translated as “I am completely committed to teaching God’s message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar.”

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 25:28-30](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:16-17](#)
- [Genesis 35:14-15](#)
- [Jeremiah 07:16-18](#)
- [Numbers 05:15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:28-30](#)
- [Exodus 29:40](#)
- [Exodus 29:41-42](#)
- [Exodus 30:7-9](#)

dung, manure

Definition:

The term “dung” refers to human or animal solid waste, and is also called feces or excrement. When used as fertilizer for enriching the soil, it is called “manure.”

- These terms can also be used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or not important.
- Dried animal dung is often used for fuel.
- The expression “be like dung on the face of the earth” could be translated as “be scattered like worthless dung over the land.”
- The “Dung Gate” in the South Wall of Jerusalem was probably the gate where garbage and trash were taken out of the city.

(See also: [gate](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 14:9-10](#)
- [2 Kings 06:24-26](#)
- [Isaiah 25:9-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 08:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H830, H1119, H1557, H1561, H1686, H1828, H6569, H6675, G906, G4657

Uses:

- [Exodus 29:12-14](#)

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: [Daniel](#), [free](#), [Nebuchadnezzar](#), [power](#))

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 01:23-24](#)
- [Daniel 07:4-5](#)
- [Jeremiah 04:13-15](#)
- [Leviticus 11:13-16](#)
- [Revelation 04:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, H7360, G105

Uses:

- [Exodus 19:3-6](#)

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:38-40](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02:11-12](#)
- [Daniel 04:35](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Matthew 06:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Zechariah 06:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

Uses:

- [Exodus 9:13-14](#)

- [Exodus 9:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 19:3-6](#)
- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)
- [Exodus 31:16-17](#)

Edom, Edomite, Idumea

Facts:

Edom was another name for Esau. The region where he lived also became known as “Edom” and later, “Idumea.” The “Edomites” were his descendants.

- The region of Edom changed locations over time. It was mostly located to the south of Israel and eventually extended into southern Judah.
- During New Testament times, Edom covered the southern half of the province of Judea. The Greeks called it “Idumea.”
- The name “Edom” means “red,” which may refer to the fact that Esau was covered with red hair when he was born. Or it may refer to the red lentil stew that Esau traded his birthright for.
- In the Old Testament, the country of Edom is often mentioned as an enemy of Israel.
- The entire book of Obadiah is about the destruction of Edom. Other Old Testament prophets also spoke negative prophecies against Edom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), [birthright](#), [Esau](#), [Obadiah](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 32:3-5
- Genesis 36:1-3
- [Isaiah 11:14-15](#)
- [Joshua 11:16-17](#)
- [Obadiah 01:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H123, H130, H8165, G2401

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:14-15](#)

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), [Nile River](#), patriarchs)

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 04:7-9](#)
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 03:7-8](#)
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- [Matthew 02:13-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

Uses:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Exodus 1:8-10
- Exodus 1:18-19
- Exodus 2:11-12
- Exodus 2:18-20
- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Exodus 3:9-10
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Exodus 3:19-22
- Exodus 4:18-20
- Exodus 5:3-5
- Exodus 5:12-14
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 6:10-13
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 7:16-18
- Exodus 7:19
- Exodus 7:23-25
- Exodus 9:5-7
- Exodus 9:18-19
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 11:1-3
- Exodus 12:1-2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 12:34-36
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 16:31-32
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 19:1-2
- Exodus 20:1-3
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Exodus 23:6-9
- Exodus 29:45-46
- Exodus 32:1-2

- Exodus 32:3-4
- Exodus 33:1-3
- Exodus 34:18

elder

Definition:

Elders are spiritually mature men who have responsibilities of spiritual and practical leadership among God's people.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish elders continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian elders gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers.
- Elders in these churches included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 11:1-3](#)
- [1 Timothy 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:14-16](#)
- [Acts 05:19-21](#)
- [Acts 14:23-26](#)
- [Mark 11:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 21:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 4:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 12:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 17:4-7](#)
- [Exodus 19:7-9](#)
- [Exodus 24:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 24:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 24:14-15](#)

endure, endurance

Definition:

The term “endure” means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

- It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
- The term “endurance” can mean “patience” or “bearing up under a trial” or “persevering when being persecuted.”
- The encouragement to Christians to “endure to the end” is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
- To “endure suffering” can also mean to “experience suffering.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate the term “endure” could include “persevere” or “keep believing” or “continue to do what God wants you to do” or “stand firm.”
- In some contexts, “to endure” could be translated as “to experience” or “to go through.”
- With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term “endure” could also be translated as “last” or “continue.” The phrase “will not endure” could be translated as “will not last” or “will not continue to survive.”
- Ways to translate “endurance” could include “perseverance” or “continuing to believe” or “remaining faithful.”

(See also: [persevere](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:11-13](#)
- [James 01:1-3](#)
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- [Luke 21:16-19](#)
- [Matthew 13:20-21](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)
- [Romans 05:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H3885, H5331, H5375, H5975, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2553, G2594, G3114, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

Uses:

- [Exodus 18:21-23](#)

enslave, in bondage

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- [Genesis 15:12-13](#)
- [Jeremiah 30:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

Uses:

- [Exodus 6:2-5](#)

enslave, in bondage

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: [free](#), [righteous](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- [Genesis 15:12-13](#)
- [Jeremiah 30:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

envy, covet**Definition:**

The term “envy” refers to being jealous of someone because of what that person possesses or because of that person’s admirable qualities. The term “covet” means to strongly desire to have something.

- Envy is normally a negative feeling of resentment because of another person’s success, good fortune, or possessions.
- Coveting is a strong desire to have someone else’s property, or even someone else’s spouse.

(See also: [jealous](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 13:4-7](#)
- [1 Peter 02:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 20:15-17](#)
- [Mark 07:20-23](#)
- [Proverbs 03:31-32](#)
- [Romans 01:29-31](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H183, H1214, H1215, H2530, H3415, H5869, H7065, H7068, G866, G1937, G2205, G2206, G3713, G3788, G4123, G4124, G4190, G5354, G5355, G5366

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:15-17](#)

ephod

Definition:

An ephod was an apron-like garment worn by the Israelite priests. It had two parts, front and back, that were joined together at the shoulders and tied around the waist with a cloth belt.

- One kind of ephod was made of plain linen and was worn by the ordinary priests.
- The ephod worn by the high priest was specially embroidered with gold, blue, purple, and red yarn.
- The breastpiece of the high priest was attached to the front of the ephod. Behind the breastpiece were stored the Urim and Thummim, which were stones used for asking God what his will was in certain matters.
- The judge Gideon foolishly made an ephod out of gold and it became something that the Israelites worshiped as an idol.

(See also: [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 02:18-19](#)
- [Exodus 28:4-5](#)
- [Hosea 03:4-5](#)
- [Judges 08:27-28](#)
- [Leviticus 08:6-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 28:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 28:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 28:10-12](#)
- [Exodus 28:15-16](#)
- [Exodus 28:25-26](#)
- [Exodus 28:27-28](#)
- [Exodus 28:31-32](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 35:4-9](#)
- [Exodus 35:27-29](#)

- Exodus 39:2-3
- Exodus 39:4-5
- Exodus 39:6-7
- Exodus 39:8-9
- Exodus 39:17-18
- Exodus 39:19-20
- Exodus 39:21
- Exodus 39:22-24

Esau

Facts:

Esau was one of the twin sons of Isaac and Rebekah. He was the first baby born to them. His twin brother was Jacob.

- Esau sold his birthright to his brother Jacob in exchange for a bowl of food.
- Since Esau was born first, his father Isaac was supposed to give him a special blessing. But Jacob tricked Isaac into giving him that blessing instead. At first Esau was so angry that he wanted to kill Jacob, but later he forgave him.
- Esau had many children and grandchildren, and these descendants formed a large people group living in the land of Canaan.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Edom](#), [Isaac](#), [Jacob](#), Rebekah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 25:29-30
- Genesis 26:34-35
- Genesis 27:11-12
- Genesis 32:3-5
- [Hebrews 12:14-17](#)
- [Romans 09:10-13](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:07** When Rebekah's babies were born, the older son came out red and hairy, and they named him **Esau**. ***07:02** So **Esau** gave Jacob his rights as the oldest son. ***07:04** When Isaac felt the goat hair and smelled the clothes, he thought it was **Esau** and blessed him. ***07:05** **Esau** hated Jacob because Jacob had stolen his rights as oldest son and also his blessing. ***07:10** But **Esau** had already forgiven Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6215, G2269

Euphrates River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 05:7-9](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09:25-26](#)
- [Exodus 23:30-33](#)
- [Genesis 02:13-14](#)
- [Isaiah 07:20-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G2166

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:30-33](#)

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:1-2](#)
- [1 John 05:11-12](#)
- [Acts 13:46-47](#)
- [Genesis 17:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 48:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 09:6-7](#)
- [Isaiah 40:27-28](#)
- [Luke 18:18-21](#)
- [Romans 05:20-21](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5703, H5769, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](#), [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), [demon](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 24:10-11](#)
- [1 Timothy 06:9-10](#)
- [3 John 01:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 06:5-6](#)
- [Job 01:1-3](#)
- [Job 08:19-20](#)
- [Judges 09:55-57](#)
- [Luke 06:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:11-12](#)
- [Proverbs 03:7-8](#)
- [Psalms 022:16-17](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

Uses:

- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 9:27-28](#)
- [Exodus 10:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)
- [Exodus 23:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 32:12-14](#)

exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: [praise](#), [worship](#), glorify, boast, [proud](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:5-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:47-49](#)
- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)
- [Psalms 018:46-47](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:2-3](#)

exhort, exhortation

Definition:

The term “exhort” means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called “exhortation.”

- The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God’s will.
- The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “exhort” could also be translated as “strongly urge” or “persuade” or “advise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
- In most contexts, the term “exhort” should be translated differently than “encourage,” which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
- Usually this term will also be translated differently from “admonish,” which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [1 Timothy 05:1-2](#)
- [Luke 03:18-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G3867, G3870, G3874, G4389

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Uses:

- Exodus 25:19-21
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 33:10-11
- Exodus 33:19-20
- Exodus 37:7-9

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: [believe](#), faithful)

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 06:7](#)
- [Galatians 02:20-21](#)
- [James 02:18-20](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

Uses:

- [Exodus 14 General Notes](#)

false witness, corrupt witness, false testimony, false report

Definition:

The terms “false witness” and “corrupt witness” refer to a person who says untrue things about a person or an event, usually in a formal setting such as a court.

- A “false testimony” or “false report” is the actual lie that is told.
- To “bear false witness” means to lie or give a false report about something.
- The Bible gives several accounts in which false witnesses were hired to lie about someone in order to have that person punished or killed.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bear false witness” or “give a false testimony” could be translated as “testify falsely” or “give a false report about someone” or “speak falsely against someone” or “lie.”
- When “false witness” refers to a person, it could be translated as “person who lies” or “one who testifies falsely” or “someone who says things that are not true.”

(See also: [testimony](#), [true](#), [witness](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 19:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 20:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 15:18-20](#)
- [Matthew 19:18-19](#)
- [Proverbs 14:5-6](#)
- [Psalms 027:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H6030, H7650, H8267, G1965, G3144, G5571, G5575, G5576, G5577

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 23:1-3](#)

family

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. It often also includes other relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- The Hebrew family was a religious community passing on traditions through worship and instruction.
- Usually the father was the major authority of the family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The term “family” is also used to refer to people who are related spiritually, such as people who are part of God’s family because they believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 08:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 18:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 01:20-22](#)
- [Joshua 02:12-13](#)
- [Luke 02:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:20-22](#)

favor, favors, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

To “favor” is to prefer. When someone favors a person, he regards that person positively and does more to benefit that person than he does to benefit others.

- The term “favoritism” means the attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.
- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means they approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include, “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means “the one who is preferred or loved best.”

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 02:25-26](#)
- [2 Chronicles 19:6-7](#)
- [2 Corinthians 01:11](#)
- [Acts 24:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 41:14-16](#)
- [Genesis 47:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 50:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1293, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5375, H5414, H6437, H6440, H7522, H7965
pizza

Uses:

- Exodus 3:19-22
- Exodus 23:1-3
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:14-16
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 34:8-9

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](#), awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 50:18-21](#)
- [Isaiah 11:3-5](#)
- [Job 06:14-17](#)
- [Jonah 01:8-10](#)
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 10:28-31](#)
- [Proverbs 10:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

Uses:

- Exodus 1:15-17
- Exodus 1:20-22
- Exodus 2:13-14
- Exodus 14:13-14
- Exodus 20:18-21
- Exodus 23:26-29
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Exodus 34:29-31

feast

Definition:

The term “feast” refers to an event where a group of people eat a very large meal together, often for the purpose of celebrating something. The action “to feast” means to eat a large amount of food or to participate in eating a feast together.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In Bible times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- A feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.
- The term “to feast” could also be translated as “to eat lavishly” or “to celebrate by eating lots of food” or “to eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: [festival](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:12-14](#)
- [Genesis 26:30-31](#)
- [Genesis 29:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 40:20-23](#)
- [Jude 01:12-13](#)
- [Luke 02:41-44](#)
- [Luke 14:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 22:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H2287, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4580, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G755, G1062, G1173, G1403, G1456, G1858, G1859, G2165, G3521, G4910

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:6-7](#)

fellowship offering

Facts:

In the Old Testament, the “fellowship offering” was a kind of sacrifice that was offered for different reasons, such as to give thanks to God or to fulfill a vow.

- This offering required the sacrifice of an animal that could be male or female. This was different from the burnt offering, which required a male animal.
- After giving a portion of the sacrifice to God, the person who brought the fellowship offering shared the meat with the priests and other Israelites.
- There was a meal associated with this offering which included unleavened bread.
- This is sometimes called the “peace offering.”

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [fulfill](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [unleavened bread](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 21:25-27](#)
- [2 Chronicles 29:35-36](#)
- [Exodus 24:5-6](#)
- [Leviticus 03:3-5](#)
- [Numbers 06:13-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8002

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 24:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 29:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 32:5-6](#)

festival

Definition:

In general, a festival is a celebration held by a community of people.

- The word for “festival” in the Old Testament literally means “appointed time.”
- The festivals celebrated by the Israelites were specially appointed times or seasons that God had commanded them to observe.
- In some English translations, the word “feast” is used instead of festival because the celebrations included having a large meal together.
- There were several main festivals that the Israelites celebrated every year:
 - Passover
 - Festival of Unleavened Bread
 - Firstfruits
 - Festival of Weeks (Pentecost)
 - Festival of Trumpets
 - Day of Atonement
 - Festival of Shelters
- The purpose of these festivals was to thank God and to remember the amazing things he had done to rescue, protect, and provide for his people.

(See also: [feast](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 23:30-31](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 05:1-2](#)
- [John 04:43-45](#)
- [Luke 22:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1974, H2166, H2282, H2287, H6213, H4150, G1456, G1858, G1859

Uses:

- [Exodus 5:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 10:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 12:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 12:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 12:47-48](#)

- Exodus 23:14-15
- Exodus 23:16-17
- Exodus 23:18-19
- Exodus 32:5-6
- Exodus 34:18

filled with the Holy Spirit

Definition:

The term “filled with the Holy Spirit” is a figurative expression that, when used to describe a person means the Holy Spirit is empowering that person to do God’s will.

- The expression “filled with” is an expression that often means “controlled by.”
- People are “filled with the Holy Spirit” when they follow the Holy Spirit’s leading and completely rely on him to help them do what God wants.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “empowered by the Holy Spirit” or “controlled by the Holy Spirit.” But it should not sound as though the Holy Spirit is forcing the person to do something.
- A sentence such as “he was filled with the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “he was living fully by the Spirit’s power” or “he was completely guided by the Holy Spirit” or “the Holy Spirit was guiding him completely.”
- This term is similar in meaning to the expression “live by the Spirit,” but “filled with the Holy Spirit” emphasizes the completeness with which a person allows the Holy Spirit to have control or influence over his life. So these two expressions should be translated differently, if possible.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:29-31](#)
- [Acts 05:17-18](#)
- [Acts 06:8-9](#)
- [Luke 01:14-15](#)
- [Luke 01:39-41](#)
- [Luke 04:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G40, G4130, G4137, G4151

Uses:

- [Exodus 28:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 31:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 35:30-33](#)

fire

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 16:18-20](#)
- [2 Kings 01:9-10](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [John 15:5-7](#)
- [Luke 03:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Nehemiah 01:3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:5-8](#)
- [Exodus 13:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 24:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 35:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 40:36-38](#)

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 29:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 43:32-34](#)
- [Luke 02:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

Uses:

- Exodus 04 General Notes
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 6:14-15
- Exodus 11:4-5
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Exodus 12:29-30
- Exodus 13:1-2
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Exodus 22:29-31
- Exodus 34:19-20

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 29:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 43:32-34](#)
- [Luke 02:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:13-15](#)
- [Exodus 23:16-17](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 105:34-36](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:16-17](#)
- [Exodus 23:18-19](#)
- [Exodus 34:25-26](#)

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 31:4-5](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:13-15](#)
- [Exodus 23:16-17](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 105:34-36](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kin-folk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [2 John 01:7-8](#)
- [Ephesians 06:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 02:24-25](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 16:17-18](#)
- [Romans 08:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

Uses:

- [Exodus 21:28-30](#)
- [Exodus 29:12-14](#)

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: [goat](#), [ox](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#),)

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 10:28-29](#)
- [2 Chronicles 17:10-11](#)
- [Deuteronomy 14:22-23](#)
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 08:30-32](#)
- [Matthew 26:30-32](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 2:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 3:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 9:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 10:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 12:31-33](#)
- [Exodus 12:37-40](#)
- [Exodus 34:3-4](#)

foreigner, foreign, alien

Definition:

The term “foreigner” refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an “alien.”

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a “foreigner” there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were “foreigners” to God’s covenant.
- Sometimes “foreigner” is translated as “stranger,” but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 02:17-18](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [Deuteronomy 01:15-16](#)
- [Genesis 15:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 17:24-27](#)
- [Luke 17:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 17:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3363, H4033, H5236, H5237, H5361, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 12:19-20](#)
- [Exodus 12:43-44](#)
- [Exodus 12:45-46](#)
- [Exodus 12:49-51](#)
- [Exodus 18:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 20:8-11](#)

- Exodus 21:7-8
- Exodus 22:20-21

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [everlasting](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 02:32-33](#)
- [2 Samuel 03:28-30](#)
- [Daniel 07:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 15:17-18](#)
- [Hebrews 06:19-20](#)
- [Hebrews 10:11-14](#)
- [Job 04:20-21](#)
- [Psalms 021:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5705, H5331, H5703, H5769, H5865, H5957, G165, G166, G1336

Uses:

- Exodus 15:17-18
- Exodus 19:7-9
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 29:26-28
- Exodus 32:12-14

forgive, forgives, forgiven, forgiveness

Definition:

To forgive someone means to not hold a grudge against that person even though they did something hurtful. “Forgiveness” is the act of forgiving someone.

- Forgiving someone often means not punishing that person for something he has done wrong.
- This term can be used figuratively to mean “cancel,” as in the expression “forgive a debt.”
- When people confess their sins, God forgives them based on Jesus’ sacrificial death on the cross.
- Jesus taught his disciples to forgive others as he has forgiven them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “forgive” could be translated as “pardon” or “cancel” or “release” or “not hold against” (someone).
- The term “forgiveness” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “practice of not resenting” or “declaring (someone) as not guilty” or “the act of pardoning.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Colossians 03:12-14](#)
- [Ephesians 04:31-32](#)
- [Genesis 50:15-17](#)
- [Isaiah 55:6-7](#)
- [Joshua 24:19-20](#)
- [Luke 05:20-21](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)
- [Psalms 025:17-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:10** But Esau had already **forgiven** Jacob, and they were happy to see each other again.
- **13:15** Then Moses climbed the mountain again and prayed that God would **forgive** the people. God listened to Moses and **forgave** them.
- **17:13** David repented of his sin and God **forgave** him.
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write his law on the people’s hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would **forgive** their sins.

- **29:01** One day Peter asked Jesus, "Master, how many times should I **forgive** my brother when he sins against me?"
- **29:08** I **forgave** your debt because you begged me.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the **forgiveness** of sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3722, H5375, H5545, H5546, H5547, G859, G863, G5483

Uses:

- **Exodus 10:16-18**
- **Exodus 32:30-32**
- **Exodus 34:5-7**

frankincense

Definition:

Frankincense is a fragrant spice made from tree resin. It is used to make perfumes and incense.

- In Bible times, frankincense was an important spice used to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- This spice is also valuable for its healing and calming qualities.
- When learned men came from an eastern country to visit baby Jesus in Bethlehem, frankincense was one of the three gifts they brought him.

(See also: Bethlehem, learned men)

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 09:28-29](#)
- [Exodus 30:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 02:11-12](#)
- [Numbers 05:15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3828, G3030

Uses:

- [Exodus 30:34-36](#)

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [Galatians 05:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 61:1](#)
- [Leviticus 25:10](#)
- [Romans 06:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5081, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G572, G629, G630, G859, G558, G572, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G2010, G3032, G3089, G3955, G4174, G4506, G5483, G5486

Uses:

- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 21:2-4

free, freedom, liberty

Definition:

The terms “free” or “freedom” refer to not being in slavery, or any other kind of bondage. Another word for “freedom” is “liberty.”

- The expression “to set someone free” or “to free someone” means to provide a way for someone to no longer be in slavery or captivity.
- In the Bible, these terms are often used figuratively to refer to how a believer in Jesus is no longer under the power of sin.
- Having “liberty” or “freedom” can also refer to no longer being required to obey the Law of Moses, but instead being free to live by the teachings and guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “free” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “not bound” or “not enslaved” or “not in slavery” or “not in bondage.”
- The term “freedom” or “liberty” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the state of being free” or “the condition of not being a slave” or “not being bound.”
- The expression “to set free” could be translated as “to cause to be free” or “to rescue from slavery” or “to release from bondage.”
- A person who has been “set free” has been “released” or “taken out of” bondage or slavery.

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [Galatians 05:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 61:1](#)
- [Leviticus 25:10](#)
- [Romans 06:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1865, H2600, H2666, H2668, H2670, H3318, H4800, H5068, H5069, H5071, H5081, H5337, H5352, H5355, H5425, H5674, H5800, H6299, H6362, H7342, H7971, G425, G525, G572, G629, G630, G859, G558, G572, G630, G859, G1344, G1432, G1657, G1658, G1659, G1849, G2010, G3032, G3089, G3955, G4174, G4506, G5483, G5486

freewill offering

Definition:

A freewill offering was a type of sacrifice to God that was not required by the Law of Moses. It was a person's own choice to give this offering.

- If the freewill offering was an animal to be sacrificed, the animal was permitted to have slight defects since it was a voluntary offering.
- The Israelites ate the sacrificed animal as part of a celebration feast.
- When a freewill offering could be given, this was a cause of rejoicing for Israel since it showed that the harvest had been good so that the people had plenty of food.
- The book of Ezra describes a different type of freewill offering that was brought for rebuilding the temple. This offering consisted of gold and silver money, as well as bowls and other objects made of gold and silver.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [Ezra](#), [feast](#), [grain offering](#), [guilt offering](#), [law](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 29:6-7](#)
- [2 Chronicles 35:7-9](#)
- [Deuteronomy 12:17](#)
- [Exodus 36:2-4](#)
- [Leviticus 07:15-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5068, H5071

Uses:

- [Exodus 35:27-29](#)
- [Exodus 36:2-4](#)

fulfill, fulfilled

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [Christ](#), minister, [call](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 02:26-27](#)
- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- [Leviticus 22:17-19](#)
- [Luke 04:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Psalms 116:12-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”

- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

Uses:

- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)

Gad

Facts:

Gad was one of the sons of Jacob. Jacob was also named Isreal.

- Gad's family became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.
- The names of the cities Baalgad and Migdalgad are each two words in the original text and are sometimes written "Baal Gad" and "Migdal Gad."

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [census](#), [prophet](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 05:18-19](#)
- [Exodus 01:1-5](#)
- [Genesis 30:9-11](#)
- [Joshua 01:12-13](#)
- [Joshua 21:36-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)

gate, gate bar

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:23-25](#)
- [Acts 10:17-18](#)
- [Deuteronomy 21:18-19](#)
- [Genesis 19:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 24:59-60](#)
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:8-11](#)
- [Exodus 27:14-16](#)

gate, gate bar

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:23-25](#)
- [Acts 10:17-18](#)
- [Deuteronomy 21:18-19](#)
- [Genesis 19:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 24:59-60](#)
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

generation

UNDER REVIEW

Definition:

The term “generation” refers to a group of people who were all born around the same time period.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 15:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 03:13-15](#)
- [Genesis 15:14-16](#)
- [Genesis 17:7-8](#)
- [Mark 08:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 11:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 23:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 24:34-35](#)

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:6-7](#)

- Exodus 3:13-15
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Exodus 12:17-18
- Exodus 12:41-42
- Exodus 16:31-32
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Exodus 30:7-9
- Exodus 30:10
- Exodus 30:19-21
- Exodus 30:29-31
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:16-17
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 40:14-16

gift, gifts

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:1-3](#)
- [2 Samuel 11:6-8](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 11:17-18](#)
- [Acts 24:17-19](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

Uses:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Exodus 36:5-7

glory, glorious

Definition:

In general, the term “glory” means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be “glorious.”

- Sometimes “glory” refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
- For example, the expression “glory of the shepherds” refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
- Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
- The expression “to glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “brightness” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”

(See also: glorify)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:5-6](#)
- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 03:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 24:16-18](#)
- [Isaiah 35:1-2](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- [Numbers 14:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 02:14-16](#)
- [Philippians 04:18-20](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1922, H1925, H1926, H1935, H1984, H2892, H3367, H3519, H3520, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1741, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G2755, G2811

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:1](#)
- [Exodus 15:6-8](#)
- [Exodus 15:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 16:6-8](#)
- [Exodus 16:9-12](#)
- [Exodus 24:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 29:43-44](#)
- [Exodus 33:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 33:21-23](#)
- [Exodus 40 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 40:34-35](#)

goat, kid

Definition:

A goat is a medium-sized, four-legged animal which is similar to a sheep and is raised primarily for its milk and meat. A baby goat is called a “kid.”

- Like sheep, goats were important animals of sacrifice, especially at Passover.
- Although goats and sheep can be very similar, these are some ways that they are different:
- Goats have coarse hair; sheep have wool.
- The tail of a goat stands up; the tail of a sheep hangs down.
- Sheep usually like to stay with their herd, but goats are more independent and tend to wander away from their herd.
- In Bible times, goats were often the main source of milk in Israel.
- Goat skins were used for tent coverings and to make bags for holding wine.
- In both the Old and New Testaments, the goat was used as a symbol for unrighteous people, perhaps because of its tendency to wander away from the one taking care of it.
- The Israelites also used goats as symbolic sin bearers. When one goat was sacrificed, the priest would lay his hands on a second, live goat, and send it into the desert as a symbol that the animal was bearing the people’s sins.

(See also: [flock](#), [sacrifice](#), [sheep](#), unrighteous, [wine](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 12:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 30:31-32](#)
- [Genesis 31:10-11](#)
- [Genesis 37:31-33](#)
- [Leviticus 03:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 12:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 26:7-9](#)
- [Exodus 34:25-26](#)

- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:23-24
- Exodus 36:14-17

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, [Holy Spirit](#), [idol](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 10:7-8](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Deuteronomy 29:14-16](#)
- [Ezra 03:1-2](#)

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Uses:

- Exodus 1:15-17
- Exodus 1:20-22
- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Exodus 4:4-5
- Exodus 4:14-17
- Exodus 4:18-20
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 7:1-2
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:13-14
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Exodus 14:19-20
- Exodus 15:2-3
- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 16:9-12
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 20:1-3
- Exodus 21:5-6
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Exodus 24:9-11
- Exodus 29:45-46
- Exodus 31:18
- Exodus 32:7-8
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 34:23-24
- Exodus 34:29-31

god, gods, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), Baal, Molech, [idol](#), demon, [image](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Acts 19:26-27](#)
- [Galatians 04:8-9](#)
- Genesis 35:1-3
- [Isaiah 44:20](#)
- [Psalms 081:8-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5236, H8267, G2299

Uses:

- Exodus 12:12-14
- Exodus 20:1-3
- Exodus 20:22-23
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Exodus 32:3-4
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 34:15-17

godly, godliness

Definition:

The term “godly” is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. “Godliness” is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

- A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
- The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “the godly” could be translated as “godly people” or “people who obey God.” (See: nominaladj)
- The adjective “godly” could be translated as “obedient to God” or “righteous” or “pleasing to God.”
- The phrase “in a godly manner” could be translated as “in a way that obeys God” or “with actions and words that please God.”
- Ways to translate “godliness” could include “acting in a way that pleases God” or “obeying God” or “living in a righteous manner.”

(See also [honor](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [ungodly](#), [unrighteous](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:10-13](#)
- [Acts 03:11-12](#)
- [Hebrews 11:7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2623, G516, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2316, G2317

Uses:

- [Exodus 18 General Notes](#)

gold

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01:14-15](#)
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Daniel 02:31-33](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1222, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H4062, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 11:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 12:34-36](#)
- [Exodus 20:22-23](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 25:10-11](#)

- Exodus 25:12-14
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Exodus 25:23-24
- Exodus 25:25-27
- Exodus 25:28-30
- Exodus 25:31-32
- Exodus 25:35-36
- Exodus 25:37-40
- Exodus 26:4-6
- Exodus 26:29-30
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 26:36-37
- Exodus 28:6-9
- Exodus 28:10-12
- Exodus 28:13-14
- Exodus 28:15-16
- Exodus 28:17-20
- Exodus 28:21-24
- Exodus 28:25-26
- Exodus 28:27-28
- Exodus 30:3-4
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Exodus 31:3-5
- Exodus 32:1-2
- Exodus 32:3-4
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 35:30-33
- Exodus 36:11-13
- Exodus 36:31-34
- Exodus 36:35-36
- Exodus 36:37-38
- Exodus 37:1-3
- Exodus 37:4-6
- Exodus 37:7-9
- Exodus 37:10-13
- Exodus 37:14-16
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Exodus 37:20-22
- Exodus 37:23-24
- Exodus 37:25-26
- Exodus 37:27-29

- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 39:2-3
- Exodus 39:4-5
- Exodus 39:6-7
- Exodus 39:8-9
- Exodus 39:10-13
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Exodus 39:17-18
- Exodus 39:19-20
- Exodus 39:25-26
- Exodus 39:30-31
- Exodus 39:36-39
- Exodus 40:5-7
- Exodus 40:26-27

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 01:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 02:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** ”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** ”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

Uses:

- **Exodus 33:19-20**

Goshen

Definition:

Goshen was the name of a fertile region of land located along the Nile River in the northern part of Egypt.

- When Joseph was a ruler in Egypt, his father and brothers and their families came to live in Goshen to escape a famine in Canaan.
- They and their descendants lived well in Goshen for over 400 years, but then they were forced into slavery by the Egyptian pharaoh.
- Finally God sent Moses to help the people of Israel leave the land of Goshen and escape this slavery.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [famine](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 08:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 45:9-11](#)
- [Genesis 47:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 50:7-9](#)
- [Joshua 10:40-41](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1657

Uses:

- [Exodus 8:22-24](#)

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression “to find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:32-33](#)
- [Acts 06:8-9](#)
- [Acts 14:3-4](#)
- [Colossians 04:5-6](#)
- [Colossians 04:18](#)
- [Genesis 43:28-29](#)
- [James 04:6-7](#)
- [John 01:16-18](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)
- [Revelation 22:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G2143, G5485, G5543

Uses:

- [Exodus 33:19-20](#)

- Exodus 34:5-7

grain

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), [wheat](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:1-4
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- [Luke 06:1-2](#)
- [Mark 02:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 13:7-9](#)
- [Ruth 01:22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:6](#)

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [guilt offering](#) , [sacrifice](#), [sin offering](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 23:27-29](#)
- [Exodus 29:41-42](#)
- [Judges 13:19-20](#)
- [Leviticus 02:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

Uses:

- [Exodus 29:41-42](#)
- [Exodus 30:7-9](#)

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 28:36-38](#)
- [Isaiah 06:6-7](#)
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [John 19:4-6](#)
- [Jonah 01:14-16](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- **39:11** After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- **40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- **49:10** Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

Uses:

- Exodus 21:18-19
- Exodus 21:22-25
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 22:1-4
- Exodus 22:7-9
- Exodus 28:36-38
- Exodus 34:5-7

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: [metonymy](#))
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), [honor](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Acts 11:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 09:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [John 03:34-36](#)
- [Mark 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 06:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

Uses:

- [Exodus 6:1](#)
- [Exodus 9:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 9:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 14:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 14:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 15:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 15:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 16:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 24:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 29:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 29:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 29:19-20](#)
- [Exodus 31:18](#)

hard, hardness, harden

Definition:

The term “hard” has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

- The expressions “hard heart” or “hard-headed” refer to people who are stubbornly unrepentant. These expressions describe people who persist in disobeying God.
- The figurative expressions “hardness of heart” and “hardness of their hearts” also refer to stubborn disobedience.
- If someone’s heart is “hardened” this means that person refuses to obey and remains stubbornly unrepentant.
- When used as an adverb, as in “work hard” or “try hard,” it means to do something very strongly and diligently, making an effort to do something very well.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “hard” could also be translated as “difficult” or “stubborn” or “challenging,” depending on the context.
- The terms “hardness” or “hardness of heart” or “hard heart” could be translated as “stubbornness” or “persistent rebellion” or “rebellious attitude” or “stubborn disobedience” or “stubbornly not repenting.”
- The term “hardened” could also be translated as “stubbornly unrepentant” or “refusing to obey.”
- “Do not harden your heart” could be translated as “do not refuse to repent” or “do not stubbornly keep disobeying.”
- Other ways to translate “hard-headed” or “hard-hearted” could include “stubbornly disobedient” or “continuing to disobey” or “refusing to repent” or “always rebelling.”
- In expressions such as “work hard” or “try hard,” the term “hard” could be translated as “with perseverance” or “diligently.”
- The expression “press hard against” could also be translated as “shove with force” or “push strongly against.”
- To “oppress people with hard labor” could be translated as “force people to work so hard that they suffer” or “cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work.”
- A different kind of “hard labor” is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [heart](#), labor pains, [stiff-necked](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 11:22-23](#)
- [Deuteronomy 15:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 14:4-5](#)

- Hebrews 04:6-7
- John 12:39-40
- Matthew 19:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:15-18

harvest

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 09:9-11](#)
- [2 Samuel 21:7-9](#)
- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Isaiah 17:10-11](#)
- [James 05:7-8](#)
- [Leviticus 19:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:37-38](#)
- [Ruth 01:22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H7105, G2326, G6013

Uses:

- Exodus 22:29-31
- Exodus 23:16-17
- Exodus 34:21-22

harvest

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gathering in of ripe fruits or vegetables from the plants on which they were growing.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In a figurative sense, the word “harvest” can refer to people coming to believe in Jesus or can describe a person’s spiritual growth.
- The idea of a harvest of spiritual crops fits with the figurative image of fruits being a picture of godly character qualities.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb “to harvest” could be translated as, “to gather in” or “to pick up” or “to collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), [festival](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 09:9-11](#)
- [2 Samuel 21:7-9](#)
- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Isaiah 17:10-11](#)
- [James 05:7-8](#)
- [Leviticus 19:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:37-38](#)
- [Ruth 01:22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2758, H7105, G2326, G6013

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means” he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in “this gray head,” referring to an elderly person, or as in “the head of Joseph,” which refers to Joseph. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See also: [grain](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 01:51-54](#)
- [1 Kings 08:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 09:22](#)

- Colossians 02:10-12
- Colossians 02:18-19
- Numbers 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 6:14-15
- Exodus 18:24-27

heal, cure

Definition:

The terms “heal” and “cure” both mean to cause a sick, wounded, or disabled person to be healthy again.

- A person who is “healed” or “cured” has been “made well” or “made healthy.”
- Healing can happen naturally since God gave our bodies the ability to recover from many kinds of wounds and diseases. This kind of healing usually happens slowly.
- However, certain conditions, such as being blind or paralyzed, and certain serious diseases, such as leprosy, however do not heal on their own. When people are healed of these things, it is a miracle that usually happens suddenly.
- For example, Jesus healed many people who were blind or lame or diseased, and they became well right away.
- The apostles also healed people miraculously, such as when Peter caused a crippled man to immediately be able to walk.

(See also: [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:14-16](#)
- [Acts 08:6-8](#)
- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:17-19](#)
- [Luke 08:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 13:15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***19:14** One of the miracles happened to Naaman, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease. He had heard of Elisha so he went and asked Elisha to **heal** him. ***21:10** He (Isaiah) also predicted that the Messiah would **heal** sick people and those who could not hear, see, speak, or walk. ***26:06** Jesus continued saying, “And during the time of the prophet Elisha, there were many people in Israel with skin diseases. But Elisha did not **heal** any of them. He only **healed** the skin disease of Naaman, a commander of Israel’s enemies.” ***26:08** They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and Jesus **healed** them. ***32:14** She had heard that Jesus had **healed** many sick people and thought, “I’m sure that if I can just touch Jesus’ clothes, then I will be **healed**, too!” ***44:03** Immediately, God **healed** the lame man, and he began to walk and jump around, and to praise God. ***44:08** Peter answered them, “This man stands before you **healed** by the power of Jesus the Messiah.” ***49:02**] Jesus did many

miracles that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, **healed** many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:24-26](#)

heart, hearts

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: [hard](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 03:13-15](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 15:7-9](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Mark 02:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 05:5-8](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 4:14-17
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Exodus 8:13-15
- Exodus 8:30-32
- Exodus 9:11-12
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 10:19-20
- Exodus 10:27-29
- Exodus 11:9-10
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:15-18
- Exodus 25:1-2
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 35:25-26
- Exodus 35:34-35
- Exodus 36:1
- Exodus 36:2-4

heaven, sky, skies, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the “kingdom of heaven” he is referring to the kingdom of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “heaven” is used figuratively, it could be translated as “God.”
- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 08:22-24](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:16-18](#)
- [Deuteronomy 09:1-2](#)
- [Ephesians 06:9](#)
- [Genesis 01:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 07:11-12](#)
- [John 03:12-13](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:46-48](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

Uses:

- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 20:22-23
- Exodus 31:16-17

Hebrew, Hebrews

Facts:

The “Hebrews” were people who were descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob. Abraham is the first person in the Bible to be called a “Hebrew.”

- The term “Hebrew” also refers to the language that the Hebrew people spoke. The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called “Jewish people” or “Israelites.” It is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), [Jewish leaders](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 26:12-14](#)
- [Genesis 39:13-15](#)
- [Genesis 40:14-15](#)
- [Genesis 41:12-13](#)
- [John 05:1-4](#)
- [John 19:12-13](#)
- [Jonah 01:8-10](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 2:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 2:11-12](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 5:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 7:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 9:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 9:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 10:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 21:2-4](#)

high priest

Definition:

The term “high priest” refers to a special priest who was appointed to serve for one year as the leader of all the other Israelite priests.

- The high priest had special responsibilities. He was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy part of the temple to offer a special sacrifice once a year.
- The Israelites had many priests, but only one high priest at a time.
- When Jesus was being arrested, Caiaphas was the official high priest. Caiaphas’ father-in-law Annas is also mentioned sometimes because he was a former high priest who probably still had power and authority over the people.

Translation Suggestions:

- “High priest” could be translated as “supreme priest” or “highest ranking priest.”
- Make sure this term is translated differently from the term “chief priest.”

(See also: Annas, Caiaphas, [chief priests](#), [priest](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Acts 07:1-3](#)
- [Acts 09:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 30:10](#)
- [Hebrews 06:19-20](#)
- [Leviticus 16:32-33](#)
- [Luke 03:1-2](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 26:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 26:51-54](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:08** No one could enter the room behind the curtain except the **high priest**, because God lived there.
- **21:07** The Messiah who would come would be the perfect **high priest** who would offer himself as a perfect sacrifice to God.
- **38:03** The Jewish leaders, led by the **high priest**, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus.
- **39:01** The soldiers led Jesus to the house of the **high priest** in order for the **high priest** to question him.

- **39:03** Finally, the **high priest** looked directly at Jesus and said, “Tell us, are you the Messiah, the Son of the living God?”
- **44:07** The next day, the Jewish leaders brought Peter and John to the **high priest** and the other religious leaders.
- **45:02** So the religious leaders arrested Stephen and brought him to the **high priest** and the other leaders of the Jews, where more false witnesses lied about Stephen.
- **46:01** The **high priest** gave Saul permission to go to the city of Damascus to arrest Christians there and bring them back to Jerusalem.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great **High Priest**. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only sacrifice that could take away the sin of all the people in the world. Jesus was the perfect **high priest** because he took the punishment for every sin that anyone has ever committed.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7218 H1419 H3548 G748 G749

Uses:

- **Exodus 30:10**

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), [Esau](#), [foreigner](#), Ham, [mighty](#), Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 09:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 03:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 23:10-11](#)
- [Genesis 25:9-11](#)
- [Joshua 01:4-5](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:7-8](#)
- [Numbers 13:27-29](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 23:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 23:26-29](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

Hivite

Facts:

The Hivites were one of seven major people groups living in the land of Canaan.

- All these groups, including the Hivites, were descended from Canaan, who was Noah's grandson.
- Shechem the Hivite raped Jacob's daughter Dinah, and her brothers killed many Hivites in revenge.
- When Joshua led the Israelites to take over the land of Canaan, the Israelites were tricked into making a treaty with the Hivites instead of conquering them.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Hamor, Noah, Shechem)

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 08:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 03:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 34:1-3](#)
- [Joshua 09:1-2](#)
- [Judges 03:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 23:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 23:26-29](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

holy place

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “the holy place” and “the most holy place” refer to the two parts of the tabernacle or temple building.

- The “holy place” was the first room, and it contained the altar of incense and the table with the special “bread of the presence” on it.
- The “most holy place” was the second, innermost room, and it contained the ark of the covenant.
- A thick, heavy curtain separated the outer room from the inner room.
- The high priest was the only one who was permitted to go into the most holy place.
- Sometimes “holy place” refers to both the building and courtyard areas of either the temple or tabernacle. It could also refer generally to any place that is set apart for God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “holy place” could also be translated as “room set apart for God” or “special room for meeting God” or “place reserved for God.”
- The term “most holy place” could be translated as “room that is the most set apart for God” or “most special room for meeting God.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the general expression “a holy place” could include “a consecrated place” or “a place that God has set apart” or “a place in the temple complex, which is holy” or “a courtyard of God’s holy temple.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [bread](#), [consecrate](#), [courtyard](#), [curtain](#), [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 06:16-18](#)
- [Acts 06:12-15](#)
- [Exodus 26:31-33](#)
- [Exodus 31:10-11](#)
- [Ezekiel 41:1-2](#)
- [Ezra 09:8-9](#)
- [Hebrews 09:1-2](#)
- [Leviticus 16:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 24:15-18](#)
- [Revelation 15:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1964, H4720, H4725, H5116, H6918, H6944, G39, G40, G3485, G5117

Uses:

- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 26:34-35
- Exodus 28:29-30
- Exodus 28:33-35
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Exodus 29:29-30
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Exodus 35:17-19
- Exodus 36:1
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 36:5-7
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:27-29
- Exodus 39:1
- Exodus 39:40-41

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), God the Father, Son of God, [gift](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 10:9-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 01:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 63:10](#)
- [Job 33:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 12:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 28:18-19](#)
- [Psalms 051:10-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

Uses:

- **Exodus 35:30-33**

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [consecrate](#), [sanctify](#), [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:11-13](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Colossians 01:21-23](#)
- [Ezekiel 20:18-20](#)
- [Lamentations 04:1-2](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Matthew 07:6](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G3741, G3742,

Uses:

- Exodus 03 General Notes
- Exodus 15:9-11
- Exodus 15:12-13
- Exodus 16:22-23
- Exodus 19 General Notes
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 21 General Notes
- Exodus 22 General Notes
- Exodus 23 General Notes
- Exodus 24 General Notes
- Exodus 25 General Notes
- Exodus 26 General Notes
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 27 General Notes
- Exodus 28 General Notes
- Exodus 28:36-38
- Exodus 29 General Notes
- Exodus 29:5-7
- Exodus 29:29-30
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 30:37-38
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 35:1-3
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 37:27-29
- Exodus 39 General Notes

- Exodus 39:30-31
- Exodus 39:30-31
- Exodus 40:8-11

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: [John \(the Baptist\)](#), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 14:1-3](#)
- [Deuteronomy 06:3](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Joshua 05:6-7](#)
- [Proverbs 05:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 16:31-32](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)

honor, honors, to honor

Definition:

The terms “honor” and “to honor” refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

- Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
- God instructs Christians to honor others.
- Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
- The terms “honor” and “glory” are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
- Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “honor” could include “respect” or “esteem” or “high regard.”
- The term “to honor” could be translated as “to show special respect to” or “to cause to be praised” or “to show high regard for” or “to highly value.”

(See also: [dishonor](#), [glory](#), [glorify](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 02:8](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- [John 04:43-45](#)
- [John 12:25-26](#)
- [Mark 06:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 15:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:6-7](#)
- [Exodus 14:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 14:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 14:29-31](#)

- Exodus 16:24-25
- Exodus 20:12-14
- Exodus 20:18-21
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 32:5-6

Horeb

Definition:

Mount Horeb is another name for Mount Sinai, where God gave Moses the stone tablets with the ten commandments.

- Mount Horeb is called the “mountain of God.”
- Horeb was the place where Moses saw the burning bush when he was tending sheep.
- Mount Horeb was the place where God revealed his covenant to the Israelites by giving them the stone tablets with his commandments written on them.
- It was also the place where God later told Moses to strike a rock to provide water for the Israelites as they were wandering in the desert.
- The exact location of this mountain is not known, but it may have been in the southern part of what is now the Sinai Peninsula.
- It is possible that “Horeb” was the actual name of the mountain and that “Mount Sinai” simply means “mountain of Sinai,” referring to the fact that Mount Horeb was located in the desert of Sinai.

(See also: [covenant](#), [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Sinai](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 08:9-11](#)
- [2 Chronicles 05:9-10](#)
- [Deuteronomy 01:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 03:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 106:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 17:4-7](#)
- [Exodus 33:4-6](#)

horn, horns

Facts:

Horns are permanent, hard, pointed growths on the heads of many types of animals, including cattle, sheep, goats, and deer.

- The horn of a ram (male sheep) was made into a musical instrument called a “ram’s horn” or “shofar,” which was blown for special events such as religious festivals.
- God told the Israelites to make a horn-shaped projection on each of the four corners of the incense and brazen altars. Although these projections were called “horns,” they were not actually animal horns.
- The term “horn” was sometimes used to refer to a “flask” that was shaped like a horn and was used for holding water or oil. A flask of oil was used for anointing a king, as Samuel did with David.
- This term should be translated with a word that is different from the word that refers to a trumpet.
- The term “horn” is also used figuratively as a symbol of strength, power, authority, and royalty.

(See also: [authority](#), [cow](#), [deer](#), [goat](#), [power royal](#), [sheep](#), [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 15:27-28](#)
- [1 Kings 01:38-40](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 17:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 022:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

horse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), Solomon)

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 18:3-4](#)
- [2 Kings 02:11-12](#)
- [Exodus 14:23-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 23:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 06:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 9:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 15:1](#)
- [Exodus 15:19-21](#)

horsemen

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 01:5-6](#)
- [Daniel 11:40-41](#)
- [Exodus 14:23-25](#)
- [Genesis 50:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 14:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 14:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 14:23-25](#)

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), [house of God](#), [household](#), kingdom of Israel, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 07:47-50](#)
- [Genesis 39:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 41:39-41](#)
- [Luke 08:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 15:24-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 6:14-15
- Exodus 7:23-25
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Exodus 19:3-6

house of God, Yahweh's house

Definition:

In the Bible, the phrases “house of God” (God’s house) and “house of Yahweh (Yahweh’s house) refer to a place where God is worshiped.

- This term is also used more specifically to refer to the tabernacle or the temple.
- Sometimes “God’s house” is used to refer to the people of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a place of worship, this term could be translated as “a house for worshipping God” or “a place for worshipping God.”
- If it is referring to the temple or tabernacle, this could be translated as “the temple (or tabernacle) where God is worshiped (or “where God is present” or “where God meets with his people.”)
- The word “house” may be important to use in the translation in order to communicate that God “dwells” there, that is, his spirit is in that place to meet with his people and to be worshiped by them.

(See also: [people of God](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 03:14-15](#)
- [2 Chronicles 23:8-9](#)
- [Ezra 05:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 28:16-17](#)
- [Judges 18:30-31](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 12:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H426, H430, H1004, H1005, H3068, G2316, G3624

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:18-19](#)
- [Exodus 34:25-26](#)

household

Definition:

The term “household” refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involve directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes “household” can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 07:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 34:18-19](#)
- [John 04:53-54](#)
- [Matthew 10:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 10:34-36](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 12:26-28](#)

humble, humbles, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- [James 01:19-21](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 14:10-11](#)
- [Luke 18:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:11-12](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***34:10** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 10:3-4](#)

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 15:19-21](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- [Exodus 32:1-2](#)
- [Galatians 05:19-21](#)
- [Psalm 031:5-7](#)
- [Romans 02:21-22](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:05** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.” ***13:12** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it! ***14:03** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.” ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice. ***19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- Exodus 32:1-2
- Exodus 32:30-32

image of God, image

Definition:

The term “image” refers to something that looks like something else or that is like someone in character or essence. The phrase “image of God” is used in different ways, depending on the context.

- At the beginning of time, God created human beings “in his image,” that is, “in his likeness.” This means that people have certain characteristics that reflect the image of God, such as the ability to feel emotion, the ability to reason and communicate, and a spirit that lives eternally.
- The Bible teaches that Jesus, God’s Son, is “the image of God,” that is, he is God himself. Unlike human beings, Jesus was not created. From all eternity God the Son has had all the divine characteristics because he has had the same essence with God the Father.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to Jesus, “image of God” could be translated as “exact likeness of God” or “same essence as God” or “same being as God.”
- When referring to human beings, “God created them in his image” could be translated with a phrase that means “God created them to be like him” or “God created them with characteristics like his own.”

(See also: [image](#), Son of God, Son of God)

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [Colossians 03:9-11](#)
- [Genesis 01:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 09:5-7](#)
- [James 03:9-10](#)
- [Romans 08:28-30](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4541, H1544, H2553, H6456, H6459, H6754, H6816, H8403, G504, G179

image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [idol](#), [image of God](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 14:9-10](#)
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Isaiah 21:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 22:20-22](#)
- [Romans 01:22-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)

incense

Definition:

The term “incense” refers to a mixture of fragrant spices that is burned to produce smoke that has a pleasant smell.

- God told the Israelites to burn incense as an offering to him.
- The incense had to be made by mixing equal amounts of five specific spices exactly as God directed. This was a sacred incense, so they were not allowed to use it for any other purpose.
- The “altar of incense” was a special altar that was only used for burning incense.
- The incense was offered at least four times a day, at each hour of prayer. It was also offered every time a burnt offering was made.
- The burning of incense represents prayer and worship rising up to God from his people.
- Other ways to translate “incense” could include “fragrant spices” or “good-smelling plants.”

(See also: [altar of incense](#), [burnt offering](#), [frankincense](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 03:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 13:10-11](#)
- [2 Kings 14:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Luke 01:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 30:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 30:7-9](#)
- [Exodus 30:34-36](#)
- [Exodus 30:37-38](#)
- [Exodus 31:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 35:4-9](#)
- [Exodus 35:27-29](#)
- [Exodus 37:27-29](#)
- [Exodus 39:36-39](#)

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:9-11
- 1 Peter 01:3-5
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- Luke 15:11-12
- Matthew 19:29-30
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

Uses:

- Exodus 15:17-18
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 34:8-9

iniquity, iniquities

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), trespass)

Bible References:

- [Daniel 09:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16-17
- [Habakkuk 02:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 13:40-43](#)
- [Matthew 23:27-28](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

Uses:

- [Exodus 28:42-43](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 34:8-9](#)

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression “innocent blood” could be translated as “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said “I have betrayed innocent blood,” he was saying “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:4-5](#)
- [Acts 20:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:17-19](#)
- [Job 09:21-24](#)
- [Romans 16:17-18](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God." *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

Uses:

- **Exodus 23:6-9**

instruct, instruction

Facts:

The terms “instruct” and “instruction” refer to giving specific directions about what to do.

- To “give instructions” means to tell someone specifically what he is supposed to do.
- When Jesus gave the disciples the bread and fish to distribute to the people, he gave them specific instructions about how to do it.
- Depending on the context, the term “instruct” could also be translated as “tell” or “direct” or “teach” or “give instructions to.”
- The term “instructions” could be translated as “directions” or “explanations” or “what he has told you to do.”
- When God gives instructions, this term is sometimes translated as “commands” or “orders.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [teach](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 14:4-5](#)
- [Genesis 26:4-5](#)
- [Hebrews 11:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 11:1-3](#)
- [Proverbs 01:28-30](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 14:4-5](#)

Isaac

Facts:

Isaac was the only son of Abraham and Sarah. God had promised to give them a son even though they were very old.

- The name “Isaac” means “he laughs.” When God told Abraham that Sarah would give birth to a son, Abraham laughed because they were both very old. Some time later, Sarah also laughed when she heard this news.
- But God fulfilled his promise and Isaac was born to Abraham and Sarah in their old age.
- God told Abraham that the covenant he had made with Abraham would also be for Isaac and his descendants forever.
- When Isaac was a youth, God tested Abraham’s faith by commanding him to sacrifice Isaac.
- Isaac’s son Jacob had twelve sons whose descendants later became the twelve tribes of the nation of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [descendant](#), [forever](#), [fulfill](#), [Jacob](#), [Sarah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:28-29](#)
- Genesis 25:9-11
- Genesis 25:19-20
- Genesis 26:1
- Genesis 26:6-8
- Genesis 28:1-2
- Genesis 31:17-18
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 22:31-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of promise. Name him **Isaac**.” ***05:06** When **Isaac** was a young man, God tested Abraham’s faith by saying, “Take **Isaac**, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.” ***05:09** God had provided the ram to be the sacrifice instead of **Isaac**. ***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, **Isaac**, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, **Isaac**. ***06:05** **Isaac** prayed for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***07:10** Then **Isaac** died, and Jacob and Esau buried him. The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to **Isaac** now passed on to Jacob.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 3:4-6
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Exodus 4:4-5
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 33:1-3

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 10:1-3](#)
- [1 Kings 08:1-2](#)
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 24:21](#)
- [Mark 12:28-31](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 27:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Exodus 1:6-7
- Exodus 1:11-12
- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 3:9-10
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 4:29-31
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 5:12-14
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 6:10-13
- Exodus 7:1-2
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:5-7
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 10:7-8
- Exodus 11:6-8
- Exodus 12:3-4
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 12:34-36
- Exodus 13:1-2
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 14:1-3
- Exodus 15:1
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 16:31-32
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 18:9-11
- Exodus 19:1-2
- Exodus 20:22-23
- Exodus 24:1-2
- Exodus 24:9-11

- Exodus 25:1-2
- Exodus 25:22
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 28:6-9
- Exodus 28:10-12
- Exodus 28:21-24
- Exodus 28:29-30
- Exodus 28:36-38
- Exodus 29:26-28
- Exodus 29:43-44
- Exodus 29:45-46
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:15-16
- Exodus 30:29-31
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:16-17
- Exodus 32:3-4
- Exodus 33:4-6
- Exodus 34:23-24
- Exodus 34:27-28
- Exodus 34:29-31
- Exodus 34:32-33
- Exodus 34:34-35
- Exodus 35:1-3
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 39:6-7
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 39:42-43
- Exodus 40:36-38

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 10:1-3](#)
- [1 Kings 08:1-2](#)
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 24:21](#)
- [Mark 12:28-31](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 27:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was the fifth son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- The tribe of Issachar was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.
- It was located just south of the Sea of Galilee.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), [Manasseh](#), [Naphtali](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#), [Zebulun](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 01:1-5](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:23-26](#)
- [Genesis 30:16-18](#)
- [Joshua 17:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [deceive](#), [Esau](#), [Isaac](#), [Israel](#), [Rebekah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [Genesis 25:24-26](#)
- [Genesis 29:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 32:1-2](#)
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 22:31-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 3:4-6
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Exodus 4:4-5
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 6:14-15
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 33:1-3

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: [envy](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 12:20-21](#)
- [Deuteronomy 05:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 36:4-6](#)
- [Joshua 24:19-20](#)
- [Nahum 01:2-3](#)
- [Romans 13:13-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G2205, G3863

Uses:

- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 34:12-14

Jebusites, Jebus

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Ham](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Melchizedek](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 01:13-16](#)
- [1 Kings 09:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 03:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 10:15-18](#)
- [Joshua 03:9-11](#)
- [Judges 01:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 23:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, [Christ](#), [David](#), [Jebusites](#), [Jesus](#), Solomon, [temple](#), Zion)

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 04:9-11](#)
- [Luke 13:4-5](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Mark 03:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Jesus, Jesus Christ, Christ Jesus

Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves." The term "Christ" is a title that means "anointed one" and is another word for Messiah.

- The two names are often combined as "Jesus Christ" or "Christ Jesus." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who came to save people from being punished eternally for their sins.
- In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
- Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
- For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
- Also consider how these names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), [God](#), God the Father, [high priest](#), kingdom of God, Mary, Savior, Son of God)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 06:9-11](#)
- [1 John 02:1-3](#)
- [1 John 04:15-16](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:1-2](#)
- [2 Peter 01:1-2](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- [Acts 02:22-24](#)
- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Acts 10:36-38](#)
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)
- [Hebrews 10:19-22](#)
- [Luke 24:19-20](#)

- Matthew 01:20-21
- Matthew 04:1-4
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Philippians 04:21-23
- Revelation 01:4-6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:04** The angel said, "You will become pregnant and give birth to a son. You are to name him **Jesus** and he will be the Messiah."
- **23:02** "Name him **Jesus** (which means, 'Yahweh saves'), because he will save the people from their sins."
- **24:07** So John baptized him (Jesus), even though **Jesus** had never sinned.
- **24:09** There is only one God. But John heard God the Father speak, and saw **Jesus** the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized **Jesus**.
- **25:08** **Jesus** did not give in to Satan's temptations, so Satan left him.
- **26:08** Then **Jesus** went throughout the region of Galilee, and large crowds came to him. They brought many people who were sick or handicapped, including those who could not see, walk, hear, or speak, and **Jesus** healed them.
- **31:03** Then **Jesus** finished praying and went to the disciples. He walked on top of the water across the lake toward their boat!
- **38:02** He (Judas) knew that the Jewish leaders denied that **Jesus** was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him.
- **40:08** Through his death, **Jesus** opened a way for people to come to God.
- **42:11** Then **Jesus** was taken up to heaven, and a cloud hid him from their sight. **Jesus** sat down at the right hand of God to rule over all things.
- **50:17** **Jesus** and his people will live on the new earth, and he will reign forever over everything that exists. He will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death. **Jesus** will rule his kingdom with peace and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2424, G5547

Jethro, Reuel

Facts:

The names “Jethro” and “Reuel” both refer to the father of Moses’ wife, Zipporah. There were also two other men named “Reuel” in the Old Testament.

- When Moses was a shepherd in the land of Midian, he married the daughter of a Midianite man named Reuel.
- Later on Reuel is referred to as “Jethro, the priest of Midian.” It could be that “Reuel” was his clan name.
- When God spoke to Moses from a flaming bush, Moses was tending Jethro’s sheep,
- Some time later, after God had rescued the Israelites from Egypt, Jethro came out to the Israelites in the wilderness and gave Moses good advice about judging the affairs of the people.
- He believed in God when he heard about all the miracles God had done for the Israelites in Egypt.
- One of Esau’s sons was named Reuel.
- Another man named Reuel is mentioned in the genealogy of the Israelites who returned to resettle in Judah after their captivity in Babylon had ended.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [clan](#), [desert](#), [Egypt](#), [Esau](#), [miracle](#), [Moses](#), [desert](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 01:34-37](#)
- [Exodus 02:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 03:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 18:1-4](#)
- [Numbers 10:29-30](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 3:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 4:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 18:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 18:5-6](#)

Jew, Jewish, Jews

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.
- Often the phrase "the Jews" refers to the leaders of the Jews, not all the Jewish people. In those contexts, some translations add "leaders of" to make this clear.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), [Jewish leaders](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:5-7](#)
- [Acts 10:27-29](#)
- [Acts 14:5-7](#)
- [Colossians 03:9-11](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 28:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Jewish leaders, Jewish authorities, religious leaders

Facts:

The term “Jewish leaders” or “Jewish authorities” refers to religious leaders such as the priests and teachers of God’s laws. They also had the authority to make judgments about non-religious matters as well.

- The Jewish leaders were the high priests, chief priests, and scribes (teachers of God’s laws).
- Two main groups of Jewish leaders were the Pharisees and Saducees.
- Seventy Jewish leaders met together in the Jewish Council in Jerusalem to make judgments about matters of law.
- Many Jewish leaders were proud and thought they were righteous. They were jealous of Jesus and wanted to harm him. They claimed to know God but did not obey him.
- Often the phrase “the Jews” referred to the Jewish leaders, especially in contexts where they were angry at Jesus and were trying to trick or harm him.
- These terms could also be translated as “Jewish rulers” or “men who ruled over the Jewish people” or “Jewish religious leaders.”

(See also: [Jew](#), [chief priests](#), [council](#), [high priest](#), [Pharisee](#), [priest](#), [Sadducee](#), [scribe](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 16:22-23](#)
- [John 02:17-19](#)
- [John 05:10-11](#)
- [John 05:16-18](#)
- [Luke 19:47-48](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***24:03** Many **religious leaders** also came to be baptized by John, but they did not repent or confess their sins. ***37:11** But the **religious leaders of the Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus. ***38:02** He (Judas) knew that the **Jewish leaders** denied that Jesus was the Messiah and that they were plotting to kill him. ***38:03** The **Jewish leaders**, led by the high priest, paid Judas thirty silver coins to betray Jesus. ***39:05** The **Jewish leaders** all answered the high priest, “He (Jesus) deserves to die!” ***39:09** Early the next morning, the **Jewish leaders** brought Jesus to Pilate, the Roman governor. ***39:11** But the **Jewish leaders** and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” ***40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two **Jewish leaders** who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. ***44:07** The next day, the **Jewish leaders** brought Peter and John to the high priest and the other **religious leaders**.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 16:22-23](#)

John (the Baptist)

Facts:

John was the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth. Since “John” was a common name, he is often called “John the Baptist” to distinguish him from the other people named John, such as the Apostle John.

- John was the prophet whom God sent to prepare people to believe in and follow the Messiah.
- John told people to confess their sins, turn to God, and stop sinning, so that they would be ready to receive the Messiah.
- John baptized many people in water as a sign that they were sorry for their sins and were turning away from them.
- John was called “John the Baptist” because he baptized many people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: baptize, Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- [John 03:22-24](#)
- [Luke 01:11-13](#)
- [Luke 01:62-63](#)
- [Luke 03:7](#)
- [Luke 03:15-16](#)
- [Luke 07:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 03:13-15](#)
- [Matthew 11:13-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***22:02** The angel said to Zechariah, “Your wife will have a son. You will name him **John**. He will be filled with the Holy Spirit, and will prepare the people for Messiah!” ***22:07** After Elizabeth gave birth to her baby boy, Zechariah and Elizabeth named the baby **John**, as the angel had commanded. ***24:01** **John**, the son of Zechariah and Elizabeth, grew up and became a prophet. He lived in the wilderness, ate wild honey and locusts, and wore clothes made from camel hair. ***24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to **John**. He preached to them, saying, “Repent, for the kingdom of God is near!” ***24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by **John**. When **John** saw him, he said, “Look! There is the Lamb of God who will take away the sin of the world.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Jacob](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- [John 04:4-5](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler. ***08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt. ***08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him. ***08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. ***08:09** **Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests. ***09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)
- [Exodus 13:19-22](#)

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 07:25-27](#)
- [Deuteronomy 03:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 17:8-10](#)
- [Joshua 01:1-3](#)
- [Numbers 27:18-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.

***14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."

***14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.

***14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God. ***15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 17:8-10
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 24:12-13
- Exodus 32:17-18
- Exodus 33:10-11

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Jew](#), [Judah](#), [Judea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:1-2](#)
- [1 Kings 01:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 29:35](#)
- [Genesis 38:1-2](#)
- [Luke 03:33-35](#)
- [Ruth 01:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)
- [Exodus 31:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 35:30-33](#)
- [Exodus 38:21-23](#)

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: governor, [judge](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Luke 11:18-20](#)
- [Luke 12:13-15](#)
- [Luke 18:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 05:25-26](#)
- [Ruth 01:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 21:22-25](#)
- [Exodus 22:7-9](#)

judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: [decree](#), [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), [law](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [1 Kings 03:7-9](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Isaiah 03:13-15](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 06:37](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 054:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 6:6-7](#)
- [Exodus 18:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 18:21-23](#)
- [Exodus 18:24-27](#)

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [righteous](#), upright)

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 18:14-17](#)
- [Acts 28:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 04:3-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:1-3](#)
- [Luke 18:3-5](#)
- [Luke 21:20-22](#)
- [Luke 23:39-41](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)
- [Micah 03:8](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3477, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

Uses:

- [Exodus 18:21-23](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: [authority](#), Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 06:15-16](#)
- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:3-5](#)
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Luke 22:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 14:8-9](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. ***16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. ***16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. ***17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. ***21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. ***48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 1:8-10
- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 5:3-5
- Exodus 6:10-13
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:6-9

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](#), [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [2 Timothy 04:17-18](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [John 18:36-37](#)
- [Mark 03:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 04:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- **Exodus 19:3-6**

kiss

Definition:

A kiss is an action in which one person puts his lips to another person's lips or face. This term can also be used figuratively.

- Some cultures kiss each other on the cheek as a form of greeting or to say goodbye.
- A kiss can communicate deep love between two people, such as a husband and wife.
- The expression “to kiss someone farewell” means to say goodbye with a kiss.
- Sometimes the word “kiss” is used to mean “say goodbye to.” When Elisha said to Elijah, “Let me first go and kiss my father and mother,” he wanted to say goodbye to his parents before leaving them to follow Elijah.

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:25-28](#)
- [Genesis 27:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 29:11-12](#)
- [Genesis 31:26-28](#)
- [Genesis 45:14-15](#)
- [Genesis 48:8-10](#)
- [Luke 22:47-48](#)
- [Mark 14:43-46](#)
- [Matthew 26:47-48](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:27-28](#)
- [Exodus 18:7-8](#)

know, knowledge, make known

Definition:

To “know” means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression “make known” is an expression that means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), [reveal](#), understand, [wise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 02:12-13](#)
- [1 Samuel 17:46-47](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:14-15](#)
- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- [Deuteronomy 04:39-40](#)
- [Genesis 19:4-5](#)

- Luke 01:76-77

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 2:13-14
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 8:22-24
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 16:9-12
- Exodus 31:3-5
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 35:30-33
- Exodus 36:1

labor, laborer

Definition:

The term “labor” refers to doing hard work of any kind.

- In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
- A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
- In English, the word “labor” is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
- Ways to translate “labor” could include “work” or “hard work” or “difficult work” or “to work hard.”

(See also: [hard](#), labor pains)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:7-9](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 03:4-5](#)
- [Galatians 04:10-11](#)
- [James 05:4-6](#)
- [John 04:37-38](#)
- [Luke 10:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 10:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:11-12](#)
- [Exodus 2:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 20:8-11](#)

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 12:1-3](#)
- [Ezra 08:35-36](#)
- [Isaiah 66:3](#)
- [Jeremiah 11:18-20](#)
- [John 01:29-31](#)
- [John 01:35-36](#)
- [Leviticus 14:21-23](#)
- [Leviticus 17:1-4](#)
- [Luke 10:3-4](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***05:07** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, "Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?" ***11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it. ***24:06** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, "Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world." ***45:08** He read, "They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word." ***48:08** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place. ***48:09** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G721, G2316

Uses:

- Exodus 12:3-4
- Exodus 12:21-22
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Exodus 29:38-39
- Exodus 29:40
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Exodus 34:19-20

lament, laments, lamentation

Definition:

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to lament” could be translated as “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

- [Amos 08:9-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:1-2](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:17-19](#)
- [Job 27:15-17](#)
- [Lamentations 02:5-6](#)
- [Lamentations 02:8-9](#)
- [Micah 02:3-5](#)
- [Psalm 102:1-2](#)
- [Zechariah 11:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H421, H578, H592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G2354, G2355, G2870, G2875

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:29-30](#)

lamp

Definition:

The term “lamp” generally refers to something that produces light. The lamps used in Bible times were usually oil lamps.

The type of lamp that was used in Bible times is a small container with a fuel source, usually oil, that gives light when it burns.

- An ordinary oil lamp usually consisted of a common piece of pottery filled with olive oil, with a wick placed in the oil to burn.
- For some lamps, the pot or jar was oval, with one end pinched close together to hold the wick.
- An oil lamp could be carried or placed on a stand so that its light could fill a room or house.
- In scripture, lamps are used in several figurative ways as symbols of light and life.

(See also: [lampstand](#), [life](#), [light](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 11:34-36](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Luke 08:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 25:1-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 25:37-40](#)
- [Exodus 27:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 35:4-9](#)
- [Exodus 35:13-16](#)
- [Exodus 35:27-29](#)
- [Exodus 37:23-24](#)
- [Exodus 39:36-39](#)

lampstand

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lampstand” generally refers to a structure on which a lamp is placed in order to provide light to a room.

- A simple lampstand usually held one lamp and was made of clay, wood, or metal (such as bronze, silver, or gold.)
- In the Jerusalem temple there was a special gold lampstand which had seven branches for holding seven lamps.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could be also translated as “lamp pedestal” or “structure for holding a lamp” or “lamp holder.”
- For the temple lampstand, this could be translated as “seven-lamp lampstand” or “gold pedestal with seven lamps.”
- It would also be helpful in a translation to include pictures of a simple lampstand and a seven-branch lampstand in the relevant Bible passages.

(See also: [bronze](#), [gold](#), [lamp](#), [light](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [Daniel 05:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 37:17-19](#)
- [Mark 04:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 01:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 01:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:31-32](#)
- [Exodus 25:33-34](#)
- [Exodus 25:35-36](#)
- [Exodus 25:37-40](#)
- [Exodus 26:34-35](#)

- Exodus 30:7-9
- Exodus 30:26-28
- Exodus 35:13-16
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Exodus 37:20-22
- Exodus 37:23-24
- Exodus 39:36-39
- Exodus 40:3-4
- Exodus 40:24-25

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
- all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: [instruct](#), [Moses](#), [Ten Commandments](#), [lawful](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 15:5-6](#)
- [Daniel 09:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 28:42-43](#)
- [Ezra 07:25-26](#)
- [Galatians 02:15-16](#)
- [Luke 24:44](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)

- [Romans 03:19-20](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\<

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

Uses:

- [Introduction to Exodus](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13:8-10](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16:28-30](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 21 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 22 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 23 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 28:42-43](#)
- [Exodus 29:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)

law, principle

Definition:

A “law” is a legal rule that is usually written down and enforced by someone in authority. A “principle” is a guideline for decision-making and behavior.

- Both “law” and “principle” can refer to a general rule or belief that guides a person’s behavior.
- This meaning of “law” is different from its meaning in the term “law of Moses,” where it refers to commands and instructions that God gave the Israelites.
- When a general law is being referred to, “law” could be translated as “principle” or “general rule.”

(See also: [law](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 04:1-2](#)
- [Esther 03:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 12:12-14](#)
- [Genesis 26:4-5](#)
- [John 18:31-32](#)
- [Romans 07:1](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 12:24-25](#)
- [Exodus 12:49-51](#)
- [Exodus 15:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 16:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 18:17-20](#)

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: cedar, cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 04:32-34](#)
- [2 Chronicles 02:8-10](#)
- [Deuteronomy 01:7-8](#)
- [Psalms 029:3-5](#)
- [Zechariah 10:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

leprosy, leper, leprous

Definition:

The term “leprosy” is used in the Bible to refer to several different skin diseases. A “leper” is a person who has leprosy. The term “leprous” describes a person or body part that is infected with leprosy.

- Certain kinds of leprosy cause the skin to become discolored with white patches, as when Miriam and Naaman had leprosy.
- In modern times, leprosy often causes hands, feet, and other body parts to become damaged and deformed.
- According to the instructions that God gave to the Israelites, when a person had leprosy, he was considered “unclean” and had to stay away from other people so that they would not become infected with the disease.
- A leper would often call out “unclean” so that others would be warned not to come near him.
- Jesus healed many lepers, and also people who had other kinds of diseases.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “leprosy” in the Bible can be translated as “skin disease” or “dreaded skin disease.”
- Ways to translate “leprous” could include “full of leprosy” or “infected with skin disease” or “covered with skin sores.”

(See also: Miriam, Naaman, unclean)

Bible References:

- [Luke 05:12-13](#)
- [Luke 17:11-13](#)
- [Mark 01:40-42](#)
- [Mark 14:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 08:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 10:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 11:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:6-7](#)

Levite, Levi

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term “Levite” refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named “Levi” were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus’ disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 02:1-2](#)
- [1 Kings 08:3-5](#)
- [Acts 04:36-37](#)
- [Genesis 29:33-34](#)
- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [Luke 10:31-32](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)
- [Exodus 2:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)
- [Exodus 6:16-19](#)
- [Exodus 32:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 32:28-29](#)
- [Exodus 38:21-23](#)

life, live, lived, lives, living, alive

Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by “physical life” and “spiritual life.”

1. Physical life

- Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam’s body, and he became a living being.
- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Spiritual life

- A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus with God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- This life is also called “eternal life” to indicate that it does not end.
- The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives’ could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about being alive spiritually, “life” could be translated as “spiritual life” or “eternal life,” depending on the context.
- The concept of “spiritual life” could also be translated as “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:3-4](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Genesis 02:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 07:21-22](#)
- [Hebrews 10:19-22](#)
- [Jeremiah 44:1-3](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Judges 02:18-19](#)
- [Luke 12:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were **living** in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 12:19-20](#)
- [Exodus 12:37-40](#)
- [Exodus 25:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 33:19-20](#)

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [2 Corinthians 04:5-6](#)
- [Acts 26:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:19-22](#)

like, likeness

Definition:

The terms “like” and “likeness” refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

- The word “like” is also often used in a figurative expressions called a “simile” in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, “his clothes shined like the sun” and “the voice boomed like thunder.” (See: [Simile](#))
- To “be like” or “sound like” or “look like” something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
- People were created in God’s “likeness,” that is, in his “image.” It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are “like” or “similar to” qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
- To have “the likeness of” something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.

Translation Suggestions

- In some contexts, the expression “the likeness of” could be translated as “what looked like” or “what appeared to be.”
- The expression “in the likeness of his death” could be translated as “sharing in the experience of his death” or “as if experiencing his death with him.”
- The expression “in the likeness of sinful flesh” could be translated as “being like a sinful human being” or “to be a human being.” Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
- “In his own likeness” could also be translated as “to be like him” or “having many of the same qualities that he has.”
- The expression “the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things” could be translated as “idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things.”

(See also: [beast](#), [flesh](#), [image of God](#), [image](#), [perish](#))

Bible References:

- [Ezekiel 01:4-6](#)
- [Mark 08:24-26](#)
- [Matthew 17:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 18:1-3](#)
- [Psalms 073:4-5](#)
- [Revelation 01:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)

locust

Facts:

The term “locust” refers to a type of large, flying grasshopper that sometimes flies with many other of its kind in a very destructive swarm that eats all vegetation.

- Locusts and other grasshoppers are large, straight-winged insects with long, jointed back legs that give them the ability to jump a long distance way.
- In the Old Testament, swarming locusts were referred to figuratively as a symbol or picture of the overwhelming devastation that would come as a result of Israel’s disobedience.
- God sent locusts as one of the ten plagues against the Egyptians.
- The New Testament says that locusts were a main source of food for John the Baptist while he was living in the desert.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [captive](#), [Egypt](#), [Israel](#), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), [plague](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:28-31](#)
- [Deuteronomy 28:38-39](#)
- [Exodus 10:3-4](#)
- [Mark 01:4-6](#)
- [Proverbs 30:27-28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 10:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 10:14-15](#)

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. It is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [Daniel 09:9-11](#)
- [Daniel 09:17-19](#)
- [Ezekiel 18:29-30](#)
- [Hebrews 12:14-17](#)
- [Joshua 03:9-11](#)
- [Jude 01:5-6](#)
- [Lamentations 02:1-2](#)

- Luke 01:30-33
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Romans 06:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H4756, G1203, G2962

Uses:

- Exodus 5:22-23
- Exodus 15:17-18
- Exodus 17:4-7
- Exodus 34:8-9

lord, lords, master, masters, sir, Sir, Sirs

Definition:

The term “lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 03:22-25](#)
- [Ephesians 06:9](#)
- [Genesis 39:1-2](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [Luke 16:13](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, “In God’s word, he commands his people, ‘Do not test the **Lord** your God.’”
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord’s** favor.

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."
*

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962

Uses:

- Exodus 4:10-13
- Exodus 21:2-4
- Exodus 32:21-24

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [death](#), [sacrifice](#), [save](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 13:4-7](#)
- [1 John 03:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:9-12](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 29:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:1-3](#)
- [John 03:16-18](#)
- [Matthew 10:37-39](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:32-34](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- [Song of Solomon 01:1-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:4-6](#)

Lystra

Facts:

Lystra was a city in ancient Asia Minor that Paul visited on one of his missionary journeys. It was located in the region of Lycaonia, which is now in the modern-day country of Turkey.

- Paul and his companions escaped to Derbe and Lystra when they were threatened by the Jews in Iconium.
- In Lystra, Paul met Timothy, who became a fellow evangelist and church planter.
- After Paul healed a crippled man in Lystra, the people there tried to worship Paul and Barnabas as gods, but the apostles rebuked them and stopped them from doing that.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: evangelist, Iconium, Timothy)

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 03:10-13](#)
- [Acts 14:5-7](#)
- [Acts 14:8-10](#)
- [Acts 14:21-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

magic, magician

Definition:

The term “magic” refers to the practice of using supernatural power that does not come from God. A “magician” is someone who practices magic.

- In Egypt, when God did miraculous things through Moses, the Egyptian pharaoh’s magicians were able to do some of the same things, but their power did not come from God.
- Magic often involves casting spells or repeating certain words in order to make something supernatural happen.
- God commands his people to not do any of these practices of magic or divination.
- A sorcerer is a type of magician, usually one who uses magic to do harm to others.

(See also: divination, [Egypt](#), [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sorcery](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 41:7-8
- Genesis 41:22-24
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Genesis 44:14-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 7:11-13](#)
- [Exodus 7:20-22](#)
- [Exodus 8:18-19](#)
- [Exodus 9:11-12](#)

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:16-18](#)
- [Daniel 04:36-37](#)
- [Isaiah 02:9-11](#)
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- [Micah 05:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:6-8](#)
- [Exodus 15:9-11](#)

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [bread](#), [desert](#), [grain](#), [heaven](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 08:3](#)
- [Exodus 16:26-27](#)
- [Hebrews 09:3-5](#)
- [John 06:30-31](#)
- [Joshua 05:12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 16:26-27](#)
- [Exodus 16:31-32](#)

marvel, wonder, amazed, astonished

Definition:

All these terms refer to being very surprised because of something extraordinary that happened.

- Some of these words are translations of Greek expressions that mean “struck with amazement” or “standing outside of (oneself).” These expressions show how very surprised or shocked the person was feeling. Other languages might also have ways to express this.
- Usually the event that caused the wonder and amazement was a miracle, something only God could do.
- The meaning of these terms can also include feelings of confusion because what happened was totally unexpected.
- Other ways to translate these words could be “extremely surprised” or “very shocked.”
- Related words include “marvelous” (amazing, wonderful), “amazement,” and “astonishment.”
- In general, these terms are positive and express that the people were happy about what had happened.

(See also: [miracle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:9-11](#)
- [Acts 09:20-22](#)
- [Galatians 01:6-7](#)
- [Mark 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 07:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 15:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 19:25-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H926, H2865, H3820, H4159, H4923, H5953, H6313, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8078, H8429, H8539, H8540, H8541, H8653, G639, G1568, G1569, G1605, G1611, G1839, G2284, G2285, G2296, G2297, G2298, G3167, G4023, G4423, G4592, G5059

Uses:

- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

memorial, memorial offering

Definition:

The term “memorial” refers to an action or object that causes someone or something to be remembered.

- This word is also used as an adjective to describe something that is to remind them of something, as in a “memorial offering,” a “memorial portion” of a sacrifice or “memorial stones.”
- In the Old Testament memorial offerings were made so the Israelites would remember what God had done for them.
- God told the Israelite priests to wear special clothing that had memorial stones. These stones had the names of the twelve tribes of Israel engraved on them. These were perhaps to remind them of God’s faithfulness to them.
- In the New Testament, God honored a man named Cornelius because of his charitable deeds for the poor. These deeds were said to be a “memorial” before God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “lasting reminder.”
- A “memorial stone” could be translated as a “stone to remind them (of something).”

Bible References:

- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Exodus 12:12-14](#)
- [Isaiah 66:3](#)
- [Joshua 04:6-7](#)
- [Leviticus 23:23-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:12-14](#)

mercy, merciful

Definition:

The terms “mercy” and “merciful” refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

- The term “mercy” can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
- A powerful person such as a king is described as “merciful” when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
- Being merciful also means to forgive someone who has done something wrong against us.
- We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
- God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “mercy” could be translated as “kindness” or “compassion” or “pity.”
- The term “merciful” could be translated as “showing pity” or “being kind to” or “forgiving.”
- To “show mercy to” or “have mercy on” could be translated as “treat kindly” or “be compassionate toward.”

(See also: [compassion](#), [forgive](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- [1 Timothy 01:12-14](#)
- [Daniel 09:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 19:16-17](#)
- [Hebrews 10:28-29](#)
- [James 02:12-13](#)
- [Luke 06:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 09:27-28](#)
- [Philippians 02:25-27](#)
- [Psalms 041:4-6](#)
- [Romans 12:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing justice and **mercy** to others.

- **19:17** He (Jeremiah) sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had **mercy** on him and ordered his servants to pull Jeremiah out of the well before he died.
- **20:12** The Persian Empire was strong but **merciful** to the people it conquered.
- **27:11** Then Jesus asked the law expert, “What do you think? Which one of the three men was a neighbor to the man who was robbed and beaten?” He replied, “The one who was **merciful** to him.”
- **32:11** But Jesus said to him, “No, I want you to go home and tell your friends and family about everything that God has done for you and how he has had **mercy** on you.”
- **34:09** “But the tax collector stood far away from the religious ruler, did not even look up to heaven. Instead, he pounded on his chest and prayed, ‘God, please be **merciful** to me because I am a sinner.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2551, H2603, H2604, H2616, H2617, H2623, H3722, H3727, H4627, H4819, H5503, H5504, H5505, H5506, H6014, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G3741, G4698

Uses:

- **Exodus 33:19-20**
- **Exodus 34:5-7**

Midian, Midianites

Facts:

Midian was a son of Abraham and his wife Keturah. It is also the name of a people group and region located in the northern Arabian Desert to the south of the land of Canaan. The people of that group were called "Midianites."

- When Moses first left Egypt, he went to the region of Midian where he met the daughters of Jethro and helped them water their flocks. Later Moses married one of Jethro's daughters.
- Joseph was taken to Egypt by a group of Midianite slave traders.
- Many years later the Midianites attacked and raided the Israelites in the land of Canaan. Gideon led the Israelites in defeating them.
- Many of the modern-day Arabian tribes are descendants of this group.

(See also [Arabia](#), [Egypt](#), [flock](#), [Gideon](#), [Jethro](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [Exodus 02:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 25:1-4](#)
- [Genesis 36:34-36](#)
- [Genesis 37:27-28](#)
- [Judges 07:1](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***16:03** But then the people forgot about God and started worshiping idols again. So God allowed the **Midianites**, a nearby enemy people group, to defeat them. ***16:04** The Israelites were so scared, they hid in caves so the **Midianites** would not find them. ***16:11** The man's friend said, "This dream means that Gideon's army will defeat the **Midianite** army!" ***16:14** God confused the **Midianites**, so that they started attacking and killing each other.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:15-17](#)

- [Exodus 3:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 4:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 18:1-4](#)

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Genesis 06:4](#)
- [Mark 09:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 32:9-11](#)

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: [believe](#), [heart](#), soul)

Bible References:

- [Luke 10:25-28](#)
- [Mark 06:51-52](#)
- [Matthew 21:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 10:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 13:17-18](#)

- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 36:2-4

miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 04:15-18](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Daniel 04:1-3](#)
- [Deuteronomy 13:1-3](#)

- [Exodus 03:19-22](#)
- [John 02:11](#)
- [Matthew 13:57-58](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059, H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)
- [Exodus 4:21-23](#)
- [Exodus 07 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 7:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 7:8-10](#)
- [Exodus 11:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 15:9-11](#)

Moab, Moabite, Moabites

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- [Ruth 01:1-2](#)
- [Ruth 01:22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:14-15](#)

mold

Definition:

A mold is a hollowed-out piece of wood, metal, or clay that is used to form objects out of gold, silver, or other materials that can be softened and then shaped by the mold.

- Molds were used to make jewelry, dishes, and utensils for eating, among other things.
- In the Bible, molds are mentioned mainly in connection with molding statues to be used as idols.
- Metals have to be heated to a very high temperature so that they can be poured into the mold.
- To mold something means to form an object into a certain shape or likeness by using a mold or the hands to form a certain shape.

Translation Suggestions

- This term could also be translated as, “to form” or “to shape” or “to make.”
- The word “molded” could be translated as “shaped” or “formed.”
- The object “mold” could possibly be translated with a phrase or word that means, “shaped container” or “sculpted dish.”

(See also: [false god](#), [gold](#), [idol](#), [silver](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 32:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 32:3-4](#)

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:20-21](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [Exodus 02:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 09:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 17:3-4](#)
- [Romans 05:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire. ***12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." ***12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters. ***12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God. ***13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 2:9-10
- Exodus 2:15-17
- Exodus 2:21-22
- Exodus 3:1-3
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 4:10-13
- Exodus 4:18-20
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 5:19-21
- Exodus 5:22-23
- Exodus 6:1
- Exodus 6:10-13
- Exodus 6:26-27
- Exodus 7:1-2
- Exodus 7:6-7
- Exodus 7:8-10
- Exodus 7:14-15
- Exodus 7:19
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 8:1-4
- Exodus 8:28-29
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:11-12
- Exodus 9:13-14
- Exodus 9:27-28
- Exodus 9:29-30
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 10:21-23
- Exodus 11:1-3
- Exodus 12:1-2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 12:43-44
- Exodus 12:49-51
- Exodus 13:1-2
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 14:1-3
- Exodus 15:1

- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 16:9-12
- Exodus 16:22-23
- Exodus 16:28-30
- Exodus 16:31-32
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 18:7-8
- Exodus 18:24-27
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 20:18-21
- Exodus 24:1-2
- Exodus 24:9-11
- Exodus 24:14-15
- Exodus 25:1-2
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:17-18
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 31:1-2
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:18
- Exodus 32:1-2
- Exodus 32:17-18
- Exodus 33:1-3
- Exodus 33:4-6
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Exodus 33:10-11
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:14-16
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 34:1-2
- Exodus 34:3-4
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:8-9
- Exodus 34:27-28
- Exodus 34:29-31
- Exodus 34:32-33
- Exodus 34:34-35
- Exodus 35:1-3
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 36:5-7

- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 39:1
- Exodus 39:4-5
- Exodus 39:6-7
- Exodus 39:21
- Exodus 39:25-26
- Exodus 39:27-29
- Exodus 39:30-31
- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 39:42-43
- Exodus 40:1-2
- Exodus 40:14-16
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Exodus 40:31-33
- Exodus 40:34-35

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 15:34-35](#)
- [2 Samuel 01:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 23:1-2](#)
- [Luke 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 11:16-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 33:4-6](#)

myrrh

Definition:

Myrrh is an oil or spice that is made from the resin of a myrrh tree that grows in Africa and Asia. It is related to frankincense.

- Myrrh was also used to make incense, perfume, and medicine, and to prepare dead bodies for burial.
- Myrrh was one of the gifts that the learned men gave to Jesus when he was born.
- Jesus was offered wine mixed with myrrh in order to ease the pain when he was crucified.

(See also: [frankincense](#), learned men)

Bible References:

- [Exodus 30:22-25](#)
- [Genesis 37:25-26](#)
- [John 11:1-2](#)
- [Mark 15:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 02:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 30:22-25](#)

name, names, named

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:19-21](#)
- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 09:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 12:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 35:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

Uses:

- Exodus 6:16-19
- Exodus 9:15-17
- Exodus 15:2-3
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 20:7
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 33:19-20
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 35:30-33
- Exodus 39:6-7
- Exodus 39:14-16

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was the sixth son of Jacob. His descendants formed the tribe of Naphtali, which was one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- Sometimes the name Naphtali was used to refer to the land where the tribe lived. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The land of Naphtali was located in the northern part of Israel, next to the tribes of Dan and Asher. its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth.
- This tribe was mentioned in both the Old and New Testaments of the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Asher](#), [Dan](#), [Jacob](#), [Sea of Galilee](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 04:15-17](#)
- [Deuteronomy 27:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 48:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 30:7-8](#)
- [Judges 01:33](#)
- [Matthew 04:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, [Canaan](#), Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 14:15-17](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:6-7](#)
- [2 Kings 17:11-12](#)
- [Acts 02:5-7](#)
- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Acts 17:26-27](#)
- [Acts 26:4-5](#)
- [Daniel 03:3-5](#)
- [Genesis 10:2-5](#)
- [Genesis 27:29](#)

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Exodus 34:23-24

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, Babylon, Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 06:13-15](#)
- [2 Kings 25:1-3](#)
- [Daniel 01:1-2](#)
- [Daniel 04:4-6](#)
- [Ezekiel 26:7-8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah. ***20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year. ***20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind. ***20:09** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Beersheba](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [Kadesh](#), [Salt Sea](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:61-62
- [Joshua 03:14-16](#)
- [Numbers 13:17-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

neighbor

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Galatians 05:13-15](#)
- [James 02:8-9](#)
- [John 09:8-9](#)
- [Luke 01:56-58](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 19:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 22:39-40](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 11:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 12:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 20:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 21:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 22:7-9](#)
- [Exodus 22:10-13](#)
- [Exodus 22:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 32:25-27](#)

Nile River, River of Egypt, the Nile

Facts:

The Nile is a very long and wide river in northeastern Africa. It is especially well known as the main river of Egypt.

- The Nile River flows north through Egypt and into the Mediterranean Sea.
- Crops grow well in the fertile land on either side of the Nile River.
- Most Egyptians live near the Nile River since it is an important source of water for food crops.
- The Israelites lived in the land of Goshen, which was very fertile because it was located along the Nile River.
- When Moses was a baby, his parents placed him in a basket among the reeds of the Nile to hide him from Pharaoh's men.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Goshen](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- [Amos 08:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 41:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 46:7-9](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:04** Egypt was a large, powerful country located along the **Nile River**. ***09:04** Pharaoh saw that the Israelites were having many babies, so he ordered his people to kill all Israelite baby boys by throwing them into the **Nile River**. ***09:06** When the boy's parents could no longer hide him, they put him in a floating basket among the reeds along the edge of the **Nile River** in order to save him from being killed. ***10:03** God turned the **Nile River** into blood, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 7:16-18](#)

oath, swear, swear by

Definition:

In the Bible, an oath is a formal promise to do something. The person making the oath is required to fulfill that promise. An oath involves a commitment to being faithful and truthful.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In the Bible, the term “swear” means to speak an oath.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Sometimes these terms are used together, as in “swear an oath.”
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.
- A modern-day meaning of the word “swear” means is “use foul language.” This is not its meaning in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- “To swear” could be translated as “to formally promise” or “to pledge” or “to commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:22-24
- Genesis 24:1-4
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:29-31
- [Luke 01:72-75](#)
- [Mark 06:26-29](#)

- [Matthew 05:36-37](#)
- [Matthew 14:6-7](#)
- [Matthew 26:71-72](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 6:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 13:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 13:11-13](#)
- [Exodus 13:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 22:10-13](#)
- [Exodus 32:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)

obey, obedient, obedience

Definition:

The term “obey” means to do what is required or commanded. The term “obedient” describes someone who obeys. Obedience” is the characteristic that an obedient person has. Sometimes the command is about not doing something, as in “do not steal.”

- Usually the term “obey” is used in the context of obeying the commands or laws of a person in authority.
- For example, people obey laws which are created by the leaders of a country, kingdom, or other organization.
- Children obey their parents, slaves obey their masters, people obey God, and citizens obey the laws of their country.
- When someone in authority commands people not to do something, they obey by not doing that.
- Ways to translate obey could include a word or phrase that means “do what is commanded” or “follow orders” or “do what God says to do.”
- The term “obedient” could be translated as “doing what was commanded” or “following orders” or “doing what God commands.”

(See also: citizen, [command](#), [disobey](#), [kingdom](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Acts 06:7](#)
- [Genesis 28:6-7](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [Luke 06:46-48](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 19:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 28:20](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah **obeyed** God. He and his three sons built the boat just the way God had told them.
- **05:06** Again Abraham **obeyed** God and prepared to sacrifice his son.
- **05:10** ”Because you (Abraham) have **obeyed** me, all the families of the world will be blessed through your family”
- **05:10** But the Egyptians did not believe God or **obey** his commands.
- **13:07** If the people **obeyed** these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 23:20-22
- Exodus 24:7-8
- Exodus 34:10-11

offspring

Definition:

The term “offspring” is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- Often in the Bible, “offspring” has the same meaning as “children” or “descendants.”
- The term “seed” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 17:28-29](#)
- [Exodus 13:11-13](#)
- Genesis 24:5-7
- [Isaiah 41:8-9](#)
- [Job 05:23-25](#)
- [Luke 03:7](#)
- [Matthew 12:33-35](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:11-13](#)

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 01:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 29:1-2](#)
- [Leviticus 05:11](#)
- [Leviticus 08:1-3](#)
- [Mark 06:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 25:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 27:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 29:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 29:21](#)
- [Exodus 29:22-23](#)
- [Exodus 29:40](#)
- [Exodus 30:22-25](#)
- [Exodus 30:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 30:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 30:32-33](#)
- [Exodus 31:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 35:4-9](#)

- Exodus 35:13-16
- Exodus 35:27-29
- Exodus 37:27-29
- Exodus 39:36-39
- Exodus 40:8-11

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: [lamp](#), the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 27:28-29](#)
- [Deuteronomy 06:10-12](#)
- [Exodus 23:10-11](#)
- [Genesis 08:10-12](#)
- [James 03:11-12](#)
- [Luke 16:5-7](#)
- [Psalms 052:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 27:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 29:40](#)
- [Exodus 30:22-25](#)

oppress, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms “oppress” and “oppression” refer to treating people harshly. An “oppressor” is a person who oppresses people.

- The term “oppression” especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term “oppressed” describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “oppress” could be translated as, “severely mistreat” or “cause to be heavily burdened” or “put under miserable bondage” or “rule harshly.”
- Ways to translate “oppression” could include “heavy suppression and bondage” or “burdensome control.”
- The phrase “the oppressed” could be translated as “oppressed people” or “people in terrible bondage” or “those who are treated harshly.”
- The term “oppressor” could be translated as “person who oppresses” or “nation who controls and rules harshly” or “persecutor.”

(See also: [bind](#), [enslave](#), [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- [Deuteronomy 26:6-7](#)
- [Ecclesiastes 04:1](#)
- [Job 10:1-3](#)
- [Judges 02:18-19](#)
- [Nehemiah 05:14-15](#)
- [Psalms 119:133-134](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H4939, H5065, H6115, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

Uses:

- Exodus 1:11-12
- Exodus 3:9-10
- Exodus 4:29-31
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Exodus 23:6-9

ordain

Definition:

To ordain means to formally appoint a person for a special task or role. It also means to formally make a rule or decree.

- The term “ordain” often refers to formally appointing somebody as a priest, minister, or rabbi.
- For example, God ordained Aaron and his descendants to be priests.
- It can also mean to institute or establish something, such as a religious feast or covenant.
- Depending on the context, “to ordain” could be translated as “to assign” or “to appoint” or “to command” or “to make a rule” or “to institute.”

(See also: [command](#), [covenant](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [law](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 12:31-32](#)
- [2 Samuel 17:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 28:40-41](#)
- [Numbers 03:3-4](#)
- [Psalms 111:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 28:40-41](#)
- [Exodus 29:29-30](#)

ordinance

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordain](#), [statute](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 04:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 27:20-21](#)
- [Leviticus 08:31-33](#)
- [Malachi 03:6-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 27:20-21](#)

ox, oxen**Definition:**

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase “to be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [cow](#), [yoke](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 15:1-3](#)
- [2 Chronicles 15:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 24:5-6](#)
- [Luke 14:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 22:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 20:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 21:28-30](#)
- [Exodus 22:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 22:10-13](#)
- [Exodus 23:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 24:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 27:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 34:19-20](#)
- [Exodus 38:1-3](#)

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 06:29-30](#)
- [Ezekiel 40:14-16](#)
- [John 12:12-13](#)
- [Numbers 33:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:27](#)

parable, parables

Definition:

The term “parable” usually refers to a short story or object lesson that is used to explain or teach a moral truth.

- Jesus used parables to teach his disciples. Although he also told parables to the crowds of people, he did not always explain the parable.
- A parable could be used to reveal truth to his disciples while hiding that truth from people like the Pharisees who did not believe in Jesus.
- The prophet Nathan told David a parable to show the king his terrible sin.
- The story of the Good Samaritan is an example of a parable that is a story. Jesus’ comparison of old and new wineskins is an example of a parable that was an object lesson to help the disciples understand Jesus’ teachings.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- [Luke 05:36](#)
- [Luke 06:39-40](#)
- [Luke 08:4-6](#)
- [Luke 08:9-10](#)
- [Mark 04:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 13:3-6](#)
- [Matthew 13:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 13:13-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

pardon

Definition:

The term “pardon” means to forgive and not punish someone for his sin.

- This word has the same meaning as “forgive” but may also include the meaning of a formal decision to not punish someone who is guilty.
- In a court of law, a judge can pardon a person found guilty of a crime.
- Even though we are guilty of sin, Jesus Christ pardoned us from being punished in hell, based on his sacrificial death on the cross.

Translation Suggestions

- If the language has a word for a formal decision to forgive, that word could be used to translate this term.
- This term could also be translated in the same way as “forgive” and “forgiveness.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [Deuteronomy 29:20-21](#)
- [Isaiah 40:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 025:10-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:20-22](#)
- [Exodus 34:8-9](#)

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [2 Kings 23:21-23](#)
- [Deuteronomy 16:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 12:26-28](#)
- [Ezra 06:21-22](#)
- [John 13:1-2](#)
- [Joshua 05:10-11](#)
- [Leviticus 23:4-6](#)
- [Numbers 09:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.

- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

Uses:

- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 12:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 12:21-22](#)
- [Exodus 12:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 12:43-44](#)
- [Exodus 12:47-48](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34:25-26](#)

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Luke 07:48-50](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Mark 04:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 05:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 10:11-13](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

***15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. ***16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. ***21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. ***48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. *50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:18-20](#)

Pentecost, Festival of Weeks

Facts:

The “Festival of Weeks” was a Jewish festival that took place fifty days after Passover. It was later referred to as “Pentecost.”

- The Feast of Weeks was seven weeks (fifty days) after the Feast of Firstfruits. In the New Testament times, this festival was called “Pentecost” which has “fifty” as part of its meaning.
- The Festival of Weeks was held to celebrate the beginning of the grain harvest. It was also a time to remember when God first gave the Law to the Israelites on the tablets of stone given to Moses.
- In the New Testament, the Day of Pentecost is especially significant because it was when the believers of Jesus received the Holy Spirit in a new way.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [festival](#), [firstfruits](#), [harvest](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 08:12-13](#)
- [Acts 02:1-4](#)
- [Acts 20:15-16](#)
- [Deuteronomy 16:16-17](#)
- [Numbers 28:26-28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 34:21-22](#)

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 08:51-53](#)
- [1 Samuel 08:6-7](#)
- [Deuteronomy 28:9-10](#)

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 1:8-10
- Exodus 7:1-2
- Exodus 9:5-7
- Exodus 9:13-14
- Exodus 9:15-17
- Exodus 10:7-8
- Exodus 11:1-3
- Exodus 12:17-18
- Exodus 12:31-33
- Exodus 12:41-42
- Exodus 13:17-18
- Exodus 15:14-15
- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 18:13-14

- Exodus 19:1-2
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 22:28
- Exodus 23:26-29
- Exodus 30:7-9
- Exodus 30:29-31
- Exodus 30:32-33
- Exodus 30:37-38
- Exodus 32:1-2
- Exodus 32:3-4
- Exodus 32:7-8
- Exodus 32:17-18
- Exodus 33:1-3
- Exodus 33:4-6
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Exodus 33:10-11
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:14-16
- Exodus 34:8-9
- Exodus 34:10-11

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 11:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 07:51-53](#)
- [Acts 10:36-38](#)
- [Daniel 09:24-25](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:20-22](#)
- [Joel 03:16-17](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

Uses:

- Exodus 3:7-8
- Exodus 04 General Notes
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 6:6-7
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 8:1-4
- Exodus 8:22-24
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:13-14
- Exodus 9:15-17
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 22:25-27

perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:22-23](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:16-17](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:18-20](#)
- [Psalms 049:18-20](#)
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 13:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

Uses:

- [Exodus 19:19-22](#)

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the “Perezites,” was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan, false god](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 09:20-21](#)
- [2 Chronicles 08:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 03:16-18](#)
- [Genesis 13:5-7](#)
- [Joshua 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 23:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

persecute, persecution

Definition:

The terms “persecute” and “persecution” refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term “persecute” could also be translated as “keep oppressing” or “treat harshly” or “continually mistreat.”
- Ways to translate “persecution” could include, “harsh mistreatment” or “oppression” or “persistent hurtful treatment”

(See also: Christian, [church](#), [oppress](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:51-53](#)
- [Acts 13:50-52](#)
- [Galatians 01:13-14](#)
- [John 05:16-18](#)
- [Mark 10:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 05:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 10:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 13:20-21](#)
- [Philippians 03:6-7](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** “The rocky ground is a person who hears God’s word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away.”
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, “Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?” Saul asked, “Who are you, Master?” Jesus replied to him, “I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!”
- **46:04** But Ananias said, “Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:

persevere, perseverance

Definition:

The terms “persevere” and “perseverance” refer to continuing to do something even though it may be very difficult or take a long time.

- To persevere can also mean to keep acting in a Christ-like way even while going through difficult trials or circumstances.
- If a person has “perseverance” it means he is able to keep doing what he should do, even when it is painful or difficult.
- Continuing to believe what God teaches requires perseverance, especially when faced with false teachings.
- Be careful not to use a word like “stubborn” which usually has a negative meaning.

(See also: patient, trial)

Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:11-12](#)
- [Ephesians 06:17-18](#)
- [James 05:9-11](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Pharaoh, king of Egypt

Facts:

In ancient times, the kings who ruled over the country of Egypt were called pharaohs.

- Altogether, over 300 pharaohs ruled Egypt for more than 2,000 years.
- These Egyptians kings were very powerful and wealthy.
- Several of these pharaohs are mentioned in the Bible.
- Often this title is used as a name rather than as a title. In these cases, it is capitalized and written as “Pharaoh.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [egypt](#), [king](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:20-21](#)
- Genesis 12:14-16
- Genesis 40:6-8
- Genesis 41:25-26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the **Pharaoh**, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **08:08 Pharaoh** was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of Egypt!
- **09:02** So the **Pharaoh** who was ruling over Egypt at that time made the Israelites slaves to the Egyptians.
- **09:13** ”I will send you to **Pharaoh** so that you can bring the Israelites out of their slavery in Egypt.”
- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed **Pharaoh** that he is more powerful than **Pharaoh** and all of Egypt’s gods.

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- Exodus 1:11-12
- Exodus 1:15-17
- Exodus 1:18-19
- Exodus 2:5-6
- Exodus 2:9-10
- Exodus 2:15-17
- Exodus 3:9-10
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 5:6-9
- Exodus 5:10-11
- Exodus 5:12-14
- Exodus 5:15-18
- Exodus 5:19-21
- Exodus 5:22-23
- Exodus 6:1
- Exodus 6:10-13
- Exodus 7:1-2
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 7:8-10
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Exodus 7:14-15
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 7:23-25
- Exodus 8:1-4
- Exodus 8:28-29
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:5-7
- Exodus 9:11-12
- Exodus 9:13-14
- Exodus 9:27-28
- Exodus 9:31-33
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 10:9-11
- Exodus 10:27-29
- Exodus 11:1-3
- Exodus 12:29-30
- Exodus 13:14-16

- Exodus 13:17-18
- Exodus 14:1-3
- Exodus 14:6-9
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Exodus 15:4-5
- Exodus 15:19-21
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 18:7-8

Pharisee, Pharisees

Facts:

The Pharisees were an important, powerful group of Jewish religious leaders in Jesus' time.

- Many of them were middle class businessmen and some of them were also priests.
- Of all the Jewish leaders, the Pharisees were the most strict in obeying the Laws of Moses and other Jewish laws and traditions.
- They were very concerned about keeping the Jewish people separated from the influence of the Gentiles around them. The name "Pharisee" comes from the word "to separate."
- The Pharisees believed in life after death; they also believed in the existence of angels and other spiritual beings.
- The Pharisees and Sadducees actively opposed Jesus and the early Christians.

(See also: [council](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [law](#), [Sadducee](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 26:4-5](#)
- [John 03:1-2](#)
- [Luke 11:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 05:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 09:10-11](#)
- [Matthew 12:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 12:38-40](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 13:3-4](#)
- [2 Chronicles 09:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 10:11-14](#)
- [Psalm 056:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 15:14-15](#)
- [Exodus 23:30-33](#)

pierce

Definition:

The term “pierce” means to stab something with a sharp, pointed object. It is also used figuratively to refer to causing someone deep emotional pain.

- A soldier pierced Jesus’ side when he was hanging on the cross.
- In Bible times, a slave who was set free would have his ear pierced as a sign that he was choosing to continue working for his master.
- Simeon spoke figuratively when he told Mary that a sword would pierce her heart, meaning that she would experience deep grief because of what would happen to her son Jesus.

(See also: [cross](#), [Jesus](#), [servant](#), [Simeon](#))

Bible References:

- [Job 16:13-14](#)
- [Job 20:23-25](#)
- [John 19:36-37](#)
- [Psalms 022:16-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [idol](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 18:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 13:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 33:7-9](#)
- [Genesis 31:45-47](#)
- [Proverbs 09:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 14:19-20](#)
- [Exodus 23:23-25](#)
- [Exodus 26:31-33](#)

- Exodus 26:36-37
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Exodus 33:10-11
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 36:35-36
- Exodus 40:17-20

pit

Definition:

A pit is a deep hole that has been dug in the ground.

- People dig pits for the purpose of trapping animals or finding water.
- A pit can also be used as a temporary place to hold a prisoner.
- Sometimes the phrase “the pit” refers to the grave or to hell. Other times it may refer to “the abyss.”
- A very deep pit can also be called a “cistern.”
- The term “pit” is also used figuratively in phrases such as, “pit of destruction” which describes being trapped in a disastrous situation or being deeply involved in sinful, destructive practices.

(See also: abyss, hell, [prison](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 37:21-22
- [Job 33:16-18](#)
- [Luke 06:39-40](#)
- [Proverbs 01:12-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 21:33-34](#)

plague

Definition:

Plagues are events which cause suffering or death to a large number of people. Often a plague is a disease that spreads quickly and causes many people to die before it can be stopped.

- Many plagues have natural causes, but some were sent by God to punish people for sin.
- In the time of Moses, God sent ten plagues against Egypt to force Pharaoh to let Israel leave Egypt. These plagues included water turning into blood, physical diseases, destruction of crops by insects and hail, three days of complete darkness, and death of the firstborn sons.
- This could also be translated as “widespread disasters” or “widespread disease,” depending on the context.

(See also: hail, [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [Pharaoh](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 24:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 09:13-14](#)
- [Genesis 12:17-20](#)
- [Luke 21:10-11](#)
- [Revelation 09:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 5:3-5](#)
- [Exodus 9:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 11:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 12:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 30:11-14](#)
- [Exodus 32:33-35](#)

plead, pleading, plea

Facts:

The terms “plead” and “pleading” refer to urgently asking someone to do something. A “plea” is an urgent request.

- Pleading often implies that the person feels in very great need or strongly desires help.
- People can plead or make an urgent appeal to God for mercy or to ask him to grant something, either for themselves or someone else.
- Other ways to translate this could include “beg” or “implore” or “urgently ask.”
- The term “plea” could also be translated as “urgent request” or “strong urging.”
- Make sure it is clear in the context that this term does not refer to begging for money.

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 08:3-5](#)
- [Judges 06:31-32](#)
- [Luke 04:38-39](#)
- [Proverbs 18:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

pledge

Definition:

The term “pledge” refers to formally and solemnly promising to do something or give something.

- In the Old Testament the officials of Israel pledged to be loyal to King David.
- The object given as a pledge would be returned to its owner when the promise was fulfilled.
- “To pledge” could be translate as “to formally commit to” or “to strongly promise.”
- The term “pledge” can also refer to an object given as a guarantee or promise that a debt will be paid.
- Ways to translate “a pledge” could include “a solemn promise” or “a formal commitment” or “a guarantee” or “a formal assurance,” depending on the context.

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#), vow)

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 05:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 22:25-27](#)
- [Genesis 38:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 34:27-28](#)

possess, possession

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as, “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as, “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 06:70](#)
- [1 Kings 09:17-19](#)
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- [Deuteronomy 04:5-6](#)
- [Genesis 31:36-37](#)

- [Matthew 13:44-46](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 19:3-6](#)

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 01:11-12](#)
- [Genesis 31:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:21-23](#)
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- [Judges 02:18-19](#)
- [Luke 01:16-17](#)
- [Luke 04:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 26:62-64](#)
- [Philippians 03:20-21](#)
- [Psalm 080:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

Uses:

- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 6:6-7
- Exodus 9:15-17
- Exodus 14:29-31
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 32:9-11

praise

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term “to praise” could also be translated as “to speak well of” or “to highly honor with words” or “to say good things about.”
- The noun “praise” could be translated as “spoken honor” or “speech that honors” or “speaking good things about.”

(See also: [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 01:3-4](#)
- [Acts 02:46-47](#)
- [Acts 13:48-49](#)
- [Daniel 03:28](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 49:8](#)
- [James 03:9-10](#)
- [John 05:41-42](#)
- [Luke 01:46-47](#)
- [Luke 01:64-66](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Matthew 15:29-31](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army. ***17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings. ***22:07** Zechariah said, ”**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people! ***43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other. ***47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 15:2-3
- Exodus 15:9-11

pray, prayer, prayers, prayed

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), [forgive](#), [praise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:8-10](#)
- [Acts 08:24](#)
- [Acts 14:23-26](#)
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [John 17:9-11](#)
- [Luke 11:1](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 14:22-24](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins. ***13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them. ***19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!” ***21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people. ***38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation. ***43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other. ***49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 8:8-9
- Exodus 9:27-28
- Exodus 10:16-18

priest, priests, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [chief priests](#), [high priest](#), mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)
- [Genesis 14:17-18](#)
- [Genesis 47:20-22](#)

- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [Luke 10:31-32](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)
- [Matthew 12:3-4](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:34-36](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. ***19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. ***21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 3:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 18:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 19 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 19:3-6](#)
- [Exodus 19:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 28 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 28:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 28:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 28:40-41](#)
- [Exodus 29 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 29:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 29:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 29:22-23](#)

- [Exodus 29:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 29:29-30](#)
- [Exodus 29:31-34](#)
- [Exodus 29:43-44](#)
- [Exodus 30 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 30:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 31:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 35:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 38:21-23](#)
- [Exodus 39:40-41](#)
- [Exodus 40:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 40:14-16](#)

prison, prisoner, imprison

Definition:

The term “prison” refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A “prisoner” is someone who has been put in the prison.

- A person may be kept in a prison while waiting to be judged in a trial.
- The term “imprisoned” means “kept in a prison” or “kept in captivity.”
- Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another word for “prison” is “jail.”
- This term could also be translated as “dungeon” in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
- The term “prisoners” can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will. Another way to translate this meaning would be “captives.”
- Other ways to translate “imprisoned” could be, “kept as a prisoner” or “kept in captivity” or “held captive.”

(See also: [captive](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 25:4-5](#)
- [Ephesians 04:1-3](#)
- [Luke 12:57-59](#)
- [Luke 22:33-34](#)
- [Mark 06:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 05:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 14:3-5](#)
- [Matthew 25:34-36](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:29-30](#)

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: preach)

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:20-22](#)
- [Acts 13:38-39](#)
- [Jonah 03:1-3](#)
- [Luke 04:18-19](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 10:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 32:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 33:19-20](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)

promise, promises, promised

Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
- A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 03:15-16](#)
- [Genesis 25:31-34](#)
- [Hebrews 11:8-10](#)
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- [Numbers 30:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”¹
- **03:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **05:04** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son” he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **08:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:01** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H562, H1696, H8569, G1843, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:24-25](#)
- [Exodus 24 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 24:7-8](#)

Promised Land

Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 08:1-2](#)
- [Ezekiel 07:26-27](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:01** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land!**
- **14:01** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:09** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

Uses:

- [Exodus 01 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 06 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 33 General Notes](#)

prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [Acts 03:24-26](#)
- [John 01:43-45](#)
- [Malachi 04:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)

- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Psalm 051:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Uses:

- [Exodus 7:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 15:19-21](#)

prostitute, harlot, whore

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [adultery](#), [false god](#), sexual immorality, [idol](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:30-31
- Genesis 38:21-23
- [Luke 15:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 21:31-32](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 34:15-17](#)

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, **humble**, joy)

Bible References:

- **1 Timothy 03:6-7**
- **2 Corinthians 01:12-14**
- **Galatians 06:3-5**
- **Isaiah 13:19-20**
- **Luke 01:50-51**

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said. ***34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:9-10](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Genesis 04:13-15](#)
- [Luke 23:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 25:44-46](#)

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. ***16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. ***19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. ***48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. ***48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. ***49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that

he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. *49:11 Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 21:20-21
- Exodus 32:33-35
- Exodus 34:5-7

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 01:5-8](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Hebrews 09:13-15](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 02:22-24](#)
- [Revelation 14:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

Uses:

- Exodus 25:10-11
- Exodus 25:35-36
- Exodus 25:37-40
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 28:13-14
- Exodus 29:35-37
- Exodus 30:3-4
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 37:1-3
- Exodus 37:4-6
- Exodus 37:10-13
- Exodus 37:14-16
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Exodus 37:20-22
- Exodus 37:23-24
- Exodus 37:25-26
- Exodus 37:27-29
- Exodus 39:14-16
- Exodus 39:25-26
- Exodus 39:30-31
- Exodus 39:36-39

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721

Uses:

- Exodus 1:8-10
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 22:1-4
- Exodus 32:5-6
- Exodus 40:36-38

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: [resurrection](#), [appoint](#), [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721

ransom, ransomed

Definition:

The term “ransom” refers to a sum of money or other payment that is demanded or paid for the release of a person who is held captive.

- As a verb, “to ransom” means to make a payment or to do something self-sacrificially in order to rescue someone who has been captured, enslaved or imprisoned. This meaning of “buy back” is similar to the meaning of “redeem.”
- Jesus allowed himself to be killed as a ransom to free sinful people from their enslavement to sin. This act of God buying back his people through paying the penalty of their sin is also called “redemption” in the Bible.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to ransom” could also be translated as “to pay to release” or “to pay a price to free” or “to buy back.”
- The phrase “to pay a ransom” could be translated as “to pay the price (of freedom)” or “to pay the penalty (to free people)” or “to make the required payment.”
- The noun “ransom” could be translated as “a buying back” or “a penalty paid” or “the price paid” (to free or buy back people or land).
- The terms a “ransom” and a “redemption” have the same meaning in English but are sometimes used slightly differently. Other languages may have only one term for this concept.
- Make sure this is translated differently from “atonement.”

(See also: [atonement](#), redeem)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 02:5-7](#)
- [Isaiah 43:2-3](#)
- [Job 06:21-23](#)
- [Leviticus 19:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 20:25-28](#)
- [Psalms 049:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H3724, H6299, H6306, G487, G3083

Uses:

- [Exodus 30:11-14](#)

reap, reaper**Definition:**

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Other ways to translate “to reap” and “reaper” could include “to harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”).

(See also: good news, [harvest](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 06:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 13:29-30](#)
- [Matthew 13:36-39](#)
- [Matthew 25:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

receive

Definition:

The term “receive” generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

- To “receive” can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in “he received punishment for what he did.”
- There is also a special sense in which we can “receive” a person. For example, to “receive” guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
- To “receive the gift of the Holy Spirit” means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
- To “receive Jesus” means to accept God’s offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
- When a blind person “receives his sight” means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “receive” could be translated as “accept” or “welcome” or “experience” or “be given.”
- The expression “you will receive power” could be translated as “you will be given power” or “God will give you power” or “power will be given to you (by God)” or “God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you.”
- The phrase “received his sight” could be translated as “was able to see” or “became able to see again” or “was healed by God so that he was able to see.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:9-10](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 01:6-7](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:1-2](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Jeremiah 32:33-35](#)
- [Luke 09:5-6](#)
- [Malachi 03:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 049:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no sin. He would die to **receive** the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring peace

between God and people.

- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, **receive** my spirit."
- **49:06** He (Jesus) taught that some people will receive him and be saved, but others will not.
- **49:10** When Jesus died on the cross, he **received** your punishment.
- **49:13** God will save everyone who believes in Jesus and **receives** him as their Master.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1878, H2505, H3557, H3947, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2210, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G3970, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G4732, G5264, G5274, G5562

Uses:

- **Exodus 25:1-2**
- **Exodus 30:15-16**
- **Exodus 32:3-4**

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 36:34-36](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Luke 19:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 02:22-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:17-18](#)

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: joy)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:15-18](#)
- [Acts 16:32-34](#)
- [John 03:29-30](#)
- [Luke 15:6-7](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 04:10-13](#)
- [Romans 05:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 18:9-11](#)

repent, repents, repented, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: [forgive](#), [sin](#), [turn](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:19-20](#)
- [Luke 03:3](#)
- [Luke 03:8](#)
- [Luke 05:29-32](#)
- [Luke 24:45-47](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 03:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 04:17](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”

- **42:08** “”It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- **44:05** ”So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

Uses:

- [Exodus 35 General Notes](#)

rest

Definition:

The term “to rest” literally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. The phrase “the rest of” refers to the remainder of something. A “rest” is to stop working.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to rest (oneself)” could also be translated as “to stop working” or “to refresh himself” or “to stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 06:40-42](#)
- [Genesis 02:1-3](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:16-19](#)
- [Matthew 11:28-30](#)
- [Revelation 14:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677,

H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

Uses:

- Exodus 16:22-23
- Exodus 16:28-30
- Exodus 17:11-13
- Exodus 20:8-11
- Exodus 23:12-13
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:16-17
- Exodus 33:14-16
- Exodus 34:21-22
- Exodus 35:1-3

resurrection

Definition:

The term “resurrection” refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

- To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
- The word “resurrection” often refers to Jesus’ coming back to life after he died.
- When Jesus said, “I am the Resurrection and the Life” he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

Translation Suggestions:

- A person’s “resurrection” could be translated as his “coming back to life” or his “becoming alive again after being dead.”
- The literal meaning of this word is “a rising up” or “the act of being raised (from the dead).” These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](#), [death](#), [raise](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:12-14](#)
- [1 Peter 03:21-22](#)
- [Hebrews 11:35-38](#)
- [John 05:28-29](#)
- [Luke 20:27-28](#)
- [Luke 20:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 22:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 22:29-30](#)
- [Philippians 03:8-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [21:14](#) Through the Messiah’s death and **resurrection**, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the New Covenant.
- [37:05](#) Jesus replied, “I am the **Resurrection** and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he dies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G386, G1454, G1815

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Joseph \(OT\)](#), [Leah](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:31-32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:21-22
- Genesis 42:37-38

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)
- [Exodus 6:14-15](#)

reveal, reveals, revealed, revelation

Definition:

The term “reveal” means to cause something to be known. A “revelation” is something that has been made known.

- God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
- God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
- When Paul said that he received the gospel by “revelation from Jesus Christ,” he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
- In the New Testament book “Revelation” is about God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “reveal” could include “make known” or “disclose” or “show clearly.”
- Depending on the context, possible ways to translate “revelation” could be “communication from God” or “things that God has revealed” or “teachings about God.” It is best to keep the meaning of “reveal” in the translation.
- The phrase “where there is no revelation” could be translated as “when God is not revealing himself to people” or “when God is not speaking to people” or “among people whom God has not communicating.”

(See also: good news, good news, dream, vision)

Bible References:

- [Daniel 11:1-2](#)
- [Ephesians 03:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 01:11-12](#)
- [Lamentations 02:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 10:26-27](#)
- [Philippians 03:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H241, H1540, H1541, G601, G602, G5537

Uses:

- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 13 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)

right hand

Definition:

The figurative expression “right hand” refers to the place of honor or strength on the right side of a ruler or other important individual.

- The right hand is also used as a symbol of power, authority, or strength.
- The Bible describes Jesus as sitting “at the right hand of” God the Father as the head of the body of believers (the Church) and in control as ruler of all creation.
- A person’s right hand was used to show special honor when placed on the head of someone being given a blessing (as when the patriarch Jacob blessed Joseph’s son Ephraim).
- To “serve at the right hand” of someone means to be the one whose service is especially helpful and important to that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- Sometimes the term “right hand” literally refers to a person’s right hand, as when Roman soldiers put a staff into Jesus’ right hand to mock him. This should be translated using the term that the language uses to refer to this hand.
- Regarding figurative uses, if an expression that includes the term “right hand” does not have the same meaning in the project language, then consider whether that language has a different expression with the same meaning.
- The expression “at the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of” or “in the place of honor beside” or “in the position of strength” or “ready to help.”
- Ways to translate “with his right hand” could include “with authority” or “using power” or “with his amazing strength.”
- The figurative expression “his right hand and his mighty arm” uses two ways of emphasizing God’s power and great strength. One way to translate this expression could be “his amazing strength and mighty power.” (See: [parallelism](#))
- The expression “their right hand is falsehood” could be translated as, “even the most honorable thing about them is corrupted by lies” or “their place of honor is corrupted by deception” or “they use lies to make themselves powerful.”

(See also: [accuse](#), [evil](#), [honor](#), [mighty](#), [punish](#), [rebel](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:32-33](#)
- [Colossians 03:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 02:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 48:14-16](#)
- [Hebrews 10:11-14](#)
- [Lamentations 02:3-4](#)

- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:62-64
- Psalms 044:3-4
- Revelation 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3225, H3231, H3233, G1188

Uses:

- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:12-13

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [holy](#), [evil](#), [just](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 03:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- [Isaiah 48:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 037:28-30](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3072, H3477, H4334, H4339, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

Uses:

- [Exodus 9:27-28](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)

robe

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: [royal](#), tunic)

Bible References:

- [Exodus 28:4-5](#)
- [Genesis 49:11-12](#)
- [Luke 15:22-24](#)
- [Luke 20:45-47](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:6-7](#)
- [Exodus 28:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 28:31-32](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [Exodus 39:22-24](#)
- [Exodus 39:25-26](#)

rod

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: [staff](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:43-44](#)
- [Acts 16:22-24](#)
- [Exodus 27:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 11:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 27:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 27:17-19](#)

Rome, Roman

Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

- The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
- The term “Roman” referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
- The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
- The New Testament book of “Romans” is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: good news, the sea, Pilate, Paul)

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 01:15-18](#)
- [Acts 22:25-26](#)
- [Acts 28:13-15](#)
- [John 11:47-48](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***23:04** When the time was near for Mary to give birth, the **Roman** government told everyone to go for a census to the town where their ancestors had lived. ***32:06** Then Jesus asked the demon, “What is your name?” He replied, “My name is Legion, because we are many.” (A “legion” was a group of several thousand soldiers in the **Roman** army.) ***39:09** Early the next morning, the Jewish leaders brought Jesus to the **Roman** governor, Pilate, hoping to have Jesus killed. ***39:12** The **Roman** soldiers whipped Jesus and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they mocked him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

royal

Definition:

The term “royal” describes people and things associated with a king or queen.

- Examples of things that could be called “royal” include a king’s clothing, palace, throne, and crown.
- A king or queen usually lived in a royal palace.
- A king wore special clothing, sometimes called “royal robes.” Often a king’s robes were purple, this color could only be produced by a rare and expensive type of dye.
- In the New Testament, believers in Jesus were called a “royal priesthood.” Other ways to translate this could include “priests who serve God the King” or “called to be priests for God the King.”
- The term “royal” could also be translated as “kingly” or “belonging to a king.”

(See also: [king](#), [palace](#), [priest](#), [purple](#), [queen](#), [robe](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 10:13](#)
- [2 Chronicles 18:28-30](#)
- [Amos 07:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 49:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

ruin, ruins

Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 12:7-8](#)
- [2 Kings 19:25-26](#)
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 23:13-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 9:31-33](#)

ruler, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: [authority](#), [governor](#), [king](#), [synagogue](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- [Acts 07:35-37](#)
- [Luke 12:11-12](#)
- [Luke 23:35](#)
- [Mark 10:41-42](#)
- [Matthew 09:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 20:25-28](#)
- [Titus 03:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:28](#)

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 31:2-3](#)
- [Acts 13:26-27](#)
- [Exodus 31:12-15](#)
- [Isaiah 56:6-7](#)
- [Lamentations 02:5-6](#)
- [Leviticus 19:1-4](#)
- [Luke 13:12-14](#)
- [Mark 02:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 12:1-2](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:32-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”

- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

Uses:

- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 16:22-23](#)
- [Exodus 16:24-25](#)
- [Exodus 16:26-27](#)
- [Exodus 20:8-11](#)
- [Exodus 31 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 31:12-15](#)
- [Exodus 31:16-17](#)
- [Exodus 35:1-3](#)

sacred

Definition:

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was oftentimes used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

(See also: [holy](#), [consecrate](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 12:3-5](#)
- [2 Kings 03:1-3](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:14-15](#)
- [Genesis 28:20-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

sacrifice, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.
- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.
- The figurative expression “offer yourselves as a living sacrifice” means, “live your life in complete obedience to God, giving up everything in order to serve him.”

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action “to sacrifice” could be translated as “to give up something valuable” or “to kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) peace offering, [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 21:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 04:3-5](#)
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Mark 14:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 3:16-18
- Exodus 5:3-5
- Exodus 5:6-9
- Exodus 5:15-18
- Exodus 8:8-9
- Exodus 8:25-27
- Exodus 8:28-29
- Exodus 10:24-26
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Exodus 22:29-31
- Exodus 23:18-19
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Exodus 25:1-2
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 28:36-38

- Exodus 29:15-18
- Exodus 29:24-25
- Exodus 29:26-28
- Exodus 29:31-34
- Exodus 30:7-9
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:15-16
- Exodus 32:7-8
- Exodus 34:15-17
- Exodus 34:25-26
- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 35:23-24
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 36:5-7
- Exodus 37:14-16
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:27-29

Sadducee, Sadducees

Definition:

The Sadducees were a political group of Jewish priests during the time of Jesus Christ. They supported Roman rule and did not believe in the resurrection.

- Many Sadducees were wealthy, upper-class Jews who held powerful leadership positions such as chief priest and high priest.
- The duties of the Sadducees included taking care of the temple complex and priestly tasks such as offering sacrifices.
- The Sadducees and the Pharisees strongly influenced the Roman leaders to crucify Jesus.
- Jesus spoke against these two religious groups because of their selfishness and hypocrisy.

(See also: [chief priests](#), [council](#), [high priest](#), [hypocrite](#), [Jewish leaders](#), [Pharisee](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:1-4](#)
- [Acts 05:17-18](#)
- [Luke 20:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 16:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 28:28](#)
- [Ephesians 06:17-18](#)
- [Genesis 49:16-18](#)
- [Luke 02:30-32](#)
- [Philippians 01:28-30](#)
- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)
- [Romans 01:16-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H8668, G4991, G4992

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:2-3](#)

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: Assyria, Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:1-3](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Luke 09:51-53](#)
- [Luke 10:33-35](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**. ***27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)" ***27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him." ***45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [sacred](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), [tax](#), [temple](#),)

Bible References:

- [Amos 07:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Ezekiel 25:3-5](#)
- [Hebrews 08:1-2](#)
- [Luke 11:49-51](#)
- [Numbers 18:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 078:67-69](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G39

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:17-18](#)

- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 25:8-9
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 35:4-9

Saul (OT)

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 10:1-3](#)
- [1 Samuel 09:1-2](#)
- [2 Samuel 01:1-2](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [Psalm 018:1](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:01 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place. ***17:04 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**. ***17:05** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

save, saves, saved, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: [cross](#), [deliver](#), [punish](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 01:15-17](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Genesis 47:25-26](#)
- [Jeremiah 16:19-21](#)
- [Luke 08:36-37](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Psalm 080:1-3](#)
- [Romans 10:8-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.

- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G5198

Uses:

- **Exodus 14:29-31**

scribe, scribes

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), [Pharisee](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Luke 07:29-30](#)
- [Luke 20:45-47](#)
- [Mark 01:21-22](#)
- [Mark 02:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 05:19-20](#)
- [Matthew 07:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 12:38-40](#)
- [Matthew 13:51-53](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Sea of Reeds, Red Sea

Facts:

The “Sea of Reeds” was the name of a body of water located between Egypt and Arabia. It is now called the “Red Sea.”

- The Red Sea is long and narrow. It is larger than a lake or river, but much smaller than an ocean.
- The Israelites had to cross the Red Sea when they were fleeing from Egypt. God performed a miracle and caused the waters of the sea to divide so that the people could walk across on dry land.
- The land of Canaan was north of this sea.
- This could also be translated as “Reed Sea.”

(See also: [Arabia](#), [Canaan](#), [Egypt](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:35-37](#)
- [Exodus 13:17-18](#)
- [Joshua 04:22-24](#)
- [Numbers 14:23-25](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:04** When the Israelites saw the Egyptian army coming, they realized they were trapped between Pharaoh’s army and the **Red Sea**. ***12:05** Then God told Moses, “Tell the people to move toward the **Red Sea**.” ***13:01** After God led the Israelites through the **Red Sea**, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 10:19-20](#)
- [Exodus 13:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 15:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 15:22-23](#)
- [Exodus 23:30-33](#)

seal, to seal

Definition:

To seal an object means to keep it closed with something that makes it impossible to open without breaking the seal.

- Often a seal is marked with a design to show who it belongs to.
- Melted wax was used to seal letters or other documents that needed to be protected. When the wax cooled and hardened, the letter could not be opened without breaking the wax seal.
- A seal was put on the stone in front of Jesus' grave in order to keep anyone from moving the stone.
- Paul figuratively refers to the Holy Spirit as a "seal" showing that our salvation is secure.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 02:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 29:11-12](#)
- [John 06:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 27:65-66](#)
- [Revelation 05:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:3-4](#)

seed, semen

Definition:

A seed is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. It also has several figurative meanings.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these is called semen.
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of seed. Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), [offspring](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 18:30-32](#)
- [Genesis 01:11-13](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 13:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H2234, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

Uses:

- [Exodus 16:31-32](#)

seize

Definition:

The term “seize” means to take or capture someone or something by force. It can also mean to overpower and control someone.

- When a city was taken by means of military force, the soldiers would seize the valuable property of the people they had conquered.
- When used figuratively, a person can be described as being “seized with fear.” This means that the person was suddenly “overcome by fear.” If a person was “seized with fear” it could also be stated that the person “suddenly became very afraid.”
- In the context of labor pains that “seize” a woman, the meaning is that the pains are sudden and overpowering. This could be translated by saying that the pains “overcome” or “suddenly come upon” the woman.
- This term could also be translated as “take control of” or “suddenly take” or “grab.”
- The expression “seized and slept with her” could be translated as “forced himself on her” or “violated her” or “raped her.” Make sure the translation of this concept is acceptable.

(See: [euphemism](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 16:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 15:14-15](#)
- [John 10:37-39](#)
- [Luke 08:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 26:47-48](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:14-15](#)

send, send out, sent

Definition:

To “send” is to cause someone or something to go somewhere. To “send out” someone is to tell that person to go on an errand or a mission.

- Often a person who is “sent out” has been appointed to do a specific task.
- Phrases like “send rain” or “send disaster” mean “to cause...to come.” This type of expression is usually used in reference to God causing these things to happen.
- The term “send” is also used in expressions such as to “send word” or to “send a message,” which means to give someone a message to tell someone else.
- To “send” someone “with” something can mean to “give” that thing “to” someone else, usually moving it some distance in order for the person to receive it.
- Jesus frequently used the phrase “the one who sent me” to refer to God the Father, who “sent” him to earth to redeem and save people. This could also be translated as “the one who commis

(See also: [appoint](#), redeem)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [John 20:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 09:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 10:40-41](#)
- [Matthew 21:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 9:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 15:6-8](#)
- [Exodus 18:1-4](#)
- [Exodus 32:33-35](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 33:12-13](#)

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [curse](#), [deceive](#), [disobey](#), Eden, [evil](#), [offspring](#), prey, Satan, [sin](#), tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 03:1-3
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- [Mark 16:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 23:32-33](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 7:8-10](#)

servant, slave, slavery

Definition:

The word for “servant” can also mean “slave” and refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. The surrounding text usually makes it clear whether a person is a servant or a slave.

- In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master’s household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.
- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the Bible, the phrase “I am your servant” was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- Christians are also called “slaves to righteousness,” which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave’s commitment to obey his master.

(See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [commit](#), [enslave](#), [household](#), [lord](#), [obey](#), [righteous](#), [serve](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:29-31](#)
- [Acts 10:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 01:7-8](#)
- [Colossians 03:22-25](#)
- [Genesis 21:10-11](#)
- [Luke 12:47-48](#)
- [Mark 09:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 10:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 13:27-28](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac. ***08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official. ***09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt." ***19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**." ***29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'" ***35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving." ***47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God. ***50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 4:10-13
- Exodus 5:15-18
- Exodus 6:6-7
- Exodus 7:8-10
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 8:1-4
- Exodus 9:13-14
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 10:5-6
- Exodus 11:1-3
- Exodus 11:4-5
- Exodus 12:29-30
- Exodus 12:43-44
- Exodus 12:45-46
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:29-31
- Exodus 20:1-3
- Exodus 20:8-11
- Exodus 20:15-17
- Exodus 21:2-4
- Exodus 23:12-13

- [Exodus 32:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 33:10-11](#)

serve, service

Definition:

The term “serve” means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to “worship.”

- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.”
- When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- The term “service” refers to the act of serving. It can also be used to refer to a “meeting” of Christians as they worship God together.
- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- “To serve God” can be translated as “to worship and obey God” or “to do the work that God has commanded.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses.
- Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [law](#), [servant](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:3-5](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Genesis 25:23](#)
- [Luke 04:8](#)
- [Luke 12:37-38](#)
- [Luke 22:26-27](#)
- [Mark 08:7-10](#)
- [Matthew 04:10-11](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- Exodus 21:2-4
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Exodus 29:8-9
- Exodus 29:29-30
- Exodus 29:43-44
- Exodus 30:19-21
- Exodus 30:29-31
- Exodus 31:10-11
- Exodus 32:28-29
- Exodus 35:17-19
- Exodus 38:8
- Exodus 39:1
- Exodus 39:25-26
- Exodus 40:12-13
- Exodus 40:14-16

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “to set apart” could include “to specially select” or “to separate from among you” or “to take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), [sanctify](#), [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- [Ephesians 03:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 31:12-15](#)
- [Judges 17:12-13](#)
- [Numbers 03:11-13](#)
- [Philippians 01:1-2](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G873

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:4-6](#)
- [Exodus 12:15-16](#)
- [Exodus 13:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 19:10-11](#)

- Exodus 19:14-15
- Exodus 19:19-22
- Exodus 19:23-25
- Exodus 20:8-11
- Exodus 22:29-31
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 28:4-5
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Exodus 29:21
- Exodus 29:26-28
- Exodus 29:43-44
- Exodus 29:43-44
- Exodus 30:10
- Exodus 30:29-31
- Exodus 30:32-33
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 40:8-11
- Exodus 40:12-13

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:32-33](#)
- [Genesis 30:31-32](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 15:3-5](#)
- [Mark 06:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 12:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- Exodus 20:24-26
- Exodus 22:1-4
- Exodus 22:10-13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 26:12-14
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Exodus 29:3-4
- Exodus 29:15-18
- Exodus 29:19-20
- Exodus 29:22-23
- Exodus 29:26-28
- Exodus 29:31-34
- Exodus 34:19-20
- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:23-24
- Exodus 36:18-19
- Exodus 39:32-35

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression “to shepherd” could be translated as “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 2:15-17
- Exodus 2:18-20
- Exodus 3:1-3

sign, signs, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- “Reminders” are signs that “remind” people by helping them remember something, often something that was promised:
 - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:18-19](#)
- [Exodus 04:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 31:12-15](#)
- [Genesis 01:14-15](#)
- [Genesis 09:11-13](#)
- [John 02:17-19](#)

- Luke 02:10-12
- Mark 08:11-13
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

Uses:

- Exodus 3:11-12
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Exodus 4:29-31
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 8:22-24
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 28:10-12
- Exodus 28:29-30
- Exodus 30:15-16
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:16-17

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 18:9-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 02:36](#)
- [2 Kings 25:13-15](#)
- [Acts 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 26:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 3:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 11:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 12:34-36](#)
- [Exodus 20:22-23](#)
- [Exodus 21:31-32](#)
- [Exodus 25:3-7](#)
- [Exodus 26:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 26:22-25](#)
- [Exodus 26:31-33](#)
- [Exodus 27:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 27:11-13](#)

- Exodus 27:17-19
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 31:3-5
- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:23-24
- Exodus 35:30-33
- Exodus 36:24-26
- Exodus 36:29-30
- Exodus 36:35-36
- Exodus 38:9-10
- Exodus 38:11-12
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:27-29

Simeon

Facts:

In the Bible, there were several men named Simeon.

- In the Old Testament, the second son of Jacob (Israel) was named Simeon. His mother was Leah. His descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The tribe of Simeon occupied part of the southernmost territory in the promised land of Canaan. Its land was entirely surrounded by the land that belonged to Judah.
- When Joseph and Mary brought the baby Jesus to the temple in Jerusalem to dedicate him to God, an elderly man named Simeon praised God for allowing him to see the Messiah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Christ](#), [dedicate](#), [Jacob](#), [Judah](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:33-34
- Genesis 34:24-26
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Genesis 43:21-23
- [Luke 02:25-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)
- [Exodus 6:14-15](#)

sin offering

Definition:

The “sin offering” was one of several sacrifices that God required the Israelites to offer.

- This offering involved sacrificing a bull, burning its blood and fat on the altar, and taking the rest of the animal’s body and burning it on the ground outside the Israelite camp.
- The complete burning up of this animal sacrifice shows how holy God is and how terrible sin is.
- The Bible teaches that in order for there to be a cleansing from sin, blood must be shed to pay the cost for the sin that was committed.
- Animal sacrifices could not permanently bring about forgiveness of sin.
- Jesus’ death on the cross paid the penalty for sin, for all time. He was the perfect sin offering.

(See also: [altar](#), [cow](#), [forgive](#), [sacrifice](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Chronicles 29:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 29:35-37](#)
- [Ezekiel 44:25-27](#)
- [Leviticus 05:11](#)
- [Numbers 07:15-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 29:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 29:35-37](#)
- [Exodus 30:10](#)

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 09:1-3](#)

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Uses:

- Exodus 9:27-28
- Exodus 10:16-18
- Exodus 16 General Notes
- Exodus 17 General Notes
- Exodus 20:18-21
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Exodus 32:21-24
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Exodus 34 General Notes
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:8-9

Sinai, Mount Sinai

Facts:

Mount Sinai is a mountain that was probably located in the southern part of what is now called the Sinai Peninsula. It was also known as “Mount Horeb.”

- Mount Sinai is part of a large, rocky desert.
- The Israelites came to Mount Sinai as they were traveling from Egypt to the Promised Land.
- God gave Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.

(See also: [desert](#), [Egypt](#), [Horeb](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [Exodus 16:1-3](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- [Leviticus 27:34](#)
- [Numbers 01:17-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:01** After God led the Israelites through the Red Sea, he led them through the wilderness to a mountain called **Sinai**. ***13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves spiritually, God came down on top of **Mount Sinai** with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast. ***13:11** For many days, Moses was on top of **Mount Sinai** talking with God. ***15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at **Sinai**.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 16:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 19:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 19:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 24:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 31:18](#)
- [Exodus 34:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 34:3-4](#)

- [Exodus 34:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 34:32-33](#)

slander, slanderer

Definition:

A slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

- Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
- To “slander” could be translated as to “speak against” or to “spread an evil report” or to “defame.”
- A slanderer is also called an “informer” or a “tale-bearer.”

(See also: [blasphemy](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:12-13](#)
- [1 Timothy 03:11-13](#)
- [2 Corinthians 06:8-10](#)
- [Mark 07:20-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

sleep with, have relations with, lovemaking

Definition:

In the Bible, these terms are euphemisms that refer to having sexual intercourse. (See: [Euphemism](#))

- The expression “sleep with” someone commonly refers to having sexual relations with that person. The past tense is “slept with.”
- In the Old Testament book “Song of Solomon,” the ULB uses the term “lovemaking” to translate the word “love,” which in that context refers to sexual relations. This term is related to the expression “make love to.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages may use different expressions for these terms in different contexts, depending on whether those involved are a married couple or whether they have some other relationship. It is important to make sure that the translation of this term has the correct meaning in each context.
- Depending on the context, expressions like these could be used to translate “sleep with”: “lie with” or “make love to” or “be intimate with.”
- Other ways to translate “have relations with” could include “have sexual relations with” or “have marital relations with.”
- The term “lovemaking” could also be translated as “loving” or “intimacy.” Or there may be an expression that is a natural way to translate this in the project language.
- It is important to check that the terms used to translate this concept are acceptable to the people who will be using the Bible translation.

(See also: sexual immorality)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 01:19-20](#)
- [Deuteronomy 21:13-14](#)
- [Genesis 19:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 01:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:18-19](#)

snow**Facts:**

The term “snow” refers to white flakes of frozen water that can fall from clouds in places where the air temperature is cold.

- Snow falls in places of higher elevation in Israel, but does not always stay on the ground very long before melting. The peaks of mountains tend to have snow that lasts longer. One example of a place mentioned in the Bible as having snow is Mount Lebanon.
- Something that is very white often has its color compared to the color of snow. For example, in the book of Revelation Jesus’ clothing and hair were described as being “white as snow.”
- The whiteness of snow also symbolizes purity and cleanliness. For example, the statement that our “sins will be as white as snow” means that God will completely cleanse his people from their sins.
- Some languages might refer to snow as “frozen rain” or “flakes of ice” or “frozen flakes.”
- “Snow water” refers to the water that comes from melted snow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Lebanon](#), [pure](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 04:6-7](#)
- [Job 37:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 28:3-4](#)
- [Psalms 147:15-16](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:6-7](#)

son, sons

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- “Son” was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
- The term “son” can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
- Sometimes “sons of God” was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
- God called Israel his “firstborn son.” This refers to God’s choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God’s message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
- The phrase “son of” often has the figurative meaning “person having the characteristics of.” Examples of this include “sons of the light,” “sons of disobedience,” “a son of peace,” and “sons of thunder.”
- The phrase “son of” is also used to tell who a person’s father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term “descendant” could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the “descendant of David” or in genealogies where sometimes “son” referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.
- The figurative expression “son of” could also be translated as “someone who has the characteristics of” or “someone who is like” or “someone who has” or “someone who acts like.”

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), [firstborn](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- 1 Kings 13:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:4-7
- Galatians 04:6-7
- Hosea 11:1-2
- Isaiah 09:6-7
- Matthew 03:16-17
- Matthew 05:9-10
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

Uses:

- Exodus 2:9-10
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 6:16-19
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Exodus 18:5-6
- Exodus 39:6-7

sorcery, sorcerer, witchcraft

Definition:

“Sorcery” or “witchcraft” refers to using magic, which involves doing powerful things through the help of evil spirits. A “sorcerer” is someone who does these powerful, magical things.

- The use of magic and sorcery can involve both beneficial things (such as healing someone) and harmful things (such as putting a curse on someone). But all kinds of sorcery are wrong, because they use the power of evil spirits.
- In the Bible, God says that the use of sorcery is as evil as other terrible sins (such as adultery, worshiping idols, and child sacrifice).
- The terms “sorcery” and “witchcraft” could also be translated as “evil spirit power” or “casting spells.”
- Possible ways to translated “sorcerer” could include “worker of magic” or “person who casts spells” or “person who does miracles using evil spirit power.”
- Note that “sorcery” has a different meaning than the term “divination,” which refers to attempting to contact the spirit world.

(See also: [adultery](#), demon, divination, [idol](#), [magic](#), [sacrifice](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 07:11-13](#)
- [Galatians 05:19-21](#)
- [Revelation 09:20-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 7:11-13](#)
- [Exodus 22:18-19](#)

sow, sower, plant

Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, a if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [reap](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- [Luke 08:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 06:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 13:3-6](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 25:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:10-11](#)

spirit, spirits, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](#), [demon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [soul](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

Uses:

- Exodus 35:20-22

splendor

Definition:

The term “splendor” refers to the extreme beauty and elegance that is often associated with wealth and a magnificent appearance.

- Often splendor is used to describe the wealth that a king has, or how he looks in his expensive, beautiful finery.
- The word “splendor” can also be used to describe the beauty of trees, mountains, and other things that God has created.
- Certain cities are said to have splendor because of o their natural resources, elaborate buildings and roads, and the wealth of their people, which includes rich clothing, gold, and silver.
- Depending on the context, this word could be translated as “magnificent beauty” or “amazing majesty” or “kingly greatness.”

(See also: [glory](#), [king](#), [majesty](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 16:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 28:1-3](#)
- [Ezekiel 28:6-7](#)
- [Luke 04:5-7](#)
- [Psalms 089:44-45](#)
- [Revelation 21:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 28:1-3](#)

staff

Definition:

A staff is a long wooden stick or rod, often used as a walking stick.

- When Jacob was old, he used a staff to help him walk.
- God turned Moses' staff into a snake to show his power to Pharaoh.
- Shepherds also used a staff to help guide their sheep, or to rescue the sheep when they fell or wandered.
- The shepherd's staff had a hook on the end, so it differed from the shepherd's rod, which was straight and was used to kill wild animals that were trying to attack the sheep.

(See also: [Pharaoh](#), [power](#), [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 04:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 07:8-10](#)
- [Luke 09:3-4](#)
- [Mark 06:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 10:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 4:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)
- [Exodus 4:18-20](#)
- [Exodus 7:8-10](#)
- [Exodus 7:11-13](#)
- [Exodus 12:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 14:15-18](#)
- [Exodus 17:4-7](#)

stiff-necked, stubborn

Definition:

The term “stiff-necked” is an idiom used in the Bible to describe people who keep disobeying God and refuse to repent. Such people are very proud and will not submit to God’s authority.

- Similarly, the term “stubborn” describes a person who refuses to change his mind or actions even when urged to do so. Stubborn people will not listen to good advice or warnings that other people give them.
- The Old Testament described the Israelites as “stiff-necked” because they did not listen to the many messages from God’s prophets who urged them to repent and turn back to Yahweh.
- If a neck is “stiff” it does not bend easily. The project language may have a different idiom that communicates that a person is “unbending” in that he refuses to change his ways.
- Other ways to translate this term could include “pridefully stubborn” or “arrogant and unyielding” or “refusing to change.”

(See also: arrogant, [proud](#), [repent](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:51-53](#)
- [Deuteronomy 09:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 13:14-16](#)
- [Jeremiah 03:17-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 13:14-16](#)
- [Exodus 32:9-11](#)
- [Exodus 33:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 33:4-6](#)
- [Exodus 34:8-9](#)

stone, stones, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone isto throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: [adultery](#), [commit](#), [crime](#), [death](#), [Lystra](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:57-58](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Acts 14:5-7](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [John 08:4-6](#)
- [Luke 13:34-35](#)
- [Luke 20:5-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:37-39](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 8:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 15:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 17:4-7](#)
- [Exodus 19:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 21:28-30](#)
- [Exodus 21:31-32](#)

strength, strengthen

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
- “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
- “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
- “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
- “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
- “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
- “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
- “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
- “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
- “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
- “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
- “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: faithful, [persevere](#), [right hand](#), [salvation](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 18:19-21](#)
- [2 Peter 02:10-11](#)

- [Luke 10:25-28](#)
- [Psalm 021:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Succoth

Definition:

Succoth was the name of two Old Testament cities. The word, “succoth” (or “sukkoth”) means “shelters.”

- The first city called Succoth was located on the east side of the Jordan River.
- Jacob stayed at Succoth with his family and flocks, building shelters for them there.
- Hundreds of years later, Gideon and his exhausted men stopped at Succoth as they were chasing the Midanites, but the people there refused to give them any food.
- The second Succoth was located on the northern border of Egypt and was a place where the Israelites stopped after they crossed the Red Sea as they were escaping from slavery in Egypt.

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 07:46-47](#)
- [Exodus 12:37-40](#)
- [Joshua 13:27-28](#)
- [Judges 08:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:37-40](#)
- [Exodus 13:19-22](#)

suffer, suffering

Definition:

The terms “suffer” and “suffering” refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

- When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
- Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
- Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
- The phrase “suffer me” means “bear with me” or “hear me out” or “listen patiently.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “suffer” can be translated as “feel pain” or “endure difficulty” or “experience hardships” or “go through difficult and painful experiences.”
- Depending on the context, “suffering” could be translated as “extremely difficult circumstances” or “severe hardships” or “experiencing hardship” or “time of painful experiences.”
- The phrase “suffer thirst” could be translated as “experience thirst” or “suffer with thirst.”
- To “suffer violence” could also be translated as “undergo violence” or “be harmed by violent acts.”

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:3-5](#)
- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Isaiah 53:10-11](#)
- [Jeremiah 06:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 16:21-23](#)
- [Psalms 022:24-25](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)
- [Romans 05:3-5](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:13** God said, “I have seen the **suffering** of my people.”
- **38:12** Jesus prayed three times, “My Father, if it is possible, please let me not have to drink this cup of **suffering**.”

- **42:03** He (Jesus) reminded them that the prophets said the Messiah would **suffer** and be killed, but would rise again on the third day.
- **42:07** He (Jesus) said, "It was written long ago that the Messiah would **suffer**, die, and rise from the dead on the third day."
- **44:05** "Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to fulfill the prophecies that the Messiah would **suffer** and die."
- **46:04** God said, "I have chosen him (Saul) to declare my name to the unsaved. I will show him how much he must **suffer** for my sake."
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more **suffering**, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H943, H1741, H1934, H4342, H4531, H4912, H5142, H5254, H5375, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6064, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4841, G5004, G5723

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), [John \(the Baptist\)](#), tongue, [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 12:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Genesis 34:24-26](#)
- [Luke 02:33-35](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 10:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 26:55-56](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 5:3-5
- Exodus 15:9-11
- Exodus 17:11-13
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Exodus 32:25-27

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), [altar of incense](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [temple](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 21:28-30](#)
- [2 Chronicles 01:2-5](#)
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [Exodus 38:21-23](#)
- [Joshua 22:19-20](#)
- [Leviticus 10:16-18](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G4633, G4634, G4636, G4638

Uses:

- Introduction to Exodus
- Exodus 25 General Notes
- Exodus 25:8-9
- Exodus 26 General Notes
- Exodus 26:1-3
- Exodus 26:4-6
- Exodus 26:7-9
- Exodus 26:12-14
- Exodus 26:15-18
- Exodus 26:19-21
- Exodus 26:22-25
- Exodus 26:26-28
- Exodus 26:29-30
- Exodus 26:34-35
- Exodus 27 General Notes
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Exodus 27:17-19
- Exodus 35:10-12
- Exodus 35:13-16
- Exodus 35:17-19
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 36 General Notes
- Exodus 36:8-10
- Exodus 36:11-13
- Exodus 36:14-17
- Exodus 36:18-19
- Exodus 36:20-23
- Exodus 36:24-26
- Exodus 36:27-28
- Exodus 36:31-34
- Exodus 37 General Notes
- Exodus 38 General Notes
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 38:30-31
- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 39:36-39
- Exodus 39:40-41
- Exodus 40 General Notes
- Exodus 40:1-2
- Exodus 40:5-7

- [Exodus 40:8-11](#)
- [Exodus 40:17-20](#)
- [Exodus 40:21-23](#)
- [Exodus 40:24-25](#)
- [Exodus 40:31-33](#)
- [Exodus 40:34-35](#)
- [Exodus 40:36-38](#)

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:1-3](#)
- [Acts 03:7-8](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Luke 19:45-46](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)
- [Psalm 079:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered

sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

Ten Commandments

Facts:

The “Ten Commandments” were commands that God gave to Moses on Mount Sinai while the Israelites were living in the desert on their way to the land of Canaan. God wrote these commands on two large slabs of stone.

- God gave the Israelites many commands to obey, but the Ten Commandments were special commands to help the Israelites love and worship God and love other people.
- These commandments were also part of God’s covenant with his people. By obeying what God had commanded them to do, the people of Israel would show that they loved God and belonged to him.
- The stone slabs with the commandments written on them were kept in the Ark of the Covenant, which was located in the most holy place of the tabernacle and later, the temple.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [command](#), [covenant](#), [desert](#), [law](#), [obey](#), [Sinai](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 04:13-14](#)
- [Deuteronomy 10:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 34:27-28](#)
- [Luke 18:18-21](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:07** Then God wrote these **Ten Commandments** on two stone tablets and gave them to Moses.
***13:13** When Moses came down the mountain and saw the idol, he was so angry that he smashed the stones on which God had written the **Ten Commandments**. ***13:15** Moses wrote the **Ten Commandments** on new stone tablets to replace the ones he had broken.

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 34:27-28](#)

tent

Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

- Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
- For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constructed from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
- The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
- The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
- When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
- The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies." (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Canaan](#), [curtain](#), [Paul](#), [Sinai](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent of meeting](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 05:10](#)
- [Daniel 11:44-45](#)
- [Exodus 16:16-18](#)
- [Genesis 12:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 16:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 18:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 26:7-9](#)
- [Exodus 26:12-14](#)
- [Exodus 26:36-37](#)
- [Exodus 27:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)

- Exodus 33:7-9
- Exodus 33:10-11
- Exodus 35:10-12
- Exodus 36:14-17
- Exodus 36:18-19
- Exodus 36:37-38
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:30-31
- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 39:40-41
- Exodus 40:17-20

tent of meeting

Facts:

The term “tent of meeting” refers to a tent which was a temporary place where God met with Moses before the tabernacle was built.

- The tent of meeting was set up outside the camp of the Israelites.
- When Moses went into the tent of meeting to meet with God, a pillar of cloud would stand at the entrance to the tent as a sign of God’s presence there.
- After the Israelites built the tabernacle, the temporary tent was no longer needed and the term “tent of meeting” was sometimes used to refer to the tabernacle.

(See also: [Israel](#), [Moses](#), [pillar](#), [tabernacle](#), [tent](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 02:28-29](#)
- [Joshua 19:51](#)
- [Leviticus 01:1-2](#)
- [Numbers 04:31-32](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:08** God gave the Israelites a detailed description of a tent he wanted them to make. It was called the **Tent of Meeting**, and it had two rooms, separated by a large curtain. ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God’s law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the **Tent of Meeting** as a sacrifice to God. ***14:08** God was very angry and came to the **Tent of Meeting**. ***18:02** Instead of at the **Tent of Meeting**, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the Temple.

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 27:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 28:42-43](#)
- [Exodus 29:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 29:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 29:29-30](#)
- [Exodus 29:31-34](#)
- [Exodus 29:41-42](#)

- Exodus 29:43-44
- Exodus 30:15-16
- Exodus 30:17-18
- Exodus 30:19-21
- Exodus 30:26-28
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Exodus 38:8
- Exodus 38:30-31
- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 39:40-41
- Exodus 40:1-2
- Exodus 40:5-7
- Exodus 40:12-13
- Exodus 40:21-23
- Exodus 40:24-25
- Exodus 40:26-27
- Exodus 40:31-33
- Exodus 40:34-35

tenth, tithe

Definition:

The terms “tenth” and “tithe” refer to “ten percent” or “one-out-of-ten portion” of one’s money, crops, livestock, or other possessions, which is given to God.

- In the Old Testament, God instructed the Israelites to set aside a tenth of their belongings to give as an offering of thanksgiving to him.
- This offering was used to support the Levite tribe of Israel who served the Israelites as priests and caretakers of the tabernacle and later, the temple.
- In the New Testament, God does not require giving a tithe, but instead he instructs believers to generously and cheerfully help people in need and support the work of Christian ministry.
- This could also be translated as “one-tenth” or “one out of ten.”

(See also: [believer](#), [Israel](#), [Levite](#), livestock, Melchizedek, minister, [sacrifice tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 14:19-20
- Genesis 28:20-22
- [Hebrews 07:4-6](#)
- [Isaiah 06:13](#)
- [Luke 11:42](#)
- [Luke 18:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 29:40](#)

terror, terrify

Definition:

The term “terror” refers to a feeling of extreme fear. To “terrify” someone means to cause that person to feel very afraid.

- A “terror” is something or someone that causes great fear or dread. An example of a terror could be an attacking enemy army or a plague or disease that is widespread, killing many people.
- These terrors can be described as “terrifying.” This term could be translated as, “fear-causing” or “terror-producing.”
- The judgment of God will someday cause terror in unrepentant people who reject his grace.
- The “terror of Yahweh” could be translated as “the terrifying presence of Yahweh” or “the dreaded judgment of Yahweh” or “when Yahweh causes great fear.”
- Ways to translate “terror” could also include “extreme fear” or “deep dread.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [fear](#), [judge](#), [plague](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [Deuteronomy 02:24-25](#)
- [Exodus 14:10-12](#)
- [Luke 21:7-9](#)
- [Mark 06:48-50](#)
- [Matthew 28:5-7](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 14:10-12](#)
- [Exodus 15:16](#)

test, tests, tested

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to test” could also be translated as, “to challenge” or “to cause to experience difficulties” or “to prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as “to test” or “to set up a challenge” or “to force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:1-3](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:19-22](#)
- [Acts 15:10-11](#)
- [Genesis 22:1-3](#)
- [Isaiah 07:13-15](#)
- [James 01:12-13](#)
- [Lamentations 03:40-43](#)
- [Malachi 03:10-12](#)
- [Philippians 01:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 026:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

Uses:

- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 20:18-21

testimony, testify

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [prophet](#), [witness](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- [3 John 01:11-12](#)
- [Acts 04:32-33](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [John 03:31-33](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 26:59-61](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 12:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1263, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

throne

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” is often used figuratively to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power. (See: [metonymy](#))
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: [authority](#), [power](#), [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 41:39-41](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Luke 22:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 19:28](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 11:4-5](#)
- [Exodus 12:29-30](#)

tomb, grave, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: bury, [death](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 02:29-31](#)
- [Genesis 23:5-6](#)
- [Genesis 50:4-6](#)
- [John 19:40-42](#)
- [Luke 23:52-53](#)
- [Mark 05:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 27:51-53](#)
- [Romans 03:13-14](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [32:04](#) The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- [37:06](#) Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- [37:07](#) The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- [40:09](#) Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- [41:04](#) He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- [41:05](#) When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.”

The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus' body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 14:10-12](#)

transgress, transgresses, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgression” refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To “transgress” is to commit a “transgression.”

- Figuratively, “to transgress” can also be described as “to cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression,” “sin,” “iniquity,” and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 04:3-6](#)
- [Daniel 09:24-25](#)
- [Galatians 03:19-20](#)
- [Galatians 06:1-2](#)
- [Numbers 14:17-19](#)
- [Psalm 032:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

Uses:

- [Exodus 23:20-22](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)

tribe

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Samuel 10:17-19](#)
- [2 Kings 17:16-18](#)
- [Genesis 25:13-16](#)
- [Genesis 49:16-18](#)
- [Luke 02:36-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 2:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 31:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 35:30-33](#)
- [Exodus 38:21-23](#)

trouble, troubles, troubled

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), [persecute](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 18:18-19](#)
- [2 Chronicles 25:18-19](#)
- [Luke 24:38-40](#)
- [Matthew 24:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 26:36-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 33:4-6](#)

true, truth, truths

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), [obey](#), [prophet](#), [understand](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- [Acts 26:24-26](#)
- [Colossians 01:4-6](#)
- [Genesis 47:29-31](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 05:19-20](#)

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die." ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. ***31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." ***39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

Uses:

- Exodus 18:21-23

trumpet

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), [horn](#), [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 13:7-8](#)
- [2 Kings 09:11-13](#)
- [Exodus 19:12-13](#)
- [Hebrews 12:18-21](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 24:30-31](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 19:12-13](#)
- [Exodus 20:18-21](#)

trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), [confidence](#), [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 09:22-24](#)
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Hosea 10:12-13](#)
- [Isaiah 31:1-2](#)
- [Nehemiah 13:12-14](#)
- [Psalm 031:5-7](#)
- [Titus 03:8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

Uses:

- [Exodus 04 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 14:29-31](#)
- [Exodus 16 General Notes](#)
- [Exodus 34:5-7](#)

twelve tribes of Israel

Definition:

The term “twelve tribes of Israel” refers to the twelve sons of Jacob and their descendants.

- Jacob was Abraham’s grandson. God later changed Jacob’s name to Israel.
- These are the names of the tribes: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, Judah, Dan, Naphtali, Gad, Asher, Issachar, Zebulun, Joseph and Benjamin.
- The descendants of Levi did not inherit any land in Canaan because they were a tribe of priests who were set apart to serve God and his people.
- Joseph received a double inheritance of land, which was passed on to his two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.
- There are several places in the Bible where the list of the twelve tribes is slightly different. Sometimes Levi, Joseph, or Dan is left out of the list and sometimes Joseph’s two sons Ephraim and Manasseh are included in the list.

(See also: [inherit](#), [Israel](#), [Jacob](#), [priest](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 26:6-8](#)
- [Genesis 49:28-30](#)
- [Luke 22:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 19:28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3478, H7626, H8147, G1427, G2474, G5443

Uses:

- [Exodus 24:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 28:21-24](#)
- [Exodus 35:20-22](#)
- [Exodus 39:14-16](#)

uncircumcised, uncircumcision

Definition:

The terms “uncircumcised” and “uncircumcision” refer to a male who has not been physically circumcised. These terms are also used figuratively.

- Egypt was a nation that also required circumcision. So when God talks about Egypt being defeated by the “uncircumcised,” he is referring to people whom the Egyptians despised for not being circumcised.
- The Bible refers to people who have an “uncircumcised heart” or who are “uncircumcised in heart.” This is a figurative way of saying that these people are not God’s people, and are stubbornly disobedient to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- If a word for circumcision is used or known in the language, “uncircumcised” could be translated as “not circumcised.”
- The expression “the uncircumcision” could be translated as “people who are not circumcised” or “people who do not belong to God,” depending on the context.
- Other ways to translate figurative senses of this term could include “not God’s people” or “rebellious like those who don’t belong to God” or “people who have no sign of belonging to God.”
- The expression “uncircumcised in heart” could be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to believe.” However, if possible it is best to keep the expression or a similar one since spiritual circumcision is an important concept.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [circumcise](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 01:17-20](#)
- [Acts 11:1-3](#)
- [Colossians 02:13-15](#)
- [Ephesians 02:11-12](#)
- [Exodus 12:47-48](#)
- [Ezekiel 32:24-25](#)
- [Jeremiah 09:25-26](#)
- [Judges 15:17-18](#)
- [Leviticus 26:40-42](#)
- [Romans 02:25-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6188, H6189, H6190, G203, G564

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:47-48](#)

unholy

Definition:

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate this term could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: [holy](#), [honor](#), profane, unclean)

Bible References:

- [Acts 11:7-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, G462, G2839

Uses:

- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [2 Chronicles 30:13-15](#)
- [Acts 12:3-4](#)
- [Exodus 23:14-15](#)
- [Ezra 06:21-22](#)
- [Genesis 19:1-3](#)
- [Judges 06:21](#)
- [Leviticus 08:1-3](#)
- [Luke 22:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

Uses:

- [Exodus 12 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 12:17-18
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Exodus 34:18

vain, vanity

Definition:

The term “vain” describes something that is useless or has no purpose. Vain things are empty and worthless.

- The term “vanity” refers to worthlessness or emptiness. It can also refer to pride or arrogance.
- In the Old Testament, idols are described as vain things that cannot deliver or save. They are worthless and have no use or purpose.
- If something was done “in vain,” it means that there was no good result from it. The effort or action did not accomplish anything.
- To “believe in vain” means to believe in something that is not true and that gives false hope.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “vain” could be translated as “empty” or “useless” or “hopeless” or “worthless” or “meaningless.”
- The phrase “in vain” could be translated as “without result” or “with no result” or “for no reason” or “with no purpose.”
- The term “vanity” could be translated as “pride” or “nothing worthwhile” or “hopelessness.”

(See also: [idol](#), [worthy](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 15:1-2](#)
- [1 Samuel 25:21-22](#)
- [2 Peter 02:17-19](#)
- [Isaiah 45:19](#)
- [Jeremiah 02:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 15:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 20:7](#)

veil

Definition:

The term “veil” usually refers to a thin piece of cloth that is used as a head covering, to cover the head or face so that it cannot be seen.

- Moses covered his face with a veil after he had been in the presence of Yahweh, so that the brightness of his face would be hidden from the people.
- In the Bible, women wore a veil to cover their head, and often their face as well, when they were in public or in the presence of men.
- The verb “to veil” means to cover something with a veil.
- In some English versions, the word “veil” is used to refer to the thick curtain that covered the entrance into the most holy place. But “curtain” is a better term in that context, since it refers to a heavy, thick piece of cloth.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “veil” could also be translated as “thin cloth covering” or “cloth covering” or “head covering.”
- In some cultures, there may already be a term for a veil for women. It may be necessary to find a different word when it is used for Moses.

(See also: [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 03:12-13](#)
- [2 Corinthians 03:14-16](#)
- [Ezekiel 13:17-18](#)
- [Isaiah 47:1-2](#)
- [Song of Solomon 04:3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7289, G2665

Uses:

- [Exodus 34:32-33](#)
- [Exodus 34:34-35](#)

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- [Genesis 09:20-21](#)
- [Luke 13:6-7](#)
- [Luke 20:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 20:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 21:40-41](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:5](#)
- [Exodus 23:10-11](#)

virgin

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: [Christ](#), Isaiah, [Jesus](#), Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- [Luke 01:26-29](#)
- [Luke 01:34-35](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 25:1-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**. ***22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph. ***22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?" ***49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:16-17](#)

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#))

Bible References:

- [John 05:36-38](#)
- [Luke 01:42-45](#)
- [Luke 09:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 03:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 12:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 5:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 15:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 19:3-6](#)

walk, walks, walked, walking

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Kings 02:1-4](#)
- [Colossians 02:6-7](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 17:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:8-11](#)
- [Micah 04:2-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

Uses:

- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 18:17-20

warrior, soldier

Facts:

The terms “warrior” and “soldier” both can refer to someone who fights in an army. But there are also some differences.

- Usually the term “warrior” is a general, broad term to refer to a man who is gifted and courageous in battle.
- Yahweh is figuratively described as a “warrior.”
- The term “soldier” more specifically refers to someone who belongs to a certain army or who is fighting in a certain battle.
- Roman soldiers in Jerusalem were there to keep order and to carry out duties such as executing prisoners. They guarded Jesus before crucifying him and some were ordered to stand guard at his tomb.
- The translator should consider whether there are two words in the project language for “warrior” and “soldier” that also differ in meaning and use.

(See also: [courage](#), [crucify](#), [Rome](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Chronicles 21:4-5](#)
- [Acts 21:32-33](#)
- [Luke 03:14](#)
- [Luke 23:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 08:8-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

water, waters

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Exodus 14:21-22](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [John 04:13-14](#)
- [John 04:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 14:28-30](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 7:14-15
- Exodus 14:21-22
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:27
- Exodus 20:4-6

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions “grain” or “seeds,” it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called “straw” and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, [grain](#), [seed](#), thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- [Acts 27:36-38](#)
- [Exodus 34:21-22](#)
- [John 12:23-24](#)
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 9:31-33](#)
- [Exodus 34:21-22](#)

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: grape, vine, [vineyard](#), [winepress](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:23-25](#)
- [Genesis 09:20-21](#)
- [Genesis 49:11-12](#)
- [John 02:3-5](#)
- [John 02:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:17](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 29:40](#)

winepress

Definition:

During Bible times, a “winepress” was a large container or open place where the juice of grapes was extracted in order to make wine.

- In Israel, winepresses were usually large, wide basins that were dug out of solid rock. Clusters of grapes were put on the flat bottom of the hole and people trampled the grapes with their feet to get the grape juice to flow out.
- Usually a winepress had two levels, with the grapes being trampled in the top level so that the juice would run down into the lower level where it could be collected.
- The term “winepress” is also used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of God’s wrath being poured out on wicked people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- [Isaiah 63:1-2](#)
- [Mark 12:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 21:33-34](#)
- [Revelation 14:19-20](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:29-31](#)

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](#), [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 31:6-9](#)
- [Genesis 03:4-6](#)
- [Isaiah 19:11-12](#)
- [Jeremiah 18:18-20](#)
- [Matthew 07:24-25](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

Uses:

- Exodus 1:8-10
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 31:3-5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 35:30-33

witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [judge](#), [true](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:6-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [1 Timothy 05:19-20](#)
- [2 Peter 01:16-18](#)
- [Acts 13:30-31](#)
- [Deuteronomy 31:27-29](#)
- [John 01:6-8](#)
- [Romans 01:8-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, G267, G1263, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

Uses:

- **Exodus 23:1-3**

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Acts 12:24-25](#)

- Genesis 15:1-3
- James 02:8-9
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- John 05:39-40
- Luke 08:11-13
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

Uses:

- Exodus 24:3-4

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Acts 12:24-25](#)

- Genesis 15:1-3
- James 02:8-9
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- John 05:39-40
- Luke 08:11-13
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

word, words

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:1-2](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [John 01:1-3](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

Uses:

- Exodus 4:14-17
- Exodus 5:6-9
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 20:1-3
- Exodus 24:7-8
- Exodus 33:4-6
- Exodus 34:27-28

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: fruit, [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:11-12](#)
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- [Daniel 04:36-37](#)
- [Exodus 34:10-11](#)

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

Uses:

- Exodus 12:15-16
- Exodus 18:17-20
- Exodus 26:1-3
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 27:14-16
- Exodus 28:39
- Exodus 29:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Exodus 35:1-3
- Exodus 36:1
- Exodus 37:20-22
- Exodus 37:27-29
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 39:2-3
- Exodus 39:8-9
- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 40:31-33

world, worldly

Definition:

The term “world” usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term “worldly” describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

- In its most general sense, the term “world” refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
- In many contexts, “world” actually means “people in the world.”
- Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
- The apostles also used “world” to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
- People and things characterized by these values are said to be “worldly.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “world” could also be translated as “universe” or “people of this world” or “corrupt things in the world” or “evil attitudes of people in the world.”
- The phrase “all the world” often means “many people” and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, “all the world came to Egypt” could be translated as “many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt” or “people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there.”
- Another way to translate “all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census” would be “many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went...”
- Depending on the context, the term “worldly” could be translated as, “evil” or “sinful” or “selfish” or “ungodly” or “corrupt” or “influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world.”
- The phrase “saying these things in the world” can be translated as “saying these things to the people of the world.”
- In other contexts, “in the world” could also be translated as “living among the people of the world” or “living among ungodly people.”

(See also: [corrupt](#), [heaven](#), [Rome](#), ungodly)

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:15-17](#)
- [1 John 04:4-6](#)
- [1 John 05:4-5](#)
- [John 01:29-31](#)
- [Matthew 13:36-39](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H5769, H8398, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [praise](#), [honor](#))

Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:18-19](#)
- [Deuteronomy 29:17-19](#)
- [Exodus 03:11-12](#)
- [Luke 04:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 02:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” ***14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. ***17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. ***25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” ***26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. ***47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. ***49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

Uses:

- Exodus 3:11-12
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 4:29-31
- Exodus 7:16-18
- Exodus 8:1-4
- Exodus 8:20-21
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:13-14
- Exodus 10:3-4
- Exodus 10:24-26
- Exodus 12:24-25
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 12:31-33
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Exodus 24:1-2
- Exodus 32:7-8
- Exodus 33:10-11
- Exodus 34:8-9
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 35 General Notes

worthy, worth, unworthy, worthless

Definition:

The term “worthy” describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To “have worth” means to be valuable or important. The term “worthless” means to not have any value.

- Being worthy is related to being valuable or having importance
- To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any special notice.
- To not feel worthy means to feel less important than someone else or to not feel deserving of being treated with honor or kindness.
- The term “unworthy” and the term “worthless” have related, but different meanings. To be “unworthy” means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition. To be “worthless” means to not have any purpose or value.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Worthy” could be translated as “deserving” or “important” or “valuable.”
- The word “worth” could be translated as “value” or “importance.”
- The phrase “to have worth” could also be translated as “to be valuable” or “to be important.”
- The phrase “is worth more than” could be translated as “is more valuable than.”
- Depending on the context, the term, “unworthy” could also be translated as “unimportant” or “dishonorable” or “undeserving.”
- The term “worthless” could be translated as “with no value” or “with no purpose” or “worth nothing.”

(See also: [honor](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Samuel 22:3-4](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:11-12](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [Acts 25:25-27](#)
- [Acts 26:30-32](#)
- [Colossians 01:9-10](#)
- [Jeremiah 08:18-19](#)
- [Mark 01:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Philippians 01:25-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H639, H1929, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H6994, H7939, G514, G515, G516, G2425, G2661, G2735

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Luke 03:7](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Romans 01:18-19](#)
- [Romans 05:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2534, H2740, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

Uses:

- [Exodus 15:6-8](#)

written

Definition:

The phrase “as it is written” or “what is written” occurs frequently in the New Testament and usually refers to commands or prophecies that were written in the Hebrew scriptures.

- Sometimes “as it is written” refers to what was written in the Law of Moses.
- Other times it is a quote from what one of the prophets wrote in the Old Testament.
- This could be translated “as it is written in the Law of Moses” or “as the prophets wrote long ago” or “what it says in God’s laws that Moses wrote down long ago”.
- Another option is to keep “It is written” and give a footnote that explains what this means.

(See also: [command](#), [law](#), [prophet](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:13-15](#)
- [Acts 13:28-29](#)
- [Exodus 32:15-16](#)
- [John 21:24-25](#)
- [Luke 03:4](#)
- [Mark 09:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 04:5-6](#)
- [Revelation 01:1-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Exodus 32:15-16](#)

wrong, mistreat, hurt**Definition:**

To “wrong” someone means to treat that person unjustly and dishonestly.

- The term “mistreat” means to act badly or roughly toward someone, causing physical or emotional harm to that person.
- The term “hurt” is more general and means “to cause someone harm in some way.” It often has the meaning of “physically injure.”
- Depending on the context, these terms could also be translated as “do wrong to” or, “treat unjustly” or “cause harm to” or treat in a harmful way” or “injure.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Exodus 22:20-21](#)
- [Genesis 16:5-6](#)
- [Luke 06:27-28](#)
- [Matthew 20:13-14](#)
- [Psalms 071:12-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 22:10-13](#)
- [Exodus 22:20-21](#)
- [Exodus 22:22-24](#)

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Uses:

- [Exodus 03 General Notes](#)

- Exodus 3:1-3
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Exodus 4:1-3
- Exodus 4:6-7
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 4:10-13
- Exodus 4:14-17
- Exodus 4:18-20
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 4:24-26
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 5:15-18
- Exodus 5:19-21
- Exodus 6:1
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 6:28-30
- Exodus 7:1-2
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 7:6-7
- Exodus 7:8-10
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Exodus 7:14-15
- Exodus 7:16-18
- Exodus 7:19
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 7:23-25
- Exodus 8:1-4
- Exodus 8:28-29
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:5-7
- Exodus 9:11-12
- Exodus 9:13-14
- Exodus 9:27-28
- Exodus 9:29-30
- Exodus 9:31-33
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 10:9-11
- Exodus 10:27-29
- Exodus 11:1-3

- Exodus 12:1-2
- Exodus 12:23
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 12:31-33
- Exodus 12:41-42
- Exodus 13:1-2
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 14:1-3
- Exodus 14:26-28
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 16:9-12
- Exodus 16:22-23
- Exodus 16:28-30
- Exodus 16:31-32
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 18:7-8
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 20:1-3
- Exodus 22:10-13
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Exodus 23:16-17
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 24:1-2
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Exodus 25:1-2
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Exodus 28:10-12
- Exodus 28:29-30
- Exodus 28:33-35
- Exodus 28:36-38
- Exodus 29:10-11
- Exodus 29:15-18
- Exodus 29:22-23
- Exodus 29:24-25
- Exodus 29:26-28
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Exodus 29:45-46
- Exodus 30:7-9
- Exodus 30:10
- Exodus 30:11-14

- Exodus 30:17-18
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 30:29-31
- Exodus 30:32-33
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 31:1-2
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 32:5-6
- Exodus 32:7-8
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 33:1-3
- Exodus 33:4-6
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Exodus 33:10-11
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:14-16
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 33:19-20
- Exodus 33:21-23
- Exodus 34:1-2
- Exodus 34:3-4
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 34:23-24
- Exodus 34:27-28
- Exodus 34:32-33
- Exodus 34:34-35
- Exodus 35:1-3
- Exodus 35:10-12
- Exodus 35:23-24
- Exodus 35:30-33
- Exodus 36:1
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 36:5-7
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 39:1
- Exodus 39:4-5
- Exodus 39:6-7
- Exodus 39:21
- Exodus 39:25-26
- Exodus 39:27-29
- Exodus 39:30-31

- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 39:42-43
- Exodus 40:1-2
- Exodus 40:14-16
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Exodus 40:21-23
- Exodus 40:24-25
- Exodus 40:26-27
- Exodus 40:31-33
- Exodus 40:34-35
- Exodus 40:36-38

year

Definition:

When used literally, the term “year” in the Bible refers to a period of time lasting 354 days. This is according to the lunar calendar system which is based on the time it takes for the moon to go around the earth.

- A year in the modern-day solar calendar lasts 365 days divided into 12 months, based on the amount of time it takes for the earth to travel around the sun.
- In both calendar systems a year has 12 months. But an extra 13th month is sometimes added to the year in the lunar calendar to make up for the fact that a lunar year is 11 days less than a solar year. This helps keep the two calendars more in line with each other.
- In the Bible, the term “year” is also used in a figurative sense to refer to a general time when a special event takes place. Examples of this include, “the year of Yahweh” or “in the year of drought” or “the favorable year of the Lord.” In these contexts, “year” could be translated as “time” or “season” or “time period.”

(See also: month)

Bible References:

- [2 Kings 23:31-33](#)
- [Acts 19:8-10](#)
- [Daniel 08:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 12:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H7620, H7657, H8140, H8141, G1763, G2094

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 12:17-18](#)
- [Exodus 38:24-26](#)
- [Exodus 40:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 40:17-20](#)

yeast, leaven

Definition:

“Leaven” is a general term for a substance that causes bread dough to expand and rise. “Yeast” is a specific kind of leaven.

- In some English translations, the word for leaven is translated as “yeast,” which is a modern leavening agent that fills the bread dough with gas bubbles, making the dough expand before baking it. The yeast is kneaded into the dough so that it spreads throughout the entire lump of dough.
- In Old Testament times, the leavening or rising agent was produced by allowing the dough to sit for awhile. Small amounts of dough from a previous batch of dough were saved as leavening for the next batch.
- When the Israelites escaped from Egypt, they didn’t have time to wait for bread dough to rise, so they made bread without leaven to take with them on their journey. As a reminder of this, every year the Jewish people celebrate Passover by eating bread that has no leaven in it.
- The term “leaven” or “yeast” is used figuratively in the Bible as a picture of how sin spreads through a person’s life or how sin can influence other people.
- It can also refer to false teaching which often spreads to many people and influences them.
- The term “leaven” is also used in a positive way to explain how the influence of God’s kingdom spreads from person to person.

Translation Suggestions

- This could be translated as “leaven” or “substance that causes dough to rise” or “expanding agent.” The word “rise” could be expressed as “expand” or “get bigger” or “puff up.”
- If a local leavening agent is used for making bread dough rise, that term can be used. If the language has a well-known, general term that means, “leavening,” this would be the best term to use.

(See also: [Egypt](#), [Passover](#), [unleavened bread](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 12:5-8](#)
- [Galatians 05:9-10](#)
- [Luke 12:1](#)
- [Luke 13:20-21](#)
- [Matthew 13:33](#)
- [Matthew 16:5-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Exodus 12:5-8
- Exodus 12:15-16
- Exodus 12:19-20
- Exodus 12:34-36
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Exodus 29:22-23
- Exodus 34:18
- Exodus 34:25-26

Zebulun

Facts:

Zebulun was the last son born to Jacob and Leah and is the name of one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The Israelite tribe of Zebulun was given the land directly west of the Salt Sea.
- Sometimes the name “Zebulun” is also used to refer to the land where this Israelite tribe lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Leah](#), [Salt Sea](#), [twelve tribes of Israel](#))

Bible References:

- [Exodus 01:1-5](#)
- [Genesis 30:19-21](#)
- [Isaiah 09:1-2](#)
- [Judges 04:10](#)
- [Matthew 04:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 04:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
 - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
 - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
 - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
 - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
 - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - Today the people in this house have been saved...
 - Today God has saved the people in this house...
 - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Uses:

- Exodus 12:12-14
- Exodus 12:29-30
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 31:3-5
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:5-7

Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like “they” or “people” or “someone.”
- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Uses:

- Exodus 1:6-7
- Exodus 3:19-22
- Exodus 04 General Notes
- Exodus 5:19-21
- Exodus 6:2-5
- Exodus 8:22-24
- Exodus 10:5-6
- Exodus 10:7-8
- Exodus 10:9-11
- Exodus 10:14-15
- Exodus 10:21-23
- Exodus 10:24-26
- Exodus 12:5-8
- Exodus 12:9-11
- Exodus 12:15-16
- Exodus 12:15-16
- Exodus 12:15-16
- Exodus 12:15-16
- Exodus 12:19-20
- Exodus 12:19-20
- Exodus 12:19-20
- Exodus 12:34-36
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Exodus 12:41-42

- Exodus 12:43-44
- Exodus 12:45-46
- Exodus 12:47-48
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 13:6-7
- Exodus 13:6-7
- Exodus 13:6-7
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:21-22
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Exodus 15:9-11
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 18:5-6
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Exodus 21:7-8
- Exodus 21:12-14
- Exodus 21:12-14
- Exodus 21:15-17
- Exodus 21:15-17
- Exodus 21:15-17
- Exodus 21:18-19
- Exodus 21:20-21
- Exodus 21:22-25
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 21:31-32
- Exodus 21:35-36
- Exodus 22:1-4
- Exodus 22:1-4
- Exodus 22:1-4
- Exodus 22:1-4
- Exodus 22:7-9
- Exodus 22:7-9
- Exodus 22:10-13
- Exodus 22:10-13
- Exodus 22:10-13
- Exodus 22:10-13

- Exodus 22:14-15
- Exodus 22:18-19
- Exodus 22:20-21
- Exodus 23:12-13
- Exodus 24:7-8
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 25:19-21
- Exodus 25:25-27
- Exodus 25:28-30
- Exodus 25:28-30
- Exodus 25:31-32
- Exodus 25:31-32
- Exodus 25:35-36
- Exodus 25:37-40
- Exodus 25:37-40
- Exodus 26:1-3
- Exodus 26:19-21
- Exodus 26:22-25
- Exodus 26:29-30
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 26:34-35
- Exodus 27:1-2
- Exodus 27:7-8
- Exodus 27:7-8
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Exodus 27:14-16
- Exodus 27:17-19
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 28:6-9
- Exodus 28:17-20
- Exodus 28:21-24
- Exodus 28:27-28
- Exodus 28:33-35
- Exodus 28:33-35
- Exodus 28:36-38
- Exodus 28:36-38
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Exodus 29:21
- Exodus 29:24-25
- Exodus 29:29-30
- Exodus 29:29-30
- Exodus 29:31-34

- Exodus 29:31-34
- Exodus 29:31-34
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Exodus 29:43-44
- Exodus 30:1-2
- Exodus 30:3-4
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:32-33
- Exodus 30:32-33
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 30:37-38
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:18
- Exodus 33:14-16
- Exodus 33:21-23
- Exodus 34:34-35
- Exodus 35:1-3
- Exodus 37:7-9
- Exodus 37:14-16
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Exodus 37:20-22
- Exodus 37:20-22
- Exodus 37:25-26
- Exodus 37:27-29
- Exodus 38:1-3
- Exodus 38:4-5
- Exodus 38:13-16
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:27-29
- Exodus 39:4-5
- Exodus 39:10-13
- Exodus 39:14-16

- Exodus 39:21
- Exodus 39:32-35
- Exodus 40:12-13
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Exodus 40:36-38
- Exodus 40:36-38

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

- **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
 - ◇ Or:
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
- **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
 - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.

2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

- **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
- **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
 - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- Exodus 01 General Notes
- Exodus 1:20-22
- Exodus 2:3-4
- Exodus 03 General Notes
- Exodus 7:14-15
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 8:1-4
- Exodus 10:16-18
- Exodus 11:6-8
- Exodus 12:3-4
- Exodus 12:9-11
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Exodus 12:31-33
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 14 General Notes
- Exodus 15:1
- Exodus 15:17-18
- Exodus 15:19-21
- Exodus 16:6-8
- Exodus 16:6-8
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 18:5-6
- Exodus 18:21-23
- Exodus 18:24-27
- Exodus 19:7-9
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 21:2-4
- Exodus 21:12-14
- Exodus 21:18-19
- Exodus 21:20-21
- Exodus 21:22-25
- Exodus 21:28-30
- Exodus 21:33-34
- Exodus 21:33-34

- Exodus 21:35-36
- Exodus 21:35-36
- Exodus 22:14-15
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Exodus 23:16-17
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 24:7-8
- Exodus 24:12-13
- Exodus 26:19-21
- Exodus 26:22-25
- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 26:34-35
- Exodus 27:5-6
- Exodus 27:5-6
- Exodus 28:25-26
- Exodus 28:33-35
- Exodus 28:40-41
- Exodus 29:3-4
- Exodus 29:8-9
- Exodus 29:10-11
- Exodus 29:19-20
- Exodus 29:31-34
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Exodus 30:26-28
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 32 General Notes
- Exodus 32:5-6
- Exodus 32:17-18
- Exodus 32:28-29
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Exodus 34:15-17
- Exodus 34:25-26
- Exodus 34:25-26
- Exodus 37:14-16
- Exodus 38 General Notes
- Exodus 38:8
- Exodus 39:27-29
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Exodus 40:24-25
- Exodus 40:26-27
- Exodus 40:31-33

Biblical Distance

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong”, which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter,” “45 centimeters,” or “50 centimeters.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

- **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements given in the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half."
- Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter; its width will be two thirds of a meter; and its height will be two thirds of a meter."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard foot length, you could translate it as below.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be 3 3/4 feet; its width will be 2 1/4 feet; and its height will be 2 1/4 feet."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits (one meter); its width will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter); and its height will be one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)."

- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
 - "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be one meter¹; its width will be two thirds of a meter ²; and its height will be two thirds of a meter." The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1] two and a half cubits
 - ◇ ^[2] one cubit and a half

Uses:

- Exodus 25:10-11
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Exodus 25:23-24
- Exodus 26:1-3
- Exodus 26:7-9
- Exodus 26:12-14
- Exodus 27:1-2
- Exodus 27:1-2
- Exodus 27:1-2
- Exodus 27:9-10
- Exodus 27:14-16
- Exodus 27:17-19
- Exodus 28:15-16
- Exodus 36:14-17
- Exodus 36:20-23
- Exodus 37:1-3
- Exodus 37:4-6
- Exodus 37:10-13
- Exodus 37:10-13
- Exodus 37:25-26
- Exodus 38:1-3
- Exodus 38:9-10
- Exodus 38:11-12
- Exodus 38:13-16
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 39:8-9

Biblical Money

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight	Value
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams	shekel
shekel	various metals	11 grams	talent
talent	various metals	33 kilograms	

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage	Value
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day	
drachma	silver coin	1 day	
mite	copper coin	1/64 day	shekel
shekel	silver coin	4 days	
talent	silver	6,000 days	

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

- **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (see **Copy or Borrow Words**)
 - "The one owed five hundred denali, and the other owed fifty denali." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.
 - "The one owed five hundred silver coins, and the other owed fifty silver coins." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
- Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
 - "The one owed five hundred days' wages, and the other owed fifty days' wages."
- Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
 - "The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii.²" (Luke 7:41 ULB) The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1] five hundred days's wages
 - ◇ ^[2] fifty day's wages
- Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.
 - "The one owed five hundred denarii¹, and the other owed fifty denarii." (Luke 7:41 ULB)
 - ◇ ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Uses:

- **Exodus 21:31-32**
- **Exodus 30:11-14**
- **Exodus 30:15-16**
- **Exodus 38:27-29**

Biblical Volume

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Type	Original Measure	Liters	———	———	———	Dry	omer	2 liters	Dry	ephah	22 liters	Dry	homer	220 liters	Dry	cor	220 liters	Dry	seah	7.7 liters	Dry	letheh	114.8 liters	Liquid	metrete	40 liters	Liquid	bath	22 liters	Liquid	hin	3.7 liters	Liquid	kab	1.23 liters	Liquid	log	0.31 liters
------	------------------	--------	-----	-----	-----	-----	------	----------	-----	-------	-----------	-----	-------	------------	-----	-----	------------	-----	------	------------	-----	--------	--------------	--------	---------	-----------	--------	------	-----------	--------	-----	------------	--------	-----	-------------	--------	-----	-------------

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

- **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULB)
- Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
 - "For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one bat, and one homer of seed will yield only an efa."
- Use the measurements given in the UDB. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters, and ten baskets of seed will yield only one basket."
 - ◇ "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters and 220 liters of seed will yield only twenty-two liters."
- Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and six and a half bushels of seed will yield only twenty quarts."
- Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath (six gallons), and one homer (six and a half bushels) of seed will yield only an ephah (twenty quarts)."
- Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULB measurements in footnotes.
 - "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters³." The footnotes would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]one bath

- ◇ ^[2]one homer
- ◇ ^[3]one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULB and UDB, add the word “measure.”

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

- **whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty.** (Haggai 2:16 ULB)
- Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty amounts of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty amounts of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty baskets of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty jars of wine, there were only twenty.
- Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.
 - whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty liters of grain, there were only ten liters, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty liters of wine, there were only twenty liters.

Uses:

- Exodus 16:16-18
- Exodus 16:31-32
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 29:40
- Exodus 29:40
- Exodus 30:22-25

Biblical Weight

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
1 shekel	11 grams	-	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

- **The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.** (Exodus 38:29 ULB)
 - Use the measurements from the ULB. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULB. (see [Copy or Borrow Words](#))
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels."
 - Use the metric measurements given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed 2,400 kilograms."
 - Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed 5,300 pounds."
 - Use the measurements from the ULB and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)."
 - Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULB in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULB measurements in notes.
 - "The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels.¹"
 - ◇ The footnote would look like:
 - ^[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.### Uses:
 - [Exodus 25:37-40](#)
 - [Exodus 30:11-14](#)
 - [Exodus 30:15-16](#)
 - [Exodus 30:22-25](#)

- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 37:23-24
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:27-29
- Exodus 38:27-29

Copy or Borrow Words

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns..](#))

Examples from the Bible

He saw a fig tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULB)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the seraphim; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULB)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of Malachi. (Malachi 1:1 ULB)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
 - □□□□□□□□□□ - A man's name in Hebrew letters.
 - "Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
 - **Zephaniah** - This is a man's name.
 - "Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.
 - **Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".
 - "Sefania"
 - "Sefanaia"
 - "Sefanaya"

Direct and Indirect Quotations

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: ""

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would," to replace the future tense indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULB)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him to tell no one,
- Direct quote: but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest..."

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULB)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you."
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, 'Look here; or, 'Look there!'

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
 - **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
 - He instructed him to tell no one, but to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.
 - **He instructed him, to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."** (Luke 5:14 ULB)
 - He instructed him, "Tell no one. Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.## Uses:

- [Exodus 7:8-10](#)
- [Exodus 13:8-10](#)
- [Exodus 13:14-16](#)
- [Exodus 14:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 14:10-12](#)
- [Exodus 32:21-24](#)
- [Exodus 32:21-24](#)
- [Exodus 32:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 36:5-7](#)

Double Negatives

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “unhappy,” “impossible,” and “useless.”

A double negative occurs when a sentence has two words that each express the meaning of “not.”

It is not that we do not have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULB)

And this better confidence did not happen without the taking of an oath, ... (Hebrews 7:20 ULB.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

... so that they may not be unfruitful. (Titus 3:14 ULB)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULB)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
 - **For we do not have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses.** (Hebrews 4:15 ULB)
 - “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”
 - **... so that they may not be unfruitful.** (Titus 3:14 ULB)
 - “... so that they may be fruitful.”
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely.”
 - **Be sure of this—wicked people will not go unpunished ...** (Proverbs 11:21 ULB)
 - “Be sure of this—wicked people will certainly be punished ...”
 - **All things were made through him and without him there was not one thing made that has been made.** (John 1:3 ULB)
 - “All things were made through him. He made absolutely everything that has been made.”

Uses:

- Exodus 3:19-22
- Exodus 8:28-29
- Exodus 12:29-30
- Exodus 12:47-48
- Exodus 20:7
- Exodus 21:9-11
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Exodus 22:29-31
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Exodus 23:26-29
- Exodus 28:27-28
- Exodus 39:21

Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
 - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
 - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
 - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
 - "King David was very old."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
 - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
 - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

Uses:

- Exodus 4:10-13
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 15:16
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 34:8-9
- Exodus 39:32-35

Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

Examples from the Bible

... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
 - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
- **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

Uses:

- Exodus 7:6-7
- Exodus 12:17-18

Euphemism

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

Definition

... they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself ... (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?”
(Luke 1:34 ULB)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

- **... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself.** (1 Samuel 24:3 ULB) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:
 - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to dig a hole"
 - "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to have some time alone"
- **Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?"** (Luke 1:34 ULB)
 - Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I do not know a man?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

- **they found Saul and his sons fallen on Mount Gilboa.** (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULB)
 - "they found Saul and his sons dead on Mount Gilboa."

Uses:

- Exodus 4:24-26
- Exodus 14:13-14
- Exodus 19:14-15
- Exodus 21:9-11
- Exodus 22:16-17
- Exodus 22:18-19

Exclamations

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULB and UDB, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULB)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULB)

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULB)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”
 - **You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULB)
 - “You are such a worthless person!”
 - **Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
 - “Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God are so deep!”
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word “wow” below shows that they were astonished. The expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.
 - **They were absolutely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.”** (Mark 7:36 ULB)
 - “They were absolutely astonished, saying, “Wow! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.” ”
 - **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - “**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
 - **Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - Lord Yahweh, what will happen to me? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”
 - Help, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
 - **How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering!** (Romans 11:33 ULB)
 - “His judgements are so unsearchable and his ways are far beyond discovering!”
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

- **Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"** (Judges 6:22 ULB)
 - "Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. He was terrified and said, "Ah, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULB)

Uses:

- Exodus 4:6-7

First, Second, or Third Person

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or to the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
 - **But David said to Saul, ”Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, ”I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.
 - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, ”... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, ”... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
 - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

Uses:

- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 23:23-25
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:5-7

Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

Uses:

- [Exodus 5:6-9](#)
- [Exodus 5:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 11:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 14:1-3](#)
- [Exodus 14:13-14](#)
- [Exodus 19:3-6](#)
- [Exodus 19:10-11](#)
- [Exodus 25:1-2](#)
- [Exodus 25:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 25:8-9](#)
- [Exodus 25:19-21](#)
- [Exodus 25:22](#)
- [Exodus 26:1-3](#)

- Exodus 26:31-33
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 30:1-2
- Exodus 30:5-6
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:17-18
- Exodus 30:26-28
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 33:14-16
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Exodus 34:10-11

Fractions

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

For the drink offering, you must offer a third of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULB)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULB)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ——— | ——— | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to one half of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other half, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULB)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill a third of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULB)

If all the people were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare a fourth of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULB)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UDB.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
 - **A third of the ocean became red like blood** (Revelation 8:8 ULB)
 - It was like they divided the ocean into three parts, and one part of the ocean became blood.
 - **then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
 - ... then you must divide an ephah of fine flour into ten parts and divide a hin of oil into two parts. Then mix three of those parts of the flour with one of the parts of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.
2. For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UDB. The translators of the UDB have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
 - **two thirds of a shekel** (1 Samuel 13:21 ULB)
 - eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UDB)
 - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9 ULB)
 - six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with two liters of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UDB)
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
 - **three tenths of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil.** (Numbers 15:9, ULB)
 - six quarts of fine flour mixed with two quarts of oil.

Uses:

- Exodus 16:33-36
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Exodus 25:23-24
- Exodus 29:40
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:15-16
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 36:20-23
- Exodus 37:1-3
- Exodus 37:4-6
- Exodus 37:10-13
- Exodus 38:24-26

Generic Noun Phrases

This page answers the question: *What are generic noun phrases and how can I translate them?*

Description

Generic noun phrases refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things. This happens frequently in proverbs, because proverbs tell about things that are true about people in general.

Can a man walk on hot coals without scorching his feet?
So is the man who goes into his neighbor's wife;
the one who has relations with her will not go unpunished. (Proverbs 6:28 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to a specific man. They refer to any man who does these things.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of showing that noun phrases refer to something in general. Translators should refer to these general ideas in ways that are natural in their language.

Examples from the Bible

The one who does what is right is kept away from trouble and it comes upon the wicked instead. (Proverbs 11:8 ULB)

The underlined phrases above do not refer to any specific people but to anyone who does what is right or anyone who is wicked.

People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain. (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)

This does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who refuses to sell grain.

Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.
(Proverbs 12:2 ULB)

The phrase “a good man” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who is good. The phrase “a man who makes evil plans” does not refer to a particular man, but to any person who makes evil plans.

Translation Strategies

If your language can use the same wording as in the ULB to refer to people or things in general rather than to specific individuals or things, consider using the same wording. Here are some strategies you might use.

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.

2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
3. Use the word “any”, as in “any person” or “anyone.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people.”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “the” in the noun phrase.
 - **Yahweh gives favor to a good man, but he condemns a man who makes evil plans.** (Proverbs 12:2 ULB)
 - “Yahweh gives favor to the good man, but he condemns the man who makes evil plans.” (Proverbs 12:2)
2. Use the word “a” in the noun phrase.
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse a man who refuses to sell them grain”
3. Use the word “any, as in ”any person” or “anyone.”
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse any man who refuses to sell them grain.”
4. Use the plural form, as in “people” (or in this sentence, “men”).
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse men who refuse to sell them grain”
5. Use any other way that is natural in your language.
 - **People curse the man who refuses to sell them grain.** (Proverbs 11:26 ULB)
 - “People curse whoever refuses to sell them grain.”

Uses:

- **Exodus 15:1**

Go and Come

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word “go” or “come” is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words “go” or “come” and whether to use the words “take” or “bring” when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say “I’m coming,” while Spanish speakers say “I’m going.” You will need to translate the words “go” and “come” (and also “take” and “bring”) in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words “go” and “come” or “take” and “bring” differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples from the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, “Come, you and all your household, into the ark (Genesis 7:1 ULB)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham’s relatives lived far away, from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to go to them, not come toward Abraham.

When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, “When you have gone into the land...”

Joseph and Mary brought him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary took or carried Jesus to the temple.

Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to come to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULB)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to go with him to his house.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UDB)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not come out in public.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULB would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

1. Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
 - **But you will be free from my oath if you come to my relatives and they will not give her to you.** (Genesis 24:41 ULB)
 - But you will be free from my oath if you go to my relatives and they will not give her to you.
 - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
 - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not come out in public for five months.
2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.
 - **When you have come to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...** (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULB)
 - “When you have arrived in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”
 - **Yahweh said to Noah, “Come, you and all your household, into the ark ...** (Genesis 7:1 ULB)
 - “Yahweh said to Noah, “Enter, you and all your household, into the ark ...”
 - **Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go out in public for five months.** (Luke 1:24 UDB)
 - Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not appear in public for five months.

Uses:

- Exodus 15:17-18
- Exodus 19:7-9

Hebrew Months

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

Description

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The scripture may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in the month of Abib. (Exodus 13:4 ULB)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day in the first month of the year, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULB)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (see [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

1. Tell the the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

- **At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.** (Exodus 23:15 ULB)
- **It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.** (Leviticus 16:29 ULB)
- Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
 - At that time, you will appear before me in the first month of the year, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
- Use the months that people know.
 - At that time, you will appear before me in the month of March, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.
 - It will always be a statute for you that on the day I choose in late September you must humble yourselves and do no work.”
- State clearly what season the month occurred in.
 - It will always be a statute for you that in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month, you must humble yourselves and do no work.
- Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.
 - It will always be a statute for you that in the day I choose in early autumn¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.
 - ◇ The footnote would look like:
 - ^[1]The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Uses:

- Exodus 12:1-2
- Exodus 12:17-18
- Exodus 12:17-18
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 19:1-2
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Exodus 34:18
- Exodus 40:1-2
- Exodus 40:17-20

How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
 - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
 - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you."
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
- **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - ... a young man named Paul¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
 - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
- **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

◇ ^[1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
 - It came about in Iconium that Paul¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Uses:

- Introduction to Exodus
- Exodus 1:15-17
- Exodus 2:21-22
- Exodus 2:21-22
- Exodus 4:24-26
- Exodus 6:14-15
- Exodus 6:16-19
- Exodus 6:16-19
- Exodus 6:20-22
- Exodus 6:20-22
- Exodus 6:23-25
- Exodus 6:23-25
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 14:1-3
- Exodus 14:6-9
- Exodus 15:19-21
- Exodus 15:22-23
- Exodus 15:27
- Exodus 16 General Notes
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 17 General Notes
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 17:4-7
- Exodus 17:4-7
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 19:1-2

- Exodus 23:14-15
- Exodus 24:1-2
- Exodus 24:9-11
- Exodus 24:14-15
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Exodus 31:1-2
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Exodus 34:18
- Exodus 35:34-35
- Exodus 36:1
- Exodus 36:1
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 36:8-10
- Exodus 37:1-3
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 38:21-23
- Exodus 38:27-29
- Exodus 39:2-3
- Exodus 39:22-24

Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
 - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
 - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
 - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
 - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
 - “And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
 - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

- Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
 - Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.
- **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
 - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Uses:

- Exodus 5:12-14
- Exodus 7:23-25
- Exodus 9:5-7
- Exodus 16:1-3

Hypothetical Situations

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

“If the sun stopped shining...”, “What if the sun stopped shining...”, “Suppose the sun stopped shining...”, “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. We need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with “if.”)

- If he had known about the party, he would have come to it. (But he did not come.)
- If he knew about the party, he would be here. (But he is not here.)
- If he knew about the party, he would come to it. (But he probably will not come.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

1. Hypothetical situations in the past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULB)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that if the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died.” (John 11:21 ULB)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

1. Hypothetical situations in the present

Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed. (Luke 5:37 ULB)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out? (Matthew 12:11 ULB)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

1. Hypothetical situation in the future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULB)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be - so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

1. Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

Regrets and wishes are very similar.

The Israelites said to them, "If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger."
(Exodus 16:3 ULB)

Here the Israelites were afraid they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. I wish that you were either cold or hot! (Revelation 3:15 ULB)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Know how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

Uses:

- [Exodus 10:9-11](#)

Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
 - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
 - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
 - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
 - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
 - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
 - I am crying my eyes out

Uses:

- Exodus 2:13-14
- Exodus 2:23-25

- Exodus 3:19-22
- Exodus 8:13-15
- Exodus 8:25-27
- Exodus 10:27-29
- Exodus 12:12-14
- Exodus 12:47-48
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 22:7-9
- Exodus 24:3-4
- Exodus 25:1-2
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 34:8-9
- Exodus 34:10-11

Imperatives - Other Uses

This page answers the question: *What other uses are there for imperative sentences in the Bible?*

Description

Imperative sentences are mainly used to express a desire or requirement that someone do something. Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use an imperative sentence for some of the functions that they are used for in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Speakers often use imperative sentences to tell or ask their listeners to do something. In Genesis 2, God spoke to Isaac and told him not to go to Egypt but to live where God would tell him to live.

Now Yahweh appeared to him and said, "Do not go down to Egypt; live in the land that I tell you to live in. (Genesis 26:2 ULB)

Sometimes imperative sentences in the Bible have other uses.

Imperatives that make things happen

God can make things happen by commanding that they happen. Jesus healed a man by commanding that the man be healed. The man could not do anything to obey the command, but Jesus caused him to be healed by commanding it. ("Be clean" means "Be healed.")

"I am willing. Be clean." Immediately he was cleansed of his leprosy. (Matthew 8:3 ULB)

In Genesis 1, God commanded that there should be light, and by commanding it, he caused it to exist. Some languages, such as the Hebrew of the Bible, have commands that are in the third person. English does not do that, and so it must turn the third-person command into a general second-person command, as in the ULB:

God said, "Let there be light," and there was light. (Genesis 1:3 ULB)

Languages that have third-person commands can follow the original Hebrew, which translates into English as something like, "light must be."

Imperatives that function as blessings

In the Bible, God blesses people by using imperatives. This indicates what his will is for them.

God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."

Imperatives that function as conditions

An imperative sentence can also be used to tell the **condition** under which something will happen. The proverbs mainly tell about life and things that often happen. The purpose of Proverbs 4:6 below is not primarily to give a command, but to teach what people can expect to happen **if** they love wisdom.

... do not abandon wisdom and she will watch over you; love her and she will keep you safe. (Proverbs 4:6 ULB)

The purpose of Proverbs 22:6 below is teach what people can expect to happen if they teach their children the way they should go.

Teach a child the way he should go, and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction. (Proverbs 22:6 ULB)

Translation Strategies

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people would not use an imperative sentence for one of the functions in the Bible, try using a statement instead.
 - **Be clean.** (Matthew 8:3 ULB)
 - "You are now clean."
 - "I now cleanse you."
 - **God said, "Let there be light," and there was light.** (Genesis 1:3 ULB)
 - God said, "There is now light" and there was light.
 - **God blessed them and said to them, "Be fruitful, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."** (Genesis 1:3 ULB)

- God blessed them and said to them, "My will for you is that you be fruitful, and multiply. Fill the earth, and subdue it. I want you to have dominion over the fish of the sea, over the birds of the sky, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth."
2. If people would not understand that a sentence is used to cause something to happen, add a connecting word like "so" to show that what happened was a result of what was said.
- **God said, "Let there be light," and there was light.** (Genesis 1:3 ULB)
 - God said, 'Let there be light,' so there was light.
 - God said, "Light must be;" as a result, there was light.
3. If people would not use a command as a condition, translate it as a statement with the words "if" and "then."

**Teach a child the way he should go,
and when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction.** (Proverbs 22:6 ULB)

Translated as:

"If you teach a child the way he should go,
then when he is old he will not turn away from that instruction."### Uses:

- **Exodus 10:3-4**

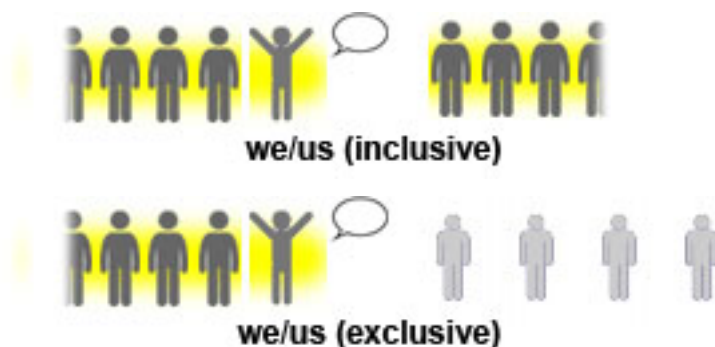
Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is inclusive “we”?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we”: an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue - The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

... the shepherds said one to each other, “Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, “Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to.

Uses:

- Exodus 1:8-10

Introduction of a New Event

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, there was a certain priest named Zechariah, from the division of Abijah. His wife was from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULB)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULB)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULB)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULB)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened after Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying, ...
(Matthew 3:1-22 ULB)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULB)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULB)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

⁶Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. ⁷Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULB)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULB or UDB. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: “another time” or “someone.”
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
 - **Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him ...** (John 3:1,2)

- There was a man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council. One night he came to Jesus and said...
 - One night a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council, came to Jesus and said ...
 - **As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting at the tax collecting place, and he said to him ...** (Mark 2:14 ULB)
 - As he passed by, Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and and said to him ...
 - As he passed by, there was a man sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...
 - As he passed by, there was a tax collector sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.
- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULB) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.
 - After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.
 - **Again he began to teach beside the lake.** (Mark 4:1 ULB) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.
 - Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.
 - Jesus went to the lake and began to teach people again there.
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.
- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULB)
 - Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.
 - This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.
- **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.** (Genesis 7:6-7 ULB)
 - Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because God had said that the waters of the flood would come.

Uses:

- Exodus 2:1-2

Merism

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULB)

I am the Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End. (Revelation 22:13, ULB)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ..., (Matthew 11:25 ULB)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULB)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth ...** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything ...
- **From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised.** (Psalm 113:3 ULB)
 - In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

- **I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth.** (Matthew 11:25 ULB)
 - I praise you, Father, Lord of everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.
- **He will bless those who honor him, both young and old.** (Psalm 115:13 ULB)
 - He will bless all those who honor him, regardless of whether they are young or old.

Uses:

- Exodus 2:11-12
- Exodus 23:23-25

Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’ where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has in mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
 - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
 - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
 - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
 - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
 - I will make you become people who gather men.
 - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Uses:

- Exodus 1:6-7
- Exodus 1:13-14
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Exodus 3:16-18
- Exodus 4:14-17
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 4:24-26
- Exodus 5:19-21
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Exodus 7:14-15
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 8:18-19
- Exodus 8:30-32
- Exodus 9:11-12
- Exodus 9:15-17
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 10:1-2
- Exodus 10:19-20
- Exodus 10:21-23
- Exodus 10:27-29
- Exodus 11:9-10
- Exodus 12:15-16
- Exodus 12:19-20
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:6-9
- Exodus 14:15-18
- Exodus 15:1

- Exodus 15:2-3
- Exodus 15:4-5
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:9-11
- Exodus 15:12-13
- Exodus 15:14-15
- Exodus 15:17-18
- Exodus 15:17-18
- Exodus 15:19-21
- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 16:6-8
- Exodus 16:9-12
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Exodus 16:28-30
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 18:7-8
- Exodus 18:17-20
- Exodus 18:17-20
- Exodus 18:17-20
- Exodus 18:17-20
- Exodus 18:21-23
- Exodus 18:21-23
- Exodus 18:21-23
- Exodus 18:24-27
- Exodus 18:24-27
- Exodus 19 General Notes
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 19:7-9
- Exodus 19:19-22
- Exodus 19:23-25
- Exodus 23:1-3
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:32-33
- Exodus 30:37-38

- Exodus 31:3-5
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 31:16-17
- Exodus 32:1-2
- Exodus 32:7-8
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 32:21-24
- Exodus 32:21-24
- Exodus 32:21-24
- Exodus 32:25-27
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Exodus 33:10-11
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:8-9
- Exodus 34:8-9
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 34:15-17
- Exodus 34:32-33
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 35:25-26
- Exodus 35:30-33
- Exodus 35:34-35
- Exodus 35:34-35
- Exodus 36:1
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 37:1-3
- Exodus 37:10-13

Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
 - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
 - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
 - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
 - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#).### Uses:

- [Exodus 1:1-5](#)
- [Exodus 1:8-10](#)
- [Exodus 1:15-17](#)
- [Exodus 3:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 3:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 3:7-8](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 3:16-18](#)
- [Exodus 3:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 3:19-22](#)
- [Exodus 4:10-13](#)
- [Exodus 4:10-13](#)
- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)
- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)
- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)
- [Exodus 4:14-17](#)
- [Exodus 4:21-23](#)
- [Exodus 4:21-23](#)

- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 5:3-5
- Exodus 5:19-21
- Exodus 5:22-23
- Exodus 6:1
- Exodus 6:23-25
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 8:18-19
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 9:5-7
- Exodus 9:15-17
- Exodus 9:15-17
- Exodus 10:16-18
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:29-31
- Exodus 14:29-31
- Exodus 15:2-3
- Exodus 15:2-3
- Exodus 15:2-3
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:9-11
- Exodus 15:12-13
- Exodus 15:16
- Exodus 15:17-18
- Exodus 15:22-23
- Exodus 15:24-26
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 17:11-13
- Exodus 17:11-13
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 17:14-16
- Exodus 18:1-4
- Exodus 18:7-8
- Exodus 18:9-11
- Exodus 18:13-14

- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 19:3-6
- Exodus 19:7-9
- Exodus 19:19-22
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 20:8-11
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Exodus 23:12-13
- Exodus 23:20-22
- Exodus 23:20-22
- Exodus 24:9-11
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Exodus 31:1-2
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Exodus 32:33-35
- Exodus 33:1-3
- Exodus 33:1-3
- Exodus 33:1-3
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:12-13
- Exodus 33:14-16
- Exodus 33:17-18
- Exodus 33:19-20
- Exodus 34:3-4
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Exodus 34:8-9
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 34:12-14
- Exodus 34:19-20
- Exodus 35:20-22

Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5.” Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- Exodus 1:1-5
- Exodus 2:1-2
- Exodus 6:16-19
- Exodus 6:16-19
- Exodus 6:20-22
- Exodus 7:6-7
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Exodus 12:37-40
- Exodus 12:41-42
- Exodus 13:6-7
- Exodus 14:6-9
- Exodus 15:27
- Exodus 15:27
- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 16:4-5
- Exodus 16:22-23
- Exodus 16:22-23
- Exodus 16:26-27
- Exodus 16:28-30
- Exodus 18:21-23
- Exodus 18:24-27
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 22:29-31
- Exodus 22:29-31

- Exodus 24:1-2
- Exodus 24:16-18
- Exodus 26:1-3
- Exodus 26:7-9
- Exodus 26:15-18
- Exodus 27:17-19
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Exodus 32:28-29
- Exodus 34:18
- Exodus 34:27-28
- Exodus 36:11-13
- Exodus 36:14-17
- Exodus 36:14-17
- Exodus 36:14-17
- Exodus 36:18-19
- Exodus 36:20-23
- Exodus 36:24-26
- Exodus 36:24-26
- Exodus 36:29-30
- Exodus 37:17-19
- Exodus 38:9-10
- Exodus 38:11-12
- Exodus 38:13-16
- Exodus 38:17-20
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:24-26
- Exodus 38:27-29
- Exodus 38:27-29
- Exodus 38:27-29
- Exodus 39:6-7

Ordinal Numbers

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church first apostles, second prophets, third teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULB)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 4 | four | fourth | | 10 | ten | tenth | | 100 | one hundred | one hundredth | | 1,000 | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

| Numeral | Number | Ordinal Number | | ——— | ——— | ——— | | 1 | one | first | | 2 | two | second | | 3 | three | third | | 5 | five | fifth | | 12 | twelve | twelfth |

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)

People tossed lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The first row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The second row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The third row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The fourth row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULB)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
 - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, another to Jedaiah, another to Harim,... another to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
 - There were twenty-four lots. One lot went to Jehoiarib, the next to Jedaiah, the next to Harim,... the next to Delaiah, and the last went to Maaziah.
 - **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates.** (Genesis 2:10-14 ULB)
 - A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four rivers. The name of one is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the next river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the next river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The last river is the Euphrates.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.
 - **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim, ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULB)
 - They cast twenty-four lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim, ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Uses:

- [Exodus 12:1-2](#)

- Exodus 12:17-18
- Exodus 12:17-18
- Exodus 16:1-3
- Exodus 19:1-2
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Exodus 20:8-11
- Exodus 35:1-3
- Exodus 40:1-2
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Exodus 40:17-20

Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
 - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
 - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
 - “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
 - **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
 - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
 - “All you have done is lie to me.”
 - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Uses:

- Exodus 9:1-4
- Exodus 12:1-2
- Exodus 13:8-10
- Exodus 13:14-16
- Exodus 23:20-22
- Exodus 32:15-16

Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
 - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - He even controls the winds and the sea.

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- Exodus 1:8-10
- Exodus 2:23-25
- Exodus 3:9-10
- Exodus 14:1-3
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:12-13
- Exodus 15:14-15
- Exodus 23:6-9
- Exodus 24:9-11
- Exodus 37:7-9

Poetry

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as Apostrophe.
- Parallel lines (see **Parallelism** and Parallelism with the Same Meaning)
- Repetition of some or all of a line
 - **Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULB)
- Lines of similar length.
 - **Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULB)
- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines
 - "Twinkle, twinkle little star. How I wonder what you are." (from an English rhyme)
- The same sound repeated many times
 - "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions
- Dramatic imagery
- Different use of grammar - including:
 - incomplete sentences
 - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

for you saw my affliction;
you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULB)

This example of Parallelism with the Same Meaning has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations;
vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (see [Parallelism](#))

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULB)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (see [Personification](#))

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
(Psalm 136:1-3 ULB)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

**Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,
or stand in the pathway with sinners,
or sit in the assembly of mockers.
But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,
and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULB)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

"Happy is the person not encouraged to sin
Disrespect for God he will not begin
To those who laugh at God, he is no kin.
God is his constant delight
He does what God says is right
He thinks of it all day and night

2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

- This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

- The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Uses:

- [Exodus 15 General Notes](#)

Predictive Past

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;
their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULB)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples from the Bible

Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULB)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULB)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying,
"Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULB)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

- **For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;** (Isaiah 9:6a ULB)
 - "For to us a child will be born, to us a son will be given;

2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)
 - Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I am about to hand over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."

3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

- **Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."** (Joshua 6:2 ULB)
 - Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I am handing over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."

Uses:

- **Exodus 15:17-18**

Reflexive Pronouns

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using **Reflexive pronouns**. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, and themselves. Other languages may have other ways to show this.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

Examples from the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULB)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves. (John 11:55 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were (John 4:2 ULB)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, since he was already in the boat. Other boats were also with him. And a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full. But Jesus himself was in the stern, asleep on a cushion. (Mark 4:36-38 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself. (John 6:15 ULB)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself. (John 20:6-7 ULB)

Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it.
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.
 - **If I should testify about myself alone, my testimony would not be true.** (John 5:31)
 - “If I should self-testify alone, my testimony would not be true.”
 - **Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to purify themselves.** (John 11:55)
 - “Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover in order to self-purify.”
2. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.
 - **He himself took our sickness and bore our diseases.** (Matthew 8:17 ULB)
 - “It was he who took our sickness and bore our diseases.”
 - **Jesus himself was not baptizing, but his disciples were.** (John 4:2)
 - “It was not Jesus who was baptizing, but his disciples were.”
3. In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

- **Now Jesus said this to test Philip, for he himself knew what he was going to do.** (John 6:6)
4. In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”
- **When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain by himself.** (John 6:15)
 - “When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again alone up the mountain.”
5. In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.
- **He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up in its place by itself.** (John 20:6-7 ULB)
 - “He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was rolled up and lying in it’s own place.”

Uses:

- Exodus 5:10-11
- Exodus 9:13-14

Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used their question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
 - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
 - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
 - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
 - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - You should not insult God's high priest!
 - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
 - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
 - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

Uses:

- Exodus 1:18-19
- Exodus 2:13-14
- Exodus 2:13-14
- Exodus 2:18-20
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Exodus 4:10-13
- Exodus 4:10-13
- Exodus 4:10-13
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 5:1-2
- Exodus 5:3-5
- Exodus 5:12-14
- Exodus 5:22-23
- Exodus 5:22-23
- Exodus 6:10-13
- Exodus 6:28-30
- Exodus 8:25-27
- Exodus 10:7-8
- Exodus 10:7-8
- Exodus 14 General Notes
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Exodus 14:15-18
- Exodus 15:9-11
- Exodus 15:9-11
- Exodus 16:6-8
- Exodus 16:6-8
- Exodus 16:28-30
- Exodus 17 General Notes
- Exodus 17:1-3

- Exodus 17:1-3
- Exodus 18:13-14
- Exodus 18:13-14
- Exodus 22:25-27
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Exodus 32:12-14
- Exodus 33:14-16

Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
 - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
 - **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
 - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Uses:

- Exodus 4:6-7
- Exodus 4:14-17
- Exodus 15:4-5
- Exodus 15:6-8
- Exodus 15:9-11
- Exodus 15:16
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Exodus 24:9-11
- Exodus 24:16-18

Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
 - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
 - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
 - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
 - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
 - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Uses:

- Exodus 4:29-31
- Exodus 9:29-30
- Exodus 9:31-33
- Exodus 18:7-8

Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
 - **”My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - ”I exalt the Lord.”
 - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Uses:

- Exodus 4:21-23
- Exodus 7:3-5
- Exodus 7:11-13
- Exodus 7:14-15
- Exodus 7:20-22
- Exodus 8:18-19
- Exodus 8:30-32
- Exodus 9:5-7
- Exodus 9:11-12
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 9:34-35
- Exodus 10:19-20
- Exodus 10:24-26
- Exodus 10:27-29
- Exodus 10:27-29
- Exodus 11:9-10
- Exodus 12:23
- Exodus 14:4-5
- Exodus 14:6-9
- Exodus 14:10-12
- Exodus 14:15-18
- Exodus 17:8-10
- Exodus 17:11-13
- Exodus 35:4-9
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 35:20-22
- Exodus 35:25-26
- Exodus 35:27-29
- Exodus 35:34-35
- Exodus 36:2-4
- Exodus 36:2-4

Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

- your sins ... will be white like milk
- your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
 - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - to him who made the sun and the moon

Uses:

- Exodus 2:3-4
- Exodus 2:3-4
- Exodus 15:19-21
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Exodus 16:13-15
- Exodus 16:31-32
- Exodus 19:16-18
- Exodus 24:9-11
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Exodus 28:6-9
- Exodus 28:17-20

- Exodus 28:17-20
- Exodus 28:17-20
- Exodus 28:29-30
- Exodus 28:33-35
- Exodus 30:11-14
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 30:22-25
- Exodus 30:34-36
- Exodus 39:10-13